



**Graphical User Interface
with Graphic Library**

Version 4.04

Manual Rev. 0

Micriūm

www.micrium.com
Empowering Embedded Systems

Disclaimer

Specifications written in this manual are believed to be accurate, but are not guaranteed to be entirely free of error. Specifications in this manual may be changed for functional or performance improvements without notice. Please make sure your manual is the latest edition. While the information herein is assumed to be accurate, Micrium Technologies Corporation (the distributor) assumes no responsibility for any errors or omissions and makes no warranties. The distributor specifically disclaims any implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose.

Copyright notice

The latest version of this manual is available as PDF file in the download area of our website at www.micrium.com. You are welcome to copy and distribute the file as well as the printed version. You may not extract portions of this manual or modify the PDF file in any way without the prior written permission of Micrium Technologies Corporation. The software described in this document is furnished under a license and may only be used or copied in accordance with the terms of such a license.

© 2002-2006 Micrium, Weston, Florida 33327-1848, U.S.A.

Trademarks

Names mentioned in this manual may be trademarks of their respective companies. Brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Registration

Please register the software via email. This way we can make sure you will receive updates or notifications of updates as soon as they become available.

For registration please provide the following information:

- Your full name and the name of your supervisor
- Your company name
- Your job title
- Your email address and telephone number
- Company name and address
- Your company's main phone number
- Your company's web site address
- Name and version of the product

Please send this information to: licensing@micrium.com

Contact address

Micrium Technologies Corporation
949 Crestview Circle

Weston, FL 33327-1848
U.S.A.

Phone : +1 954 217 2036

FAX : +1 954 217 2037

WEB : www.micrium.com

Email : support@micrium.com

Manual versions

This manual describes the latest software version. The software version number can be found in the table 'Software versions' later in this chapter. If any error occurs, please inform us and we will try to help you as soon as possible.

For further information on topics or routines not yet specified, please contact us.

Print date: August 24, 2006

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
4.04R0	060505	JE	Chapter 15: Widgets - Function added to set the rotation mode of a MULTIPAGE widget.
4.02R0	060502	JE	Chapter 7: 2-D graphic library - Filling polygons: New config option GUI_FP_MAXCOUNT added. Chapter 8: Displaying bitmap files - BMP subchapter: Support for 32bpp BMP files added. - JPEG subchapter: Adapted to the new decoder. Chapter 9: Fonts - New functions for getting the number of blank pixel columns added. Chapter 10: Bitmap converter - Support for 24bpp and RLE16 format added. Chapter 11: Colors - Fixed palette modes for 24bpp and 32bpp added. - Fixed palette modes for alpha blending added. Chapter 15: Widgets - Support for widget schemes added. - GRAPH: Invalid data can be excluded from drawing YT graphs. - LISTVIEW: Function added to fix one or more columns. - DROPODOWN: Notification WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED added. - MULTIEDIT: New function added to set the text alignment. Chapter 18: Multi layer support - Support for up to 6 layers/displays added. Chapter 24: Display drivers - Support for Sitronix ST7712 added to LCD66772.c - New driver added to support Epson S1D13700 in 2bpp mode. - New driver added to support RAIO 8822 in 2bpp mode. - New driver added to support Sitronix ST7529. - New driver added to support Sitronix ST7920.
4.01R0	060131	JE	Chapter 9: Fonts - New functions for using external bitmap fonts added.
4.00R0	051222	JE	Chapter 8: Displaying bitmap files - New functions added for drawing GIFs and BMPs without loading them into memory. - New functions added for drawing scaled GIFs and BMPs with and without loading them into memory. - New functions added for getting information about GIFs and BMPs without loading them into memory. Chapter 9: Fonts: - New type of font added. Chapter 15: Widgets - Keyboard support added to MULTIPAGE widget. Chapter 16: Dialogs - Keyboard can be used to move to the previous dialog item. Chapter 23: Foreign language support - Subchapter Arabic support revised. - New subchapter for Thai language support. Chapter 29: Performance and resource usage - Table for image drawing performance added.

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
3.98R0	051109	JE	<p>Chapter 5: Displaying text - New function for showing text with text wrapping support added.</p> <p>Chapter 8: Displaying bitmap files - New functions for drawing animated GIFs added. - New functions for drawing scaled JPEGs added. - New functions added to draw JPEGs without loading them into memory. - Memory requirement of JPEG decompression changed.</p> <p>Chapter 9: Fonts - Subchapter standard font revised.</p> <p>Chapter 12: Memory devices - New function added.</p> <p>Chapter 14: Window manager - New message WM_MOUSEOVER_END added to messages.</p> <p>Chapter 15: Widgets - EDIT: Functions added to get the cursor position and to edit unsigned long values, notification messages added. - FRAMEWIN: Config option added. - GRAPH: Prototype of GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize() changed. - HEADER: Function for limiting dragging within the widget area added. - LISTVIEW: Sorting functions added, automatic use of scroll bars added, managing user data added, keyboard support enhanced, new config option added. - MENU: Popup menu added. - MESSAGEBOX: Config option added. - MULTIEDIT: Functions added to get the cursor position. - SCROLLBAR: Config options added. - TEXT: Text wrapping functions added. - Common: Mouse support of widgets explained, config option added.</p> <p>Chapter 21: Cursors - Function added.</p> <p>Chapter 24: Display drivers - LCDSLin: Support for RAIO 8822/8803/8835 added. - LCD667XX: Support for Sharp LR38825 and Samsung S6D0117 added. - LCDPage1bpp: Support for UltraChip UC1601 added.</p>
3.96R0	050719	JE	<p>Chapter 7: 2-D Graphic Library - New function GUI_GetDrawMode() added.</p> <p>Chapter 8: Displaying bitmap files - Mentioned, that JPEG package is only part of color version.</p> <p>Chapter 9: Fonts - Antialiased SIF fonts added.</p> <p>Chapter 12: Memory devices - New function GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt() added.</p> <p>Chapter 14: Window manager - New function WM_GetCallback() added.</p> <p>Chapter 15: Widgets - Interface of SCROLLBAR_SetColor() changed. - Explanation added, how to determine the type of a widget. - New GRAPH widget added. - New function BUTTON_GetBitmap() added. - New function CHECKBOX_GetText() added. - New function DROPDOWN_SetColor() added. - New function DROPDOWN_SetDefaultColor() added. - New function DROPDOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor() added. - New function DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarColor() added. - New function LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor() added. - New function RADIO_GetText() added.</p> <p>Chapter 24: Display drivers - LCD667XX driver: Support for Samsung S6D0110A added. - LCD07X1 driver: Support for Sitronix ST7541 added. - LCD66750 driver: Support for Hitachi HD66753 added.</p>

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
3.95R0	050701	JE	<p>Chapter 23 (Unicode) and 24 (Shift JIS) merged to chapter 23 (Foreign Language Support).</p> <p>Chapter 23:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Arabic support added.
3.94R0	050329	JE	<p>New chapter 3: Viewer</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Virtual screen support added. <p>Chapter 7: 2-D Graphic Library</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_SetClipRect() added. <p>Chapter 8: Displaying bitmap files</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GIF file support added. <p>Chapter 10: Bitmap converter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GIF file support added. <p>Chapter 11: Colors</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Mentioned that custom palettes only available for modes up to 8bpp. <p>Chapter 12: Memory devices</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Reworked and support for 1bpp memory devices added. <p>Chapter 14: Window manager</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - API function classification basic/advanced removed. - New function WM_SetWindowPos() added. - New function WM_GetScrollPosH() added. - New function WM_GetScrollPosV() added. - New function WM_SetScrollPosH() added. - New function WM_SetScrollPosV() added. <p>Chapter 15: Widgets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - BUTTON: New function BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor. - BUTTON: New function BUTTON_SetFocusColor. - BUTTON: New config option BUTTON_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT. - CHECKBOX: New function CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor(). - CHECKBOX: New function CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor(). - CHECKBOX: New function CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor(). - CHECKBOX: Notification WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED added. - CHECKBOX: Image of 'unchecked' state can now be set. - EDIT: New function EDIT_SetTextMode() added. - LISTBOX: New function LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign() added. - LISTBOX: New function LISTBOX_SetTextAlign() added. - LISTBOX: New function LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign() added. - LISTBOX: New function LISTBOX_SetTextAlign() added. - LISTBOX: New color index LISTBOX_CI_DISABLED added. - LISTVIEW: New color index LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED added. - MENU: Keyboard support added. - PROGBAR: Vertical progress bar supported. - RADIO: New function RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor() added. - RADIO: New function RADIO_SetFocusColor() added. - RADIO: Config options reworked. - SCROLLBAR: New function SCROLLBAR_SetColor() added. - SCROLLBAR: New function SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor() added. - SLIDER: New function SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor() added. - SLIDER: New function SLIDER_SetFocusColor() added. - Keyboard support explained for each widget. - Widget callback functions added. <p>Chapter 22: Antialiasing</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx() added. - Limitation of GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline() explained. <p>Chapter 23: Unicode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8() added. - New function GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC() added.

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
			<p>Chapter 25: Display drivers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New driver LCD0323 for Solomon SSD0323 controller added. - New driver LCD1200 for Toppoly C0C0 and C0E0 controller added. - New driver LCD13701 for Epson S1D13701 controller added. - New driver LCDNoritake for Noritake displays added. - New driver LCD667XX for Hitachi HD66772, HD66766 controller added. - New driver LCDXylon added. - LCDLin driver: New config macro LCD_FILL_RECT added. - LCDLin driver: New config macro LCD_LIN_SWAP added. - LCDLin driver: 32 bit version now supports 1 and 2 bpp color depth. <p>Chapter 28: Low level config</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - LCD_REVERSE_LUT added.
3.92R0	041021	JE	<p>Chapter 3: Simulator and Viewer</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Subchapter added: Using the source code of the simulator. <p>Chapter 9: Bitmap converter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Saving of bitmaps reworked. <p>Chapter 13: Window manager</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New functions added: WM_PaintWindowAndDescs(), WM_Update() and WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs(). <p>Chapter 14: Widgets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Flag GUI_MESSAGEBOX_CF_MODAL added for creating a modal message box. - Notification codes added to MULTIPAGE widget. - New functions added: LISTVIEW_DisableRow(), LISTVIEW_EnableRow() and LISTVIEW_GetItemText(). <p>New Chapter 16: Virtual screens</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New functions GUI_GetOrg() and GUI_SetOrg(). <p>Chapter 24: Display driver</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for Sitronix ST7565 added to Page1bpp driver. - LCDLin driver (8/16 bit): LCD_SET_LUT_ENTRY added. - LCDLin driver (32 bit): Explanation added how to migrate from LCDLin to LCDLin32. <p>Chapter 27: High-Level Configuration</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GUI_TRIAL_VERSION added.
3.90R0	040818	JE	<p>Chapter 6: 2-D Graphic library</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GUI_DrawBitmapEx() does not render RLE-compressed bitmaps. <p>Chapter 13: Window manager</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Explanation added, which messages are not send to disabled windows. - New function WM_GetPrevSibling() added. - New message WM_MOUSEOVER added. - New create flag WM_CF_MEMDEV_ON_REDRAW added. - WM_MOVE message: Explanation reworked. <p>Chapter 14: Widgets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - MENU widget added. - WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED added to DROPDOWN, LISTBOX, LISTVIEW and MULTIEDIT - BUTTON widget: Support for disabled state added. - New functions added: DROPDOWN_SetTextHeight(), DROPDOWN_SetTextAlign(), FRAMEWIN_AddMenu(), FRAMEWIN_SetResizeable(), LISTVIEW_GetBkColor(), LISTVIEW_GetTextColor(), LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor(), LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor() <p>Chapter 17: Pointer Input Devices</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Explanation of structure GUI_PID_STATE changed. <p>Chapter 23: Display driver</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for Solomon SSD1815 added to Page1bpp driver <p>Chapter 26: Low-Level Configuration</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 'Real bus interface' renamed to 'Memory mapped interface' <p>Chapter 29: Support</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Warnings added to subchapter 'compiler warnings'. - Subchapter 'Contacting support' added.'

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
3.82R0	040714	JE	<p>Chapter 1: Introduction: - ANSI standard described more detailed.</p> <p>Chapter 6: 2-D Graphic Library - Default limitation for drawing bitmaps with 16 bit CPUs added.</p> <p>Chapter 8: Fonts - Fonts added: GUI_FontD48, GUI_FontD64, GUI_FontD80, GUI_FontD37x48, GUI_FontD48x64, GUI_FontD61x80</p> <p>Chapter 11: Memory devices - Supchapter 'Memory requirements' and 'Performance' added.</p> <p>Chapter 13: Window manager - Functions added: WM_IsCompletelyVisible(), WM_IsEnabled() - Message added: WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED - Config macro added: WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED</p> <p>Chapter 14: Widgets - WM_... functions moved to Chapter 13 - Functions added: BUTTON_GetDefaultTextAlign(), BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor(), BUTTON_GetDefaultFont(), BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor(), BUTTON_SetDefaultTextAlign(), BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor(), BUTTON_SetDefaultFont(), BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor(), CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor(), CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor(), CHECKBOX_SetState(), CHECKBOX_SetBkColor(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor(), CHECKBOX_SetFont(), CHECKBOX_SetNumStates(), CHECKBOX_SetSpacing(), CHECKBOX_SetState(), CHECKBOX_SetText(), CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign(), CHECKBOX_SetTextColor(), LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor(), LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor(), LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor(), LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor() - Config macros added: BUTTON_ALIGN_DEFAULT, BUTTON.REACT_ON_LEVEL, CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_FONT_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_IMAGE0_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_IMAGE1_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_SPACING_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_TEXTALIGN_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT</p> <p>Chapter 15: Dialogs - Explanation of 'blocking' and 'non blocking' improved.</p> <p>Chapter 23: Display drivers - LCDLin and LCDLin32 merged to one driver. - Support for S1D13A03, S1D13A04, S1D13A05 and S1D15710 added.</p> <p>Chapter 27: High level configuration - GUI_MAXBLOCKS and GUI_SUPPORT_LARGE_BITMAPS added.</p>

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
3.80R0	040503	JE	<p>Chapter 3: Simulator & Viewer - SIM_SetMag added.</p> <p>Chapter 13: Window manager - Sample added to WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED message. - WM_SET_FOCUS added - Config subchapter added (WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY) - WM_SetTransState() added.</p> <p>Chapter 14: Widgets - New functions added: EDIT_GetNumChars(), EDIT_SetSel(), EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx(), EDIT_SetInsertMode(), EDIT_SetFloatValue(), RADIO_SetDefaultFont(), RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor(), RADIO_SetBkColor(), RADIO_SetDefaultFont(), RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor(), RADIO_SetFont(), RADIO_SetGroupID(), RADIO_SetText(), RADIO_SetTextColor(), SLIDER_SetNumTicks(). - Explanation added how to use snapping with the slider widget. - Information added to CHECKBOX_CreateEx(). - Description of RADIO_CreateEx() reworked.</p> <p>Chapter 23: Display drivers: - New driver LCDPage4bpp added (support for Sitronix ST7528) - New driver LCD1781 added (support for Solomon SSD1781). - Support for Epson S1D13700 added to LCDSlin driver. - Support for Novatec NT7502, Samsung S6B1713 and Philips PCD8544 added to LCDPage1bpp. - Explanation how to use hardware for display orientation added to LCD07X1 and LCDPage1bpp.</p> <p>Chapter 28: LCD driver API - Chapter moved as subchapter to chapter 23.</p>
3.76R0	040123	JE	<p>Chapter 12: Execution model - GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT and GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT added</p> <p>Chapter 13: Window manager - Message WM_INIT_DIALOG added.</p> <p>Chapter 14: Widgets - Notification codes added to SLIDER and SCROLLBAR - New functions added: EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor(), EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor(), EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor(), EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor(), EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign(), DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarWidth() and LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth(). - WINDOW widget added. - MESSAGEBOX widget added. - MULTIPAGE widget added. - Creation flag DROPDOWN_CF_UP added. - Effect functions added.</p> <p>Chapter 17: Pointer input devices - From an interrupt routine callable functions denoted.</p> <p>Chapter 18: Keyboard input - From an interrupt routine callable functions denoted.</p> <p>Chapter 27: High level configuraton - Limitation for 16 bit CPU's removed.</p> <p>Chapter 29: Performance and resource usage - Memory requirements reworked.</p>

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
3.74R0	031219	JE	<p>Chapter 10: Colors: - New predefined color table (colors added)</p> <p>Chapter 11: Memory devices: - New function GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed() added.</p> <p>Chapter 13: Window manager: - Message WM_GET_ID added. - Explanation of window invalidation added. - Creation flags added: WM_CF_ANCHOR_LEFT, WM_CF_ANCHOR_TOP, WM_CF_ANCHOR_RIGHT and WM_CF_ANCHOR_BOTTOM.</p> <p>Chapter 14: Widgets: - Screenshots added to overview and FRAMEWIN widget. - FRAMEWIN_CreateButton-functions renamed to FRAMEWIN_AddButton... - TEXT_SetBkColor() and RADIO_SetBkColor() added.</p> <p>Chapter 17: Pointer input devices: - Explanation of runtime calibration added</p> <p>Chapter 26: Low-Level configuration: - Renamed to 'Low-Level configuration (LCDConf.h)'.</p> <p>Chapter 27: High-Level configuration: - Renamed to 'High-Level configuration (GUIConf.h)'. - Explanation of GUI_ALLOC_SIZE added.</p>
3.72R0	031204	JE	<p>Chapter 2: Getting started: - Explanation added how to adapt the library batch files</p> <p>Chapter 4: Displaying text: - GUI_DispStringInRectEx added.</p> <p>Chapter 13: Window Manager: - Message documentation reworked. - Functions WM_SetID and WM_ForEachDesc added. - Explanation added how to react on a WM_PAINT message.</p> <p>Chapter 8: Fonts: - System independent font support added. - Standard fonts moved to this chapter.</p> <p>Chapter 14: Widget library: - BUTTON_SetTextAlign added. - DROPODOWN_SetItemSpacing added. - EDIT_GetFloatValue added. - EDIT_SetFloatMode added. - LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing added. - LISTVIEW_SetLBorder added. - LISTVIEW_SetRBorder added. - LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight added. - RADIO_SetBkColor added. - SLIDER_SetBkColor added.</p> <p>Chapter 17: Pointer input devices: - Divided into pointer input devices and keyboard input - Pointer input device documentation reworked</p> <p>Chapter 21: Unicode: - How to convert UTF-8 text to 'C' strings added.</p> <p>Chapter 23: Display driver: - Support for UltraChip UC1611 and Hitachi HD66750 added.</p> <p>Chapter 30: Support: - Reworked and renamed to Support.</p>

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
3.70R0	031010	JE	<p>Chapter 3: Viewer documentation improved.</p> <p>Chapter 10: Fixed palette modes and color index mask added.</p> <p>Chapter 22: Support for the following LCD controllers added: Fujitsu MB86290A (Crescent), Fujitsu MB86291 (Scarlet), Fujitsu MB86292 (Orchid), Fujitsu MB86293 (Coral Q), Fujitsu MB86294 (Coral B), Fujitsu MB86295 (Coral P), Samsung S6B33B1X and UltraChip UC1606.</p> <p>Chapter 22: Driver LCD180S1 renamed to LCD161620.</p> <p>Chapter 22: Hardware interface descriptions added.</p> <p>Chapter 16: Multi layer sample removed.</p> <p>Chapter 25: Configuration of SPI 3, SPI 4 and I2C bus interface added.</p> <p>Chapter 27: Keil 8051 compiler limitation added</p>
3.62R1	030916	JE	Chapter 23: Explanation of config options and GUI_VNC_X_StartServer changed.
3.62R0	030901	JE	<p>Chapter 13: Message data explained.</p> <p>Chapter 14: <WIDGET>_CreateEx added, <WIDGET>_Create and <WIDGET>_CreateAsChild obsolete.</p> <p>Chapter 14: Interface from some functions changed from int to unsigned int.</p> <p>Chapter 14.4: Functions added: CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage, CHECKBOX_SetImage</p> <p>Chapter 14.5: Functions added: DROPOWN_Collapse, DROPOWN_DeleteItem, DROPOWN_Expand, DROPOWN_InsertString, DROPOWN_SetAutoScroll</p> <p>Chapter 14.13: Functions added: RADIO_SetDefaultImage, RADIO_SetImage</p> <p>Chapter 23 added: VNC support.</p> <p>Chapter 24: SED1520-support added, new driver for Fujitsu MB87J2020 and MB87J2120 added.</p>
3.60R2	030718	RS	Chapter 14: Explanation of user draw function improved.
3.60R1	030716	JE	<p>Chapter 14.3: BUTTON_IsPressed() added</p> <p>Chapter 14: WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE added to structure WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO to enable items with different y sizes.</p>
3.60R0	030714	RS	<p>Chapter 11: GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr() added</p> <p>Chapter 13: WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE added</p>
3.58R1	030710	RS	Chapter 24.4: Usage of display orientation macros explained.
3.58R0	030701	JE	Chapter 22: LCD501 added.
3.56R0	030626	JE	<p>Chapter 22: LCD180S1 and LCD444 added.</p> <p>Chapter 22: LCD_CONTROLLER macro definition changed for several LCD controllers.</p> <p>Chapter 13: WM_MakeModal added.</p> <p>Chapter 25: AVR support added.</p>
3.56R0	030626	JE	<p>Chapter 22: LCD180S1 and LCD444 added.</p> <p>Chapter 22: LCD_CONTROLLER macro definition changed for several LCD controllers.</p> <p>Chapter 13: WM_MakeModal added.</p> <p>Chapter 25: AVR support added.</p>
3.54R0	030603	JE	New chapter 7, "Displaying bitmap files" added.
3.52R0	030516	JE	<p>Chapter 12: WM_GetFocussedWindow added</p> <p>Chapter 13: LISTVIEW_DeleteRow and LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn added, LISTVIEW_GetNumColums renamed to LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns</p>
3.50R0	030515	JE	<p>Chapter 4: GUI_SetTextStyle added.</p> <p>Chapter 6: GUI_SetLineStyle, GUI_GetLineStyle added.</p> <p>Chapter 12: WM_BroadcastMessage added.</p> <p>Chapter 13: MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode and MULTIEDIT_GetTextSize added.</p>
3.48R0	030415	JE	<p>Chapter 12: WM_SetStayOnTop and WM_GetStayOnTop added.</p> <p>Chapter 13.7: FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize added.</p> <p>Chapter 13.11: MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars added.</p> <p>Chapter 14: Multi layer support revised.</p>

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
3.46R0	030404	JE	New chapter Multi layer support added. Colors: 86661 mode added.
3.44R0	030319	JE	Chapter 18: Revised, UTF-8 support added. Chapter 13.9: LISTBOX_GetFont, LISTBOX_GetItemText, LISTBOX_GetMulti and LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw added.w Chapter 13: New chapter 13.11 for MULTIEDIT widget added.
3.42R1	030303	JE	Chapter 6: GUI_SaveContext and GUI_RestoreContext added.
3.42R0	030227	JE	Chapter 12: WM_GetInvalidRect and WM_HasFocus added. Chapter 13.7: FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx, FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor and FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTextColor added. Chapter 13.9: LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled, LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH, LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled, LISTBOX_SetItemSel, LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH, LISTBOX_GetDefaultScrollStepH and LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH added. Chapter 13.15: TEXT_SetTextColor and TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor added.
3.40R0	030217	JE	Chapter 3: Directory structure changed. Chapter 13: Functions added.
3.38R0	030206	JE	Chapter 2: Color and gray scale conversion functions marked as optional. Chapter 13.3: Functions added. Chapter 13.9: Functions added. Chapter 13.13: Functions added.
3.36R0	030121	JE	Chapter 12: Additional functions added. Chapter 13.7: Additional functions added. Chapter 23: Dynamic memory configuration added.
3.34R2	021212	JE	Chapter 12: WM_GetClientRectEx and WM_GetWindowRectEx added. Chapter 13: WM_GetInsideRect and WM_GetInsideRectEx added.
3.34R1	021127	JE	Chapter 4: Additional functions added. Chapter 6: Additional functions added. Chapter 10: Additional functions added. Chapter 12: Additional functions added. Chapter 13: Additional functions added.
3.34R0	020926	KG	Additional functions added to section 13.5 (Edit widget).
3.32R0	020920	KG	Additional function added to Chapter 12 (The Window Manager). BMP file support functions added to Chapter 6 (2-D Graphic Library).
3.30R1	020919	KG	Chapter 13 (Window Objects): additional functions documented; message notification codes added. Chapter 12 (The Window Manager) restructured slightly; WM_NOTIFY_PARENT documented.
3.30R0	020912	KG	Chapter 18 (Input Devices) moved to after Chapter 14 (Dialogs).
	020910	KG	Chapter 16 (Cursors) added. Additional function added to section 13.8 (Progress bar widget).
3.28R1	020905	KG	Additional controller supported by LCD15XX in Chapter 19 (LCD Drivers).
	020903	KG RS	Additional function added to Chapter 18 (Input Devices). EDIT widget: Additional info on flags added.
3.28R0	020830	KG	Additional functions added to Chapter 3 (Simulator).
	020827	KG	Starter kit "Berni" added to section 1.7 (Starter kits).
	020823	KG	Additional functions added to section 13.7 (List box widget).
			Headline-level format changes throughout. Modified trial version screen shots in Chapter 3 (Simulator).
3.26R0	020820	KG	Chapter 18 (Touch-Screen Support) changed to Input Devices; mouse and keyboard support added; chapter restructured. Slight modifications to section 13.10 (Scroll bar widget).
3.24R4	020809	KG	Additional macros added to Chapter 18 (Touch-Screen Support). Chapter 3 (Simulator) modified; addition of use of simulator with trial version of μC/GUI. Section 1.7 (Data types) revised.

Manual version	Date	By	Explanation
3.24R3	020802	KG	Additional macros added to sections 22.8 (LCDMem) and 22.9 (LCD-MemC); same macros added to Chapter 20 (Low-Level Configuration).
3.24R2	020801	KG	Section 2.3 (Creating a library) revised, table and diagram added.
3.24R1	020730	KG	Minor changes throughout, including addition of () brackets to all API functions.
3.24R0	020726	KG	Chapter 9 (Colors) revised; modes 1, 2, and 444 added. Chapter 11 (Execution Model: Single Task/Multitask) added. Chapter 1 (Introduction to µC/GUI) revised. Chapter 2 (Getting Started) revised. Chapter 18 (Time-Related Functions) changed to Timing and Execution-Related Functions; GUI_Exec() and GUI_Exec1() added. Small formatting changes throughout.
3.22R1	020723	KG	Chapter 18 (µC/GUI in Multitasking Environments) merged with Chapter 22 (High-Level Configuration). Chapter 4 (Tutorial) merged with Chapter 2 (Getting Started). Chapter 10 (Colors) revised, color mode table added. GUI_X_ explanations added. Widget description enhanced, screen shots added.
3.22R0	020716	KG	Chapter 13 (Window Objects) revised; SCROLLBAR and RADIO widgets added.
3.20R0	020627	JE	Chapter 2 (Getting Started) revised.
	020620	KG	Chapter 14 (Dialogs) revised.
	020618	KG	Chapter 13 (Window Objects) revised; CHECKBOX, SLIDER and TEXT widgets added.
	020618	KG	Chapter 14 (Dialogs) added.
3.14R3	020611	KG	Chapter 3 (Simulator) revised.
	020531	KG	Chapter 20 (Low-Level Configuration) revised.
	020524	KG	Chapter 22 (LCD Drivers) revised.
	020507	KG	Chapter 12 (The Window Manager) revised.
			Version control table added.
3.14R2	020503	KG	Chapter 11 (Memory Devices) revised. Chapter 14 (Antialiasing) revised. Chapter 9 (Bitmap Converter) revised.
3.14R1	020405	KG	Completely revised for language/grammar. Section 1.5 (Typographic conventions) updated. Chapter 8 changed to 7.6 (Font converter). Index revised.

Software versions

Software version	Date	By	Explanation
4.04	060505	JE	<p>Widget library:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function MULTIPAGE_SetRotation() added.
4.02	060502	JE	<p>Displaying bitmap files:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for 32bpp BMP files added. - New JPEG decoder added. <p>Widget library:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Widget schemes added. - New functions added: LISTVIEW_SetFixed(), MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign() <p>Colors:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> _ Fixed palette modes added: 666, M666, 888, M888, 8888, M8888, 84444, 822216, -1 <p>Bitmap converter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New bitmap formats 888, M888, RLE16 and RLEM16 added. <p>2-D graphic library:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New functions GUI_GetTrailingBlankCols() and GUI_GetLeadingBlankCols() added. <p>Multi layer support</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for up to 6 layers/displays added. <p>Display drivers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New drivers added: LCD13700.c, LCD7529.c, LCD7920.c, LCD8822.c.
4.01	060131	JE	<p>FONTS:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New functions for using external bitmap fonts added: GUI_XBF_CreateFont(), GUI_XBF_DeleteFont()
4.00	051222	JE	<p>Displaying bitmap files:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Function GUI_GIF_DrawEx() renamed to GUI_GIF_DrawSub() - New functions added: GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx(), GUI_BMP_DrawEx(), GUI_BMP_DrawScaled(), GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx(), GUI_GIF_DrawEx(), GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx(), GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled(), GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx(), GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx(), GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx(), GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx(), GUI_GIF_GetXSizeEx(), GUI_GIF_GetYSizeEx() <p>Widgets:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GUI_KEY_PGUP and GUI_KEY_PGDOWN now can be used to switch to the next / previous page of a MULTIPAGE widget. <p>Dialogs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GUI_KEY_BACKTAB now can be used to move the input focus to the previous dialog item. <p>Foreign language support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GUI_SUPPORT_ARABIC has been replaced by GUI_SUPPORT_BIDI <p>FONTS:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New font type with extended character information added.

Software version	Date	By	Explanation
3.98	051109	JE	<p>Displaying text - New function GUI_DisppStringInRectWrap() added.</p> <p>Displaying bitmap files - New function GUI_GIF_DrawEx() added. - New function GUI_GIF_GetInfo() added. - New function GUI_JPEG_DrawEx() added. - New function GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled() added. - New function GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx() added. - New function GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx() added. - Memory requirement of JPEG decompression changed.</p> <p>Memory devices - New function GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty() added.</p> <p>Window manager - New message WM_MOUSEOVER_END added.</p> <p>Widgets - New function EDIT_GetCursorCharPos() added. - New function EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos() added. - New function EDIT_SetUlongMode() added. - New function GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle() added. - New function HEADER_SetDragLimit() added. - New function LISTVIEW_CompareDec() added. - New function LISTVIEW_CompareText() added. - New function LISTVIEW_DisableSort() added. - New function LISTVIEW_EnableSort() added. - New function LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted() added. - New function LISTVIEW_GetUserData() added. - New function LISTVIEW_InsertRow() added. - New function LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollIH() added. - New function LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollIV() added. - New function LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc() added. - New function LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted() added. - New function LISTVIEW_SetSort() added. - New function LISTVIEW_SetUserData() added. - New function MENU_Popup() added. - New function MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos() added. - New function MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos() added. - New function MULTIEDIT_AddText() added. - New function TEXT_SetWrapMode() added. - New function TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode() added. - New config option LISTVIEW_SCROLLSTEP_H_DEFAULT added. - Keyboard support of LISTVIEW widget enhanced. - New config option WIDGET_USE_PARENT_EFFECT. - New config option GUI_MESSAGEBOX_CF_MOVEABLE. - New config option FRAMEWIN_ALLOW_DRAG_ON_FRAME. - Notification messages added to EDIT widget. - New config option SCROLLBAR_THUMB_SIZE_MIN_DEFAULT. Cursors - New function GUI_CURSOR_GetState() added.</p> <p>Display drivers - LCDSLin: Support for RAIO 8822/8803/8835 added. - LCD667XX: Support for Sharp LR38825 and Samsung S6D017 added. - LCDPage1bpp: Support for UltraChip UC1601 added.</p>

Software version	Date	By	Explanation
3.96	050719		<p>2-D Graphic Library - New function GUI_GetDrawMode() added.</p> <p>Fonts - Antialiased SIF fonts added.</p> <p>Memory devices - New function GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx() added. - New function GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt() added.</p> <p>Window manager - New function WM_GetCallback() added.</p> <p>Widgets - Interface of SCROLLBAR_SetColor() changed. - New GRAPH widget added. - New function BUTTON_GetBitmap() added. - New function CHECKBOX_GetText() added. - New function DROPODOWN_SetColor() added. - New function DROPODOWN_SetDefaultColor() added. - New function DROPODOWN_SetScrollbarColor() added. - New function DROPODOWN_SetScrollbarColor() added. - New function LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor() added. - New function RADIO_GetText() added.</p> <p>Foreign languages - Arabic support added.</p> <p>Display drivers - LCD667XX driver: Support for Samsung S6D0110A added. - LCD07X1 driver: Support for Sitronix ST7541 added. - LCD66750 driver: Support for Hitachi HD66753 added.</p>

Software version	Date	By	Explanation
3.94	050329	JE	<p>Viewer</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Virtual screen support added. <p>2-D Graphic Library</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_SetClipRect() added. <p>Displaying bitmap files</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GIF file support added. <p>Bitmap converter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - GIF file support added. <p>Memory devices</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for 1bpp memory devices added. <p>Window manager</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function WM_SetWindowPos() added. - New function WM_GetScrollPosH() added. - New function WM_GetScrollPosV() added. - New function WM_SetScrollPosH() added. - New function WM_SetScrollPosV() added. <p>Widgets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - BUTTON: New function BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor(). - BUTTON: New function BUTTON_SetFocusColor(). - BUTTON: New config option BUTTON_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT. - CHECKBOX: New function CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor(). - CHECKBOX: New function CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor(). - CHECKBOX: New function CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor(). - CHECKBOX: Notification <p>WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED added.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - CHECKBOX: Image of 'unchecked' state can now be set. - EDIT: New function EDIT_SetTextMode() added. - LISTBOX: New function LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign() added. - LISTBOX: New function LISTBOX_GetTextAlign() added. - LISTBOX: New function LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign() added. - LISTBOX: New function LISTBOX_SetTextAlign() added. - LISTBOX: New color index LISTBOX_CI_DISABLED added. - LISTVIEW: New color index LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED added. - MENU: Keyboard support added. - PROGBAR: Vertical progress bar supported. - RADIO: New function RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor() added. - RADIO: New function RADIO_SetFocusColor() added. - RADIO: Config options reworked. - SCROLLBAR: New function SCROLLBAR_SetColor() added. - SCROLLBAR: New function SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor() added. - SLIDER: New function SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor() added. - SLIDER: New function SLIDER_SetFocusColor() added. - Widget callback functions exported. <p>Antialiasing</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx() added. <p>Unicode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8() added. - New function GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC() added.

Software version	Date	By	Explanation
			<p>Display drivers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New driver LCD0323 for Solomon SSD0323 controller added. - New driver LCD1200 for Toppoly C0C0 and C0E0 controller added. - New driver LCD13701 for Epson S1D13701 controller added. - New driver LCDNoritake for Noritake displays added. - New driver LCD667XX for Hitachi HD66772, HD66766 controller added. - New driver LCDXylon added. - LCDLin driver: New config macro LCD_FILL_RECT added. - LCDLin driver: New config macro LCD_LIN_SWAP added. - LCDLin driver: 32 bit version now supports 1 and 2 bpp color depth.
3.92	041021	JE	<p>Simulator and Viewer</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The simulator now can easily be used with other simulations. Window manager - New functions added: WM_PaintWindowAndDescs(), WM_Update() and WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs(). Widgets - Flag GUI_MESSAGEBOX_CF_MODAL added for creating a modal message box. - Notification codes added to MULTIPAGE widget. - New functions added: LISTVIEW_DisableRow(), LISTVIEW_EnableRow() and LISTVIEW_GetItemText(). Virtual screen support - New functions GUI_GetOrg() and GUI_SetOrg(). Display driver - Support for Sitronix ST7565 added to Page1bpp driver. - LCDLin driver (8/16 bit): LCD_SET_LUT_ENTRY added.
3.90	040818	JE	<p>Chapter 13: Window manager</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New function WM_GetPrevSibling() added. - New message WM_MOUSEOVER added. - New create flag WM_CF_MEMDEV_ON_REDRAW added. <p>Chapter 14: Widgets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - MENU widget added. - WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED added to DROPDOWN, LISTBOX, LISTVIEW and MULTIEDIT - BUTTON widget: Support for disabled state added. - New functions added: DROPODOWN_SetTextHeight(), DROPODOWN_SetTextAlign(), FRAMEWIN_AddMenu(), FRAMEWIN_SetResizeable(), LISTVIEW_GetBkColor(), LISTVIEW_GetTextColor(), LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor(), LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor() <p>Chapter 23: Display driver</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for Solomon SSD1815 added to Page1bpp driver

Software version	Date	By	Explanation
3.82	040714	JE	<p>Chapter 13: Window manager</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Functions added: WM_IsCompletelyVisible(), WM_IsEnabled() - Message added: WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED - Config macro added: WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED <p>Chapter 14: Widgets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Functions added: BUTTON_GetDefaultAlign(), BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor(), BUTTON_GetDefaultFont(), BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor(), BUTTON_SetDefaultAlign(), BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor(), BUTTON_SetDefaultFont(), BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor(), CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor(), CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont(), CHECKBOX_GetDefaultSpacing(), CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign(), CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextColor(), CHECKBOX_GetState(), CHECKBOX_SetBkColor(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign(), CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor(), CHECKBOX_SetFont(), CHECKBOX_SetNumStates(), CHECKBOX_SetSpacing(), CHECKBOX_SetState(), CHECKBOX_SetText(), CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign(), CHECKBOX_SetTextColor(), LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor(), LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor(), LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor(), LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor() - Config macros added: BUTTON_ALIGN_DEFAULT, BUTTON.REACT_ON_LEVEL, CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_FONT_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_IMAGE0_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_IMAGE1_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_SPACING_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_TEXTALIGN_DEFAULT, CHECKBOX_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT <p>Chapter 23: Display drivers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Support for S1D13A03, S1D13A04 and S1D13A05 added.
3.80	0040503	JE	<p>Simulator & Viewer</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - SIM_SetMag added. <p>Widgets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New functions added: EDIT_GetNumChars(), EDIT_SetSel(), EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx(), EDIT_SetInsertMode(), EDIT_SetFloatValue(), RADIO_GetDefaultFont(), RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor(), RADIO_SetBkColor(), RADIO_SetDefaultFont(), RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor(), RADIO_SetFont(), RADIO_SetGroupID(), RADIO_SetText(), RADIO_SetTextColor(), SLIDER_SetNumTicks(). <p>Display drivers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - New driver LCDPage4bpp added (support for Sitronix ST7528) - New driver LCD1781 added (support for Solomon SSD1781). - Support for Novatec NT7502, Samsung S6B1713 and Philips PCD8544 added to LCDPage1bpp.
3.76	040123	JE	<p>Widgets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Notification codes added to SLIDER and SCROLLBAR - EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor() added. - EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor() added. - EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor() added. - EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor() added. - EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign() added. - DROPODOWN_SetScrollbarWidth() added. - LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth() added. <p>Memory allocation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Limitation for 16 bit CPU's removed.

Software version	Date	By	Explanation
3.74	031219	JE	<p>Colors: - GUI_MAGENTA changed from 0x8b008b to 0xFF00FF</p> <p>Memory devices: - New function GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed() added.</p> <p>Widgets: - FRAMEWIN_CreateButton-functions renamed to FRAMEWIN_AddButton... - New functions TEXT_SetBkColor() and RADIO_SetBkColor() added.</p>
3.72	031204	JE	<p>Chapter 4: Displaying text: - GUI_DispStringInRectEx added.</p> <p>Chapter 13: Window Manager: - Functions WM_SetID and WM_ForEachDesc added.</p> <p>Chapter 8: Fonts: - System independent font support added.</p> <p>Chapter 14: Widget library: - BUTTON_SetTextAlign added. - DROPDOWN_SetItemSpacing added. - EDIT_SetFloatValue added. - EDIT_SetFloatMode added. - LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing added. - LISTVIEW_SetLBorder added. - LISTVIEW_SetRBorder added. - LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight added. - RADIO_SetBkColor added. - SLIDER_SetBkColor added.</p> <p>Chapter 23: Display driver: - Support for UltraChip UC1611 and Hitachi HD66750 added.</p>
3.70	031010	JE	Support for the following LCD controllers added: Fujitsu MB86290A (Crescent), Fujitsu MB86291 (Scarlet), Fujitsu MB86292 (Orchid), Fujitsu MB86293 (Coral Q), Fujitsu MB86294 (Coral B), Fujitsu MB86295 (Coral P), Samsung S6B33B1X and UltraChip UC1606.
3.62	030901	JE	<p>VNC support added.</p> <p>Functions added to DROPDOWN, CHECKBOX and RADIO widget</p> <p>Support for Epson SED1520 added.</p> <p>Support for Fujitsu MB87J2020 and MB87J2120 added.</p>
3.60	030714	RS	GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr() added WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE added
3.54	030603	RS	JPEG file support added.
3.52	030516	JE	Functions added to LISTVIEW widget. WM_GetFocussedWindow added to window manager.
3.50	030509	RS	Core functions added. Functions added to window manager.
3.48	030415	JE	Functions added to window manager. Functions added to widgets.
3.46	030404	JE	Multi layer support added.
3.44	030319	JE	UTF-8 support added MULTIEDIT widget added. User drawn LISTBOX added.
3.42	030227	JE	Functions added to window manager. Functions added to FRAMEWIN widget. Multi selection mode added to LISTBOX widget.
3.40	030217	JE	Multi selection mode added to LISTBOX widget. Activation of frame windows changed.
3.38	030206	JE	Functions added to SCROLLBAR widget, BUTTON widget and LISTBOX widget.
3.36	030120	JE	Functions added to FRAMEWIN widget and window manager. Dynamic memory support added.
3.34	020926	RS	EDIT_SetCursorAtChar() and EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel() added.

Software version	Date	By	Explanation
3.32	020920	RS	WM_SetpfPolIPID() added. BMP file support added.
3.30	020912	RS	Cursor support added.
3.28	020903	RS	GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx() added. Edit widget: flags added. Simulation: additional options for simulation of colored mono-chrome displays added.
3.28	020830	RS	SIM_SetLCDColorBlack() and SIM_SetLCDColorWhite() added. New starter kit. LISTBOX_AddString() and LISTBOX_GetNumItems() added.
3.26	020820	RS	Mouse and keyboard support added.
3.26	020820	RS	Mouse and keyboard support added.
3.24	020726	RS	GUI_Exec() and GUI_Exec1() added.
3.22	020719	RS	Support for 444 color mode added Scrollbars, Radio buttons added.
3.20	020618	RS	Dialog boxes added. Slider added. Check box added. 3D effects added.

Table of Contents

1	Introduction to μ C/GUI	27
1.1	Purpose of this document	27
1.2	Assumptions	27
1.3	Requirements.....	28
1.4	μ C/GUI features	28
1.5	Samples and demos.....	30
1.6	How to use this manual	30
1.7	Typographic conventions for syntax	30
1.8	Screen and coordinates	31
1.9	How to connect the LCD to the microcontroller	31
1.10	Data types.....	33
2	Getting Started	35
2.1	Recommended directory structure.....	36
2.2	Adding μ C/GUI to the target program.....	37
2.3	Creating a library.....	37
2.4	"C" files to include in the project.....	39
2.5	Configuring μ C/GUI.....	40
2.6	Initializing μ C/GUI	41
2.7	Using μ C/GUI with target hardware.....	41
2.8	The "Hello world" sample program	41
3	Simulator.....	45
3.1	Using the simulator.....	46
3.2	Device simulation	50
3.3	Integrating the μ C/GUI simulation into an existing simulation	58
4	Viewer	65
4.1	Using the viewer.....	66
5	Displaying Text	71
5.1	Basic routines	72
5.2	Text API	72
5.3	Routines to display text	73
5.4	Selecting text drawing modes.....	80
5.5	Selecting text alignment.....	82
5.6	Setting the current text position	83
5.7	Retrieving the current text position	84
5.8	Routines to clear a window or parts of it	84
6	Displaying Values	87
6.1	Value API	88

6.2	Displaying decimal values.....	88
6.3	Displaying floating-point values.....	92
6.4	Displaying binary values.....	95
6.5	Displaying hexadecimal values.....	96
6.6	Version of μ C/GUI	97
7	2-D Graphic Library.....	99
7.1	Graphic API	100
7.2	Drawing modes.....	101
7.3	Query current client rectangle.....	103
7.4	Basic drawing routines	103
7.5	Drawing bitmaps.....	106
7.6	Drawing lines.....	109
7.7	Drawing polygons.....	112
7.8	Drawing circles	117
7.9	Drawing ellipses.....	118
7.10	Drawing arcs	120
7.11	Drawing graphs	121
7.12	Saving and restoring the GUI-context	122
7.13	Clipping	123
8	Displaying bitmap files	125
8.1	BMP file support.....	126
8.2	JPEG file support.....	132
8.3	GIF file support.....	138
9	Fonts	149
9.1	Font types.....	150
9.2	Font formats.....	150
9.3	Font API.....	151
9.4	Selection of a font	152
9.5	Font-related functions.....	156
9.6	Character sets	160
9.7	Font converter	163
9.8	Standard fonts.....	165
10	Bitmap Converter	189
10.1	What it does.....	190
10.2	Loading a bitmap	190
10.3	Generating C files from bitmaps	191
10.4	Color conversion	193
10.5	Compressed bitmaps	194
10.6	Using a custom palette	195
10.7	BmpCvt.exe: Command line usage	195
10.8	Example of a converted bitmap	197
11	Colors.....	201
11.1	Predefined colors.....	202
11.2	The color bar test routine	202
11.3	Fixed palette modes	204
11.4	Custom palette modes	216
11.5	Modifying the color lookup table at run time.....	216
11.6	Color API	217

11.7	Basic color functions	217
11.8	Index & color conversion	219
11.9	Lookup table (LUT) group	220
12	Memory Devices	223
12.1	Using memory devices: an illustration	224
12.2	Supported color depth (bpp)	225
12.3	Memory devices and the window manager	225
12.4	Memory requirements	225
12.5	Performance	226
12.6	Basic functions	226
12.7	In order to be able to use memory devices.....	227
12.8	Memory device API	227
12.9	Basic functions	228
12.10	Banding memory device	240
12.11	Auto device object	243
12.12	Measurement device object.....	248
13	Execution Model: Single Task / Multitask	251
13.1	Supported execution models	252
13.2	Single task system (superloop).....	252
13.3	μ C/GUI Multitask system: one task calling μ C/GUI	253
13.4	μ C/GUI Multitask system: multiple tasks calling μ C/GUI.....	254
13.5	GUI configuration macros for multitasking support	255
13.6	Kernel interface routine API	257
14	The Window Manager (WM)	261
14.1	Explanation of terms	262
14.2	Callback mechanism, invalidation and rendering	263
14.3	Messages	267
14.4	Configuration options	276
14.5	WM API.....	277
14.6	Basic functions	279
14.7	Memory device support (optional).....	311
14.8	Widget related functions	312
14.9	Example.....	316
15	Window Objects (Widgets).....	319
15.1	Some basics	320
15.2	Configuration options	323
15.3	General widget API	324
15.4	BUTTON: Button widget.....	330
15.5	CHECKBOX: Check box widget.....	349
15.6	DROPDOWN: Dropdown widget	365
15.7	EDIT: Edit widget	377
15.8	FRAMEWIN: Frame window widget	396
15.9	GRAPH: Graph widget	419
15.10	HEADER: Header widget	443
15.11	LISTBOX: List box widget	457
15.12	LISTVIEW: Listview widget.....	482
15.13	MENU: Menu widget.....	507
15.14	MESSAGEBOX: Message box widget	527
15.15	MULTIEDIT: Multi line text widget	529

15.16 MULTIPAGE: Multiple page widget	542
15.17 PROGBAR: Progress bar widget	557
15.18 RADIO: Radio button widget	566
15.19 SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget	578
15.20 SLIDER: Slider widget	586
15.21 TEXT: Text widget	593
15.22 WINDOW: Window widget	599
16 Dialogs	601
16.1 Dialog basics	602
16.2 Creating a dialog	602
16.3 API reference: dialogs	606
16.4 Dialog boxes	606
16.5 Message boxes	608
17 Virtual screen / Virtual pages	611
17.1 Introduction	612
17.2 Requirements	612
17.3 Configuration	613
17.4 Samples	614
17.5 Virtual screen API	620
18 Multi layer / multi display support	621
18.1 Introduction	622
18.2 Using multi layer support	626
18.3 Using multi display support	627
18.4 Configuring multi layer support	628
18.5 Configuring multi display support	629
18.6 Multi layer API	631
19 Pointer Input Devices	633
19.1 Description	634
19.2 Pointer input device API	635
19.3 Mouse driver	637
19.4 Touch-screen drivers	639
19.5 Joystick input sample	647
20 Keyboard Input	649
20.1 Description	650
21 Cursors	653
21.1 Available cursors	654
21.2 Cursor API	654
22 Antialiasing	657
22.1 Introduction	658
22.2 Antialiasing API	661
22.3 Control functions	661
22.4 Drawing functions	662
22.5 Examples	666
23 Foreign Language Support	671

23.1	Unicode.....	672
23.2	Arabic language support.....	678
23.3	Thai language support.....	681
23.4	Shift JIS support	682
24	Display drivers	687
24.1	Available drivers and supported display controllers.....	688
24.2	CPU / Display controller interface.....	691
24.3	Detailed display driver descriptions	695
24.4	LCD layer and display driver API	768
25	VNC support	779
25.1	Introduction.....	780
25.2	The VNC viewer.....	781
25.3	μ C/GUI VNC server.....	782
25.4	Required resources	783
25.5	Configuration options	783
25.6	VNC API	783
26	Time-Related Functions	787
27	Low-Level Configuration (LCDConf.h)	791
27.1	Available configuration macros	792
27.2	General (required) configuration	794
27.3	Initializing the controller.....	795
27.4	Display orientation.....	796
27.5	Color configuration	798
27.6	Magnifying the LCD.....	799
27.7	Simple bus interface configuration	800
27.8	Full bus interface configuration	804
27.9	LCD controller configuration: common/segment lines	809
27.10	COM/SEG lookup tables.....	812
27.11	Miscellaneous.....	813
28	High-Level Configuration (GUIConf.h)	815
28.1	General notes	816
28.2	How to configure the GUI	816
28.3	Available GUI configuration macros.....	816
28.4	GUI_X routine reference	819
28.5	Init routine	819
28.6	Timing routines	819
28.7	Kernel interface routines.....	820
28.8	Debugging	820
28.9	Dynamic memory	821
28.10	Special considerations for certain Compilers/CPUs	823
29	Performance and Resource Usage.....	825
29.1	Performance benchmark	826
29.2	Memory requirements	828
30	Support	833
30.1	Problems with tool chain (compiler, linker).....	834

30.2	Problems with hardware/driver	835
30.3	Problems with API functions.....	836
30.4	Problems with the performance	837
30.5	Contacting support	837
30.6	FAQ's	838
31	Index	841

Chapter 2

Introduction to µC/GUI

2.1 Purpose of this document

This guide describes how to install, configure and use the µC/GUI graphical user interface for embedded applications. It also explains the internal structure of the software.

2.2 Assumptions

This guide assumes that you already possess a solid knowledge of the "C" programming language. If you feel that your knowledge of "C" is not sufficient, we recommend *The "C" Programming Language* by Kernighan and Richie, which describes the programming standard and, in newer editions, also covers the ANSI "C" standard. Knowledge of assembly programming is not required.

2.3 Requirements

A target system is not required in order to develop software with μ C/GUI; most of the software can be developed using the simulator. However, the final purpose is usually to be able to run the software on a target system.

2.3.1 Target system (hardware)

Your target system must:

- Have a CPU (8/16/32/64 bits)
- Have a minimum of RAM and ROM
- Have a full graphic LCD (any type and any resolution)

The memory requirements vary depending on which parts of the software are used and how efficient your target compiler is. It is therefore not possible to specify precise values, but the following apply to typical systems.

Small systems (no window manager)

- RAM: 100 bytes
- Stack: 500 bytes
- ROM: 10-25 kb (depending on the functionality used)

Big systems (including window manager and widgets)

- RAM: 2-6 kb (depending on number of windows required)
- Stack: 1200 bytes
- ROM: 30-60 kb (depending on the functionality used)

Note that ROM requirements will increase if your application uses many fonts. All values are rough estimates and cannot be guaranteed.

2.3.2 Development environment (compiler)

The CPU used is of no importance; only an ANSI-compliant "C" compiler covering the international standard ISO/IEC 9899:1990, ISO/IEC 9899:1999 or ANSI/ISO 9899:1990 is required. If your compiler has some limitations, please let us know and we will inform you if these will be a problem when compiling the software. Any compiler for 16/32/64-bit CPUs or DSPs that we know of can be used; most 8-bit compilers can be used as well.

A C++ compiler is not required, but can be used. The application program can therefore also be programmed in C++ if desired.

2.4 μ C/GUI features

μ C/GUI is designed to provide an efficient, processor- and LCD controller-independent graphical user interface for any application that operates with a graphical LCD. It is compatible with single-task and multitask environments, with a proprietary operating system or with any commercial RTOS. μ C/GUI is shipped as "C" source code. It may be adapted to any size physical and virtual display with any LCD controller and CPU. Its features include the following:

General

- Any 8/16/32-bit CPU; only an ANSI "C" compiler is required.
- Any (monochrome, grayscale or color) LCD with any controller supported (if the right driver is available).

- May work without LCD controller on smaller displays.
- Any interface supported using configuration macros.
- Display-size configurable.
- Characters and bitmaps may be written at any point on the LCD, not just on even-numbered byte addresses.
- Routines are optimized for both size and speed.
- Compile time switches allow for different optimizations.
- For slower LCD controllers, LCD can be cached in memory, reducing access to a minimum and resulting in very high speed.
- Clear structure.
- Virtual display support; the virtual display can be larger than the actual display.

Graphic library

- Bitmaps of different color depths supported.
- Bitmap converter available.
- Absolutely no floating-point usage.
- Fast line/point drawing (without floating-point usage).
- Very fast drawing of circles/polygons.
- Different drawing modes.

Fonts

- A variety of different fonts are shipped with the basic software: 4*6, 6*8, 6*9, 8*8, 8*9, 8*16, 8*17, 8*18, 24*32, and proportional fonts with pixel-heights of 8, 10, 13, 16. For more information, see Chapter 30: "Standard Fonts".
- New fonts can be defined and simply linked in.
- Only the fonts used by the application are actually linked to the resulting executable, resulting in minimum ROM usage.
- Fonts are fully scalable, separately in X and Y.
- Font converter available; any font available on your host system (i.e. Microsoft Windows) can be converted.

String/value output routines

- Routines to show values in decimal, binary, hexadecimal, any font.
- Routines to edit values in decimal, binary, hexadecimal, any font.

Window manager (WM)

- Complete window management including clipping. Overwriting of areas outside a window's client area is impossible.
- Windows can be moved and resized.
- Callback routines supported (usage optional).
- WM uses minimum RAM (app. 20 bytes per window).

Optional widgets for PC look and feel

- Widgets (window objects, also known as controls) are available. They generally operate automatically and are simple to use.

Touch-screen & mouse support

- For window objects such as the button widget, µC/GUI offers touch-screen and mouse support.

PC tools

- Simulation plus viewer.
- Bitmap converter.
- Font converter.u

2.5 Samples and demos

To give you a better idea of what µC/GUI can do, we have different demos available as "ready-to-use" simulation executables under `Sample\EXE`. The source of the sample programs is located in the folder `Sample`. The folder `Sample\GUIDemo` contains an application program showing most of µC/GUI's features.

2.6 How to use this manual

This manual explains how to install, configure and use µC/GUI. It describes the internal structure of the software and all the functions that µC/GUI offers (the Application Program Interface, or API).

Before actually using µC/GUI, you should read or at least glance through this manual in order to become familiar with the software. The following steps are then recommended:

- Copy the µC/GUI files to your computer.
- Go through Chapter 2: "Getting Started".
- Use the simulator in order to become more familiar with what the software can do (refer to Chapter 4: "Simulator").
- Expand your program using the rest of the manual for reference.Typographic conventions for syntax

2.7 Typographic conventions for syntax

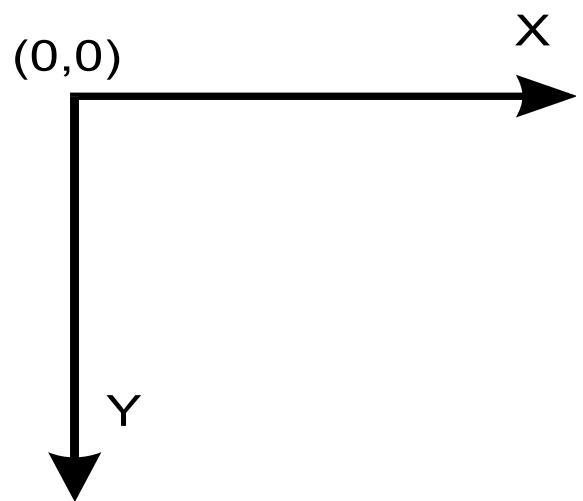
This manual uses the following typographic conventions:

Style	Used for
Body	Body text.
Keyword	Text that you enter at the command-prompt or that appears on the display (i.e. system functions, file- or pathnames).
Parameter	Parameters in API functions.
Sample	Sample code in program examples.
New Sample	Sample code that has been added to an existing program example.

2.8 Screen and coordinates

The screen consists of many dots that can be controlled individually. These dots are called pixels. Most of the text and drawing functions that µC/GUI offers in its API to the user program can write or draw on any specified pixel.

The horizontal scale is called the X-axis, whereas the vertical scale is called the Y-axis. Coordinates are denoted as a pair consisting of an X- and a Y-value (X, Y). The X-coordinate is always first in routines that require X and Y coordinates. The upper left corner of the display (or a window) has per default the coordinates (0,0). Positive X-values are always to the right; positive Y-values are always down. The above graph illustrates the coordinate system and directions of the X- and Y- axes. All coordinates passed to an API function are always specified in pixels.



2.9 How to connect the LCD to the microcontroller

µC/GUI handles all access to the LCD. Virtually any LCD controller can be supported, independently of how it is accessed. For details, please refer to Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". Also, please get in contact with us if your LCD controller is not supported. We are currently writing drivers for all LCD controllers available on the market and may already have a proven driver for the LCD controller that you intend to use. It is usually very simple to write the routines (or macros) used to access the LCD in your application. Micrium offers the customization service, if necessary with your target hardware.

It does not really matter how the LCD is connected to the system as long as it is somehow accessible by software, which may be accomplished in a variety of ways. Most of these interfaces are supported by a driver which is supplied in source code form. This driver does not normally require modifications, but is configured for your hardware by making changes in the file `LCDConf.h`. Details about how to customize a driver to your hardware as necessary are explained in Chapter 25: "LCD Drivers". The most common ways to access the LCD are described as follows. If you simply want to understand how to use µC/GUI, you may skip this section.

LCD with memory-mapped LCD controller:

The LCD controller is connected directly to the data bus of the system, which means the controller can be accessed just like a RAM. This is a very efficient way of accessing the LCD controller and is most recommended. The LCD addresses are defined to the segment `LCDSEG`, and in order to be able to access the LCD the linker/locator simply needs to be told where to locate this segment. The location must be identical to the access address in physical address space. Drivers are available for this type of interface and for different LCD controllers.

LCD with LCD controller connected to port / buffer

For slower LCD controllers used on fast processors, the use of port-lines may be the only solution. This method of accessing the LCD has the disadvantage of being somewhat slower than direct bus-interface but, particularly with a cache that minimizes

the accesses to the LCD, the LCD update is not slowed down significantly. All that needs to be done is to define routines or macros which set or read the hardware ports/buffers that the LCD is connected to. This type of interface is also supported by different drivers for the different LCD controllers.

Proprietary solutions: LCD without LCD controller

The LCD can also be connected without an LCD controller. In this case, the LCD data is usually supplied directly by the controller via a 4- or 8-bit shift register. These proprietary hardware solutions have the advantage of being inexpensive, but the disadvantage of using up much of the available computation time. Depending on the CPU, this can be anything between 20 and almost 100 percent; with slower CPUs, it is really not possible at all. This type of interface does not require a specific LCD driver because μ C/GUI simply places all the display data into the LCD cache. You must write the hardware-dependent portion that periodically transfers the data in the cache memory to your LCD.

Sample code for transferring the video image into the display is available in both "C" and optimized assembler for M16C and M16C/80.

2.10 Data types

Since "C" does not provide data types of fixed lengths which are identical on all platforms, µC/GUI uses, in most cases, its own data types as shown in the table below:

Data type	Definition	Explanation
I8	signed char	8-bit signed value
U8	unsigned char	16-bit unsigned value
I16	signed short	16-bit signed value
U16	unsigned short	16-bit unsigned value
I32	signed long	32-bit signed value
U32	unsigned long	32-bit unsigned value
I16P	signed short	16-bit (or more) signed value
U16P	unsigned short	16-bit (or more) unsigned value

For most 16/32-bit controllers, the settings will work fine. However, if you have similar defines in other sections of your program, you might want to change or relocate them. A recommended place is in the configuration file `LCDConf.h`.

Chapter 3

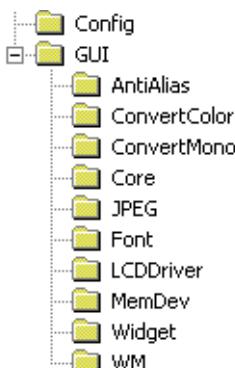
Getting Started

The following chapter provides an overview of the basic procedures for setting up and configuring µC/GUI on your target system. It also includes a simple program example.

If you find yourself unsure about certain areas, keep in mind that most topics are treated in greater detail in later chapters. You will most likely need to refer to other parts of the manual before you begin more complicated programming.

3.1 Recommended directory structure

We recommend keeping µC/GUI separate from your application files. It is good practice to keep all the program files (including the header files) together in the GUI subdirectories of your project's root directory. The directory structure should be similar to the one pictured on the right. This practice has the advantage of being very easy to update to newer versions of µC/GUI by simply replacing the GUI\ directories. Your application files can be stored anywhere.



3.1.1 Subdirectories

The following table shows the contents of all GUI subdirectories:

Directory	Contents
Config	Configuration files
GUI\AntiAlias	Antialiasing support *
GUI\ConvertMono	Color conversion routines used for grayscale displays *
GUI\ConvertColor	Color conversion routines used for color displays *
GUI\Core	µC/GUI core files
GUI\Font	Font files
GUI\LCDDriver	LCD driver
GUI\MemDev	Memory device support *
GUI\Widget	Widget library *
GUI\WM	Window manager *

(* = optional)

3.1.2 Include directories

You should make sure that the include path contains the following directories (the order of inclusion is of no importance):

- Config
- GUI\Core
- GUI\Widget (if using widget library)
- GUI\WM (if using window manager)

Warning: Always make sure that you have only one version of each file!

It is frequently a major problem when updating to a new version of µC/GUI if you have old files included and therefore mix different versions. If you keep µC/GUI in the directories as suggested (and only in these), this type of problem cannot occur. When updating to a newer version, you should be able to keep your configuration files and leave them unchanged. For safety reasons, we recommend backing (or at least renaming) the GUI\ directories prior to updating.

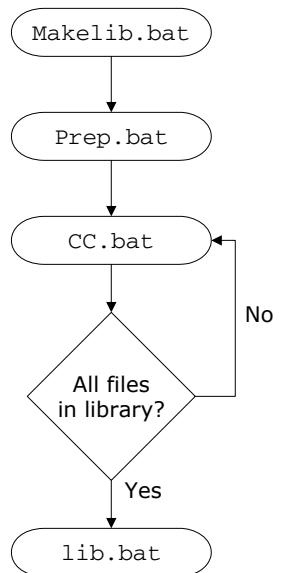
3.2 Adding µC/GUI to the target program

You basically have a choice between including only the source files that you are actually going to use in your project, which will then be compiled and linked, or creating a library and linking the library file. If your tool chain supports "smart" linking (linking in only the modules that are referenced and not those that are unreferenced), there is no real need to create a library at all, since only the functions and data structures which are required will be linked. If your tool chain does not support "smart" linking, a library makes sense, because otherwise everything will be linked in and the program size will be excessively large. For some CPUs, we have sample projects available to help you get started.

3.3 Creating a library

Building a library from the sources is a simple procedure. The first step is to copy the batch files (located under `Sample\Makelib`) into your root directory. Then, make any necessary changes. There are a total of four batch files which need to be copied, described in the table below. The main file, `Makelib.bat`, will be the same for all systems and requires no changes. To build a library for your target system, you will normally need to make slight modifications to the other three smaller files. Finally, start the file `Makelib.bat` to create the library. The batch files assume that your `GUI` and `Config` subdirectories are set up as recommended.

The procedure for creating a library is illustrated in the flow chart to the right. The `Makelib.bat` file first calls `Prep.bat` to prepare the environment for the tool chain. Then it calls `CC.bat` for every file to be included in the library. It does this as many times as necessary. `CC.bat` adds each object file to a list that will be used by `lib.bat`. When all files to be added to the library have been listed, `Makelib.bat` then calls `lib.bat`, which uses a librarian to put the listed object files into the actual library.



File	Explanation
<code>Makelib.bat</code>	Main batch file. No modification required.
<code>Prep.bat</code>	Called by <code>Makelib.bat</code> to prepare environment for the tool chain to be used,
<code>CC.bat</code>	Called by <code>Makelib.bat</code> for every file to be added to the library; creates a list of these object files which will then be used in the next step by the librarian in the <code>lib.bat</code> file.
<code>lib.bat</code>	Called by <code>Makelib.bat</code> to put the object files listed by <code>CC.bat</code> into a library.

The files as shipped assume that a Microsoft compiler is installed in its default location. If all batch files are copied to the root directory (directly above `GUI`) and no changes are made at all, a simulation library will be generated for the µC/GUI simulation. In order to create a target library, however, it will be necessary to modify `Prep.bat`, `CC.bat`, and `lib.bat`.

3.3.1 Adapting the library batch files to a different system

The following will show how to adapt the files by a sample adaptation for a Mitsubishi M32C CPU.

Adapting Prep.bat

`Prep.bat` is called at the beginning of `Makelib.bat`. As described above its job is to set the environment variables for the used tools and the environment variable `PATH`, so that the batch files can call the tools without specifying an absolute path. Assuming the compiler is installed in the folder `C:\MTOOL` the file `Prep.bat` could look as follows:

```
@ECHO OFF
SET TOOLPATH=C:\MTOOL

REM *****
REM   Set the variable PATH to be able to call the tools

SET PATH=%TOOLPATH%\BIN;%TOOLPATH%\LIB308;%PATH%

REM *****
REM   Set the tool internal used variables

SET BIN308=%TOOLPATH%\BIN
SET INC308=%TOOLPATH%\INC308
SET LIB308=%TOOLPATH%\LIB308
SET TMP308=%TOOLPATH%\TMP
```

Adapting CC.bat

The job of `CC.bat` is to compile the passed source file and adding the file name of the object file to a link list. When starting `MakeLib.bat` it creates the following subdirectories relative to its position:

Directory	Contents
Lib	This folder should contain the library file after the build process.
Temp\Output	Should contain all the compiler output and the link list file. Will be deleted after the build process.
Temp\Source	MakeLib.bat uses this folder to copy all source and header files used for the build process. Will be deleted after the build process.

The object file should be created (or moved) to `Temp\Output`. This makes sure all the output will be deleted after the build process. Also the link list should be located in the output folder. The following shows a sample for the Mitsubishi compiler:

```
@ECHO OFF
GOTO START
REM *****
REM   Explanation of the used compiler options:

-silent : Suppresses the copyright message display at startup
-M82    : Generates object code for M32C/80 Series (Remove this switch
          for M16C80 targets)
-c      : Creates a relocatable file (extension .r30) and ends processing
-I      : Specifies the directory containing the file(s) specified in #include
-dir    : Specifies the destination directory
-OS     : Maximum optimization of speed followed by ROM size
-fFRAM  : Changes the default attribute of RAM data to far
-fETI   : Performs operation after extending char-type data to the int type
          (Extended according to ANSI standards)
:START

REM *****
```

```

REM   Compile the passed source file with the Mitsubishi NC308 compiler
NC308 -silent -M82 -c -IInc -dir Temp\Output -OS -fFRAM -fETI Temp\Source\%1.c
REM ****
REM   Pause if any problem occurs

IF ERRORLEVEL 1 PAUSE

REM ****
REM   Add the file name of the object file to the link list

ECHO Temp\Output\%1.R30>>Temp\Output\Lib.dat

```

Adapting Lib.bat

After all source files have been compiled Lib.bat will be called from MakeLib.bat. The job is to create a library file using the link list created by CC.bat. The destination folder of the library file should be the Lib folder created by MakeLib.bat. The following shows a sample for the Mitsubishi librarian:

```

@ECHO OFF
GOTO START
REM ****
REM   Explanation of the used options:

-C : Creates new library file
@ : Specifies command file
:START

REM ****
REM   Create the first part of the linker command file

ECHO -C Lib\GUI>Temp\Output\PARA.DAT

REM ****
REM   Merge the first part with the link list to the linker command file

COPY Temp\Output\PARA.DAT+Temp\Output\Lib.dat Temp\Output\LINK.DAT

REM ****
REM   Call the Mitsubishi librarian

LB308 @Temp\Output\LINK.DAT

REM ****
REM   Pause if any problem occurs

IF ERRORLEVEL 1 PAUSE

```

3.4 "C" files to include in the project

Generally speaking, you need to include the core "C" files of µC/GUI, the LCD driver, all font files you plan to use and any optional modules you have ordered with µC/GUI:

- All "C" files of the folder GUI\Core
- The fonts you plan to use (located in GUI\Font)
- LCD driver: All "C" files of the folder GUI\LCDDriver.

Additional software packages

If you plan to use additional, optional modules you must also include their "C" files:

- Gray scale converting functions: all "C" files located in GUI\ConvertMono
- Color conversion functions: all "C" files located in GUI\ConvertColor

- Antialiasing: all "C" files located in `GUI\AntiAlias`
- Memory devices: all "C" files located in `GUI\MemDev`
- Widget library: all "C" files located in `GUI\Widget`
- Window Manager: all "C" files located in `GUI\WM`

Target specifics

- `GUI_X.c`. A sample file is available as `Sample\GUI_X`. This file contains the hardware-dependent part of `μC/GUI` and should be modified as described in Chapter 29: "High-Level Configuration".

Be sure that you include `GUI.h` in all of your source files that access `μC/GUI`.

3.5 Configuring `μC/GUI`

The `Config` folder should contain the configuration files matching your order. The file `LCDConf.h` normally contains all the definitions necessary to adopt `μC/GUI` to your LCD, which is the main task when configuring `μC/GUI`. For details, please see Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration".

If `μC/GUI` is not configured correctly, because you did not select the right display resolution or chose the wrong LCD controller, it will probably not display anything at all or display something that does not resemble what you expected. So take care to tailor `LCDConf.h` to your needs. If you do not wish to deal with this process, Micrium Technologies Corporation Inc. can do it for you, as well as test `μC/GUI` in your application with your hardware and your LCD.

The following types of configuration macros exist:

Binary switches "B"

Switches can have a value of either 0 or 1, where 0 means deactivated and 1 means activated (actually anything other than 0 would work, but using 1 makes it easier to read a config file). These switches can enable or disable a certain functionality or behavior. Switches are the simplest form of configuration macro.

Numerical values "N"

Numerical values are used somewhere in the code in place of a numerical constant. Typical examples are in the configuration of the resolution of an LCD.

Selection switches "S"

Selection switches are used to select one out of multiple options where only one of those options can be selected. A typical example might be the selection of the type of LCD controller used, where the number selected denotes which source code (in which LCD driver) is used to generate object code.

Alias "A"

A macro which operates like a simple text substitute. An example would be the define `U8`, in which the preprocessor would replace with `unsigned char`.

Function replacements "F"

Macros can basically be treated like regular functions although certain limitations apply, as a macro is still put into the code as simple text replacement. Function replacements are mainly used to add specific functionality to a module (such as the access to an LCD) which is highly hardware-dependent. This type of macro is always declared using brackets (and optional parameters).

3.6 Initializing µC/GUI

The routine `GUI_Init()` initializes the LCD and the internal data structures of µC/GUI, and must be called before any other µC/GUI function. This is done by placing the following line into the init sequence of your program:

```
GUI_Init();
```

If this call is left out, the entire graphics system will not be initialized and will therefore not be ready.

3.7 Using µC/GUI with target hardware

The following is just a basic outline of the general steps that should be taken when starting to program with µC/GUI. All steps are explained further in subsequent chapters.

Step 1: Customizing µC/GUI

The first step is usually to customize µC/GUI by modifying the header file `LCDConf.h`. You must define the basic data types (`U8`, `U16`, etc.) and mandatory configuration switches regarding resolution of the display and the LCD controller used.

Step 2: Defining access addresses or access routines

For memory-mapped LCDs, the access addresses of the LCD simply need to be defined in `LCDConf.h`. For port/buffer-accessed LCDs, interface routines must be defined. Samples of the required routines are available under `Samples\LCD_X` or on our website in the download area.

Step 3: Compiling, linking and testing the sample code

µC/GUI comes with sample code for both single- and multitask environments. Compile, link and test these little sample programs until you feel comfortable doing so.

Step 4: Modifying the sample program

Make simple modifications to the sample programs. Add additional commands such as displaying text in different sizes on the display, showing lines and so on.

Step 5: In multitask applications: adapt to your OS (if necessary)

If multiple tasks should be able to access the display simultaneously, the macros `GUI_MAXTASK` and `GUI_OS` come into play, as well as the file `GUITask.c`. For details and sample adaptations, please refer to Chapter 29: "High-Level Configuration".

Step 6: Write your own application using µC/GUI

By now you should have a clearer understanding of how to use µC/GUI. Think about how to structure the program your application requires and use µC/GUI by calling the appropriate routines. Consult the reference chapters later in this manual, as they discuss the specific µC/GUI functions and configuration macros that are available.

3.8 The "Hello world" sample program

A "Hello world" program has been used as a starting point for "C" programming since the early days, because it is essentially the smallest program that can be written. A "Hello world" program with µC/GUI, called `HELLO.c`, is shown below and is available as `BASIC_HelloWorld.c` in the sample shipped with µC/GUI.

The whole purpose of the program is to write "Hello world" in the upper left corner of the display. In order to be able to do this, the hardware of the application, the LCD and the GUI must first be initialized. µC/GUI is initialized by a call to `GUI_Init()` at the start of the program, as described previously. In this example, we assume that the hardware of your application is already initialized.

The "Hello world" program looks as follows:

```
*****
*           Micrium Inc. *
*           Empowering embedded systems *
*           µC/GUI sample code *
*****
-----  

File      : BASIC_HelloWorld.c  

Purpose   : Simple demo drawing "Hello world"  

-----  

*/  

#include "GUI.H"  

*****  

*           main  

*  

*****  

*/  

void main(void) {  

/*  

ToDo: Make sure hardware is initialized first!!  

*/  

    GUI_Init();  

    GUI_DispString("Hello world!");  

    while(1);  

}
```

Adding functionality to the "Hello world" program

Our little program has not been doing too much so far. We can now extend the functionality a bit: after displaying "Hello world", we would like the program to start counting on the display in order to be able to estimate how fast outputs to the LCD can be made. We can simply add a bit of code to the loop at the end of the main program, which is essentially a call to the function that displays a value in decimal form. The example is available as `BASIC_Hello1.c` in the sample folder.

```
*****
*           Micrium Inc. *
*           Empowering embedded systems *
*           µC/GUI sample code *
*****
-----  

File      : BASIC_Hello1.c  

Purpose   : Simple demo drawing "Hello world"  

-----  

*/  

#include "GUI.H"  

*****  

*           main  

*
```

```
*****
*/
void main(void) {
    int i=0;
/*
    ToDo:  Make sure hardware is initialized first!!
*/
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_DispString("Hello world!");
    while(1) {
        GUI_DispDecAt( i++, 20,20,4);
        if (i>9999) i=0;
    }
}
```

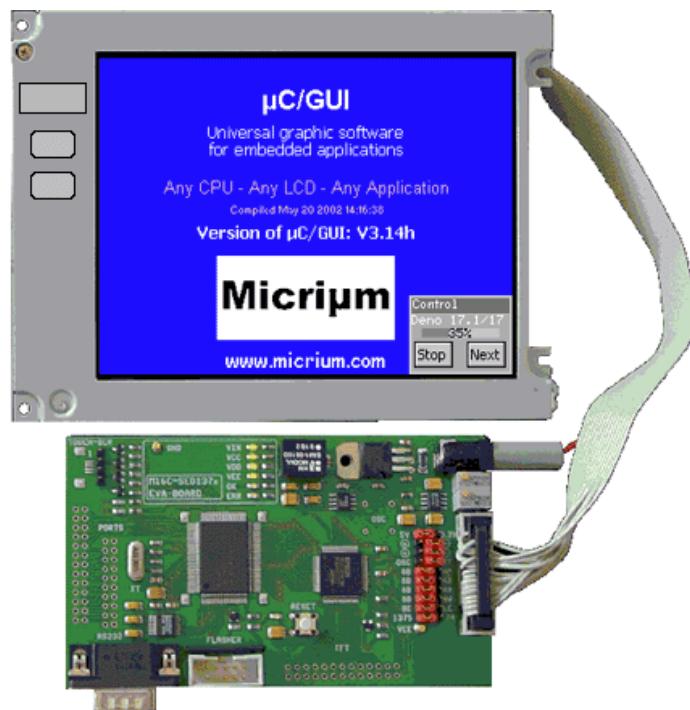

Chapter 4

Simulator

The PC simulation of µC/GUI allows you to compile the same "C" source on your Windows PC using a native (typically Microsoft) compiler and create an executable for your own application. Doing so allows the following:

- Design of the user interface on your PC (no need for hardware!).
- Debugging of your user interface program.
- Creation of demos of your application, which can be used to discuss the user interface.

The resulting executable can be easily sent via email.



4.1 Using the simulator

The µC/GUI simulator uses Microsoft Visual C++ (version 6.00 or higher) and the integrated development environment (IDE) which comes with it. You will see a simulation of your LCD on your PC screen, which will have the same resolution in X and Y and can display the exact same colors as your LCD once it has been properly configured. The entire graphic library API and window manager API of the simulation are identical to those on your target system; all functions will behave in the very same way as on the target hardware since the simulation uses the same "C" source code as the target system. The difference lies only in the lower level of the software: the LCD driver. Instead of using the actual LCD driver, the PC simulation uses a simulation driver which writes into a bitmap. The bitmap is then displayed on your screen using a second thread of the simulation. This second thread is invisible to the application; it behaves just as if the LCD routines were writing directly to the display.

4.1.1 Using the simulator in the trial µC/GUI version

The trial version of µC/GUI contains a full library which allows you to evaluate all available features of µC/GUI. It also includes the µC/GUI viewer (used for debugging applications), as well as demo versions of the font converter and the bitmap converter. Keep in mind that, being a trial version, you will not be able to change any configuration settings or view the source code, but you will still be able to become familiar with what µC/GUI can do.

4.1.1.1 Directory structure

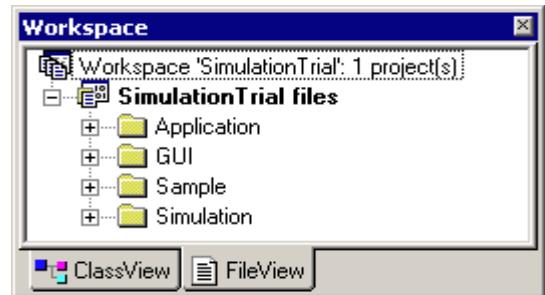
The directory structure of the simulator in the trial version will appear as pictured to the right. The table below explains the contents of the folders:

Directory	Contents
Application	Source of the demo program.
Config	configuration files used to build the library. Do not make any changes to these files!
Exe	Ready-to-use demo program.
GUI	Library files and include files needed to use the library.
Sample	Simulation samples and their sources.
Simulation	Files needed for the simulation.
Tool	The µC/GUI viewer, a demo version of the bitmap converter and a demo version of the font converter.



4.1.1.2 Visual C++ workspace

The root directory shown above includes the Microsoft Visual C++ workspace (`SimulationTrial.dsw`) and project file (`SimulationTrial.dsp`). Double-click the workspace file to open the Microsoft IDE. The directory structure of the Visual C++ workspace will look like the one shown to the right.



4.1.1.3 Compiling the demo program

The source files for the demo program are located in the `Application` directory as a ready-to-go simulation, meaning that you need only to rebuild and start it. Please note that to rebuild the executable, you will need to have Microsoft Visual C++ (version 6.00 or later) installed.

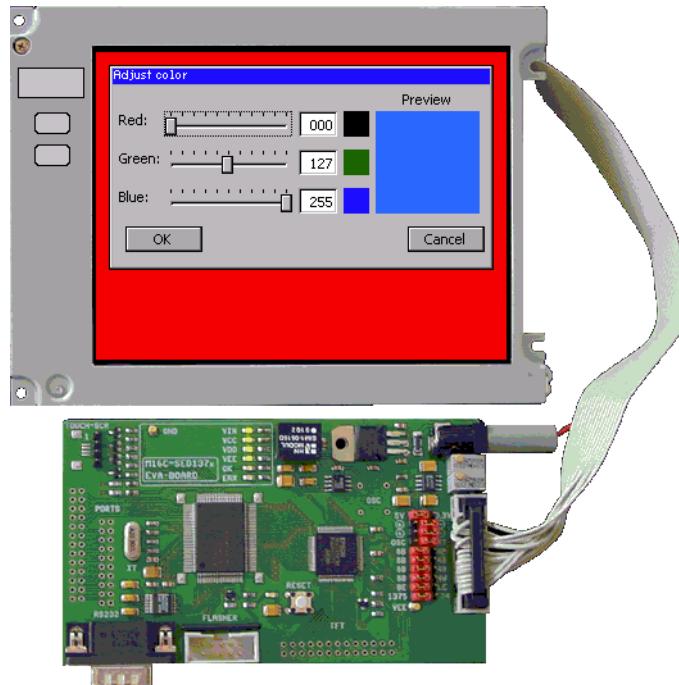
- Step 1: Open the Visual C++ workspace by double-clicking on `SimulationTrial.dsw`.
- Step 2: Rebuild the project by choosing `Build/Rebuild All` from the menu (or by pressing F7).
- Step 3: Start the simulation by choosing `Build/Start Debug/Go` from the menu (or by pressing F5).

The demo project will begin to run and may be exited at any time by right-clicking on it and selecting `Exit`.

4.1.1.4 Compiling the samples

The `Sample` directory contains ready-to-go samples that demonstrate different features of `μC/GUI` and provide examples of some of their typical uses. In order to build any of these executables, their "C" source must be 'activated' in the project. This is easily done with the following procedure:

- Step 1: Exclude the `Application` folder from the build process by right-clicking the `Application` folder of the workspace and selecting '`Settings\General\Exclude from build`'.
- Step 2: Open the sample folder of the workspace by double-clicking on it. Include the sample which should be used by right-clicking on it and deselecting '`Settings\General\Exclude from build`'. The screenshot below shows the sample `DIALOG_SliderColor.c`.
- Step 3: Rebuild the sample by choosing `Build/Rebuild All` from the menu (or by pressing F7).
- Step 4: Start the simulation by choosing `Build/Start Debug/Go` from the menu (or by pressing F5). The result of the sample selected above is pictured below:

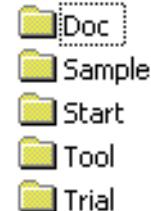


4.1.2 Using the simulator with the µC/GUI source

4.1.2.1 Directory structure

The root directory of the simulator can be anywhere on your PC, e.g. C:\work\uCUISSim. The directory structure will appear as shown to the right. This structure is very similar to that which we recommend for your target application (see Chapter 2: "Getting Started" for more information).

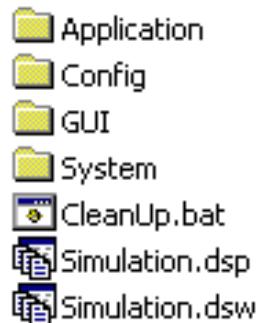
The following table shows the contents of the folders:



Directory	Contents
Doc	Contains µC/GUI-Documentation.
Sample	Code samples, described later in this documentation.
Start	All you need to create a new project with µC/GUI
Tool	Tools shipped with µC/GUI
Trial	Complete trial version

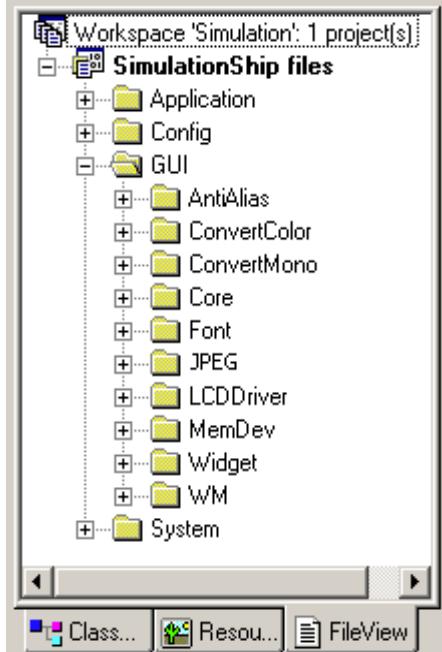
If you want to start a new project you should make a copy of the Start-folder. It contains all you need for a new project. The subdirectories containing µC/GUI program files are in the Start\GUI folder and should contain the exact same files as the directories of the same names which you are using for your target (cross) compiler. You should not make any changes to the GUI subdirectories, as this would make updating to a newer version of µC/GUI more difficult.

The Start\Config directory contains configuration files which need to be modified in order to reflect your target hardware settings (mainly LCD-size and colors which can be displayed).



4.1.2.2 Visual C++ workspace

The root directory shown above includes the Microsoft Visual C++ workspace (Simulation.dsw) and project files (Simulation.dsp). The workspace allows you to modify an application program and debug it before compiling it on your target system. The directory structure of the Visual C++ workspace will appear similar to that shown to the right. Here, the GUI folder is open to display the µC/GUI subdirectories. Please note that your GUI directory may not look exactly like the one pictured, depending on which additional features of µC/GUI you have. The folders Core, Font and LCDDriver are part of the basic µC/GUI package and will always appear in the workspace directory.



4.1.2.3 Compiling the application

The demo simulation contains one or more application "C" files (located in the Application directory), which can be modified. You may also add files to or remove files from the project. Typically you would want to at least change the bitmap to your own company logo or image of choice. You should then rebuild the program within the Visual C++ workspace in order to test/debug it. Once you have reached a point where you are satisfied with the result and want to use the program in your application, you should be able to compile these same files on your target system and get the same result on the target display. The general procedure for using the simulator would be as follows:

- Step 1: Open the Visual C++ workspace by double-clicking on Simulation.dsw.
- Step 2: Compile the project by choosing Build/Rebuild All from the menu (or by pressing F7).
- Step 3: Run the simulation by choosing Build/Start Debug/Go from the menu (or by pressing F5).
- Step 4: Replace the bitmap with your own logo or image.
- Step 5: Make further modifications to the application program as you wish, by editing the source code or adding/deleting files.
- Step 6: Compile and run the application program within Visual C++ to test the results. Continue to modify and debug as needed.
- Step 7: Compile and run the application program on your target system.

4.2 Device simulation

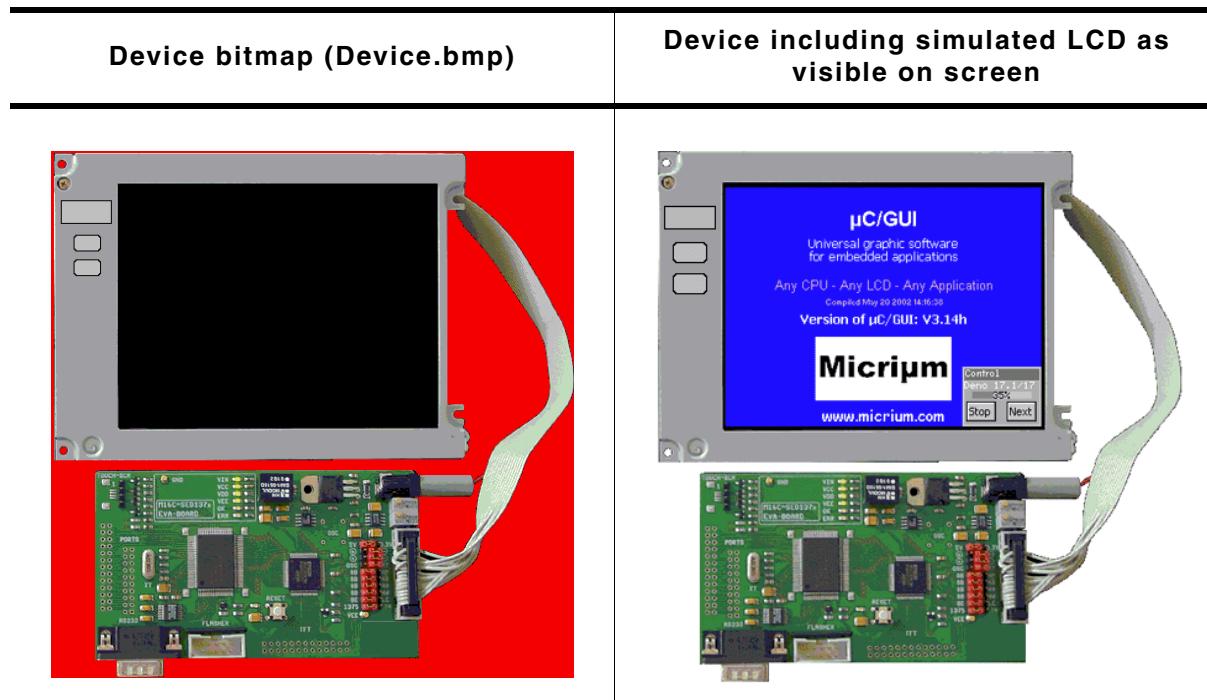
The simulator can show the simulated LCD in a bitmap of your choice, typically your target device. The bitmap can be dragged over the screen and may, in certain applications, be used to simulate the behavior of the entire target device.

In order to simulate the appearance of the device, a bitmap is required. This bitmap is usually a photo (top view) of the device, and must be named `Device.bmp`. It may be a separate file (in the same directory as the executable), or it may be included as a resource in the application by including the following line in the resource file (extension `.rc`):

```
145 BITMAP DISCARDABLE "Device.bmp"
```

For more information, please refer to the Win32 documentation.

The size of the bitmap should be such that the size of the area in which the LCD will be shown equals the resolution of the simulated LCD. This is best seen in the following example:



The red area is automatically made transparent. The transparent areas do not have to be rectangular; they can have an arbitrary shape (up to a certain complexity which is limited by your operating system, but is normally sufficient). Bright red (0xFF0000) is the default color for transparent areas, mainly because it is not usually contained in most bitmaps. To use a bitmap with bright red, the default transparency color may be changed with the function `SIM_SetTransColor()`.

4.2.1 Device simulator API

All of the device simulator API functions must be called in the setup phase. The calls should ideally be done from within the routine `SIM_X_Init()`, which is located in the file `SIM_X.c`. The example below calls `SIM_SetLCDPos()` in the setup:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include <stdio.h>
```

```
#include "SIM.h"

void SIM_X_Init() {
    SIM_SetLCDPos(0,0);           // Define the position of the LCD in the bitmap
}
```

The table below lists the available device-simulation-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow:

Routine	Explanation
SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack()	Set the color to be used as black (color monochrome displays).
SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite()	Set the color to be used as white (color monochrome displays).
SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos()	Set the position for the simulated LCD within the target device bitmap.
SIM_GUI_SetMag()	Set magnification factors for X and/or Y axis.
SIM_GUI_SetTransColor()	Set the color to be used for transparent areas (default: 0xFF0000).

SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack(), SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite()

Description

Set the colors to be used as black or white, respectively, on color monochrome displays.

Prototypes

```
int SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack(int DisplayIndex, int Color);
int SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite(int DisplayIndex, int Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
DisplayIndex	Reserved for future use; must be 0.
Color	RGB value of the color.

Additional information

These functions can be used to simulate the true background color of your display. The default color values are black and white, or 0x000000 and 0xFFFFFFFF.

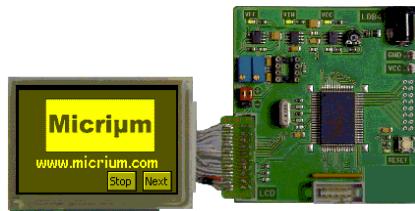
Example using default settings

```
void SIM_X_Init() {
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos(14,84);           // Define the position of the LCD in the bitmap
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack (0, 0x000000); // Define the color used as black
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite (0, 0xFFFFFFF); // Define the color used as white
    // (used for colored monochrome displays)
}
```



Example using yellow instead of white

```
void SIM_X_Init() {
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos(14,84);           // Define the position of the LCD in the bitmap
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack (0, 0x000000); // Define the color used as black
    SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite (0, 0x00FFFF); // Define the color used as white
    (used for colored monochrome displays)
}
```



SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos()

Description

Sets the position for the simulated LCD within the target device bitmap.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position of the upper left corner for the simulated LCD (in pixels).
y	Y-position of the upper left corner for the simulated LCD (in pixels).

Additional information

The X- and Y-positions are relative to the target device bitmap, therefore position (0,0) refers to the upper left corner (origin) of the bitmap and not your actual LCD. Only the origin of the simulated screen needs to be specified; the resolution of your display should already be reflected in the configuration files in the `Config` directory. The use of this function enables the use of the bitmaps `Device.bmp` and `Device1.bmp`. If the use of the device bitmaps should be disabled, omit the call of this function in `SIM_X_Init()`.

SIM_GUI_SetMag()

Description

Sets magnification factors for X and/or Y axis.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetMag(int MagX, int MagY);
```

Parameter	Meaning
MagX	Magnification factor for X axis.
MagY	Magnification factor for Y axis.

Additional information

Per default the simulation uses one pixel on the PC for each pixel of the simulated display. The use of this function makes sense for small displays. If using a device bitmap together with a magnification > 1 the device bitmap needs to be adapted to the magnification. The device bitmap is not magnified automatically.

SIM_GUI_SetTransColor()

Description

Sets the color to be used for transparent areas of device or hardkey bitmaps.

Prototype

```
I32 SIM_GUI_SetTransColor(I32 Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	RGB value of the color in the format 00000000RRRRRRRGGGGGGGBBBBBBB.

Additional information

The default setting for transparency is bright red (0xFF0000).

You would typically only need to change this setting if your bitmap contains the same shade of red.

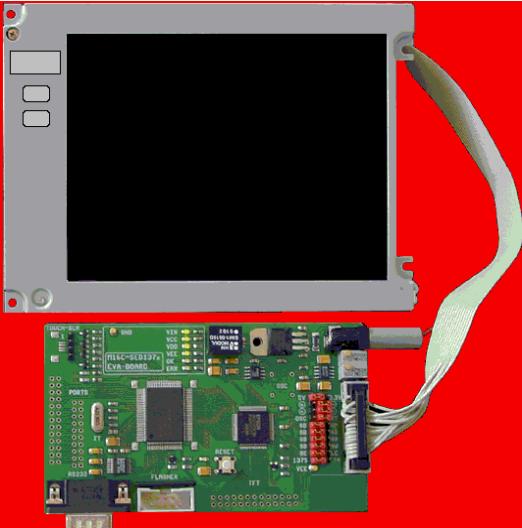
4.2.2 Hardkey simulation

Hardkeys may also be simulated as part of the device, and may be selected with the mouse pointer. The idea is to be able to distinguish whether a key or button on the simulated device is pressed or unpressed. A hardkey is considered "pressed" as long as the mouse button is held down; releasing the mouse button or moving the pointer off of the hardkey "unpresses" the key. A toggle behavior between pressed and unpressed may also be specified with the routine `SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode()`.

In order to simulate hardkeys, you need a second bitmap of the device which is transparent except for the keys themselves (in their pressed state). This bitmap can again be in a separate file in the directory, or included as a resource in the executable. The filename needs to be `Device1.bmp`, and the following lines would typically be included in the resource file (extension `.rc`):

```
145 BITMAP DISCARDABLE "Device.bmp"
146 BITMAP DISCARDABLE "Device1.bmp"
```

Hardkeys may be any shape, as long as they are exactly the same size in pixels in both Device.bmp and Device1.bmp. The following example illustrates this:

Device bitmap: unpressed hardkey state (Device.bmp)	Device hardkey bitmap: pressed hardkey state (Device1.bmp)
	

When a key is "pressed" with the mouse, the corresponding section of the hardkey bitmap (Device1.bmp) will overlay the device bitmap in order to display the key in its pressed state.

The keys may be polled periodically to determine if their states (pressed/unpressed) have changed and whether they need to be updated. Alternatively, a callback routine may be set to trigger a particular action to be carried out when the state of a hardkey changes.

4.2.2.1 Hardkey simulator API

The hardkey simulation functions are part of the standard simulation program shipped with µC/GUI. If using a user defined µC/GUI simulation these functions may not be available. The table below lists the available hardkey-simulation-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow:

Routine	Explanation
SIM_HARDKEY_GetNum()	Return the number of available hardkeys.
SIM_HARDKEY_GetState()	Return the state of a specified hardkey (0: unpressed, 1: pressed).
SIM_HARDKEY_SetCallback()	Set a callback routine to be executed when the state of a specified hardkey changes.
SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode()	Set the behavior for a specified hardkey (default = 0: no toggle).
SIM_HARDKEY_SetState()	Set the state for a specified hardkey (0: unpressed, 1: pressed).

SIM_HARDKEY_GetNum()

Description

Returns the number of available hardkeys.

Prototype

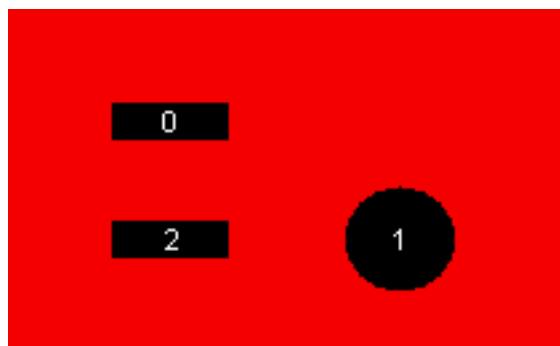
```
int SIM_HARDKEY_GetNum(void);
```

Return value

The number of available hardkeys found in the bitmap.

Additional information

The numbering order for hardkeys is standard reading order (left to right, then top to bottom). The topmost pixel of a hardkey is therefore found first, regardless of its horizontal position. In the bitmap below, for example, the hardkeys are labeled as they would be referenced by the `KeyIndex` parameter in other functions:



It is recommended to call this function in order to verify that a bitmap is properly loaded.

SIM_HARDKEY_GetState()

Description

Returns the state of a specified hardkey.

Prototype

```
int SIM_HARDKEY_GetState(unsigned int KeyIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>KeyIndex</code>	Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key).

Return value

State of the specified hardkey:

0: unpressed

1: pressed

SIM_HARDKEY_SetCallback()

Description

Sets a callback routine to be executed when the state of a specified hardkey changes.

Prototype

```
SIM_HARDKEY_CB* SIM_HARDKEY_SetCallback(unsigned int KeyIndex,
                                         SIM_HARDKEY_CB* pfCallback);
```

Parameter	Meaning
KeyIndex	Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key).
pfCallback	Pointer to callback routine.

Return value

Pointer to the previous callback routine.

Additional information

The callback routine must have the following prototype:

Prototype

```
typedef void SIM_HARDKEY_CB(int KeyIndex, int State);
```

Parameter	Meaning
KeyIndex	Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key).
State	State of the specified hardkey (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter State	
0	Unpressed.
1	Pressed.

SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode()

Description

Sets the behavior for a specified hardkey.

Prototype

```
int SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode(unsigned int KeyIndex, int Mode);
```

Parameter	Meaning
KeyIndex	Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key).
Mode	Behavior mode (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Mode	
0	Normal behavior (default).
1	Toggle behavior.

Additional information

Normal (default) hardkey behavior means that a key is considered pressed only as long as the mouse button is held down on it. When the mouse is released or moved off of the hardkey, the key is considered unpressed.

With toggle behavior, each click of the mouse toggles the state of a hardkey to pressed or unpressed. That means if you click the mouse on a hardkey and it becomes pressed, it will remain pressed until you click the mouse on it again.

SIM_HARDKEY_SetState()

Description

Sets the state for a specified hardkey.

Prototype

```
int SIM_HARDKEY_SetState(unsigned int KeyIndex, int State);
```

Parameter	Meaning
KeyIndex	Index of hardkey (0 = index of first key).
State	State of the specified hardkey (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter State	
0	Unpressed.
1	Pressed.

Additional information

This function is only usable when `SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode()` is set to 1 (toggle mode).

4.3 Integrating the µC/GUI simulation into an existing simulation

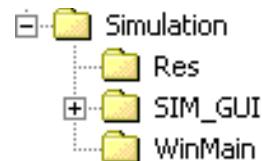
In order to integrate the µC/GUI simulation into an existing simulation, the source code of the simulation is not required. The source code of the simulation is not normally shipped with µC/GUI. It is a separate (optional) software item and is not included in the µC/GUI basic package.

Normally the source code of the µC/GUI simulation is not needed but available as an optional software item. As described earlier in this chapter the basic package and the trial version contains a simulation library. The API functions of this library can be used if for example the µC/GUI simulation should be added to an existing hardware or real time kernel (RTOS) simulation.

To add the µC/GUI simulation to an existing simulation (written in "C" or C++, using the Win32 API), only a few lines of code need to be added.

4.3.1 Directory structure

The subfolder `Simulation` of the `System` folder contains the µC/GUI simulation. The directory structure is shown on the right. The table below explains the contents of the subfolders:



Directory	Contents
Simulation	Simulation source and header files to be used with and without the simulation source code. The folder also contains a ready to use simulation library.
Res	Resource files.
SIM_GUI	GUI simulation source code (optional).
WinMain	Contains the WinMain routine.

4.3.2 Using the simulation library

The following steps will show how to use the simulation library to integrate the µC/GUI simulation into an existing simulation:

- Step 1: Add the simulation library `GUISim.lib` to the project.
- Step 2: Add all GUI files to the project as described in the chapter 2.1.1, "Subdirectories".
- Step 3: Add the include directories to the project as described in the chapter 2.1.2, "Include Directories".
- Step 4: Modify `WinMain`.

4.3.2.1 Modifying WinMain

Every windows WIN32 program starts with `WinMain()` (contrary to a normal "C" program from the command line, which starts with `main()`). All that needs to be done is to add a few lines of code to this routine.

The following function calls need to be added (normally in this order as show in the following application code sample):

- SIM_GUI_Init
- SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow
- CreateThread
- SIM_GUI_Exit

4.3.2.2 Sample application

The following application is available under `Sample\WinMain\SampleApp.c` and shows how to integrate the µC/GUI simulation into an existing application:

```
#include <windows.h>
#include "GUI_SIM_Win32.h"
void MainTask(void);

//*****************************************************************************
/*
*      _Thread
*/
static DWORD __stdcall _Thread(void* Parameter) {
    MainTask();
    return 0;
}

//*****************************************************************************
/*
*      _WndProcMain
*/
static LRESULT CALLBACK _WndProcMain(HWND hWnd, UINT message,
                                     WPARAM wParam, LPARAM lParam) {
    SIM_GUI_HandleKeyEvents(message, wParam);
    switch (message) {
        case WM_DESTROY:
            PostQuitMessage(0);
            break;
    }
    return DefWindowProc(hWnd, message, wParam, lParam);
}

//*****************************************************************************
/*
*      _RegisterClass
*/
static void _RegisterClass(HINSTANCE hInstance) {
    WNDCLASSEX wcex;
    memset (&wcex, 0, sizeof(wcex));
    wcex.cbSize = sizeof(WNDCLASSEX);
    wcex.hInstance = hInstance;
    wcex.style = CS_HREDRAW | CS_VREDRAW;
    wcex.lpfnWndProc = (WNDPROC)_WndProcMain;
    wcex.hIcon = 0;
    wcex.hCursor = LoadCursor(NULL, IDC_ARROW);
    wcex.hbrBackground = (HBRUSH)(COLOR_APPWORKSPACE + 1);
    wcex.lpszMenuName = 0;
    wcex.lpszClassName = "GUIApplication";
    RegisterClassEx(&wcex);
}

//*****************************************************************************
/*
*      WinMain
*/
int APIENTRY WinMain(HINSTANCE hInstance, HINSTANCE hPrevInstance,
                      LPSTR lpCmdLine, int nCmdShow) {
    DWORD ThreadID;
    MSG Msg;
    HWND hWndMain;
    /* Register window class */
    _RegisterClass(hInstance);
    /* Create main window */
    hWndMain = CreateWindowEx(0, "GUIApplication", "µC/GUI Simulation", WS_OVERLAPPEDWINDOW, 100, 100, 400, 300, NULL, NULL, hInstance, NULL);
    if (!hWndMain) {
        MessageBox(NULL, "Failed to create main window.", "Error", MB_OK);
        return 1;
    }
    /* Start thread */
    ThreadID = CreateThread(NULL, 0, _Thread, (void*)hWndMain, 0, NULL);
    if (!ThreadID) {
        MessageBox(NULL, "Failed to create thread.", "Error", MB_OK);
        DestroyWindow(hWndMain);
        return 1;
    }
    /* Enter message loop */
    while (GetMessage(&Msg, NULL, 0, 0)) {
        TranslateMessage(&Msg);
        DispatchMessage(&Msg);
    }
    /* Clean up */
    PostQuitMessage(0);
    return 0;
}
```

```
hWndMain = CreateWindow("GUIApplication", "Application window",
                        WS_OVERLAPPEDWINDOW | WS_CLIPCHILDREN | WS_VISIBLE,
                        0, 0, 328, 267, NULL, NULL, hInstance, NULL);
/* Initialize the µC/GUI simulation and create a LCD window */
SIM_GUI_Init(hInstance, hWndMain, lpCmdLine, "RTOS - µC/GUI Simulation");
SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow(hWndMain, 0, 0, 320, 240, 0);
/* Create a thread which executes the code to be simulated */
CreateThread(NULL, 0, (LPTHREAD_START_ROUTINE)_Thread, NULL, 0, &ThreadID);
/* Main message loop */
while (GetMessage(&Msg, NULL, 0, 0)) {
    TranslateMessage(&Msg);
    DispatchMessage(&Msg);
}
SIM_GUI_Exit();
}
```

4.3.3 GUI simulation API

The table below lists the available routines for user defined simulation programmes in alphabetical order within their respective categories. The functions are only available with the source code of the µC/GUI simulation. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow:

Routine	Explanation
<code>SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow()</code>	Creates a window which shows the available colors of the given layer with the given size and position.
<code>SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow()</code>	Creates a LCD window with the given size and position.
<code>SIM_GUI_Exit()</code>	Stops the GUI simulation.
<code>SIM_GUI_Init()</code>	Initializes the GUI simulation.
<code>SIM_GUI_SetLCDWindowHook()</code>	Sets a hook function to be called if the LCD window receives a message.

`SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow()`

Description

Creates a window which shows the available colors for the given layer.

Prototype

```
HWND SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow(HWND hParent,
                                  int x, int y, int xSize, int ySize
                                  int LayerIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of the parent window.
<code>x</code>	X position in parent coordinates.
<code>y</code>	Y position in parent coordinates.
<code>xSize</code>	X size in pixel of the new window. Should be 160 if using a color depth between 1 and 8 or 128 if working in high color mode.
<code>ySize</code>	Y size in pixel of the new window. Should be 160 if using a color depth between 1 and 8 or 128 if working in high color mode.
<code>LayerIndex</code>	Index of layer to be shown.

Additional information

The created color window has no frame, no title bar and no buttons.

Example

```
SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow(hWnd, 0, 0, 160, 160, 0);
```

Screenshot



SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow()

Description

Creates a window which simulates a LCD display with the given size at the given position.

Prototype

```
HWND SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow(HWND hParent,
                             int x, int y, int xSize, int ySize
                             int LayerIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of the parent window.
<code>x</code>	X position in parent coordinates.
<code>y</code>	Y position in parent coordinates.
<code>xSize</code>	X size in pixel of the new window.
<code>ySize</code>	Y size in pixel of the new window.
<code>LayerIndex</code>	Index of layer to be shown.

Additional information

All display output to the given layer will be shown in this window. The size of the window should be the same as configured in `LCDConf.h`.

The created simulation window has no frame, no title bar and no buttons.

SIM_GUI_Exit()

Description

The function should be called before the simulation returns to the calling process.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_Exit(void);
```

SIM_GUI_Init()

Description

This function initializes the µC/GUI simulation and should be called before any other `SIM_GUI...` function call.

Prototype

```
int SIM_GUI_Init(HINSTANCE hInst, HWND hWndMain,
```

```
char * pCmdLine, const char * sAppName);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hInst	Handle to current instance passed to WinMain.
hWndMain	Handle of the simulations main window.
pCmdLine	Pointer to command line passed to WinMain
sAppName	Pointer to a string that contains the application name.

Additional information

The parameters hWndMain and sAppName are used if a message box should be displayed.

SIM_GUI_SetLCDWindowHook()

Description

Sets a hook function to be called from the simulation if the LCD window receives a message.

Prototype

```
void SIM_GUI_SetLCDWindowHook(SIM_GUI_tfHook * pfHook);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pfHook	Pointer to hook function.

Prototype of hook function

```
int Hook(HWND hWnd, UINT Message, WPARAM wParam, LPARAM lParam,
         int * pResult);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWnd	Handle of LCD window.
Message	Message received from the operating system.
wParam	wParam message parameter passed by the system.
lParam	lParam message parameter passed by the system.
pResult	Pointer to an integer which should be used as return code if the message has been processed by the hook function.

Return value

The hook function should return 0 if the message has been processed. In this case the GUI simulation ignores the message.

Chapter 5

Viewer

If you use the simulator when debugging your application, you cannot see the display output when stepping through the source code. The primary purpose of the viewer is to solve this problem. It shows the contents of the simulated display(s) while debugging in the simulation.

The viewer gives you the following additional capabilities:

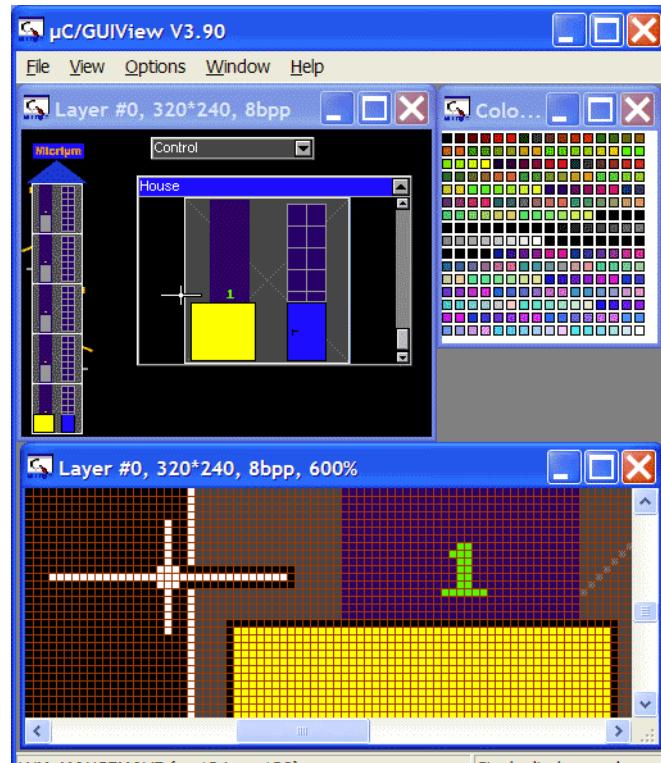
- Multiple windows for each layer
- Watching the whole virtual layer in one window
- Magnification of each layer window
- Composite view if using multiple layers

5.1 Using the viewer

The viewer allows you to:

- Open multiple windows for any layer/display
- Zoom in on any area of a layer/display
- See the contents of the individual layers/displays as well as the composite view in multi-layer configurations
- See the contents of the virtual screen and the visible display when using the virtual screen support.

The screenshot shows the viewer displaying the output of a single layer configuration. The upper left corner shows the simulated display. In the upper right corner is a window, which shows the available colors of the display configuration. At the bottom of the viewer a second display window shows a magnified area of the simulated display. If you start to debug your application, the viewer shows one display window per layer and one color window per layer. In a multi layer configuration, a composite view window will also be visible.



5.1.1 Using the simulator and the viewer

If you use the simulator when debugging your application, you cannot see the display output when stepping through the source code. This is due to a limitation of Win32: If one thread (the one being debugged) is halted, all other threads of the process are also halted. This includes the thread which outputs the simulated display on the screen.

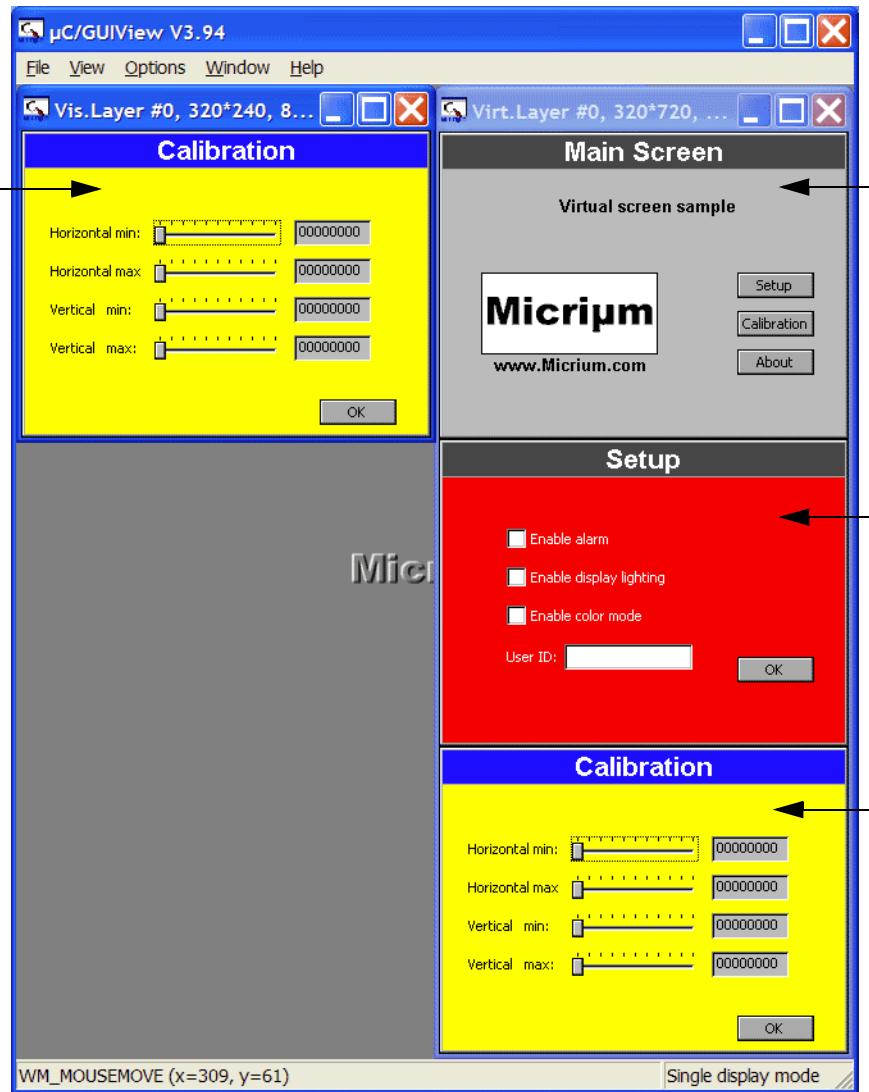
The uC/GUI viewer solves this problem by showing the display window and the color window of your simulation in a separate process. It is your choice if you want to start the viewer before debugging your application or while you are debugging. Our suggestion:

- Step 1: Start the viewer. No display- or color window is shown until the simulation has been started.
- Step 2: Open the Visual C++ workspace.
- Step 3: Compile and run the application program.
- Step 4: Debug the application as described previously.

The advantage is that you can now follow all drawing operations step by step in the LCD window.

5.1.2 Using the viewer with virtual pages

By default the viewer opens one window per layer which shows the visible part of the video RAM, normally the display. If the configured virtual display RAM is larger than the display, the command View/Virtual Layer/Layer (0...4) can be used to show the whole video RAM in one window. When using the function GUI_SetOrg(), the contents of the visible screen will change, but the virtual layer window remains unchanged:



For more information about virtual screens please refer to chapter 'Virtual Screens'.

5.1.3 Always on top

Per default the viewer window is always on top. You can change this behavior by selecting Options\Always on top from the menu.

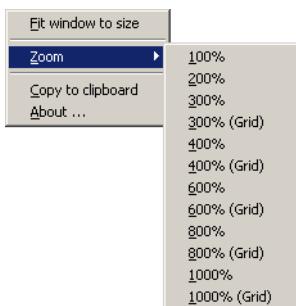
5.1.4 Open further windows of the display output

If you want to show a magnified area of the LCD output or the composite view of a multi layer configuration it could be useful to open more than one output window. You can do this by View/Visible Layer/Layer (1...4), View/Virtual Layer/Layer (1...4) or View/Composite.

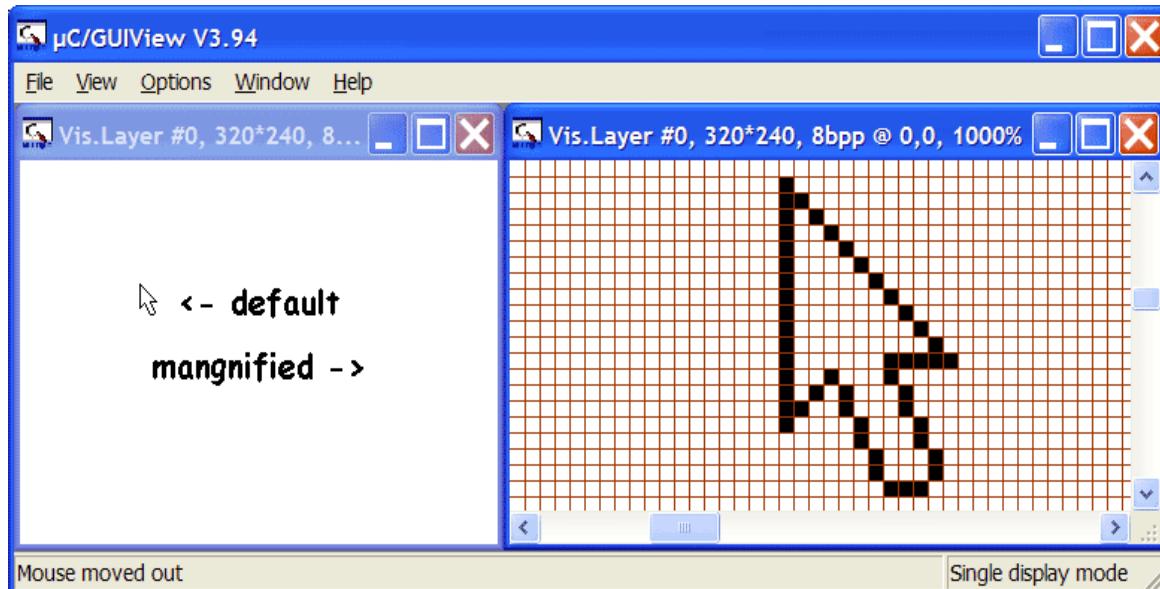
5.1.5 Zooming

Zooming in or out is easy:

Right-click on a layer or composite window opens the **Zoom** popup menu. Choose one of the zoom options:



Using the grid



If you magnify the LCD output $\geq 300\%$, you have the choice between showing the output with or without a grid. It is possible to change the color of the grid. This can be done choosing the Menu point Options/Grid color.

Adapting the size of the window

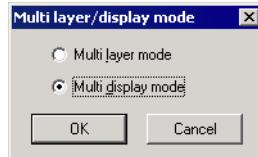
If you want to adapt the size of the window to the magnification choose **Fit window to size** from the first popup menu.

5.1.6 Copy the output to the clipboard

Click onto a LCD window or a composite view with the right mouse key and choose **Copy to clipboard**. Now you can paste the contents of the clipboard for example into the `mspaint` application.

5.1.7 Using the viewer with multiple displays

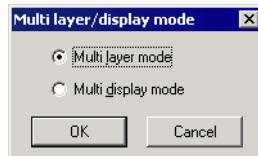
If you are working with multiple displays you should set the viewer into 'Multi display mode' by using the command `Options/Multi layer/display`.



When starting the debugger the viewer will open one display window and one color window for each display:

5.1.8 Using the viewer with multiple layers

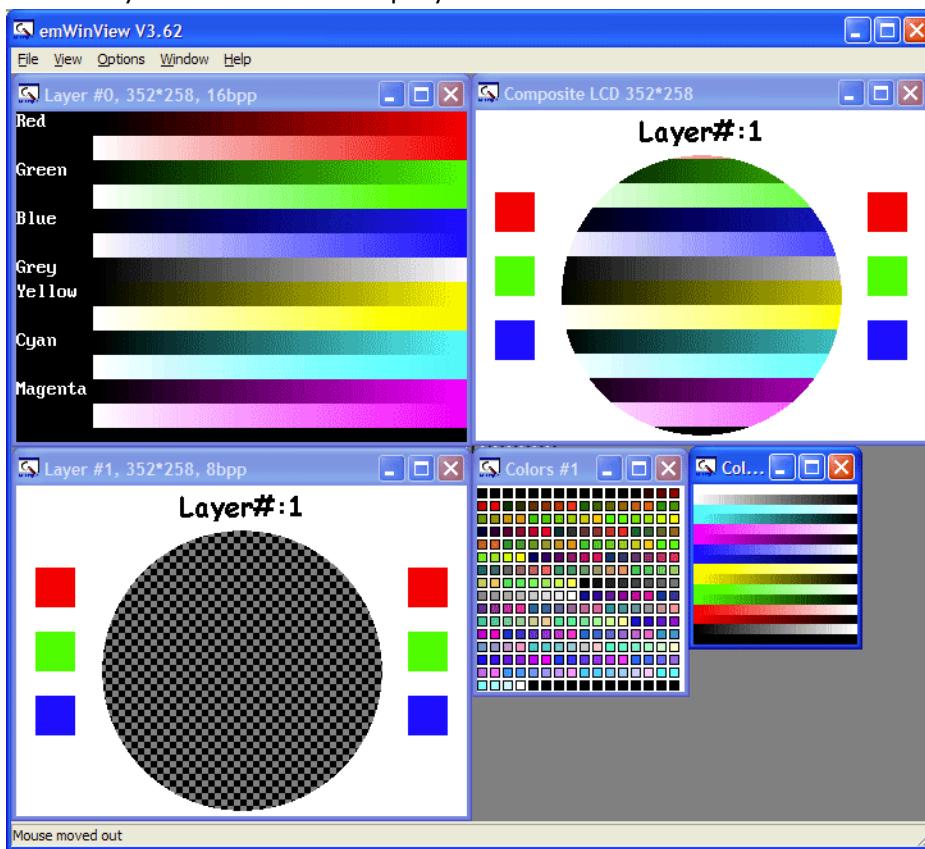
If you are working with multiple displays you should set the viewer into 'Multi layer mode' by using the command `Options/Multi layer/display`.



When starting the debugger the viewer will open one LCD window and one color window for each layer and one composite window for the result.

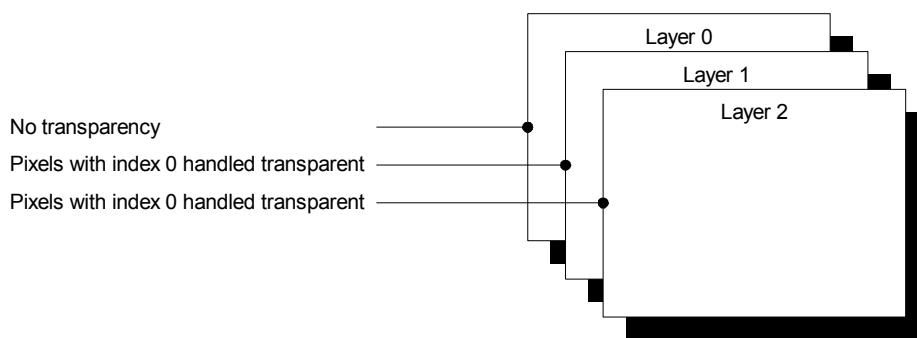
Sample

The sample below shows a screenshot of the viewer with 2 layers. Layer 0 shows color bars with a high color configuration. Layer 1 shows a transparent circle on a white background with colored rectangles. The composite window shows the result which is actually visible on the display



Transparency

The viewer treats pixels with index 0 in a layer above layer 0 as transparent. Therefore in the composite view the pixels of the layers below are visible. The composite window shows the layers one above the other:



Transparent pixels will be shown in layer windows tiled

Chapter 6

Displaying Text

It is very easy to display text with µC/GUI. Knowledge of only a few routines already allows you to write any text, in any available font, at any point on the display. We first provide a short introduction to displaying text, followed by more detailed explanations of the individual routines that are available.

6.1 Basic routines

In order to display text on the LCD, simply call the routine `GUI_DisppString()` with the text you want to display as parameters. For example:

```
GUI_DisppString("Hello world!");
```

The above code will display the text "Hello world" at the current text position. However, as you will see, there are routines to display text in a different font or in a certain position. In addition, it is possible to write not only strings but also decimal, hexadecimal and binary values to the display. Even though the graphic displays are usually byte-oriented, the text can be positioned at any pixel of the display, not only at byte positions.

Control characters

Control characters are characters with a character code of less than 32. The control characters are defined as part of ASCII. µC/GUI ignores all control characters except for the following:

Char. Code	ASCII code	"C"	Meaning
10	LF	\n	Line feed. The current text position is changed to the beginning of the next line. Per default, this is: X = 0. Y + =font-distance in pixels (as delivered by <code>GUI_GetFontDistY()</code>).
13	CR	\r	Carriage return. The current text position is changed to the beginning of the current line. Per default, this is: X = 0.

Usage of the control character `LF` can be very convenient in strings. A line feed can be made part of a string so that a string spanning multiple lines can be displayed with a single routine call.

Positioning text at a selected position

This may be done by using the routine `GUI_GotoXY()` as shown in the following example:

```
GUI_GotoXY(10,10); // Set text position (in pixels)
GUI_DisppString("Hello world!"); // Show text
```

6.2 Text API

The table below lists the available text-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
Routines to display text	
<code>GUI_DisppChar()</code>	Display single character at current position.
<code>GUI_DisppCharAt()</code>	Display single character at specified position.
<code>GUI_DisppChars()</code>	Display character a specified number of times.
<code>GUI_DisppNextLine()</code>	Moves the cursor to the beginning of the next line.
<code>GUI_DisppString()</code>	Display string at current position.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_DisppStringAt()</code>	Display string at specified position.
<code>GUI_DisppStringAtCEOL()</code>	Display string at specified position, then clear to end of line.
<code>GUI_DisppStringHCenterAt()</code>	Displays string centered horizontally at the given position.
<code>GUI_DisppStringInRect()</code>	Display string in specified rectangle.
<code>GUI_DisppStringInRectEx()</code>	Displays string in specified rectangle and optional rotates it.
<code>GUI_DisppStringInRectWrap()</code>	Displays string in specified rectangle with optional wrapping.
<code>GUI_DisppStringLen()</code>	Display string at current position with specified number of characters.
Selecting text drawing modes	
<code>GUI_GetTextMode()</code>	Returns the current text mode
<code>GUI_SetTextMode()</code>	Set text drawing mode.
<code>GUI_SetTextStyle()</code>	Sets the text style to be used.
Selecting text alignment	
<code>GUI_GetTextAlign()</code>	Return current text alignment mode.
<code>GUI_SetLBorder()</code>	Set left border after line feed.
<code>GUI_Set.TextAlign()</code>	Set text alignment mode.
Setting the current text position	
<code>GUI_GotoX()</code>	Set current X-position.
<code>GUI_GotoXY()</code>	Set current (X,Y) position.
<code>GUI_GotoY()</code>	Set current Y-position.
Retrieving the current text position	
<code>GUI_GetDispPosX()</code>	Return current X-position.
<code>GUI_GetDispPosY()</code>	Return current Y-position.
Routines to clear a window or parts of it	
<code>GUI_Clear()</code>	Clear active window (or entire display if background is the active window).
<code>GUI_DisppCEOL()</code>	Clear display from current text position to end of line.

6.3 Routines to display text

`GUI_DisppChar()`

Description

Displays a single character at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DisppChar(U16 c);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>c</code>	Character to display.

Additional information

This is the basic routine for displaying a single character. All other display routines (`GUI_DisppCharAt()`, `GUI_DisppString()`, etc.) call this routine to output the individual characters.

Which characters are available depends on the selected font. If the character is not available in the current font, nothing is displayed.

Example

Shows a capital A on the display:

```
GUI_DispcChar('A');
```

Related topics

`GUI_DispcChars()`, `GUI_DispcCharAt()`

GUI_DispcCharAt()

Description

Displays a single character at a specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispcCharAt(U16 c, I16P x, I16P y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
c	Character to display.
x	X-position to write to in pixels of the client window.
y	Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window.

Add information

Displays the character with its upper left corner at the specified (X,Y) position.

Writes the character using the routine `GUI_DispcChar()`.

If the character is not available in the current font, nothing is displayed.

Example

Shows a capital A on the display in the upper left corner:

```
GUI_DispcCharAt('A', 0, 0);
```

Related topics

`GUI_DispcChar()`, `GUI_DispcChars()`

GUI_DispcChars()

Description

Displays a character a specified number of times at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispcChars(U16 c, int Cnt);
```

Parameter	Meaning
c	Character to display.
Cnt	Number of repetitions (0 <= Cnt <= 32767).

Additional information

Writes the character using the routine `GUI_DispcChar()`.

If the character is not available in the current font, nothing is displayed.

Example

Shows the line "*****" on the display:
`GUI_DispcChars('*', 30);`

Related topics

`GUI_DispcChar()`, `GUI_DispcCharAt()`

GUI_DispcNextLine()

Description

Moves the cursor to the beginning of the next line.

Prototype

`void GUI_DispcNextLine(void);`

Related topics

`GUI_SetLBorder()`

GUI_DispcString()

Description

Displays the string passed as parameter at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

`void GUI_DispcString(const char GUI_FAR *s);`

Parameter	Meaning
<code>s</code>	String to display.

Additional information

The string can contain the control character `\n`. This control character moves the current text position to the beginning of the next line.

Example

Shows "Hello world" on the display and "Next line" on the next line:

```
GUI_DispcString("Hello world");// Disp text
GUI_DispcString("\nNext line");// Disp text
```

Related topics

`GUI_DispcStringAt()`, `GUI_DispcStringAtCEOL()`, `GUI_DispcStringLen()`,

GUI_DispcStringAt()

Description

Displays the string passed as parameter at a specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispatchStringAt(const char GUI_FAR *s, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	String to display.
x	X-position to write to in pixels of the client window.
y	Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window.

Example

Shows "Position 50,20" at position 50,20 on the display:

```
GUI_DispatchStringAt("Position 50,20", 50, 20); // Disp text
```

Related topics

```
GUI_DispatchString(), GUI_DispatchStringAtCEOL(), GUI_DispatchStringLen()
```

GUI_DispatchStringAtCEOL()**Description**

This routine uses the exact same parameters as `GUI_DispatchStringAt()`. It does the same thing: displays a given string at a specified position. However, after doing so, it clears the remaining part of the line to the end by calling the routine `GUI_DispatchCEOL()`. This routine can be handy if one string is to overwrite another, and the overwriting string is or may be shorter than the previous one.

GUI_DispatchStringHCenterAt()**Description**

Displays the string passed as parameter horizontally centered at a specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispatchStringHCenterAt(const char GUI_FAR *s, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	String to display.
x	X-position to write to in pixels of the client window.
y	Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window.

GUI_DispatchStringInRect()**Description**

Displays the string passed as parameter at a specified position within a specified rectangle, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispatchStringInRect(const char GUI_FAR *s, const GUI_RECT *pRect,
```

```
int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	String to display.
pRect	Rectangle to write to in pixels of the client window.
Align	Alignment flags; "OR" combinable. A flag for horizontal and a flag for vertical alignment should be combined. Available flags are: GUI_TA_TOP, GUI_TA_BOTTOM, GUI_TA_VCENTER for vertical alignment. GUI_TA_LEFT, GUI_TA_RIGHT, GUI_TA_HCENTER for horizontal alignment.

Example

Shows the word "Text" centered horizontally and vertically in the current window:

```
GUI_RECT rClient;
GUI_GetClientRect(&rClient);
GUI_DispStringInRect("Text", &rClient, GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER);
```

Additional information

If the specified rectangle is too small, the text will be clipped.

Related topics

```
GUI_DispString(), GUI_DispStringAtCEOL(), GUI_DispStringLen(),
```

GUI_DispStringInRectEx()

Description

Displays the string passed as parameter at a specified position within a specified rectangle, in the current window using the current font and (optional) rotates it.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispStringInRectEx(const char GUI_UNI_PTR *s,
                            GUI_RECT* pRect,
                            int TextAlign,
                            int MaxLen,
                            const GUI_ROTATION * pLCD_Api);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	String to display.
pRect	Rectangle to write to in pixels of the client window.
TextAlign	Alignment flags; "OR" combinable. A flag for horizontal and a flag for vertical alignment should be combined. Available flags are: GUI_TA_TOP, GUI_TA_BOTTOM, GUI_TA_VCENTER for vertical alignment. GUI_TA_LEFT, GUI_TA_RIGHT, GUI_TA_HCENTER for horizontal alignment.
MaxLen	Maximum number of characters to be shown.
pLCD_Api	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter pLCD_Api	
GUI_ROTATE_0	Does not rotate the text. Shows it from left to right.
GUI_ROTATE_CCW	Rotates the text counter clockwise.

Example

Shows the word "Text" centered horizontally and vertically in the given rectangle:

```
GUI_RECT Rect = {10, 10, 40, 80};
char acText[] = "Rotated\ntext";
```

```

GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_XOR);
GUI_FillRectEx(&Rect);
GUI_DispStringInRectEx(acText,
    &Rect,
    GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER,
    strlen(acText),
    GUI_ROTATE_CCW);

```

Screenshot of above example



Additional information

If the specified rectangle is too small, the text will be clipped.

GUI_DispStringInRectWrap()

Description

Description

Displays a string at a specified position within a specified rectangle, in the current window using the current font and (optionaly) wraps the text.

Prototype

```

void GUI_DispStringInRectWrap(const char GUI_UNI_PTR * s,
                               GUI_RECT * pRect,
                               int TextAlign,
                               GUI_WRAPMODE WrapMode);

```

Parameter	Meaning
s	String to display.
pRect	Rectangle to write to in pixels of the client window.
TextAlign	Alignment flags; "OR" combinable. A flag for horizontal and a flag for vertical alignment should be combined. Available flags are: GUI_TA_TOP, GUI_TA_BOTTOM, GUI_TA_VCENTER for vertical alignment. GUI_TA_LEFT, GUI_TA_RIGHT, GUI_TA_HCENTER for horizontal alignment.
WrapMode	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter pLCD_Api	
GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE	No wrapping will be performed.
GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD	Text is wrapped word wise.
GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR	Text is wrapped char wise.

Additional information

If word wrapping should be performed and the given rectangle is too small for a word char wrapping is executed at this word.

Example

Shows a text centered horizontally and vertically in the given rectangle with word wrapping:

```
int i;
char acText[]      = "This sample demonstrates text wrapping";
GUI_RECT Rect     = {10, 10, 59, 59};
GUI_WRAPMODE aWm[] = {GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE,
                      GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR,
                      GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD};

GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
for (i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
    GUI_FillRectEx(&Rect);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_DispStringInRectWrap(acText, &Rect, GUI_TA_LEFT, aWm[i]);
    Rect.x0 += 60;
    Rect.x1 += 60;
}
```

Screenshot of above example



GUI_DisppStringLen()

Description

Displays the string passed as parameter with a specified number of characters at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DisppStringLen(const char GUI_FAR *s, int Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	String to display. Should be a \0 terminated array of 8-bit character. Passing NULL as parameter is permitted.
Len	Number of characters to display.

Additional information

If the string has less characters than specified (is shorter), it is padded with spaces. If the string has more characters than specified (is longer), then only the given number of characters is actually displayed.

This function is especially useful if text messages can be displayed in different languages (and will naturally differ in length), but only a certain number of characters can be displayed.

Related topics

[GUI_DisppString\(\)](#), [GUI_DisppStringAt\(\)](#), [GUI_DisppStringAtCEOL\(\)](#),

6.4 Selecting text drawing modes

Normally, text is written into the selected window at the current text position using the selected font in normal text. Normal text means that the text overwrites whatever is already displayed where the bits set in the character mask are set on the display. In this mode, active bits are written using the foreground color, while inactive bits are written with the background color. However, in some situations it may be desirable to change this default behavior. µC/GUI offers four flags for this purpose (one default plus three modifiers), which may be combined:

Normal text

Text can be displayed normally by specifying `GUI_TEXTMODE_NORMAL` or 0.

Reverse text

Text can be displayed in reverse by specifying `GUI_TEXTMODE_REVERSE`. What is usually displayed as white on black will be displayed as black on white.

Transparent text

Transparent text means that the text is written on top of whatever is already visible on the display. The difference is that whatever was previously on the screen can still be seen, whereas with normal text the background is erased.

Text can be displayed transparently by specifying `GUI_TEXTMODE_TRANS`.

XOR text

What usually is drawn white (the actual character) is inverted. The effect is identical to that of the default mode (normal text) if the background is black. If the background is white, the output is identical to reverse text.

If you use colors, an inverted pixel is calculated as follows:

New pixel color = number of colors - actual pixel color - 1.

Transparent reversed text

As with transparent text, it does not overwrite the background, and as with reverse text, the text is displayed in reverse.

Text can be displayed in reverse transparently by specifying `GUI_TEXTMODE_TRANS | GUI_TEXTMODE_REV`.

Example

Displays normal, reverse, transparent, XOR, and transparent reversed text:

```
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLUE);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetPenSize(10);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
GUI_DrawLine(80, 10, 240, 90);
GUI_DrawLine(80, 90, 240, 10);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_NORMAL);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_NORMAL" , 160, 10);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_REV);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_REV" , 160, 26);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_TRANS" , 160, 42);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_XOR);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_XOR" , 160, 58);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS | GUI_TM_REV);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("GUI_TM_TRANS | GUI_TM_REV", 160, 74);
```

Screen shot of above example



GUI_GetTextMode()

Description

Returns the currently selected text mode.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetTextMode(void);
```

Return value

The currently selected text mode.

GUI_SetTextMode()

Description

Sets the text mode to the parameter specified.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetTextMode(int TextMode);
```

Parameter	Meaning
TextMode	Text mode to set. May be any combination of the TEXTMODE flags.

Permitted values for parameter <code>TextMode</code> (OR-combinable)	
GUI_TEXTMODE_NORMAL	Sets normal text. This is the default setting; the value is identical to 0.
GUI_TEXTMODE_REVERSE	Sets reverse text.
GUI_TEXTMODE_TRANSPARENT	Sets transparent text.
GUI_TEXTMODE_XOR	Text will be inverted on the display.

Return value

The previous selected text mode.

Example

Shows "The value is" at position 0,0 on the display, shows a value in reverse text, then sets the text mode back to normal:

```
int i = 20;
GUI_DispStringAt("The value is", 0, 0);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TEXTMODE_REVERSE);
GUI_DispDec(20, 3);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TEXTMODE_NORMAL);
```

GUI_SetTextStyle()

Description

Sets the text style to the parameter specified.

Prototype

```
char GUI_SetTextStyle(char Style);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Style	Text style to set (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter <i>Style</i>	
GUI_TS_NORMAL	Renders text normal (default).
GUI_TS_UNDERLINE	Renders text underlined.
GUI_TS_STRIKETHRU	Renders text in strikethrough type.
GUI_TS_OVERLINE	Renders text in overline type.

Return value

The previous selected text style.

6.5 Selecting text alignment

GUI_Get TextAlign()

Description

Returns the current text alignment mode.

Prototype

```
int GUI_Get TextAlign(void);
```

GUI_SetLBorder()

Description

Sets the left border for line feeds in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetLBorder(int x)
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	New left border (in pixels, 0 is left border).

GUI_Set TextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment mode for string output in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetTextAlign(int TextAlign);
```

Parameter	Meaning
TextAlign	Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag.

Permitted values for parameter TextAlign (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable)	
Horizontal alignment	
GUI_TA_LEFT	Align X-position left (default).
GUI_TA_HCENTER	Center X-position.
GUI_TA_RIGHT	Align X-position right (default).
Vertical alignment	
GUI_TA_TOP	Align Y-position with top of characters (default).
GUI_TA_VCENTER	Center Y-position.
GUI_TA_BOTTOM	Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font.

Return value

The selected text alignment mode.

Additional information

GUI_SetTextAlign() does not affect the character output routines beginning with GUI_DispcChar().

Example

Displays the value 1234 with the center of the text at x=100, y=100:

```
GUI_SetTextAlign(GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER);
GUI_DispcDecAt(1234,100,100,4);
```

6.6 Setting the current text position

Every task has a current text position. This is the position relative to the origin of the window (usually (0,0)) where the next character will be written if a text output routine is called. Initially, this position is (0,0), which is the upper left corner of the current window. There are 3 functions which can be used to set the current text position.

GUI_GotoXY(), GUI_GotoX(), GUI_GotoY()

Description

Set the current text write position.

Prototypes

```
char GUI_GotoXY(int x, int y);
char GUI_GotoX(int x);
char GUI_GotoY(int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	New X-position (in pixels, 0 is left border).
y	New Y-position (in pixels, 0 is top border).

Return value

Usually 0.

If a value != 0 is returned, then the current text position is outside of the window (to the right or below), so a following write operation can be omitted.

Additional information

`GUI_GotoXY()` sets both the X- and Y-components of the current text position.

`GUI_GotoX()` sets the X-component of the current text position; the Y-component remains unchanged.

`GUI_GotoY()` sets the Y-component of the current text position; the X-component remains unchanged.

Example

Shows "(20,20)" at position 20,20 on the display:

```
GUI_GotoXY(20,20)
GUI_DispString("The value is");
```

6.7 Retrieving the current text position

`GUI_GetDispPosX()`

Description

Returns the current X-position.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetDispPosX(void);
```

`GUI_GetDispPosY()`

Description

Returns the current Y-position.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetDispPosY(void);
```

6.8 Routines to clear a window or parts of it

`GUI_Clear()`

Description

Clears the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_Clear(void);
```

Additional information

If no window has been defined, the current window is the entire display. In this case, the entire display is cleared.

Example

Shows "Hello world" on the display, waits 1 second and then clears the display:

```
GUI_Dispatch("Hello world", 0, 0); // Disp text  
GUI_Delay(1000); // Wait 1 second (not part of µC/GUI)  
GUI_Clear(); // Clear screen
```

GUI_Dispatch()

Description

Clears the current window (or the display) from the current text position to the end of the line using the height of the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_Dispatch(void);
```

Example

Shows "Hello world" on the display, waits 1 second and then displays "Hi" in the same place, replacing the old string:

```
GUI_Dispatch("Hello world", 0, 0); // Disp text  
Delay (1000);  
GUI_Dispatch("Hi", 0, 0);  
GUI_Dispatch();
```


Chapter 7

Displaying Values

The preceding chapter explained how to show strings on the display. Of course you may use strings and the functions of the standard "C" library to display values. However, this can sometimes be a difficult task. It is usually much easier (and much more efficient) to call a routine that displays the value in the form that you want. µC/GUI supports different decimal, hexadecimal and binary outputs. The individual routines are explained in this chapter.

All functions work without the usage of a floating-point library and are optimized for both speed and size. Of course `sprintf` may also be used on any system. Using the routines in this chapter can sometimes simplify things and save both ROM space and execution time.

7.1 Value API

The table below lists the available value-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
Displaying decimal values	
<code>GUI_DispDec()</code>	Display value in decimal form at current position with specified number of characters.
<code>GUI_DispDecAt()</code>	Display value in decimal form at specified position with specified number of characters.
<code>GUI_DispDecMin()</code>	Display value in decimal form at current position with minimum number of characters.
<code>GUI_DispDecShift()</code>	Display long value in decimal form with decimal point at current position with specified number of characters.
<code>GUI_DispDecSpace()</code>	Display value in decimal form at current position with specified number of characters, replace leading zeros with spaces.
<code>GUI_DispSDec()</code>	Display value in decimal form at current position with specified number of characters and sign.
<code>GUI_DispSDecShift()</code>	Display long value in decimal form with decimal point at current position with specified number of characters and sign.
Displaying floating-point values	
<code>GUI_DispFloat()</code>	Display floating-point value with specified number of characters.
<code>GUI_DispFloatFix()</code>	Display floating-point value with fixed no. of digits to the right of decimal point.
<code>GUI_DispFloatMin()</code>	Display floating-point value with minimum number of characters.
<code>GUI_DispSFloatFix()</code>	Display floating-point value with fixed no. of digits to the right of decimal point and sign.
<code>GUI_DispSFloatMin()</code>	Display floating-point value with minimum number of characters and sign.
Displaying binary values	
<code>GUI_DispBin()</code>	Display value in binary form at current position.
<code>GUI_DispBinAt()</code>	Display value in binary form at specified position.
Displaying hexadecimal values	
<code>GUI_DispHex()</code>	Display value in hexadecimal form at current position.
<code>GUI_DispHexAt()</code>	Display value in hexadecimal form at specified position.

7.2 Displaying decimal values

`GUI_DispDec()`

Description

Displays a value in decimal form with a specified number of characters at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_Dispatch(I32 v, U8 Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum -2147483648 (= -2^31). Maximum 2147483647 (= 2^31 -1).
Len	No. of digits to display (max. 9).

Additional information

Leading zeros are not suppressed (are shown as 0).
If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown.

Example

```
// Display time as minutes and seconds
GUI_DispatchString("Min:");
GUI_DispatchDec(Min, 2);
GUI_DispatchString(" Sec:");
GUI_DispatchDec(Sec, 2);
```

Related topics

`GUI_DispatchSDec()`, `GUI_DispatchDecAt()`, `GUI_DispatchDecMin()`, `GUI_DispatchDecSpace()`

GUI_DispatchDecAt()

Description

Displays a value in decimal form with a specified number of characters at a specified position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispatchDecAt(I32 v, I16P x, I16P y, U8 Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum -2147483648 (= -2^31). Maximum 2147483647 (= 2^31 -1).
x	X-position to write to in pixels of the client window.
y	Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window.
Len	No. of digits to display (max. 9).

Additional information

Leading zeros are not suppressed.
If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown.

Example

```
// Update seconds in upper right corner
GUI_DispatchDecAt(Sec, 200, 0, 2);
```

Related topics

`GUI_DispatchDec()`, `GUI_DispatchSDec()`, `GUI_DispatchDecMin()`, `GUI_DispatchDecSpace()`

GUI_DisplDecMin()

Description

Displays a value in decimal form at the current text position in the current window using the current font. The length need not be specified; the minimum length will automatically be used.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DisplDecMin(I32 v);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^31); maximum 2147483647 (= 2^31 -1). Maximum no. of digits displayed is 9.

Additional information

If values have to be aligned but differ in the number of digits, this function is not a good choice. Try one of the functions that specify the number of digits.

Example

```
// Show result
GUI_DisplString("The result is :");
GUI_DisplDecMin(Result);
```

Related topics

`GUI_DisplDec()`, `GUI_DisplDecAt()`, `GUI_DisplSDec()`, `GUI_DisplDecSpace()`

GUI_DisplDecShift()

Description

Displays a `long` value in decimal form with a specified number of characters and with decimal point at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DisplDecShift(I32 v, U8 Len, U8 Shift);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^31); maximum: 2147483647 (= 2^31 -1).
Len	No. of digits to display (max. 9).
Shift	No. of digits to show to right of decimal point.

Additional information

Watch the maximum number of 9 characters (including sign and decimal point).

GUI_DisplDecSpace()

Description

Displays a value in decimal form at the current text position in the current window using the current font. Leading zeros are suppressed (replaced by spaces).

Prototype

```
void DispDecSpace(I32 v, U8 MaxDigits);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^31); maximum: 2147483647 (= 2^31 -1).
MaxDigits	No. of digits to display, including leading spaces. Maximum no. of digits displayed is 9 (excluding leading spaces).

Additional information

If values have to be aligned but differ in the number of digits, this function is a good choice.

Example

```
// Show result
GUI_DisppString("The result is :");
GUI_DisppDec(Result, 200);
```

Related topics

[GUI_DisppDec\(\)](#), [GUI_DisppDecAt\(\)](#), [GUI_DisppSDec\(\)](#), [GUI_DisppDecMin\(\)](#)

GUI_DisppSDec()

Description

Displays a value in decimal form (with sign) with a specified number of characters at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DisppSDec(I32 v, U8 Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^31); maximum: 2147483647 (= 2^31 -1).
Len	No. of digits to display (max. 9).

Additional information

Leading zeros are not suppressed.

This function is similar to [GUI_DisppDec](#), but a sign is always shown in front of the value, even if the value is positive.

Related topics

[GUI_DisppDec\(\)](#), [GUI_DisppDecAt\(\)](#), [GUI_DisppDecMin\(\)](#), [GUI_DisppDecSpace\(\)](#)

GUI_DisppSDecShift()

Description

Displays a long value in decimal form (with sign) with a specified number of characters and with decimal point at the current text position, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispsDecShift(I32 v, U8 Len, U8 Shift);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum: -2147483648 (= -2^31); maximum: 2147483647 (= 2^31 -1).
Len	No. of digits to display (max. 9).
Shift	No. of digits to show to right of decimal point.

Additional information

A sign is always shown in front of the value.

Watch the maximum number of 9 characters (including sign and decimal point).

Example

```
void DemoDec(void) {
    long l = 12345;
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
    GUI_DispsStringAt("GUI_DispsDecShift:\n", 0, 0);
    GUI_DispsDecShift(l, 7, 3);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font6x8);
    GUI_DispsStringAt("Press any key", 0, GUI_VYSIZE-8);
    WaitKey();
}
```

Screen shot of above example

7.3 Displaying floating-point values

GUI_DispsFloat()**Description**

Displays a floating-point value with a specified number of characters at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispsFloat(float v, char Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38.
Len	No. of digits to display (max. 9).

Additional information

Leading zeros are suppressed. The decimal point counts as one character.

If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown.

Example

```
/*      Shows all features for displaying floating point values */
void DemoFloat(void) {
    float f = 123.45678;
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
    GUI_DispStringAt("GUI_DisplFloat:\n", 0, 0);
    GUI_DisplFloat (f,9);
    GUI_GotoX(100);
    GUI_DisplFloat (-f,9);
    GUI_DisplStringAt("GUI_DisplFloatFix:\n", 0, 20);
    GUI_DisplFloatFix (f,9,2);
    GUI_GotoX(100);
    GUI_DisplFloatFix (-f,9,2);
    GUI_DisplStringAt("GUI_DisplSFloatFix:\n", 0, 40);
    GUI_DisplSFloatFix (f,9,2);
    GUI_GotoX(100);
    GUI_DisplSFloatFix (-f,9,2);
    GUI_DisplStringAt("GUI_DisplFloatMin:\n", 0, 60);
    GUI_DisplFloatMin (f,3);
    GUI_GotoX(100);
    GUI_DisplFloatMin (-f,3);
    GUI_DisplStringAt("GUI_DisplSFloatMin:\n", 0, 80);
    GUI_DisplSFloatMin (f,3);
    GUI_GotoX(100);
    GUI_DisplSFloatMin (-f,3);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font6x8);
    GUI_DisplStringAt("Press any key", 0, GUI_VYSIZE-8);
    WaitKey();
}
```

Screen shot of above example



GUI_DisplFloatFix()

Description

Displays a floating-point value with specified number of total characters and a specified number of characters to the right of the decimal point, at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DisplFloatFix (float v, char Len, char Decs);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38.
Len	No. of digits to display (max. 9).
Decs	No. of digits to show to right of decimal point.

Additional information

Leading zeros are not suppressed.
If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown.

GUI_DisplFloatMin()**Description**

Displays a floating-point value with a minimum number of decimals to the right of the decimal point, at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DisplFloatMin(float f, char Fract);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38.
Fract	Minimum no. of characters to display.

Additional information

Leading zeros are suppressed.
If the value is negative, a minus sign is shown.
The length need not be specified; the minimum length will automatically be used. If values have to be aligned but differ in the number of digits, this function is not a good choice. Try one of the functions that specify the number of digits.

GUI_DisplSFloatFix()**Description**

Displays a floating-point value (with sign) with a specified number of total characters and a specified number of characters to the right of the decimal point, in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DisplSFloatFix(float v, char Len, char Decs);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38.
Len	No. of digits to display (max. 9).
Decs	No. of digits to show to right of decimal point.

Additional information

Leading zeros are not suppressed.
A sign is always shown in front of the value.

GUI_DispsFloatMin()

Description

Displays a floating-point value (with sign) with a minimum number of decimals to the right of the decimal point, at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispsFloatMin(float f, char Fract);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display. Minimum 1.2 E-38; maximum 3.4 E38.
Fract	Minimum no. of digits to display.

Additional information

Leading zeros are suppressed.
A sign is always shown in front of the value.
The length need not be specified; the minimum length will automatically be used. If values have to be aligned but differ in the number of digits, this function is not a good choice. Try one of the functions that specify the number of digits.

7.4 Displaying binary values

GUI_DispsBin()

Description

Displays a value in binary form at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispsBin(U32 v, U8 Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display, 32-bit.
Len	No. of digits to display (including leading zeros).

Additional information

As with decimal and hexadecimal values, the least significant bit is rightmost.

Example

```
/*
// Show binary value 7, result: 000111
//
U32 Input = 0x7;
GUI_DispsBin(Input, 6);
```

Related topics

[GUI_DisplBinAt\(\)](#)

GUI_DisplBinAt()**Description**

Displays a value in binary form at a specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void DispBinAt(U32 v, I16P y, I16P x, U8 Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display, 16-bit.
x	X-position to write to in pixels of the client window.
y	Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window.
Len	No. of digits to display (including leading zeroes).

Additional information

As with decimal and hexadecimal values, the least significant bit is rightmost.

Example

```
//
// Show binary input status
//
GUI_DisplBinAt(Input, 0,0, 8);
```

Related topics

[GUI_DisplBin\(\)](#), [GUI_DisplHex\(\)](#)

7.5 Displaying hexadecimal values

GUI_DisplHex()**Description**

Displays a value in hexadecimal form at the current text position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DisplHex(U32 v, U8 Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display, 16-bit.
Len	No. of digits to display.

Additional information

As with decimal and binary values, the least significant bit is rightmost.

Example

```
/* Show value of AD-converter */
GUI_DispxHex(Input, 4);

Related topics
GUI_DispxDec(), GUI_DispxBin(), GUI_DispxHexAt()
```

GUI_DispxHexAt()

Description

Displays a value in hexadecimal form at a specified position in the current window using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DispxHexAt(U32 v, I16P x, I16P y, U8 Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
v	Value to display, 16-bit.
x	X-position to write to in pixels of the client window.
y	Y-position to write to in pixels of the client window.
Len	No. of digits to display.

Additional information

As with decimal and binary values, the least significant bit is rightmost.

Example

```
//
// Show value of AD-converter at specified position
//
GUI_DispxHexAt(Input, 0, 0, 4);
```

Related topics

```
GUI_DispxDec(), GUI_DispxBin(), GUI_DispxHex()
```

7.6 Version of µC/GUI

GUI_GetVersionString()

Description

Returns a string containing the current version of µC/GUI

Prototype

```
const char * GUI_GetVersionString(void);
```

Example

```
//
// Displays the current version at the current cursor position
//
GUI_DispxString(GUI_GetVersionString());
```


Chapter 8

2-D Graphic Library

μ C/GUI contains a complete 2-D graphic library which should be sufficient for most applications. The routines supplied with μ C/GUI can be used with or without clipping (please refer to Chapter 15: "The Window Manager") and are based on fast and efficient algorithms. Currently, only the `DrawArc()` function requires floating-point calculations.

8.1 Graphic API

The table below lists the available graphic-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
Drawing modes	
<code>GUI_GetDrawMode()</code>	Returns the current drawing mode
<code>GUI_SetDrawMode()</code>	Sets the drawing mode.
Query current client rectangle	
<code>GUI_GetClientRect()</code>	Returns the current available drawing area
Basic drawing routines	
<code>GUI_ClearRect()</code>	Fills a rectangular area with the background color.
<code>GUI_DrawPixel()</code>	Draws a single pixel.
<code>GUI_DrawPoint()</code>	Draws a point.
<code>GUI_DrawRect()</code>	Draws a rectangle.
<code>GUI_DrawRectEx()</code>	Draws a rectangle.
<code>GUI_FillRect()</code>	Draws a filled rectangle.
<code>GUI_FillRectEx()</code>	Draws a filled rectangle.
<code>GUI_InvertRect()</code>	Invert a rectangular area.
Drawing bitmaps	
<code>GUI_DrawBitmap()</code>	Draws a bitmap.
<code>GUI_DrawBitmapEx()</code>	Draws a scaled bitmap.
<code>GUI_DrawBitmapExp()</code>	Draws a bitmap using additional parameters.
<code>GUI_DrawBitmapMag()</code>	Draws a magnified bitmap.
Drawing lines	
<code>GUI_DrawHLine()</code>	Draws a horizontal line.
<code>GUI_DrawLine()</code>	Draws a line from a specified startpoint to a specified endpoint (absolute coordinates).
<code>GUI_DrawLineRel()</code>	Draws a line from the current position to an endpoint specified by X- and Y-distances (relative coordinates).
<code>GUI_DrawLineTo()</code>	Draws a line from the current position to a specified endpoint.
<code>GUI_DrawPolyLine()</code>	Draws a polyline.
<code>GUI_DrawVLine()</code>	Draws a vertical line.
<code>GUI_GetLineStyle()</code>	Returns the current line style.
<code>GUI_MoveRel()</code>	Moves the line pointer relative to its current position
<code>GUI_MoveTo()</code>	Moves the line pointer to the given position
<code>GUI_SetLineStyle()</code>	Sets the current line style.
Drawing polygons	
<code>GUI_DrawPolygon()</code>	Draws the outline of a polygon.
<code>GUI_EnlargePolygon()</code>	Enlarges a polygon.
<code>GUI_FillPolygon()</code>	Draws a filled polygon.
<code>GUI_MagnifyPolygon()</code>	Magnifies a polygon.
<code>GUI_RotatePolygon()</code>	Rotates a polygon by a specified angle.
Drawing circles	
<code>GUI_DrawCircle()</code>	Draws the outline of a circle.
<code>GUI_FillCircle()</code>	Draws a filled circle.

Routine	Explanation
Drawing ellipses	
<code>GUI_DrawEllipse()</code>	Draws the outline of an ellipse.
<code>GUI_FillEllipse()</code>	Draws a filled ellipse.
Drawing arcs	
<code>GUI_DrawArc()</code>	Draws an arc.
Drawing a graph	
<code>GUI_DrawGraph()</code>	Draws a graph.
Saving and restoring the GUI-context	
<code>GUI_RestoreContext()</code>	Restores the GUI-context.
<code>GUI_SaveContext()</code>	Saves the GUI-context.
Clipping	
<code>GUI_SetClipRect()</code>	Sets the rectangle used for clipping

8.2 Drawing modes

μ C/GUI can draw in NORMAL mode or in XOR mode. The default is NORMAL mode, in which the content of the display is overdrawn by the graphic. In XOR mode, the content of the display is inverted when it is overdrawn.

Restrictions associated with `GUI_DRAWMODE_XOR`

- XOR mode is only useful when using two displayed colors inside the active window or screen.
- Some drawing functions of μ C/GUI do not work precisely with this drawing mode. Generally, this mode works only with a pen size of one pixel. That means before using functions like `GUI_DrawLine()`, `GUI_DrawCircle()`, `GUI_DrawRect()` and so on, you must make sure that the pen size is set to 1 when you are working in XOR mode.
- When drawing bitmaps with a color depth greater than 1 bit per pixel (bpp) this drawing mode takes no effect.
- When using drawing functions such as `GUI_DrawPolyLine()` or multiple calls of `GUI_DrawLineTo()`, the fulcrums are inverted twice. The result is that these pixels remain in the background color.

`GUI_GetDrawMode()`

Description

Returns the current drawing mode.

Prototype

```
GUI_DRAWMODE GUI_GetDrawMode(void);
```

Return value

The currently selected drawing mode.

Additional information

For details about drawing modes please refer to the function `GUI_SetDrawMode()`.

GUI_SetDrawMode()

Description

Selects the specified drawing mode.

Prototype

```
GUI_DRAWMODE GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DRAWMODE mode);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>mode</code>	Drawing mode to set. May be a value returned by any routine which sets the drawing mode or one of the constants below.

Permitted values for parameter <code>mode</code>	
NORMAL	Default: Draws points, lines, areas, bitmaps.
XOR	Inverts points, lines, areas when overwriting the color of another object on the display.

Return value

The selected drawing mode.

Additional information

In addition to setting the drawing mode, this routine may also be used to restore a drawing mode that has previously been changed.

If using colors, an inverted pixel is calculated as follows:

New pixel color = number of colors - actual pixel color - 1.

Example

```
//
// Showing two circles, the second one XOR-combined with the first:
//
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DRAWMODE_NORMAL);
GUI_FillCircle(120, 64, 40);
GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DRAWMODE_XOR);
GUI_FillCircle(140, 84, 40);
```

Screen shot of above example



8.3 Query current client rectangle

GUI_GetClientRect()

Description

The current client rectangle depends on using the window manager or not. If using the window manager the function uses WM_GetClientRect to retrieve the client rectangle. If not using the window manager the client rectangle corresponds to the complete LCD display.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetClientRect(GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to GUI_RECT-structure to store result.

8.4 Basic drawing routines

The basic drawing routines allow drawing of individual points, horizontal and vertical lines and shapes at any position on the display. Any available drawing mode can be used. Since these routines are called frequently in most applications, they are optimized for speed as much as possible. For example, the horizontal and vertical line functions do not require the use of single-dot routines.

GUI_ClearRect()

Description

Clears a rectangular area at a specified position in the current window by filling it with the background color.

Prototype

```
void GUI_ClearRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Upper left X-position.
y0	Upper left Y-position.
x1	Lower right X-position.
y1	Lower right Y-position.

Related topics

`GUI_InvertRect()`, `GUI_FillRect()`

GUI_DrawPixel()**Description**

Draws a pixel at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawPixel(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position of pixel.
y	Y-position of pixel.

Related topics

`GUI_DrawPoint()`

GUI_DrawPoint()**Description**

Draws a point with the current pen size at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawPoint(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position of point.
y	Y-position of point.

Related topics

`GUI_DrawPixel()`

GUI_DrawRect()**Description**

Draws a rectangle at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Upper left X-position.
y0	Upper left Y-position.
x1	Lower right X-position.
y1	Lower right Y-position.

GUI_DrawRectEx()

Description

Draws a rectangle at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawRectEx(const GUI_RECT *pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT-structure containing the coordinates of the rectangle

GUI_FillRect()

Description

Draws a filled rectangular area at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Upper left X-position.
y0	Upper left Y-position.
x1	Lower right X-position.
y1	Lower right Y-position.

Additional information

Uses the current drawing mode, which normally means all pixels inside the rectangle are set.

Related topics

[GUI_InvertRect\(\)](#), [GUI_ClearRect\(\)](#)

GUI_FillRectEx()

Description

Draws a filled rectangular area at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillRectEx(const GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT-structure containing the coordinates of the rectangle

GUI_InvertRect()

Description

Draws an inverted rectangular area at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_InvertRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Upper left X-position.
y0	Upper left Y-position.
x1	Lower right X-position.
y1	Lower right Y-position.

Related topics

[GUI_FillRect\(\)](#), [GUI_ClearRect\(\)](#)

8.5 Drawing bitmaps

GUI_DrawBitmap()

Description

Draws a bitmap image at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawBitmap(const GUI_BITMAP* pBM, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pBM	Pointer to the bitmap to display.
x	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.

Additional information

The bitmap data must be defined pixel by pixel. Every pixel is equivalent to one bit. The most significant bit (msb) defines the first pixel; the picture data is interpreted as bitstream starting with the msb of the first byte.

A new line always starts at an even byte address, as the nth line of the bitmap starts at offset n*BytesPerLine. The bitmap can be shown at any point in the client area. Usually, the bitmap converter is used to generate bitmaps. For more information, please refer to Chapter 11: "Bitmap Converter".

Example

```
extern const GUI_BITMAP bmMicriumLogo; /* declare external Bitmap */

void main() {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_DrawBitmap(&bmMicriumLogo, 45, 20);
}
```

Screen shot of above example



GUI_DrawBitmapExp()

Description

Same function as GUI_DrawBitmap(), but with additional parameters.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawBitmapExp(int x0, int y0,
                      int XSize, int YSize,
                      int XMul, int YMul,
                      int BitsPerPixel,
                      int BytesPerLine,
                      const U8* pData,
                      const GUI_LOGPALETTE* pPal);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
Xsize	Number of pixels in horizontal direction. Valid range: 1... 255.
Ysize	Number of pixels in vertical direction. Valid range: 1... 255.
XMUL	Scale factor of X-direction.
YMUL	Scale factor of Y-direction.
BitsPerPixel	Number of bits per pixel.
BytesPerLine	Number of bytes per line of the image.
pData	Pointer to the actual image, the data that defines what the bitmap looks like.
pPal	Pointer to a GUI_LOGPALETTE structure.

GUI_DrawBitmapEx()

Description

This routine makes it possible to scale and/or to mirror a bitmap on the display.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawBitmapEx(const GUI_BITMAP* pBitmap,
                      int x0, int y0,
                      int xCenter, int yCenter,
                      int xMag, int yMag);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pBM	Pointer to the bitmap to display.
x0	X-position of the anker point in the display.
y0	Y-position of the anker point in the display.
xCenter	X-position of the anker point in the bitmap.

Parameter	Meaning
<code>yCenter</code>	Y-position of the anchor point in the bitmap.
<code>xMag</code>	Scale factor of X-direction.
<code>yMag</code>	Scale factor of Y-direction.

Additional information

A negative value of the `xMag`-parameter would mirror the bitmap in the X-axis and a negative value of the `yMag`-parameter would mirror the bitmap in the Y-axis. The unit of `xMag`- and `yMag` are thousandth. The position given by the parameter `xCenter` and `yCenter` specifies the pixel of the bitmap which should be displayed at the display at position `x0/y0` independent of scaling or mirroring.

This function can not be used to draw RLE-compressed bitmaps.

GUI_DrawBitmapMag()

Description

This routine makes it possible to magnify a bitmap on the display.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawBitmapMag(const GUI_BITMAP* pBM,
                      int x0, int y0,
                      int XMul, int YMul);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pBM</code>	Pointer to the bitmap to display.
<code>x0</code>	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
<code>y0</code>	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
<code>XMul</code>	Magnification factor of X-direction.
<code>YMul</code>	Magnification factor of Y-direction.

GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap()

Description

Draws a bitmap from a data bitmap data stream.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap(const GUI_BITMAP_STREAM* pBMH, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pBMH</code>	Pointer to the data stream.
<code>x</code>	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
<code>y</code>	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.

Additional information

You can use the bitmap converter (Chapter 11) to create bitmap data streams. The format of these streams is not the same as the format of a .bmp file.

8.6 Drawing lines

The most frequently used drawing routines are those that draw a line from one point to another.

GUI_DrawHLine()

Description

Draws a horizontal line one pixel thick from a specified starting point to a specified endpoint in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawHLine(int y, int x0, int x1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
y	Y-position.
x0	X-starting position.
x1	X-end position.

Additional information

If `x1 < x0`, nothing will be displayed.

With most LCD controllers, this routine is executed very quickly because multiple pixels can be set at once and no calculations are needed. If it is clear that horizontal lines are to be drawn, this routine executes faster than the `GUI_DrawLine()` routine.

GUI_DrawLine()

Description

Draws a line from a specified starting point to a specified endpoint in the current window (absolute coordinates).

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawLine(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-starting position.
y0	Y-starting position.
x1	X-end position.
y1	Y-end position.

Additional information

If part of the line is not visible because it is not in the current window or because part of the current window is not visible, this is due to clipping.

GUI_DrawLineRel()

Description

Draws a line from the current (X,Y) position to an endpoint specified by X-distance and Y-distance in the current window (relative coordinates).

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawLineRel(int dx, int dy);
```

Parameter	Meaning
dx	Distance in X-direction to end of line to draw.
dy	Distance in Y-direction end of line to draw.

GUI_DrawLineTo()**Description**

Draws a line from the current (X,Y) position to an endpoint specified by X- and Y-coordinates in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawLineTo(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-end position.
y	Y-end position.

GUI_DrawPolyLine()**Description**

Connects a predefined list of points with lines in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawPolyLine(const GUI_POINT* pPoint, int NumPoints, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pPoint	Pointer to the polyline to display.
NumPoints	Number of points specified in the list of points.
x	X-position of origin.
y	Y-position of origin.

Additional information

The starting point and endpoint of the polyline need not be identical.

GUI_DrawVLine()**Description**

Draws a vertical line one pixel thick from a specified starting point to a specified endpoint in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawVLine(int x, int y0, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position.
y0	Y-starting position.
y1	Y-end position.

Additional information

If `y1 < y0`, nothing will be displayed.

With most LCD controllers, this routine is executed very quickly because multiple pixels can be set at once and no calculations are needed. If it is clear that vertical lines are to be drawn, this routine executes faster than the `GUI_DrawLine()` routine.

GUI_GetLineStyle()

Description

Returns the current line style used by the function `GUI_DrawLine`.

Prototype

```
U8 GUI_GetLineStyle (void);
```

Return value

Current line style used by the function `GUI_DrawLine`.

GUI_MoveRel()

Description

Moves the current line pointer relative to its current position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MoveRel(int dx, int dy);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>dx</code>	Distance to move in X.
<code>dy</code>	Distance to move in Y.

Related topics

`GUI_DrawLineTo()`, `GUI_MoveTo()`

GUI_MoveTo()

Description

Moves the current line pointer to the given position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MoveTo(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x</code>	New position in X.
<code>y</code>	New position in Y.

GUI_SetLineStyle()

Description

Sets the current line style used by the function `GUI_DrawLine`.

Prototype

```
U8 GUI_SetLineStyle(U8 LineStyle);
```

Parameter	Meaning
LineStyle	New line style to be used (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter LineStyle	
GUI_LS_SOLID	Lines would be drawn solid (default).
GUI_LS_DASH	Lines would be drawn dashed.
GUI_LS_DOT	Lines would be drawn dotted.
GUI_LS_DASHDOT	Lines would be drawn alternating with dashes and dots.
GUI_LS_DASHDOTDOT	Lines would be drawn alternating with dashes and double dots.

Return value

Previous line style used by the function GUI_DrawLine.

Additional information

This function sets only the line style used by GUI_DrawLine. The style will be used only with a pen size of 1.

8.7 Drawing polygons

The polygon drawing routines can be helpful when drawing vectorized symbols.

GUI_DrawPolygon()

Description

Draws the outline of a polygon defined by a list of points in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawPolygon(const GUI_POINT* pPoint, int NumPoints, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pPoint	Pointer to the polygon to display.
NumPoints	Number of points specified in the list of points.
x	X-position of origin.
y	Y-position of origin.

Additional information

The polyline drawn is automatically closed by connecting the endpoint to the starting point.

GUI_EnlargePolygon()

Description

Enlarges a polygon on all sides by a specified length in pixels.

Prototype

```
void GUI_EnlargePolygon(GUI_POINT* pDest,
                        const GUI_POINT* pSrc,
                        int NumPoints, int Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pDest	Pointer to the destination polygon.
pSrc	Pointer to the source polygon.
NumPoints	Number of points specified in the list of points.
Len	Length (in pixels) by which to enlarge the polygon.

Additional information

Make sure the destination array of points is equal to or larger than the source array.

Example

```
#define countof(Array) (sizeof(Array) / sizeof(Array[0]))

const GUI_POINT aPoints[] = {
    { 0, 20 },
    { 40, 20 },
    { 20, 0 }
};

GUI_POINT aEnlargedPoints[countof(aPoints)];

void Sample(void) {
    int i;
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DM_XOR);
    GUI_FillPolygon(aPoints, countof(aPoints), 140, 110);
    for (i = 1; i < 10; i++) {
        GUI_EnlargePolygon(aEnlargedPoints, aPoints, countof(aPoints), i * 5);
        GUI_FillPolygon(aEnlargedPoints, countof(aPoints), 140, 110);
    }
}
```

Screen shot of above example



GUI_FillPolygon()

Description

Draws a filled polygon defined by a list of points in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillPolygon(const GUI_POINT* pPoint, int NumPoints, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pPoint	Pointer to the polygon to display and to fill.
NumPoints	Number of points specified in the list of points.
x	X-position of origin.
y	Y-position of origin.

Additional information

The polyline drawn is automatically closed by connecting the endpoint to the starting point. It is not required that the endpoint touches the outline of the polygon.

Rendering a polygon is done by drawing one or more horizontal lines for each y-position of the polygon. Per default the maximum number of points used to draw the horizontal lines for one y-position is 12 (which means 6 lines per y-position). If this value needs to be increased, the macro `GUI_FP_MAXCOUNT` can be used to set the maximum number of points.

Example

```
#define GUI_FP_MAXCOUNT 50
```

GUI_MagnifyPolygon()

Description

Magnifies a polygon by a specified factor.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MagnifyPolygon(GUI_POINT* pDest,
                        const GUI_POINT* pSrc,
                        int NumPoints, int Mag);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pDest	Pointer to the destination polygon.
pSrc	Pointer to the source polygon.
NumPoints	Number of points specified in the list of points.
Mag	Factor used to magnify the polygon.

Additional information

Make sure the destination array of points is equal to or larger than the source array. Note the difference between enlarging and magnifying a polygon. Whereas setting the parameter `Len` to 1 will enlarge the polygon by one pixel on all sides, setting the parameter `Mag` to 1 will have no effect.

Example

```
#define countof(Array) (sizeof(Array) / sizeof(Array[0]))

const GUI_POINT aPoints[] = {
    { 0, 20},
    { 40, 20},
    { 20, 0}
};

GUI_POINT aMagnifiedPoints[countof(aPoints)];
```

```

void Sample(void) {
    int Mag, y = 0, Count = 4;
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_GREEN);
    for (Mag = 1; Mag <= 4; Mag *= 2, Count /= 2) {
        int i, x = 0;
        GUI_MagnifyPolygon(aMagnifiedPoints, aPoints, countof(aPoints), Mag);
        for (i = Count; i > 0; i--, x += 40 * Mag) {
            GUI_FillPolygon(aMagnifiedPoints, countof(aPoints), x, y);
        }
        y += 20 * Mag;
    }
}

```

Screen shot of above example



GUI_RotatePolygon()

Description

Rotates a polygon by a specified angle.

Prototype

```

void GUI_RotatePolygon(GUI_POINT* pDest,
                      const GUI_POINT* pSrc,
                      int NumPoints,
                      float Angle);

```

Parameter	Meaning
pDest	Pointer to the destination polygon.
pSrc	Pointer to the source polygon.
NumPoints	Number of points specified in the list of points.
Angle	Angle in radian used to rotate the polygon.

Additional information

Make sure the destination array of points is equal to or larger than the source array.

Example

The following example shows how to draw a polygon. It is available as `2DGL_DrawPolygon.c` in the samples shipped with `μC/GUI`.

```

*****
*          Micrium Inc.          *
*          Empowering embedded systems   *
*          *****
```

```

*
*                      µC/GUI sample code
*
***** ****
-----+
File      : 2DGL_DrawPolygon.c
Purpose   : Example for drawing a polygon
-----+
*/
#include "gui.h"

/*****
*
*          The points of the arrow
*
***** ****
*/
static const GUI_POINT aPointArrow[] = {
    { 0, -5},
    {-40, -35},
    {-10, -25},
    {-10, -85},
    { 10, -85},
    { 10, -25},
    { 40, -35},
};

/*****
*
*          Draws a polygon
*
***** ****
*/
static void DrawPolygon(void) {
    int Cnt =0;
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_SetColor(0x0);
    GUI_DispStringAt("Polygons of arbitrary shape ", 0, 0);
    GUI_DispStringAt("in any color", 120, 20);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
    /* Draw filled polygon */
    GUI_FillPolygon (&aPointArrow[0],7,100,100);
}

/*****
*
*          main
*
***** ****
*/
void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    DrawPolygon();
    while(1)
        GUI_Delay(100);
}

```

Screen shot of above example



8.8 Drawing circles

GUI_DrawCircle()

Description

Draws the outline of a circle of specified dimensions, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawCircle(int x0, int y0, int r);
```

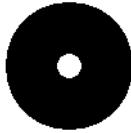
Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
y0	Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
r	Radius of the circle (half the diameter). Minimum: 0 (will result in a point); maximum: 180.

Additional information

This routine cannot handle a radius in excess of 180 because it uses integer calculations that would otherwise produce an overflow. However, for most embedded applications this is not a problem since a circle with diameter 360 is larger than the display anyhow.

Example

```
// Draw concentric circles
void ShowCircles(void) {
    int i;
    for (i=10; i<50; i++)
        GUI_DrawCircle(120,60,i);
}
```

Screen shot of above example**GUI_FillCircle()****Description**

Draws a filled circle of specified dimensions at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillCircle(int x0, int y0, int r);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
y0	Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
r	Radius of the circle (half the diameter). Minimum: 0 (will result in a point); maximum: 180.

Additional information

This routine cannot handle a radius in excess of 180.

Example

```
GUI_FillCircle(120,60,50);
```

Screen shot of above example

8.9 Drawing ellipses

GUI_DrawEllipse()**Description**

Draws the outline of an ellipse of specified dimensions, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawEllipse (int x0, int y0, int rx, int ry);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
y0	Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
rx	X-radius of the ellipse (half the diameter). Minimum: 0; maximum: 180.
ry	Y-radius of the ellipse (half the diameter). Minimum: 0; maximum: 180.

Additional information

This routine cannot handle rx/ry parameters in excess of 180 because it uses integer calculations that would otherwise produce an overflow.

Example

See the `GUI_FillEllipse()` example.

GUI_FillEllipse()

Description

Draws a filled ellipse of specified dimensions at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_FillEllipse(int x0, int y0, int rx, int ry);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
y0	Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
rx	X-radius of the ellipse (half the diameter). Minimum: 0; maximum: 180.
ry	Y-radius of the ellipse (half the diameter). Minimum: 0; maximum: 180.

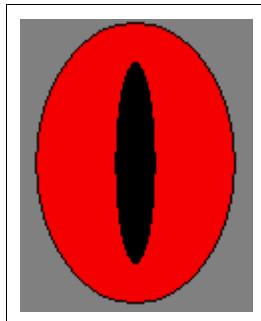
Additional information

This routine cannot handle a rx/ry parameters in excess of 180.

Example

```
/*
  Demo ellipses
*/
GUI_SetColor(0xff);
GUI_FillEllipse(100, 180, 50, 70);
GUI_SetColor(0x0);
GUI_DrawEllipse(100, 180, 50, 70);
GUI_SetColor(0x000000);
GUI_FillEllipse(100, 180, 10, 50);
```

Screen shot of above example



8.10 Drawing arcs

GUI_DrawArc()

Description

Draws an arc of specified dimensions at a specified position in the current window. An arc is a section of the outline of a circle.

Prototype

```
void GL_DrawArc (int xCenter, int yCenter, int rx, int ry, int a0, int a1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
xCenter	Horizontal position of the center in pixels of the client window.
yCenter	Vertical position of the center in pixels of the client window.
rx	X-radius (pixels).
ry	Y-radius (pixels).
a0	Starting angle (degrees).
a1	Ending angle (degrees).

Limitations

Currently the ry parameter is not used. The rx parameter is used instead.

Additional information

GUI_DrawArc() uses the floating-point library. It cannot handle rx/ry parameters in excess of 180 because it uses integer calculations that would otherwise produce an overflow.

Example

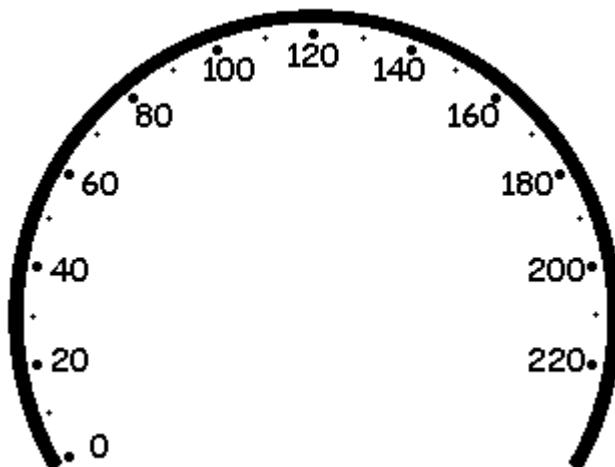
```
void DrawArcScale(void) {
    int x0 = 160;
    int y0 = 180;
    int i;
    char ac[4];
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetPenSize( 5 );
    GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_FontComic18B_ASCII);
    GUI_SetColor( GUI_BLACK );
```

```

GUI_DrawArc( x0,y0,150, 150,-30, 210 );
GUI_Delay(1000);
for (i=0; i<= 23; i++) {
    float a = (-30+i*10)*3.1415926/180;
    int x = -141*cos(a)+x0;
    int y = -141*sin(a)+y0;
    if (i%2 == 0)
        GUI_SetPenSize( 5 );
    else
        GUI_SetPenSize( 4 );
    GUI_DrawPoint(x,y);
    if (i%2 == 0) {
        x = -123*cos(a)+x0;
        y = -130*sin(a)+y0;
        sprintf(ac, "%d", 10*i);
        GUI_SetTextAlign(GUI_TA_VCENTER);
        GUI_DispStringHCenterAt(ac,x,y);
    }
}
}

```

Screen shot of above example



8.11 Drawing graphs

GUI_DrawGraph()

Description

Draws a graph at once.

Prototype

```
void GUI_DrawGraph(I16 *paY, int NumPoints, int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
paY	Pointer to an array containing the Y-values of the graph.
NumPoints	Number of Y-values to be displayed.
x0	Starting point in x.
y0	Starting point in y.

Additional information

The function first sets the line-cursor to the position specified with `x0`, `y0` and the first Y-value of the given array. Then it starts drawing lines to $x0 + 1, y0 + \text{*(paY} + 1)$, $x0 + 2, y0 + \text{*(paY} + 2)$ and so on.

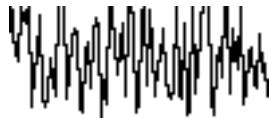
Example

```
#include "GUI.h"
#include <stdlib.h>

I16 aY[100];

void MainTask(void) {
    int i;
    GUI_Init();
    for (i = 0; i < GUI_COUNTOF(aY); i++) {
        aY[i] = rand() % 50;
    }
    GUI_DrawGraph(aY, GUI_COUNTOF(aY), 0, 0);
}
```

Screen shot of above example



8.12 Saving and restoring the GUI-context

GUI_RestoreContext()

Description

The function restores the GUI-context.

Prototype

```
void GUI_RestoreContext(const GUI_CONTEXT* pContext);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pContext</code>	Pointer to a <code>GUI_CONTEXT</code> structure containing the new context.

Additional information

The GUI-context contains the current state of the GUI like the text cursor position, a pointer to the current font and so on. Sometimes it could be usefull to save the current state ant to restore it later. For this you can use these functions.

GUI_SaveContext()

Description

The function saves the current GUI-context. (See also `GUI_RestoreContext`)

Prototype

```
void GUI_SaveContext(GUI_CONTEXT* pContext);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pContext	Pointer to a GUI_CONTEXT structure for saving the current context.

8.13 Clipping

GUI_SetClipRect()

Description

Sets the clipping rectangle used for limiting the output.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetClipRect(const GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to the rectangle which should be used for clipping. A NULL pointer should be used to restore the default value.

Additional information

The clipping area is per default limited to the configured (virtual) display size. Under some circumstances it can be useful to use a smaller clipping rectangle, which can be set using this function. The rectangle referred to should remain unchanged until the function is called again with a NULL pointer.

Sample

The following sample shows how to use the function:

```
GUI_RECT Rect = {10, 10, 100, 100};
GUI_SetClipRect(&Rect);
. /* Use the clipping area ... */
. GUI_SetClipRect(NULL);
```


Chapter 9

Displaying bitmap files

The recommended and most efficient way to display a bitmap known at compile time is to use the bitmap converter to convert it into a "C" file and add it to the project / makefile. For details about the bitmap converter please refer to chapter 10, "Bitmap converter".

If the application needs to display images not known at compile time, the image needs to be available in a graphic file format support by µC/GUI. In this case, the image file can reside in memory or on an other storage device; it can be displayed even if the amount of available memory is less than the size of the image file. µC/GUI currently supports BMP, JPEG and GIF file formats.

9.1 BMP file support

Although bitmaps which can be used with µC/GUI are normally defined as GUI_BITMAP structures in "C", there may be situations when using these types of structures is not desirable. A typical example would be an application that continuously references new images, such as bitmaps downloaded by the user. The following functions support .bmp files which have been loaded into memory.

For images that you plan to re-use (i.e. a company logo) it is much more efficient to define them as GUI_BITMAP structures that can be used directly by µC/GUI. This may be easily done with the Bitmap Converter.

9.1.1 Supported formats

The BMP file format has been defined by Microsoft. There are a number of different formats as shown in the table below:

Bits per pixel	Indexed	Compression	Supported
1	yes	no	yes
4	yes	no	yes
4	yes	yes	no
8	yes	no	yes
8	yes	yes	no
16	no	no	no
24	no	no	yes
32	no	no	yes

9.1.2 BMP file API

The table below lists the available BMP file related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follows:

Routine	Explanation
GUI_BMP_Draw()	Draws a bitmap file which has been loaded into memory.
GUI_BMP_DrawEx()	Draws a BMP file which needs not to be loaded into memory.
GUI_BMP_DrawScaled()	Draws a BMP file with scaling which has been loaded into memory.
GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx()	Draws a BMP file with scaling which needs not to be loaded into memory.
GUI_BMP_GetXSize()	Returns the X-size of a bitmap loaded into memory.
GUI_BMP_GetXSizeEx()	Returns the X-size of a BMP file which needs not to be loaded into memory.
GUI_BMP_GetYSize()	Returns the Y-size of a bitmap loaded into memory.
GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx()	Returns the Y-size of a BMP file which needs not to be loaded into memory.
GUI_BMP_Serialize()	Creates a BMP-file.
GUI_BMP_SerializeEx()	Creates a BMP-file from the given rectangle.

GUI_BMP_Draw()

Description

Draws a Windows .bmp file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_Draw(const void* pBMP, int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pBMP	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .bmp file resides.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.

Additional information

There are different types of .bmp files. Supported types are 1/4/8/24 bpp files. These are the most common file types; other types and compression are not supported. The samples shipped with µC/GUI contain an example that uses this function to show all files in the Windows system directory.

GUI_BMP_DrawEx()

Description

Draws a .bmp file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_DrawEx(GUI_BMP_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p,
                    int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
fpGetData	Pointer to a function which is called by the BMP routine for getting data.
p	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by fpGetData.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

This function is used for drawing .bmp files if not enough RAM is available to load the whole file into memory. The GUI library then calls the function pointed by the parameter fpGetData to read the data.

Prototype of 'GetData' function

```
int APP_GetData(void * p, int NumBytesReq,
                const U8 ** ppData, unsigned StartOfFile);
```

Description of 'GetData' function

The function needs to return the number of requested bytes. The maximum number of bytes requested by the GUI is the number of bytes needed for drawing one line of the image.

Example

The following code excerpt shows how to use the function:

```

static char acBuffer[0x200];

int APP_GetData(void * p, int NumBytesReq, const U8 ** ppData, unsigned StartOfFile) {
    DWORD NumBytesRead;
    HANDLE * phFile;
    phFile = (HANDLE *)p;
    if (StartOfFile) {
        /* Reset file pointer to the beginning of the file */
        .../* TBD */
    }
    /* Read BMP file data into buffer */
    .../* TBD */
    return NumBytesRead;
}

void DrawBMP(HANDLE hFile, int x, int y) {
    GUI_BMP_DrawEx(APP_GetData, (void *)&hFile, x, y);
}

```

GUI_BMP_DrawScaled()

Description

Draws a .bmp file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_DrawScaled(const void * pImageData,
                      int x0, int y0, int Num, int Denom);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pImageData	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .bmp file resides.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
Num	Numerator to be used for scaling.
Denom	Denominator used for scaling.

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunk to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx()

Description

Draws a .bmp file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx(GUI_BMP_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p,
```

```
int x0, int y0, int Num, int Denom);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>fpGetData</code>	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
<code>p</code>	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>fpGetData</code> .
<code>x0</code>	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
<code>y0</code>	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
<code>Num</code>	Numerator to be used for scaling.
<code>Denom</code>	Denominator used for scaling.

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunked to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

For more details please refer to the function `GUI_BMP_DrawEx()` explained earlier in this chapter.

GUI_BMP_GetXSize()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified bitmap which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_GetXSize(const void* pBMP);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pBMP</code>	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .bmp file resides.

Return value

X-size of the bitmap.

GUI_BMP_GetXSizeEx()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified .bmp file which does not have to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_GetXSizeEx(GUI_BMP_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>fpGetData</code>	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
<code>p</code>	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>fpGetData</code> .

Return value

X-size of the bitmap.

GUI_BMP_GetYSize()

Description

Returns the Y-size of a specified bitmap which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_GetYSize(const void* pBMP);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pBMP	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .bmp file resides.

Return value

Y-size of the bitmap.

GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx()

Description

Returns the Y-size of a specified .bmp file which does not have to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx(GUI_BMP_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p);
```

Parameter	Meaning
fpGetData	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
p	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by fpGetData.

Return value

Y-size of the bitmap.

GUI_BMP_Serialize()

Description

The function creates a BMP-file containing the complete contents of the LCD.

Prototype

```
void GUI_BMP_Serialize(GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P * pfSerialize, void * p);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pfSerialize	Pointer to serialization function
p	Pointer to user defined data passed to serialization function

Additional information

The following sample will show how to create a BMP-file under windows.

```
static void _DrawSomething(void) {
    /* Draw something */
    GUI_DrawLine(10, 10, 100, 100);
}

static void _WriteByte2File(U8 Data, void * p) {
    U32 nWritten;
    WriteFile(*((HANDLE *)p), &Data, 1, &nWritten, NULL);
```

```

}

static void _ExportToFile(void) {
    HANDLE hFile = CreateFile("C:\\GUI_BMP_Serialize.bmp",
        GENERIC_WRITE, 0, 0,
        CREATE_ALWAYS, FILE_ATTRIBUTE_NORMAL, 0);
    GUI_BMP_Serialize(_WriteByte2File, &hFile);
    CloseHandle(hFile);
}

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    _DrawSomething();
    _ExportToFile();
}

```

GUI_BMP_SerializeEx()

Description

The function creates a BMP-file containing the given area.

Prototype

```
void GUI_BMP_SerializeEx(GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_U8_P * pfSerialize,
                           int x0, int y0,
                           int xSize, int ySize, void * p);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pfSerialize	Pointer to serialization function.
x0	Start position in X to create the BMP-file.
y0	Start position in Y to create the BMP-file.
xSize	Size in X.
ySize	Size in Y.
p	Pointer to user defined data passed to serialization function.

Additional information

(See GUI_BMP_Serialize)

9.2 JPEG file support

The µC/GUI JPEG file support can be found in the GUI\JPEG subdirectory and supports JPEG image decompression. JPEG (pronounced "jay-peg") is a standardized compression method for full-color and gray-scale images. JPEG is intended for compressing "real-world" scenes; line drawings, cartoons and other non-realistic images are not its strong suit. JPEG is lossy, meaning that the output image is not exactly identical to the input image. Hence you must not use JPEG if you have to have identical output bits. However, on typical photographic images, very good compression levels can be obtained with no visible change, and remarkably high compression levels are possible if you can tolerate a low-quality image.

Please note, that the µC/GUI JPEG file support is only available in the color version. The JPEG package is not shipped with monochrome versions.

9.2.1 Supported JPEG compression methods

This software implements JPEG baseline, extended-sequential, and progressive compression processes. Provision is made for supporting all variants of these processes, although some uncommon parameter settings aren't implemented yet. For legal reasons, code for the arithmetic-coding variants of JPEG is not distributed. It appears that the arithmetic coding option of the JPEG spec is covered by patents owned by IBM, AT&T, and Mitsubishi. Hence arithmetic coding cannot legally be used without obtaining one or more licenses. For this reason, support for arithmetic coding has not been included to the free JPEG software. (Since arithmetic coding provides only a marginal gain over the unpatented Huffman mode, it is unlikely that very many implementations will support it.) So far as we are aware, there are no patent restrictions on the remaining code.

The library does not contain provision for supporting the hierarchical or lossless processes defined in the standard.

9.2.2 Converting a JPEG file to 'C' source

Under some circumstances it can be useful to add a JPEG file as 'C' file to the project. In this case the JPEG file first needs to be converted to a 'C' file. This can be done using the tool Bin2C.exe shipped with µC/GUI. It can be found in the Tools sub-folder. It converts the given binary file (in this case the JPEG file) to a 'C' file. The filename of the 'C' file is the same as the binary file name with the file extension '.c'. The following steps will show how to embed a JPEG file using Bin2C:

- Start Bin2C.exe and select the JPEG file to be converted to a 'C' file, for example 'Image.jpeg' and convert it to a 'C' file.
- Add the 'C' file to the project.

Sample

The following sample shows how to display the converted JPEG file:

```
#include "GUI.h"
#include "Image.c" /* Include the converted 'C' file */

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_JPEG_Draw(acImage, sizeof(acImage), 0, 0);
    ...
}
```

9.2.3 Displaying JPEG files

The graphic library first decodes the graphic information. If the image has to be drawn the decoding process takes considerable time. If a JPEG file is used in a frequently called callback routine of the window manager, the decoding process can take a considerable amount of time. The calculation time can be reduced by the use of memory devices. The best way would be to draw the image first into a memory device. In this case the decompression would be executed only one time. For more information about memory devices please take a look to the memory device chapter.

9.2.4 Memory usage

The JPEG decompression uses 38Kb RAM for decompression independent of the image size and a size dependent amount of bytes. The RAM requirement can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Approximate RAM requirement} = \text{X-Size of image} * 60 + 38\text{Kb}$$

9.2.5 Progressive JPEG files

Contrary to baseline and extended-sequential JPEG files progressive JPEGs consist of multiple scans. Each of these scans is based on the previous scan(s) and refines the appearance of the JPEG image. This requires scanning the whole file even if only one line needs to be decompressed.

If enough RAM is configured for the whole image data, the decompression needs only be done one time. If less RAM is configured, the JPEG decoder uses 'banding' for drawing the image. The more bands required the more times the image needs to be decompressed and the slower the performance. With other words: The more RAM the better the performance.

9.2.6 JPEG file API

The table below lists the available JPEG file related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follows:

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_JPEG_Draw()</code>	Draws a JPEG file which has been loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_JPEG_DrawEx()</code>	Draws a JPEG file which needs not to be loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled()</code>	Draws a JPEG file with scaling which has been loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx()</code>	Draws a JPEG file with scaling which needs not to be loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_JPEG_GetInfo()</code>	Fills a <code>GUI_JPEG_INFO</code> structure from a JPEG file which has been loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx()</code>	Fills a <code>GUI_JPEG_INFO</code> structure from a JPEG file which needs not to be loaded into memory.

`GUI_JPEG_Draw()`

Description

Draws a `.jpeg` file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_Draw(const void * pFileData, int DataSize, int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFileData	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .jpeg file resides.
DataSize	Number of bytes of the .jpeg file.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.

Return value

Zero if success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

The sample folder contains the sample `2DGL_DrawJPEG.c` which shows how to use the function.

GUI_JPEG_DrawEx()**Description**

Draws a .jpeg file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_DrawEx(GUI_JPEG_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData,
                     void * p, int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
fpGetData	Pointer to a function which is called by the JPEG routine for getting data.
p	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by fpGetData.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.

Return value

Zero if success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

This function is used for drawing .jpegs if not enough RAM is available for loading the whole file into memory. The JPEG library then calls the function pointed by the parameter `fpGetData` for getting data on demand.

Prototype of 'GetData' function

```
int APP_GetData(void * p, int NumBytesReq,
                const U8 ** ppData, unsigned StartOfFile);
```

Parameter	Meaning
p	Application defined void pointer.

Parameter	Meaning
NumBytesReq	Number of requested bytes.
ppData	Pointer to data pointer. This pointer should be set to a valid location.
StartOfFile	If this flag is 1, the data pointer should be set to the beginning of the data stream.

Return value of 'GetData' function

The function should return the number of available bytes. This could be less or equal the number of requested bytes. The function needs at least to return 1 new byte.

Example

The following code excerpt will show how to use the function:

```
static char acBuffer[0x200];
```

```
int APP_GetData(void * p, int NumBytesReq, const U8 ** ppData, unsigned StartOfFile) {
    int NumBytes;
    HANDLE hFile;
    hFile = *(HANDLE *)p;
    if (StartOfFile) {
        /* Reset file pointer to the beginning of the file */
        .../* TBD */
    }
    /* Calculate number of bytes to read */
    NumBytes = (sizeof(acBuffer) < NumBytesReq) ? sizeof(acBuffer) : NumBytesReq;
    /* Read JPEG file data into buffer */
    .../* TBD */
    return NumBytes;
}

void DrawJPEG(HANDLE hFile, int x, int y) {
    GUI_JPEG_DrawEx(APP_GetData, (void *)&hFile, x, y);
}
```

The sample folder contains the sample 2DGL_DrawJPGScaled.c which shows how to use a 'GetData' function.

GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled()

Description

Draws a .jpeg file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled(const void * pFileData, int DataSize,
                        int x0, int y0, int Num, int Denom);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFileData	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .jpeg file resides.
DataSize	Number of bytes of the .jpeg file.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
Num	Numerator to be used for scaling.
Denom	Denominator used for scaling.

Return value

Zero if success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunked to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

The sample folder contains the sample `2DGL_DrawJPGScaled.c` which shows how to draw scaled JPEGs.

GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx()

Description

Draws a `.jpeg` file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx(GUI_JPEG_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p,
                           int x0, int y0, int Num, int Denom);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>fpGetData</code>	Pointer to a function which is called by the JPEG routine for getting data.
<code>p</code>	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>fpGetData</code> .
<code>x0</code>	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
<code>y0</code>	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
<code>Num</code>	Numerator to be used for scaling.
<code>Denom</code>	Denominator used for scaling.

Return value

Zero if success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunked to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

For more details please refer to the function `GUI_JPEG_DrawEx()` explained earlier in this chapter.

The sample folder contains the sample `2DGL_DrawJPGScaled.c` which shows how to use the function.

GUI_JPEG_GetInfo()

Description

Fills a `GUI_JPEG_INFO` structure with information about the given image.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_GetInfo(const void * pFileData,
                      int DataSize,
```

```
GUI_JPEG_INFO* pInfo);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFileData	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .jpeg file resides.
DataSize	Number of bytes of the .jpeg file.
pInfo	Pointer to a GUI_JPEG_INFO structure to be filled by the function.

Return value

Zero if success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Elements of GUI_JPEG_INFO

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	XSize	Pixel size in X of the image.
int	YSize	Pixel size in Y of the image.

Additional information

The sample folder contains the sample 2DGL_DrawJPG.c which shows how to use the function.

GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx()

Description

Fills a GUI_JPEG_INFO structure with information about a .jpeg file, which does not have to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx(GUI_JPEG_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData,
                       void * p,
                       GUI_JPEG_INFO * pInfo);
```

Parameter	Meaning
fpGetData	Pointer to a function which is called by the JPEG routine for getting data.
p	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by fpGetData.
pInfo	Pointer to a GUI_JPEG_INFO structure to be filled by the function.

Return value

Zero if success, nonzero if the function fails. (The current implementation always returns 0)

Additional information

For more details about the function and the parameters fpGetData and p please refer to the function GUI_JPEG_GetInfo() and GUI_JPEG_DrawEx() explained earlier in this chapter.

The sample folder contains the sample 2DGL_DrawJPGscaled.c which shows how to use the function.

9.3 GIF file support

The GIF file format (Graphic Interchange Format) has been developed by the CompuServe Information Service in the 1980s. It has been designed to transmit images across data networks.

The GIF standard supports interlacing, transparency, application defined data, animations and rendering of raw text. The µC/GUI GIF file support is limited to only one image per file. Unsupported data like raw text or application specific data will be ignored.

GIF files uses the LZW (Lempel-Zif-Welch) file compression method for compressing the image data. This compression method works without loosing data. The output image is exactly identical to the input image.

9.3.1 Converting a GIF file to 'C' source

Under some circumstances it can be useful to add a GIF file as 'C' file to the project. This can be done by exactly the same way as described before under 'JPEG file support'.

9.3.2 Displaying GIF files

The graphic library first decodes the graphic information. If the image has to be drawn the decoding process takes considerable time. If a GIF file is used in a frequently called callback routine of the window manager, the decoding process can take a considerable amount of time. The calculation time can be reduced by the use of memory devices. The best way would be to draw the image first into a memory device. In this case the decompression would be executed only one time. For more information about memory devices please take a look to the memory device chapter.

9.3.3 Memory usage

The GIF decompression routine of µC/GUI needs about 16Kb static work area for decompression.

9.3.4 GIF file API

The table below lists the available GIF file related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follows:

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_GIF_Draw()</code>	Draws a GIF file which has been loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_DrawEx()</code>	Draws the given sub image of a GIF file which has been loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_DrawSub()</code>	Draws the given sub image of a GIF file which has been loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx()</code>	Draws the given sub image of a GIF file which needs not to be loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled()</code>	Draws the given sub image of a GIF file with scaling which has been loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx()</code>	Draws the given sub image of a GIF file with scaling which needs not to be loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_GetComment()</code>	Returns the given comment of a GIF file.
<code>GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx()</code>	Returns the given comment of a GIF file which needs not to be loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo()</code>	Returns information about the given sub image.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx()</code>	Returns information about the given sub image of a GIF file which needs not to be loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_GetInfo()</code>	Returns a GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO structure used for drawing animated GIFs.
<code>GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx()</code>	Returns information about a GIF file which needs not to be loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_GetXSize()</code>	Returns the X-size of a bitmap loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_GetXSizeEx()</code>	Returns the X-size of a bitmap which needs not to be loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_GetYSize()</code>	Returns the Y-size of a bitmap loaded into memory.
<code>GUI_GIF_GetYSizeEx()</code>	Returns the Y-size of a bitmap which needs not to be loaded into memory.

GUI_GIF_Draw()

Description

Draws the first image of a .gif file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_Draw(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes, int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pGIF</code>	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .gif file resides.
<code>NumBytes</code>	Number of bytes of the .gif file.
<code>x0</code>	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
<code>y0</code>	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

If the file contains more than one image, the function shows only the first image of the file. Transparency and interlaced images are supported.

GUI_GIF_DrawEx()

Description

Draws a .gif file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawEx(GUI_GIF_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p,
                    int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>fpGetData</code>	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
<code>p</code>	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>fpGetData</code> .
<code>x0</code>	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
<code>y0</code>	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.

Return value

0 on success, != 0 if the function fails.

Additional information

This function is used for drawing .jpegs if not enough RAM is available to load the whole file into memory. The JPEG library then calls the function pointed by the parameter fpGetData to read the data.

Prototype of 'GetData' function

```
int APP_GetData(void * p, int NumBytesReq,
                const U8 ** ppData, unsigned StartOfFile);
```

Parameter	Meaning
p	Application defined void pointer.
NumBytesReq	Number of requested bytes.
ppData	Pointer to data pointer. This pointer should be set to a valid location.
StartOfFile	If this flag is 1, the data pointer should be set to the beginning of the data stream.

Return value of 'GetData' function

The function should return the number of available bytes. This could be less or equal the number of requested bytes. The function needs at least to return 1 new byte.

Example

The following code excerpt shows how to use the function:

```
static char acBuffer[0x200];

int APP_GetData(void * p, int NumBytesReq, const U8 ** ppData, unsigned StartOfFile) {
    int NumBytes;
    HANDLE hFile;
    hFile = *(HANDLE *)p;
    if (StartOfFile) {
        /* Reset file pointer to the beginning of the file */
        .../* TBD */
    }
    /* Calculate number of bytes to read */
    NumBytes = (sizeof(acBuffer) < NumBytesReq) ? sizeof(acBuffer) : NumBytesReq;
    /* Read JPEG file data into buffer */
    .../* TBD */
    return NumBytes;
}

void DrawJPEG(HANDLE hFile, int x, int y) {
    GUI_JPEG_DrawEx(APP_GetData, (void *)&hFile, x, y);
}
```

GUI_GIF_DrawSub()

Description

Draws the given sub image of a .gif file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawSub(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes,
```

```
int x0, int y0, int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pGIF	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .gif file resides.
NumBytes	Number of bytes of the .gif file.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
Index	Zerobased index of sub image to be shown.

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

The function manages the background pixels between the current and the previous image. If for example sub image #3 should be drawn at offset x20/y20 with a size of w10/h10 and the previous sub image was shown at x15/y15 with a size of w20/h20 and the background needs to be redrawn, the function fills the pixels between the images with the background color.

The file `2DGL_DrawGIF.c` of the sample folder shows how to use the function.

GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx()

Description

Draws the given sub image of a .gif file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx(GUI_GIF_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p,
                      int x0, int y0, int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
fpGetData	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
p	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by fpGetData.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
Index	Zerobased index of sub image to be shown.

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

This function is used for drawing .gif images if not enough RAM is available to load the whole file into memory. The GUI library then calls the function pointed by the parameter `fpGetData` to read the data.

For more details please refer to the function `GUI_GIF_DrawEx()` explained earlier in this chapter.

GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled()

Description

Draws the given sub image of a .gif file, which has been loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled(const void * pFileData, int x0, int y0,
                           int Index, int Num, int Denom);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFileData	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .jpeg file resides.
DataSize	Number of bytes of the .jpeg file.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
Index	Zerobased index of sub image to be shown.
Num	Numerator to be used for scaling.
Denom	Denominator used for scaling.

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunked to 2/3 of size the parameter Num should be 2 and Denom should be 3.

GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx()

Description

Draws the given sub image of a .gif file, which does not have to be loaded into memory, at a specified position in the current window using scaling.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx(GUI_GIF_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p,
                            int x0, int y0, int Index, int Num, int Denom);
```

Parameter	Meaning
fpGetData	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
p	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by fpGetData.
x0	X-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
y0	Y-position of the upper left corner of the bitmap in the display.
Index	Zerobased index of sub image to be shown.
Num	Numerator to be used for scaling.
Denom	Denominator used for scaling.

Return value

Zero on success, nonzero if the function fails.

Additional information

The function scales the image by building a fraction with the given numerator and denominator. If for example an image should be shrunk to 2/3 of size the parameter `Num` should be 2 and `Denom` should be 3.

GUI_GIF_GetComment()

Description

Returns the given comment from the GIF image.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetComment(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes,
                      U8 * pBuffer, int MaxSize, int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pGIF</code>	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .gif file resides.
<code>NumBytes</code>	Number of bytes of the .gif file.
<code>pBuffer</code>	Pointer to a buffer to be filled with the comment.
<code>MaxSize</code>	Size of the buffer.
<code>Index</code>	Zero based index of comment to be returned.

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

A GIF file can contain 1 or more comments. The function copies the comment into the given buffer. If the comment is larger than the given buffer only the bytes which fit into the buffer will be copied.

The file `2DGL_DrawGIF.c` of the sample folder shows how to use the function.

GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx()

Description

Returns the given comment from a GIF image, which does not have to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx(GUI_GIF_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p,
                        U8 * pBuffer, int MaxSize, int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>fpGetData</code>	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
<code>p</code>	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>fpGetData</code> .
<code>pBuffer</code>	Pointer to a buffer to be filled with the comment.
<code>MaxSize</code>	Size of the buffer.
<code>Index</code>	Zero based index of comment to be returned.

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

For details please refer to the function `GUI_GIF_GetComment()`.

GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo()

Description

Returns information about the given sub image.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes,
                         GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO * pInfo, int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pGIF	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .gif file resides.
NumBytes	Number of bytes of the .gif file.
pInfo	Pointer to a <code>GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO</code> structure which will be filled by the function.
Index	Zero based index of sub image.

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Elements of `GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO`

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	xPos	X position of the last drawn image.
int	yPos	Y position of the last drawn image.
int	xSize	X size of the last drawn image.
int	ySize	Y size of the last drawn image.
int	Delay	Time in 1/100 seconds the image should be shown in a movie.

Additional information

If an image needs be shown as a movie this function should be used to get the time the sub image should be visible and the next sub image should be shown.

If the delay member is 0 the image should be visible for 1/10 second.

GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx()

Description

Returns information about the given sub image of a GIF file, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx(GUI_GIF_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p,
                           GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO * pInfo, int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
fpGetData	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
p	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by fpGetData.
pInfo	Pointer to a <code>GUI_GIF_IMAGE_INFO</code> structure which will be filled by the function.
Index	Zero based index of sub image.

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Additional information

For more details please refer to the function `GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo()`.

GUI_GIF_GetInfo()

Description

Returns an information structure of the given GIF image with information about the size and the number of images within the given file.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetInfo(const void * pGIF, U32 NumBytes, GUI_GIF_INFO * pInfo);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pGIF</code>	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .gif file resides.
<code>NumBytes</code>	Number of bytes of the .gif file.
<code>pInfo</code>	Pointer to a <code>GUI_GIF_INFO</code> structure which will be filled by this function.

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Elements of `GUI_GIF_INFO`

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	XSize	Pixel size in X of the image.
int	YSize	Pixel size in Y of the image.
int	NumImages	Number of images in the file.

GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx()

Description

Returns an information structure with information about the size and the number of sub images within the given GIF file, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx(GUI_GIF_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p,
                      GUI_GIF_INFO * pInfo);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>fpGetData</code>	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
<code>p</code>	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by <code>fpGetData</code> .
<code>pInfo</code>	Pointer to a <code>GUI_GIF_INFO</code> structure which will be filled by this function.

Return value

0 on success, != 0 on error.

Elements of GUI_GIF_INFO

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	XSize	Pixel size in X of the image.
int	YSize	Pixel size in Y of the image.
int	NumImages	Number of sub images in the file.

GUI_GIF_GetXSize()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified GIF image which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetXSize(const void * pGIF);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pGIF	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .gif file resides.

Return value

X-size of the GIF image.

GUI_GIF_GetXSizeEx()

Description

Returns the X-size of a specified GIF image, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetXSizeEx(GUI_GIF_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p);
```

Parameter	Meaning
fpGetData	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
p	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by fpGetData.

Return value

X-size of the GIF image.

GUI_GIF_GetYSize()

Description

Returns the Y-size of a specified GIF image which has been loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetYSize(const void * pGIF);;
```

Parameter	Meaning
pGIF	Pointer to the start of the memory area in which the .bmp file resides.

Return value

Y-size of the GIF image.

GUI_GIF_GetYSizeEx()

Description

Returns the Y-size of a specified GIF image, which needs not to be loaded into memory.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GIF_GetYSizeEx(GUI_GIF_GET_DATA_FUNC * fpGetData, void * p);
```

Parameter	Meaning
fpGetData	Pointer to a function which is called by the GUI for getting data.
p	Void pointer passed to the function pointed by fpGetData.

Return value

Y-size of the GIF image.

Chapter 10

Fonts

The most common fonts are shipped with uC/GUI as standard fonts. In fact, you will probably find that these fonts are fully sufficient for your application. For detailed information on the individual fonts, please refer to the subchapter "Standard Fonts", which describes all fonts included with uC/GUI and shows all characters as they appear on the display.

uC/GUI supports ASCII, ISO 8859-1 and Unicode. Usually, uC/GUI is compiled for 8-bit characters, allowing for a maximum of 256 different character codes out of which the first 32 are reserved as control characters. The characters that are available depends on the selected font.

10.1 Font types

The current µC/GUI version supports 5 types of fonts:

- Monospaced bitmap fonts
- Proportional bitmap fonts
- Antialiased fonts with 2 bpp built-in antialiasing information
- Antialiased fonts with 4 bpp built-in antialiasing information
- Extended proportional bitmap fonts

For more information on antialiased fonts, please refer to Chapter 22: "Antialiasing".

10.2 Font formats

µC/GUI supports 3 kinds of font formats which are explained in the following.

10.2.1 'C' file format

This is the most common way of using fonts. When using fonts in form of 'C' files, we recommend compiling all available fonts and linking them as library modules or putting all of the font object files in a library which you can link with your application. This way you can be sure that only the fonts which are needed by your application are actually linked. The font converter (described in a separate manual) may be used to create additional fonts.

When to use

This format should be used if the fonts are known at compile time and if there is enough addressable memory available for the font data.

Requirements

In order to be able to use a font 'C' file in your application, the following requirements must be met:

- The font file is in a form compatible with µC/GUI as "C" file, object file or library.
- The font file is linked with your application.
- The font declaration is contained in the application.

10.2.2 System Independent Font (SIF) format

System independent fonts are binary data blocks containing the font information. The font converter can be used to create system independent fonts. This tool is not part of the basic package. A short description follows later in this chapter. For details about how to create system independent fonts please refer to the font converter documentation.

When to use

This format should be used if the fonts are not known at compile time and if there is enough addressable memory available for the font data.

Requirements

In order to be able to use a SIF font file in your application, it is required that the whole file reside in addressable memory (ROM or RAM).

10.2.3 External Bitmap Font (XBF) format

As well as SIF fonts XBF fonts are binary data blocks containing the font information and the font converter can be used to create XBF files.

Contrary to other fonts, XBF fonts do not have to reside in memory when they are used, whereas all other kinds of µC/GUI fonts need to reside completely in memory. The XBF font file can remain on any external media when it is used. Data access is done by a 'GetData' callback function whereas all other fonts need to reside in addressable memory (RAM or ROM). The advantage of XBF fonts is that it is possible to use very large fonts on system with little memory.

When to use

This format should be used if there is not enough addressable memory available for the font data and if there is any kind of external media available for storing the fonts.

Requirements

In order to be able to use a XBF font in your application, a 'GetData' callback function is required which is responsible for getting font data.

-

10.3 Font API

The table below lists the available font-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
Selection of a font	
<code>GUI_GetFont()</code>	Returns a pointer to the currently selected font.
<code>GUI_SetFont()</code>	Sets the current font.
<code>GUI_SIF_CreateFont()</code>	Creates and selects a font by passing a pointer to system independent font data.
<code>GUI_SIF_DeleteFont()</code>	Deletes a font created by <code>GUI_SIF_CreateFont()</code>
<code>GUI_XBF_CreateFont()</code>	Creates and selects a font by passing a pointer to a callback function, which is responsible for getting data from the XBF font file.
<code>GUI_XBF_DeleteFont()</code>	Deletes a font created by <code>GUI_XBF_CreateFont()</code>
Font-related functions	
<code>GUI_GetCharDistX()</code>	Returns the width in pixels (X-size) of a specified character in the current font.
<code>GUI_GetFontDistY()</code>	Returns the Y-spacing of the current font.
<code>GUI_GetFontInfo()</code>	Returns a structure containing font information.
<code>GUI_GetFontSizeY()</code>	Returns the height in pixels (Y-size) of the current font.
<code>GUI_GetLeadingBlankCols()</code>	Returns the number of leading blank pixel columns of the given character.
<code>GUIGetStringDistX()</code>	Returns the X-size of a text using the current font.
<code>GUI.GetTextExtend</code>	Evaluates the size of a text using the current font
<code>GUI_GetTrailingBlankCols()</code>	Returns the number of trailing blank pixel columns of the given character.
<code>GUI_GetYDistOfFont()</code>	Returns the Y-spacing of a particular font.
<code>GUI_GetYSizeOfFont()</code>	Returns the Y-size of a particular font.
<code>GUI_IsInFont()</code>	Evaluates whether a specified character is in a particular font.

10.4 Selection of a font

uC/GUI offers different fonts, one of which is always selected. This selection can be changed by calling the function `GUI_SetFont()`, which selects the font to use for all text output to follow for the current task.

If no font has been selected by your application, the default font is used. This default is configured in `GUIConf.h` and can be changed. You should make sure that the default font is one that you are actually using in your application because the default font will be linked with your application and will therefore use up ROM memory.

GUI_GetFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * GUI_GetFont(void)
```

GUI_SetFont()

Description

Sets the font to be used for text output.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * GUI_SetFont(const GUI_FONT * pNewFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the font to be selected and used.

Return value

Returns a pointer to the previously selected font so that it may be restored at a later point.

Examples

Displays sample text in 3 different sizes, restoring the former font afterwards:

```
void DispText(void) {
    const GUI_FONT GUI_FLASH* OldFont=GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_DispStringAt("This text is 8 by 16 pixels",0,0);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font6x8);
    GUI_DispStringAt("This text is 6 by 8 pixels",0,20);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8);
    GUI_DispStringAt("This text is proportional",0,40);
    GUI_SetFont(OldFont);                                // Restore font
}
```

Screen shot of above example:

```
This text is 8 by 16 pixels
This text is 6 by 8 pixels
This text is proportional
```

Displays text and value in different fonts:

```

GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font6x8);
GUI_DispString("The result is: ");// Disp text
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
GUI_DispDec(42,2);// Disp value

```

Screen shot of above example:

The result is: 42

GUI_SIF_CreateFont()

Description

Sets the font to be used by passing a pointer to system independent font data.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SIF_CreateFont(void * pFontData, GUI_FONT * pFont,
                        const GUI_SIF_TYPE * pFontType);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFontData	Pointer to the system independent font data.
pFont	Pointer to a GUI_FONT structure in RAM filled by the function.
pFontType	See table below.

Permitted values for element pFontType	
GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP	A non antialiased 1bpp proportional font should be used.
GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP_AA2	Should be used if the parameter pFont points to a proportional font, which uses 2bpp antialiasing.
GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP_AA4	Should be used if the parameter pFont points to a proportional font, which uses 4bpp antialiasing.
GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP_EXT	Should be used if the parameter pFont points to a non antialiased extended proportional font.

Additional Information

Contrary to the uC/GUI standard fonts which must be compiled and linked with the application program, system independent fonts (SIF) are binary data blocks containing the font information. The font converter can be used to create system independent fonts. This tool is not part of the basic package. A short description follows later in this chapter. For details about how to create system independent fonts please refer to the font converter documentation.

When using this function uC/GUI needs to fill a GUI_FONT structure with the font information. The user needs to pass a pointer to this structure in the parameter pFont. The contents of this structure must remain valid during the use of the font.

The function does not know what kind of font should be created. To tell the function the type of the font to be created it must be passed in the parameter pFontType. This has been done to avoid linkage of code which is not required.

Example

```

static GUI_FONT _Font; /* Font structure in RAM */

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_SIF_CreateFont(_DownloadedFont, &_Font, GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP);
    GUI_DispString("Hello World!");
    while (1) {
        GUI_Exec();
    }
}

```

```

    }
}
```

GUI_SIF_DeleteFont()

Description

Deletes a font pointed by the parameter `pFont`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SIF_DeleteFont(GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the font to be deleted.

Additional Information

After using a font created with `GUI_SIF_CreateFont()` the font should be deleted if not used anymore.

Example

```
GUI_FONT _Font; /* Font structure in RAM */
GUI_SIF_CreateFont(_DownloadedFont, &_Font, GUI_SIF_TYPE_PROP);
/*
   Use the font
*/
GUI_SIF_DeleteFont(&_Font);
```

GUI_XBF_CreateFont()

Description

Creates and selects a font by passing a pointer to a callback function, which is responsible for getting data from the XBF font file.

Prototype

```
int GUI_XBF_CreateFont(GUI_FONT * pFont,
                      GUI_XBF_DATA * pXBF_Data,
                      const GUI_XBF_TYPE * pFontType,
                      GUI_XBF_GET_DATA_FUNC * pfGetData,
                      void * pVoid);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to a <code>GUI_FONT</code> structure in RAM filled by the function.
<code>pXBF_Data</code>	Pointer to a <code>GUI_XBF_DATA</code> structure in RAM filled by the function.
<code>pFontType</code>	See table below.
<code>pfGetData</code>	Pointer to a callback function which is responsible for getting data from the font file.
<code>pVoid</code>	Application defined pointer passed to the 'GetData' callback function.

Permitted values for element <code>pFontType</code>	
<code>GUI_XBF_TYPE_PROP</code>	Should be used if a non antialiased proportional font should be created.

Additional Information

Contrary to the µC/GUI standard fonts, which must be compiled and linked with the application program, external binary fonts (XBF) are binary data blocks containing the font information. The font converter can be used to create XBF files. This tool is not part of the basic package. A short description of the font converter follows later in this chapter. For details about how to create external binary fonts please refer to the font converter documentation.

Contrary to other fonts, XBF fonts do not have to reside in memory when they are used, whereas all other kinds of µC/GUI fonts need to reside completely in memory. The XBF font file can remain on any external media during it is used. Data access is done by a 'GetData' callback function whereas all other fonts need to reside in addressable memory (RAM or ROM). The advantage of XBF fonts is that it is possible to use very large fonts on system with little memory.

The parameter `pfGetData` should point to an application defined callback routine, which is responsible for getting data from the font. Parameter `pVoid` is passed to the callback function when requesting font data. It can be used for example to pass a file handle to the callback function.

The function requires pointers to a `GUI_FONT` structure and a `GUI_XBF_DATA` structure. These structures will be filled by the function with font information. It is required, that the contents of this structures remain valid during the use of the font. Because the function does not know what kind of XBF font should be created, the parameter `pFontType` is used to tell the function the type of the font to be created. This has been done to avoid linkage of code which is not required.

Example

```
static GUI_FONT      Font;      /* GUI_FONT structure in RAM */
static GUI_XBF_DATA XBF_Data; /* GUI_XBF_DATA structure in RAM */

static int _cbGetData(U32 Off, U16 NumBytes, void * pVoid, void * pBuffer) {
    /* May use the pVoid pointer to get a file handle */
    .../* TBD */
    /* Set file pointer to the given position */
    .../* TBD */
    /* Read the required number of bytes into the given buffer */
    .../* TBD */
}

void CreateXBF_Font(void * pVoid) {
    GUI_XBF_CreateFont(&Font,           /* Pointer to GUI_FONT structure */
                       &XBF_Data,        /* Pointer to GUI_XBF_DATA structure */
                       GUI_XBF_TYPE_PROP, /* Font type to be created */
                       _cbGetData,        /* Pointer to callback function */
                       pVoid);           /* Pointer to be passed to callback */
}
```

GUI_XBF_DeleteFont()

Description

Deletes a XBF font pointed by the parameter `pFont`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_XBF_DeleteFont(GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the font to be deleted.

Additional Information

After using a font created with `GUI_XBF_CreateFont()` the font should be deleted if not used anymore.

10.5 Font-related functions

`GUI_GetCharDistX()`

Description

Returns the width in pixels (X-size) used to display a specified character in the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetCharDistX(U16 c);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>c</code>	Character to calculate width from.

`GUI_GetFontDistY()`

Description

Returns the Y-spacing of the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetFontDistY(void);
```

Additional information

The Y-spacing is the vertical distance in pixels between two adjacent lines of text. The returned value is the `yDist` value of the entry for the currently selected font. The returned value is valid for both proportional and monospaced fonts.

`GUI_GetFontInfo()`

Description

Calculates a pointer to a `GUI_FONTINFO` structure of a particular font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetFontInfo(const GUI_FONT*pFont, GUI_FONTINFO* pfi);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the font.
<code>pfi</code>	Pointer to a <code>GUI_FONTINFO</code> structure.

Additional information

The definition of the `GUI_FONTINFO` structure is as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    U16 Flags;
} GUI_FONTINFO;
```

The member variable `Flags` can take the following values:

```
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_PROP
```

```
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_MONO
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_AA
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_AA2
GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_AA4
```

Example

Gets the info of GUI_Font6x8. After the calculation, FontInfo.Flags contains the flag GUI_FONTINFO_FLAG_MONO.

```
GUI_FONTINFO FontInfo;
GUI_GetFontInfo(&GUI_Font6x8, &FontInfo);
```

GUI_GetFontSizeY()

Description

Returns the height in pixels (Y-size) of the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetFontSizeY(void);
```

Additional information

The returned value is the YSize value of the entry for the currently selected font. This value is less than or equal to the Y-spacing returned by the function GUI_GetFontDistY().

The returned value is valid for both proportional and monospaced fonts.

GUI_GetLeadingBlankCols()

Description

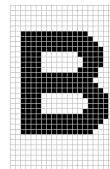
Returns the number of leading blank pixel columns in the currently selected font for the given character.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetLeadingBlankCols(U16 c);
```

Parameter	Meaning
c	Character to be used.

Sample



The result for the character 'B' shown in the screenshot above should be 2.

GUIGetStringDistX()

Description

Returns the X-size used to display a specified string in the currently selected font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetStringDistX(const char GUI_FAR *s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	Pointer to the string.

GUI_GetTextExtend()**Description**

Calculates the size of a given string using the current font.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetTextExtend(GUI_RECT* pRect, const char* s, int Len);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to GUI_RECT-structure to store result.
s	Pointer to the string.
Len	Number of characters of the string.

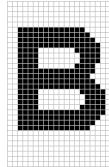
GUI_GetTrailingBlankCols()**Description**

Returns the number of trailing blank pixel columns in the currently selected font for the given character.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetTrailingBlankCols(U16 c);
```

Parameter	Meaning
c	Character to be used.

Sample

The result for the character 'B' shown in the screenshot above should be 1.

GUI_GetYDistOfFont()**Description**

Returns the Y-spacing of a particular font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetYDistOfFont(const GUI_FONT* pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to the font.

Additional information(see `GUI_GetFontDistY()`)**GUI_GetYSizeOfFont()****Description**

Returns the Y-size of a particular font.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetYSizeOfFont(const GUI_FONT* pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the font.

Additional information(see `GUI_GetFontSizeY()`)**GUI_IsInFont()****Description**

Evaluates whether or not a particular font contains a specified character.

Prototype

```
char GUI_IsInFont(const GUI_FONT*pFont, U16 c);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the font.
<code>c</code>	Character to be searched for.

Additional informationIf the pointer `pFont` is set to 0, the currently selected font is used.**Example**Evaluates whether the font `GUI_FontD32` contains an "X":

```
if (GUI_IsInFont(&GUI_FontD32, 'X') == 0) {
    GUI_DispString("GUI_FontD32 does not contain 'X'");
}
```

10.6 Character sets

10.6.1 ASCII

uC/GUI supports the full set of ASCII characters. These are the following 96 characters from 32 to 127:

Hex	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
2x		!		"#	\$	%	&		'()	*	+	,	-	.	/
3x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
4x	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
5x	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\]	^	_
6x		`a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
7x	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{		}	~	

Unfortunately, as ASCII stands for American Standard Code for Information Interchange, it is designed for American needs. It does not include any of the special characters used in European languages, such as Ä, Ö, Ü, á, à, and others. There is no single standard for these "European extensions" of the ASCII set of characters; several different ones exist. The one used on the Internet and by most Windows programs is ISO 8859-1, a superset of the ASCII set of characters.

10.6.2 ISO 8859-1 Western Latin character set

uC/GUI supports the ISO 8859-1, which defines characters as listed below:

Code	Description	Char
160	non-breaking space	
161	inverted exclamation	¡
162	cent sign	¢
163	pound sterling	£
164	general currency sign	¤
165	yen sign	¥
166	broken vertical bar	¦
167	section sign	§
168	umlaut (dieresis)	΅
169	copyright	©
170	feminine ordinal	ª
171	left angle quote, guillemotleft	«
172	not sign	¬
173	soft hyphen	‐
174	registered trademark	®
175	macron accent	—
176	degree sign	°
177	plus or minus	±
178	superscript two	²
179	superscript three	³
180	acute accent	ˊ
181	micro sign	µ
182	paragraph sign	¶
183	middle dot	·

Code	Description	Char
184	cedilla	¸
185	superscript one	¹
186	masculine ordinal	º
187	right angle quote, guillemot right	»
188	fraction one-fourth	¼
189	fraction one-half	½
190	fraction three-fourth	¾
191	inverted question mark	¿
192	capital A, grave accent	À
193	capital A, acute accent	Á
194	capital A, circumflex accent	Â
195	capital A, tilde	Ã
196	capital A, dieresis or umlaut mark	Ä
197	capital A, ring	Å
198	capital A, diphthong (ligature)	Æ
199	capital C, cedilla	Ҫ
200	capital E, grave accent	È
201	capital E, acute accent	É
202	capital E, circumflex accent	Ê
203	capital E, dieresis or umlaut mark	Ë
204	capital I, grave accent	Ì
205	capital I, acute accent	Í
206	capital I, circumflex accent	Î
207	capital I, dieresis or umlaut mark	Ï
208	Eth, Icelandic	Ð
209	N, tilde	Ñ
210	capital O, grave accent	Ò
211	capital O, acute accent	Ó
212	capital O, circumflex accent	Ô
213	capital O, tilde	Õ
214	capital O, dieresis or umlaut mark	Ö
215	multiply sign	×
216	capital O, slash	Ø
217	capital U, grave accent	Ù
218	capital U, acute accent	Ú
219	capital U, circumflex accent	Û
220	capital U, dieresis or umlaut mark	Ü
221	capital Y, acute accent	Ý
222	THORN, Icelandic	Þ
223	sharp s, German (s-z ligature)	ß
224	small a, grave accent	à
225	small a, acute accent	á
226	small a, circumflex accent	â
227	small a, tilde	ã
228	small a, dieresis or umlaut mark	ä
229	small a, ring	ܾ
230	small ae diphthong (ligature)	æ
231	cedilla	ç
232	small e, grave accent	è
233	small e, acute accent	é
234	small e, circumflex accent	ê
235	small e, dieresis or umlaut mark	ë
236	small i, grave accent	ି

Code	Description	Char
237	small i, acute accent	í
238	small i, circumflex accent	î
239	small i, dieresis or umlaut mark	ï
240	small eth, Icelandic	ð
241	small n, tilde	ñ
242	small o, grave accent	ò
243	small o, acute accent	ó
244	small o, circumflex accent	õ
245	small o, tilde	õ
246	small o, dieresis or umlaut mark	ö
247	division sign	÷
248	small o, slash	ø
249	small u, grave accent	ù
250	small u, acute accent	ú
251	small u, circumflex accent	û
252	small u, dieresis or umlaut mark	ü
253	small y, acute accent	ý
254	small thorn, Icelandic	þ
255	small y, dieresis or umlaut mark	ÿ

10.6.3 Unicode

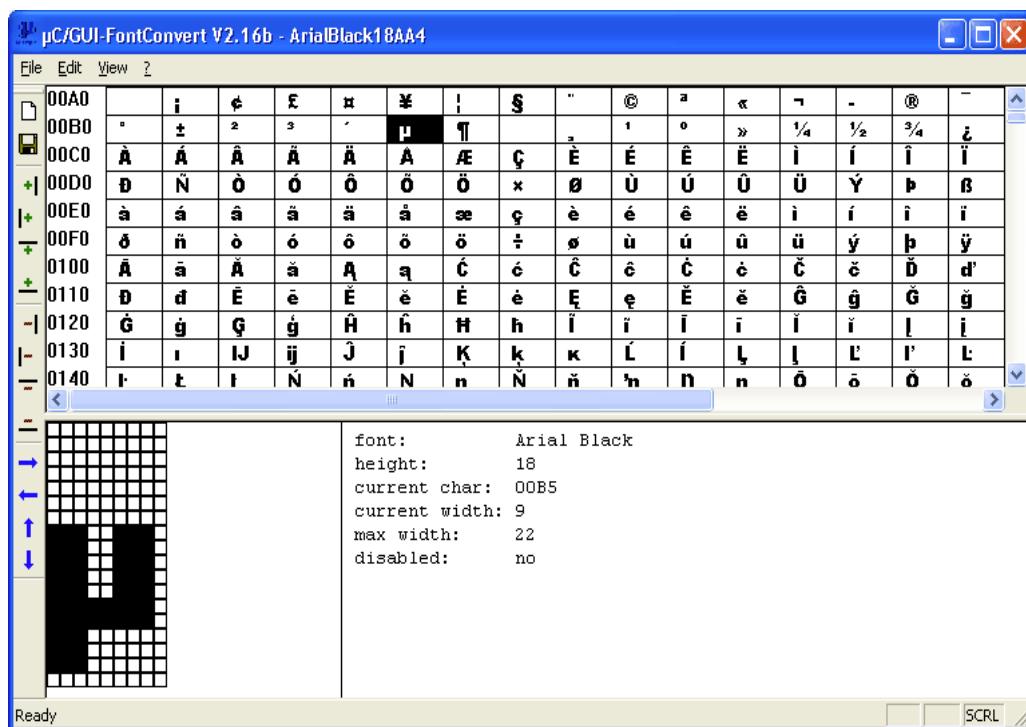
Unicode is the ultimate in character coding. It is an international standard based on ASCII and ISO 8859-1. Contrary to ASCII, UNICODE requires 16-bit characters because all characters have their own code. Currently, more than 30,000 different characters are defined. However, not all of the character images are defined in uC/GUI. It is the responsibility of the user to define these additional characters. Please contact Micrium or your distributor, as we may already have the character set that you need.

10.7 Font converter

Fonts which can be used with uC/GUI must be defined as `GUI_FONT` structures in "C". The structures -- or rather the font data which is referenced by these structures -- can be rather large. It is very time-consuming and inefficient to generate these fonts manually. We therefore recommend using the font converter, which automatically generates "C" files from fonts.

The font converter is a simple Windows program. You need only to load an installed Windows font into the program, edit it if you want or have to, and save it as a "C" file. The "C" file may then be compiled, allowing the font to be shown on your display with uC/GUI on demand.

The character codes 0x00 - 0x1F and 0x80 - 0x9F are disabled by default. The following is a sample screen shot of the font converter with a font loaded:



The font converter is described in a separate documentation which can be obtained by request from Micrium (info@micrium.com).

10.7.1 Adding fonts

Once you have created a font file and linked it to the project, declare the linked font as `extern const GUI_FONT`, as shown in the example below:

Example

```
extern const GUI_FONT GUI_FontNew;

int main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_FontNew);
    GUI_DispString("Hello world\n");
    return 0;
}
```

10.8 Standard fonts

uC/GUI is shipped with a selection of fonts which should cover most of your needs. The standard font package contains monospaced and proportional fonts in different sizes and styles. **Monospaced fonts** are fonts with a fixed character width, in which all characters have the same width in pixels. **Proportional fonts** are fonts in which each character has its own individual pixel-width.

This chapter provides an overview of the standard uC/GUI fonts.

10.8.1 Font identifier naming convention

All standard fonts are named as follows. The elements of the naming convention are then explained in the table:

`GUI_Font [<style>] [<width>x]<height>[x<MagX>x<MagY>] [H] [B] [_<charerset>]`

Element	Meaning
<code>GUI_Font</code>	Standard prefix for all fonts shipped with uC/GUI.
<code><style></code>	Specifies a non-standard font style. Example: Comic style in <code>GUI_FontComic18B_ASCII</code> .
<code><width></code>	Width of characters, contained only in monspaced fonts.
<code><height></code>	Height of the font in pixels.
<code><MagX></code>	Factor of magnification in X, contained only in magnified fonts.
<code><MagY></code>	Factor of magnification in Y, contained only in magnified fonts.
<code>H</code>	Abbreviation for "high". Only used if there is more than one font with the same height. It means that the font appears "higher" than other fonts.
<code>B</code>	Abbreviation for "bold". Used in bold fonts.
<code><charerset></code>	Specifies the contents of characters: ASCII: Only ASCII characters 0x20-0x7E (0x7F). 1: ASCII characters and European extensions 0xA0 - 0xFF. HK: Hiragana and Katakana. 1HK: ASCII, European extensions, Hiragana and Katakana. D: Digit fonts, character set: +-0123456789.

Example 1

`GUI_Font16_ASCII`

Element	Meaning
<code>GUI_Font</code>	Standard font prefix.
<code>16</code>	Heighth in pixels.
<code>ASCII</code>	Font contains ASCII characters only.

Example 2

`GUI_Font8x15B_ASCII`

Element	Meaning
<code>GUI_Font</code>	Standard font prefix.
<code>8</code>	Width of characters.
<code>x15</code>	Heighth in pixels.
<code>B</code>	Bold font.
<code>ASCII</code>	Font contains ASCII characters only.

Example 3

GUI_Font8x16x1x2

Element	Meaning
GUI_Font	Standard font prefix.
8	Width of characters.
x16	Height in pixels.
x1	Magnification factor in X.
x2	Magnification factor in Y.

10.8.2 Font file naming convention

The names for the font files are similar to the names of the fonts themselves. The files are named as follows:

F[<width>]<height>[H][B][<charsets>]

Element	Meaning
F	Standard prefix for all fonts files shipped with uC/GUI.
<width>	Width of characters, contained only in monospaced fonts.
<height>	Height of the font in pixels.
H	Abbreviation for "high". Only used if there is more than one font with the same height. It means that the font appears "higher" than other fonts.
B	Abbreviation for "bold". Used in bold fonts.
<charsets>	Specifies the contents of characters: ASCII: Only ASCII characters 0x20-0x7E (0x7F). 1: ASCII characters and European extensions 0xA0 - 0xFF. HK: Hiragana and Katakana. 1HK: ASCII, European extensions, Hiragana and Katakana. D: Digit fonts.

10.8.3 Measurement, ROM-size and character set of fonts

The following pages describe the standard fonts shipped with uC/GUI. For each font there is a measurement diagram, an overview of all characters included and a table containing the ROM size in bytes and the font files required for use.

The following parameters are used in the measurement diagrams:

Element	Meaning
F	Size of font in Y.
B	Distance of base line from the top of the font.
C	Height of capital characters.
L	Height of lowercase characters.
U	Size of underlength used by letters such as "g", "j" or "y".

10.8.4 Proportional fonts

10.8.4.1 Overview

The following screenshot gives an overview of all available proportional fonts:

GUI_Font8_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font8_1	ABCg
GUI_Font10S_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font10S_1	ABCg
GUI_Font10_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font10_1	ABCg
GUI_Font13_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font13_1	ABCg
GUI_Font13B_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font13B_1	ABCg
GUI_Font13H_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font13H_1	ABCg
GUI_Font13HB_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font13HB_1	ABCg
GUI_Font16_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font16_1	ABCg
GUI_Font16_HK	あぶエラ
GUI_Font16_1HK	ABCg
GUI_Font16B_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font16B_1	ABCg
GUI_FontComic18B_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_FontComic18B_1	ABCg
GUI_Font24_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font24_1	ABCg
GUI_Font24B_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font24B_1	ABCg
GUI_FontComic24B_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_FontComic24B_1	ABCg
GUI_Font32_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font32_1	ABCg
GUI_Font32B_ASCII	ABCg
GUI_Font32B_1	ABCg

10.8.4.2 Measurement, ROM size and used files

The following table shows the measurement, ROMsize and used files of the fonts:

Font name	Measurement	ROM size in bytes	Used files
GUI_Font8_ASCII	F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1	1562	F08_ASCII.c
GUI_Font8_1	F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1	1562+ 1586	F08_ASCII.c F08_1.c
GUI_Font10S_ASCII	F: 10, B: 8, C: 6, L: 4, U: 2	1760	F10S_ASCII.c
GUI_Font10S_1	F: 10, B: 8, C: 6, L: 4, U: 2	1760+ 1770	F10_ASCII.c F10_1.c
GUI_Font10_ASCII	F: 10, B: 9, C: 8, L: 6, U: 1	1800	F10_ASCII
GUI_Font10_1	F: 10, B: 9, C: 8, L: 6, U: 1	1800+ 2456	F10_ASCII.c F10_1.c
GUI_Font13_ASCII	F: 13, B: 11, C: 8, L: 6, U: 2	2076	F13_ASCII.c
GUI_Font13_1	F: 13, B: 11, C: 8, L: 6, U: 2	2076+ 2149	F13_ASCII.c F13_1.c
GUI_Font13B_ASCII	F: 13, B: 11, C: 8, L: 6, U: 2	2222	F13B_ASCII.c
GUI_Font13B_1	F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 7, U: 2	2222+ 2216	F13B_ASCII.c F13B_1.c
GUI_Font13H_ASCII	F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 7, U: 2	2232	F13H_ASCII.c
GUI_Font13H_1	F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 7, U: 2	2232+ 2291	F13H_ASCII.c F13H_1.c
GUI_Font13HB_ASCII	F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 7, U: 2	2690	F13HB_ASCII.c
GUI_Font13HB_1	F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 7, U: 2	2690+ 2806	F13HB_ASCII.c F13HB_1.c
GUI_Font16_ASCII	F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3	2714	F16_ASCII.c
GUI_Font16_1	F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3	2714+ 3850	F16_ASCII.c F16_1.c
GUI_Font16_HK	-	6950	F16_HK.c
GUI_Font16_1HK	F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3	120+ 6950+ 2714+ 3850	F16_1HK.c F16_HK.c F16_ASCII.c F16_1.c
GUI_Font16B_ASCII	F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3	2690	F16B_ASCII.c
GUI_Font16B_1	F: 16, B: 13, C: 10, L: 7, U: 3	2690+ 2790	F16B_ASCII.c F16B_1.c
GUI_FontComic18B_ASCII	F: 18, B: 15, C: 12, L: 9, U: 3	3572	FComic18B_ASCII.c
GUI_FontComic18B_1	F: 18, B: 15, C: 12, L: 9, U: 3	3572+ 4334	FComic18B_ASCII.c FComic18B_1.c
GUI_Font24_ASCII	F: 24, B: 19, C: 15, L: 11, U: 5	4786	F24_ASCII.c
GUI_Font24_1	F: 24, B: 19, C: 15, L: 11, U: 5	4786+ 5022	F24_ASCII.c F24_1.c

Font name	Measurement	ROM size in bytes	Used files
GUI_Font24B_ASCII	F: 24, B: 19, C: 15, L: 11, U: 5	4858	F24B_ASCII.c
GUI_Font24B_1	F: 24, B: 19, C: 15, L: 11, U: 5	4858+5022	F24B_ASCII.c F24B_1.c
GUI_FontComic24B_ASCII	F: 24, B: 20, C: 17, L: 13, U: 4	6146	FComic24B_ASCII
GUI_FontComic24B_1	F: 24, B: 20, C: 17, L: 13, U: 4	6146+5598	FComic24B_ASCII FComic24B_1
GUI_Font32_ASCII	F: 32, B: 26, C: 20, L: 15, U: 6	7234	F32_ASCII.c
GUI_Font32_1	F: 32, B: 26, C: 20, L: 15, U: 6	7234+7734	F32_ASCII.c F32_1.c
GUI_Font32B_ASCII	F: 32, B: 25, C: 20, L: 15, U: 7	7842	F32B_ASCII.c
GUI_Font32B_1	F: 32, B: 25, C: 20, L: 15, U: 7	7842+8118	F32B_ASCII.c F32B_1.c

10.8.4.3 Characters

The following shows all characters of all proportional standard fonts:

GUI_Font8_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'^*+,.-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Z\J^`_ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz()
```

GUI_Font8_1

```
!"#$%&'^*+,.-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Z\J^`_ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz()
```

GUI_Font10S_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'^*+,.-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[!`_`abcdef
ghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz()
```

GUI_Font10S_1

```
!"#$%&'^*+,.-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[!`_`abcdef
ghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz()
```

GUI_Font10_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'^*+,.-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[!`_`abcdef
ghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz()
```

GUI_Font10_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRSTU  
VWXYZ[\]^`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{}~ i¢£¤¥§©¤«¬®°±²³  
µ¶·¹⁰»¼½¾‡ÀÁÃÃÃÃÃÆÇÉÉÉÉÍÍÐÑÓÓÓÓ×ØÙÙÙÙÝþßååååå  
ææçééééííðñóóóó÷øùùùùýþý
```

GUI_Font13_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRST  
UWXYZ[\]^`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{}~
```

GUI_Font13_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRST  
UWXYZ[\]^`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{}~ i¢£¤¥§©¤«¬®°±²³  
µ¶·¹⁰»¼½¾‡ÀÁÃÃÃÃÃÆÇÉÉÉÉÍÍÐÑÓÓÓÓ×ØÙÙÙÙÝþßååååå  
ææçééééííðñóóóó÷øùùùùýþý
```

GUI_Font13B_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM  
NPQRSTUWXYZ[\]^`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{}~
```

GUI_Font13B_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM  
NPQRSTUWXYZ[\]^`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{}~ i¢£¤¥§©¤«¬®°±²³  
µ¶·¹⁰»¼½¾‡ÀÁÃÃÃÃÃÆÇÉÉÉÉÍÍÐÑÓÓÓÓÓ×ØÙÙÙÙÝþßååååå  
ææçééééííðñóóóó÷øùùùùýþý
```

GUI_Font13H_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM  
NPQRSTUWXYZ[\]^`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{}~
```

GUI_Font13H_1

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM  
NPQRSTUWXYZ[\]^`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{}~ i¢£¤¥§©¤«¬®°±²³  
µ¶·¹⁰»¼½¾‡ÀÁÃÃÃÃÃÆÇÉÉÉÉÍÍÐÑÓÓÓÓÓ×ØÙÙÙÙÝþßååååå  
ö÷øùùùùýþý
```

GUI_Font13HB_ASCII

```
!"#$%&'()*+,-./0123456789;=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM  
NPQRSTUWXYZ[\]^`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{}~
```

GUI_Font13HB_1

GUI_Font16_ASCII

!#\$%&'^*+,.-/0123456789;,<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM
NOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}

GUI Font16 1

GUI Font16 HK

ああいいうええおおかがきぎくぐけげこご
さざじじすずせぜそぞただちぢつづてと
どなにぬねのはばばひびひふぶぶへべべほぼ
ぼまみむめもややゅゆよよらりるれろわわゐ
ゑをんアアイイウウェエオオカガキギクグケ
ケコゴサザシジスズセゼソゾタダチヂツツツ
テデトドナニヌネノハババヒビビフブヘベ
ペホボボマミムメモヤヤユユヨヨラリルレロ
ワワヰヰヲシヴカケ

GUI Font16 1HK

GUI Font16B ASCII

!\"#\$%&'^+,.-/0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM
NOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~

GUI Font16B 1

!#\$%&'^+,.-/0123456789;:<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM
NOPQRSTUVWXYZ[]^`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
xyz{}~jç£¤¥§©«¬®±²³µ¶·¹º»¼¼²¼çÀÁÁÁÁÁÆ
ÇÉÉÉÉÍÍÍÐÑÓÓÓÓÓ×ØÙÙÙÙÝþÞàáââââæçééééííí
øñóóóóó÷øùúùúýþ

GUI FontComic18B ASCII

!#\$%&'()*,.-./0123456789;:<=>?@ABCD
EFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`ab
cdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~[]€

GUI_FontComic18B_1

GUI_Font24_ASCII

!'"#\$%&'()^+,-./0123456789::;<=>?
@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRSTUVWXYZ
\\WXYZ[\\"`_` abcdefghijklmnopqrst
uvwxyz[|]~

GUI Font24 1

!'"#\$%&'()*+,.-./0123456789;;<=>?
@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRSTU
VWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{[]}`~ ¡¢£¤¥!\$©«¬-®°±²³’µ
¶.¹º»¼¼³¼¿ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÍÏÏÐÑÒÓÔÖÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝþÞàáâäääåæçèéêëíïïðñòóôöö÷øùúûüýþý

GUI Font24B ASCII

!'"#\$%&'()>*+,-./0123456789:;<=>
?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRST
UVWXYZ[]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
qrstuvwxyz{}[]~

GUI_Font24B_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./0123456789:;<=>
 ?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRST
 UVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnop
 qrstuvwxyz{|}~ ¡¢£¤¥¦§¦©ª«¬®
 °±²³° µ¶·¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÃÄÅÆÇÈ
 ÉÊÃÍÏÐÑÒÓÔÖÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàá
 âãäåæçèéêëíïðñòóôöö÷øùúûü
 ýþý

GUI_FontComic24B_ASCII

!"#\$%&'0*+, -./0123456789:
 ;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNP
 QRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijkl
 jklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~[]

GUI_FontComic24B_1

!"#\$%&'0*+, -./0123456789:
 ;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNP
 QRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijkl
 jklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~[] ¡¢£¤¥¦
 §¦©ª«¬®°±²³° µ¶·¹º»¼½¾¿ÀÁÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊÃÍÏÐÑÒÓÔÖÖ×ØÙÚÛÜÝÞßàá
 âãäåæçèéêëíïðñòóôöö÷øùúûü
 ýþý

GUI_Font32_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,./012345678
 9::;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJK
 LMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]
 ^_`abcdefghijklmnpqrstuvwxyz
 wxyz{}{}~

GUI_Font32_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,./012345678
 9::;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJK
 LMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]
 ^_`abcdefghijklmnpqrstuvwxyz
 wxyz{}{}~ ¡¢£¤¥!§©ª«¬-®°
 \pm^{23} ª¶, ª¹» ¼ ½ ¾ ªÀÁÂÃÄÅ
 ÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÐÑÒÓÔÖ×
 ØÙÚÛÜÝþÞàáâãäåæçèé
 êëìíðñòóôö÷øùúûüýþý

GUI_Font32B_ASCII

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./01234567
89::;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJ
KLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[
\\^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~

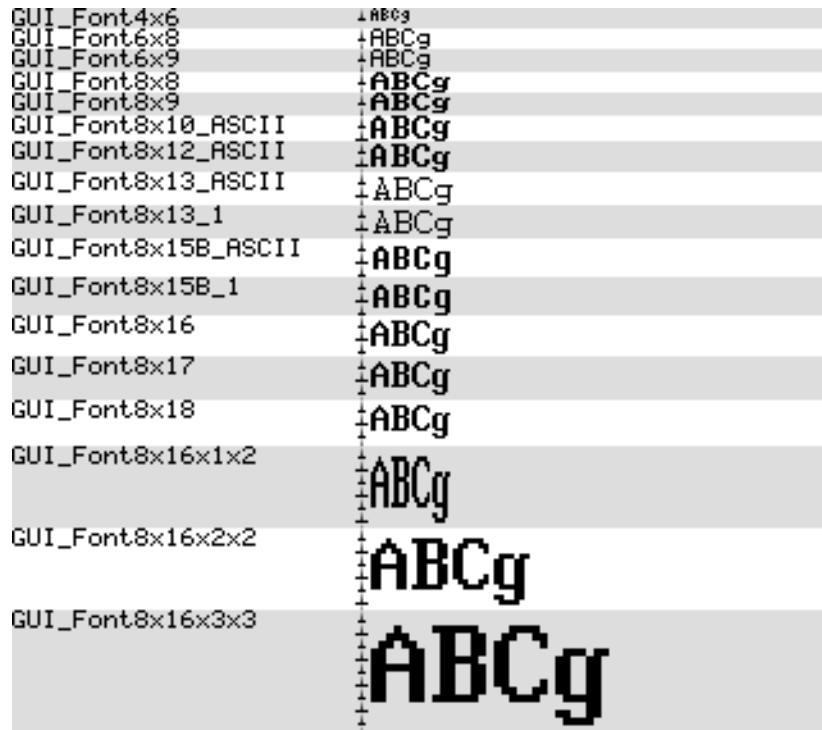
GUI_Font32B_1

!"#\$%&'()*+,-./01234567
89::;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJ
KLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[
\\^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~ ;¢£¤¥¦§¨©ª
«¬®°±²³°µ¶·¹º»¼½¾¿À
ÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÏÐÑÒ
ÓÔÕÖ×ØÙÛÜÝÞßàáâã
äåæçèéêëìïðñòóôõö÷ø
ùúûüýþÿ

10.8.5 Monospaced fonts

10.8.5.1 Overview

The following screenshot gives an overview of all available monospaced fonts:



10.8.5.2 Measurement, ROM size and used files

The following table shows the measurement, ROMsize and used files of the fonts:

Font name	Measurement	ROM size in bytes	Used files
GUI_Font4x6	F: 6, B: 5, C: 5, L: 4, U: 1	620	F4x6.c
GUI_Font6x8	F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1	1840	F6x8.c
GUI_Font6x9	F: 9, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 2	1840 (same ROM location as GUI_Font6x8)	F6x8.c
GUI_Font8x8	F: 8, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 1	1840	F8x8.c
GUI_Font8x9	F: 9, B: 7, C: 7, L: 5, U: 2	1840 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x8)	F8x8.c
GUI_Font8x10_ASCII	F: 10, B: 9, C: 9, L: 7, U: 1	1770	F8x10_ASCII.c
GUI_Font8x12_ASCII	F: 12, B: 10, C: 9, L: 6, U: 2	1962	F8x12_ASCII.c
GUI_Font8x13_ASCII	F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 6, U: 2	2058	F8x13_ASCII.c
GUI_Font8x13_1	F: 13, B: 11, C: 9, L: 6, U: 2	2058+ 2070	F8x13_ASCII.c F8x13_1.c

Font name	Measurement	ROM size in bytes	Used files
GUI_Font8x15B_ASCII	F: 15, B: 12, C: 9, L: 7, U: 3	2250	F8x15_ASCII.c
GUI_Font8x15B_1	F: 15, B: 12, C: 9, L: 7, U: 3	2250+ 2262	F8x15B_ASCII.c F8x15B_1.c
GUI_Font8x16	F: 16, B: 12, C: 10, L: 7, U: 4	3304	F8x16.c
GUI_Font8x17	F: 17, B: 12, C: 10, L: 7, U: 5	3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16)	F8x16.c
GUI_Font8x18	F: 18, B: 17, C: 15, L: 12, U: 1	3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16)	F8x16.c
GUI_Font8x16x1x2	F: 32, B: 24, C: 20, L: 14, U: 8	3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16)	F8x16.c
GUI_Font8x16x2x2	F: 32, B: 24, C: 20, L: 14, U: 8	3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16)	F8x16.c
GUI_Font8x16x3x3	F: 48, B: 36, C: 30, L: 21, U: 12	3304 (same ROM location as GUI_Font8x16)	F8x16.c

10.8.5.3 Characters

The following shows all characters of all monospaced standard fonts:

GUI_Font4x6

!\"#\$%&`!)&*,-./0123456789,:;<>>?@ABCD EFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ`_`~`abcd`efghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz`_|`

GUI_Font6x8

GUI_Font6x9

GUI Font8x8

GUI_Font8x9

GUI Font8x10 ASCII

! "#\$%&'()>*+-./0123456789:;=>?@ABCDEFG
HIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_` abcdefghijklmno
pqrsuvwxyz{|}`^~^

GUI_Font8x12_ASCII

! "#\$%&' ()*+, -./0123456789 :;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRSTUVWXYZ[\]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{}|^~^`

GUI Font8x13 ASCII

! "#\$%&' ()*+, -./0123456789: ;<=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPQRSTUVWXYZ[\`^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~|

GUI Font8x13 1

GUI Font8x15B ASCII

!\"#\$%&`()**+, -./0123456789:;=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ[\`]^_`abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz{|}~■

GUI Font8x15B 1

GUI_Font8x16

GUI Font8x17

GUI Font8x18

GUI Font8x16x1x2

GUI_Font8x16x2x2

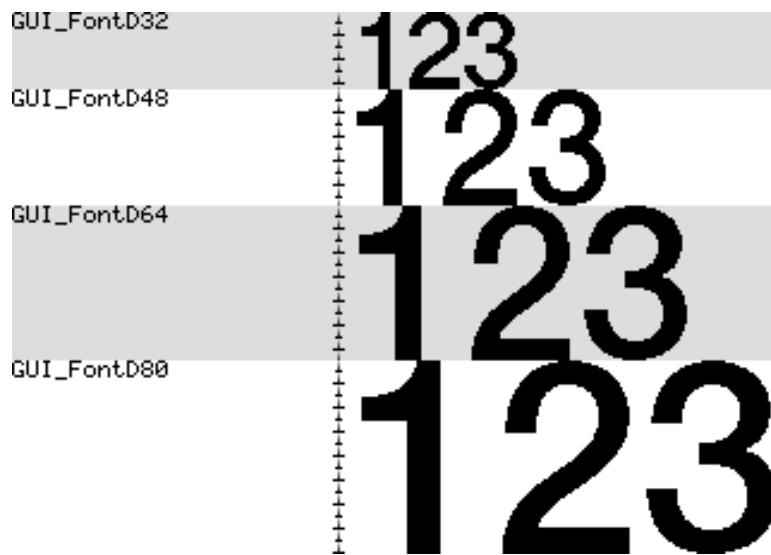
GUI_Font8x16x3x3

! " # \$ % & ' () * + ,
- . / 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
: ; < = > ? @ A B C D E F
G H I J K L M N O P Q R S
T U V W X Y Z [\] ^ _
a b c d e f g h i j k l m
n o p q r s t u v w x y z
{ | } ~ ^ ← → ↑ ↓ ↴ ↵ ↶ ↷
¢ £ ₧ ¥ ₩ ₪ ₮ ₰ ₲ ₳ ₴ ₵ ₸ ₹
° ± ² ³ ∙ μ ¶ . ¹ ° »
¼ ½ ¾ Ł Å Ą Ą Ą Ą Ą Ą Ç È
É Ê Ë Ì Í Ï Ì Ð Ñ Ò Ó Õ
Ӯ × Ø Ú Û ß Ý ß ß à á â
ã á â æ ç è é ê ï í î ï
ð ñ ô ó ô õ õ ÷ ø ú û ù
ó þ ý

10.8.6 Digit fonts (proportional)

10.8.6.1 Overview

The following screenshot gives an overview of all available proportional digit fonts:



10.8.6.2 Measurement, ROM size and used files

The following table shows the measurement, ROMsize and used files of the fonts:

Font name	Measurement	ROM size in bytes	Used files
GUI_FontD32	F: 32, C: 31	1574	FD32.c
GUI_FontD48	F: 48, C: 47	3512	FD48.c
GUI_FontD64	F: 64, C: 63	5384	FD64.c
GUI_FontD80	F: 80, C: 79	8840	FD80.c

10.8.6.3 Characters

The following shows all characters of all proportional digit fonts:

GUI_FontD32

+- .012345678
9:

GUI_FontD48

+-.01234
56789:

GUI_FontD64

+-.012
345678
9:

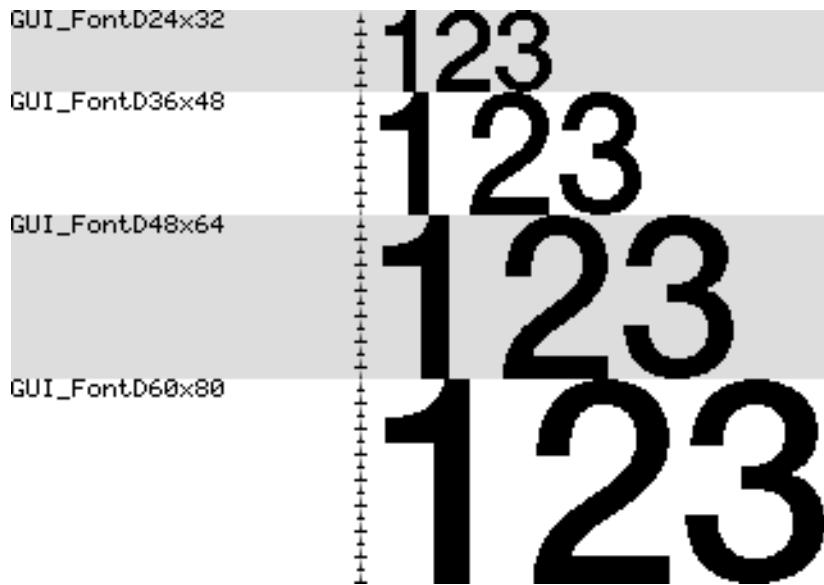
GUI_FontD80

+-.01
23456
789:

10.8.7 Digit fonts (monospaced)

10.8.7.1 Overview

The following screenshot gives an overview of all available monospaced digit fonts:



10.8.7.2 Measurement, ROM size and used files

The following table shows the measurement, ROMsize and used files of the fonts:

Font name	Measurement	ROM size in bytes	Used files
GUI_FontD24x32	F: 32, C: 31	1606	FD24x32.c
GUI_FontD36x48	F: 48, C: 47	3800	FD36x48.c
GUI_FontD48x64	F: 64, C: 63	5960	FD48x60.c
GUI_FontD60x80	F: 80, C: 79	9800	FD60x80.c

10.8.7.3 Characters

The following shows all characters of all monospaced digit fonts:

GUI_FontD24x32

+-.012345678
9:

GUI_FontD36x48

+ - . 0 1 2 3
4 5 6 7 8 9 :

GUI_FontD48x64

+ - . 0 1
2 3 4 5 6 7
8 9 :

GUI_FontD60x80

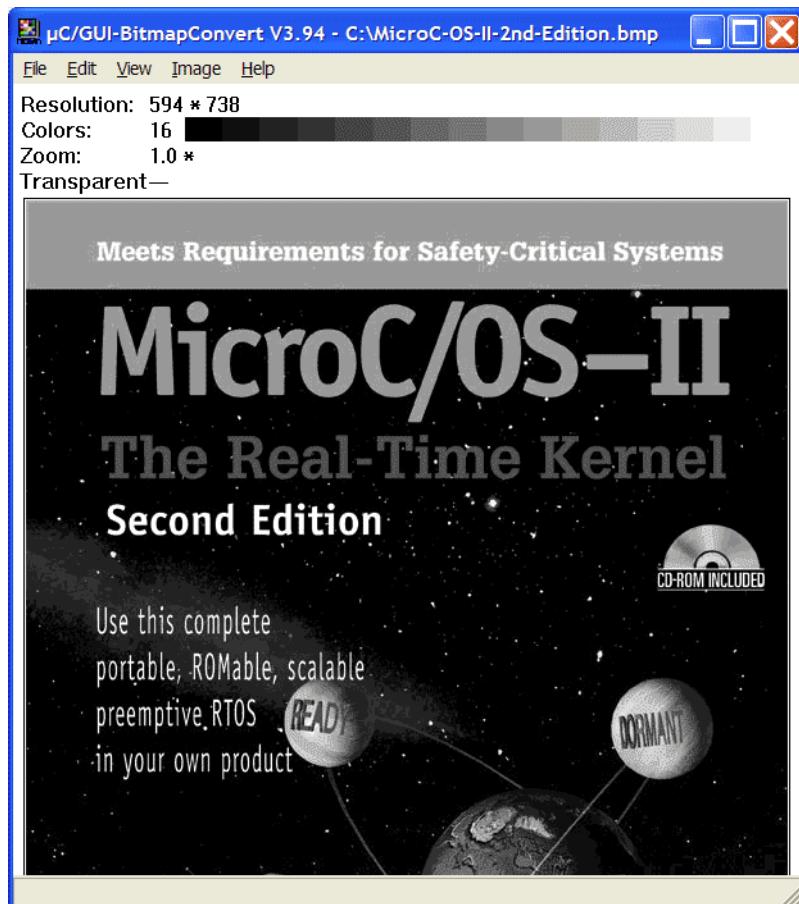
+ - . 0
1 2 3 4 5
6 7 8 9 :

Chapter 11

Bitmap Converter

The bitmap converter is a Windows program which is easy to use. Simply load a bitmap (in the form of a .bmp or a .gif file) into the application. Convert the color format if you want or have to, and convert it into a "C" file by saving it in the appropriate format. The "C" file may then be compiled, allowing the image to be shown on your display with µC/GUI.

Screenshot of the Bitmap Converter



11.1 What it does

The bitmap converter is intended as a tool to convert bitmaps from a PC format to a "C" file. Bitmaps which can be used with µC/GUI are normally defined as `GUI_BITMAP` structures in "C". The structures -- or rather the picture data which is referenced by these structures -- can be quite large. It is time-consuming and inefficient to generate these bitmaps manually, especially if you are dealing with images of considerable size and with multiple shades of gray or colors. We therefore recommend using the bitmap converter, which automatically generates "C" files from bitmaps.

It also features color conversion, so that the resulting "C" code is not unnecessarily large. You would typically reduce the number of bits per pixel in order to reduce memory consumption. The bitmap converter displays the converted image.

A number of simple functions can be performed with the bitmap converter, including flipping the bitmap horizontally or vertically, rotating it, and inverting the bitmap indices or colors (these features can be found under the `Image` menu). Any further modifications to an image must be made in a bitmap manipulation program such as Adobe Photoshop or Corel Photopaint. It usually makes the most sense to perform any image modifications in such a program, using the bitmap converter for converting purposes only.

11.2 Loading a bitmap

11.2.1 Supported file formats

The bitmap converter basically supports 2 file formats: Windows bitmap files (*.bmp) and "Graphic Interchange Format" (*.gif):

Windows Bitmap Files

The bitmap converter supports the most common bitmap file formats. Bitmap files of the following formats can be opened by the bitmap converter:

- 1, 4 or 8 bits per pixel (bpp) with palette;
- 16, 24 or 32 bpp without palette (full-color mode, in which each color is assigned an RGB value);
- RLE4 and RLE8.

Trying to read bitmap files of other formats will cause an error message of the bitmap converter.

Graphic Interchange Format

The bitmap converter supports reading of one image per GIF file. If the file for example contains a movie consisting of more than one image, the converter reads only the first image.

Transparency and interlaced GIF images are supported by the converter.

11.2.2 Loading from a file

A bitmap image in .bmp format may be opened directly in the bitmap converter by selecting `File/Open`.

11.2.3 Using the clipboard

Any other type of bitmap (i.e. .gif, .jpg, .jpeg, .png, .tif) may be opened with another program, copied to the clipboard, and pasted into the bitmap converter. This process will achieve the same effect as loading directly from a file.

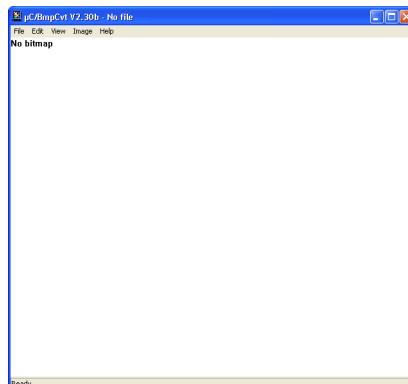
11.3 Generating C files from bitmaps

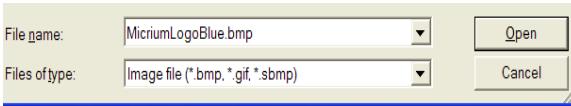
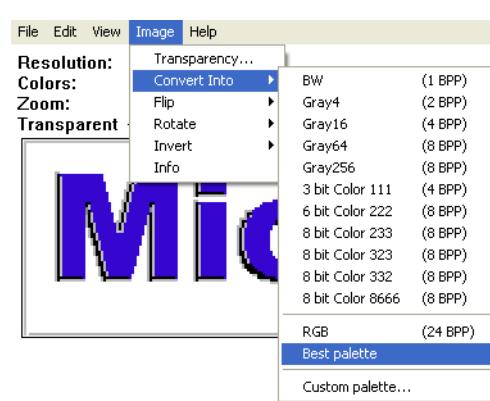
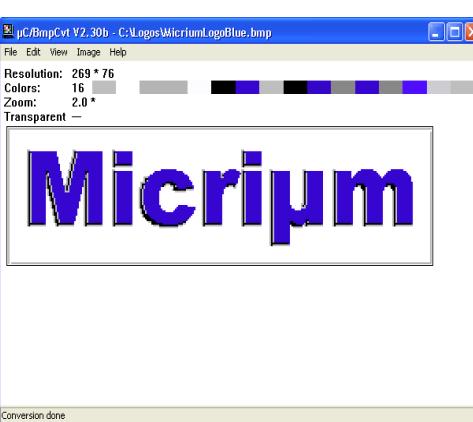
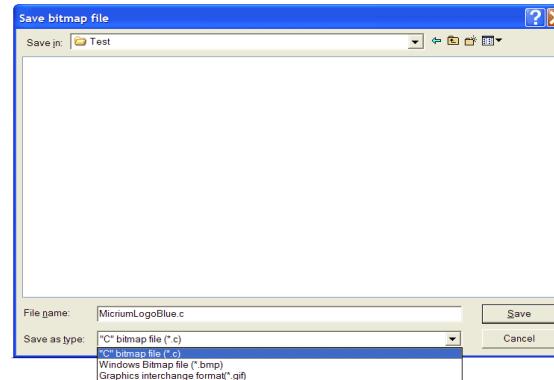
The main function of the bitmap converter is to convert PC-formatted bitmaps into C files which can be used by µC/GUI. Before doing so, however, it is often desirable to modify the color palette of an image so that the generated C file is not excessively large. With full-color bitmaps, it will be necessary to convert the image into a palette format, as the bitmap converter cannot generate C files from bitmaps in RGB mode.

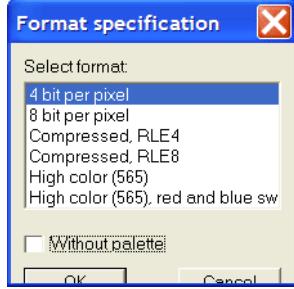
The bitmap may be saved as a .bmp file (which can be reloaded and used or loaded into other bitmap manipulation programs) or as a "C" file. A "C" file will serve as an input file for your "C" compiler. It may contain a palette (device-independent bitmap, or DIB) or be saved without (device-dependent bitmap, or DDB). DIBs are recommended, as they will display correctly on any LCD; a DDB will only display correctly on an LCD which uses the same palette as the bitmap.

C files may be generated as "C with palette", "C without palette", "C with palette, compressed" or "C without palette, compressed". For more information on compressed files, see the section "Compressed bitmaps" as well as the example at the end of the chapter.

The basic procedure for using the bitmap converter is illustrated step by step in the table below:

Procedure	Screen shot
<p>Step 1: Start the application.</p> <p>The bitmap converter is opened showing an empty window.</p>	

Procedure	Screen shot
<p>Step 2: Load a bitmap into the bitmap converter.</p> <p>Choose File/Open.</p> <p>Locate the document you want to open and click Open (must be a .bmp file).</p> <p>In this example, the file MicriumLogoBlue.bmp is chosen.</p>  <p>The bitmap converter displays the loaded bitmap.</p>	 <p>In this example, the loaded bitmap is in full-color mode. It must be converted to a palette format before a "C" file can be generated.</p>
<p>Step 3: Convert the image if necessary.</p> <p>Choose Image/Convert Into.</p> <p>Select the desired palette.</p> <p>In this example, the option Best palette is chosen.</p>  <p>The bitmap converter displays the converted bitmap.</p>	 <p>The image is unchanged in terms of appearance, but uses less memory since a palette of only 15 colors is used instead of the full-color mode. These 15 colors are the only ones actually required to display this particular image.</p>
<p>Step 4: Save the bitmap as a "C" file.</p> <p>Choose File/Save As.</p> <p>Select a destination and a name for the "C" file.</p> <p>Select the file type. In this example, the file is saved as "C" bitmap file.</p> <p>Click Save.</p>	

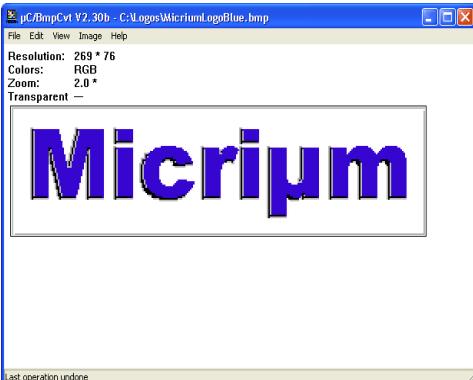
Procedure	Screen shot
<p>Step 5: Specify bitmap format.</p> <p>If the bitmap should be saved as 'C' file the format should now be specified. Use one of the available formats shown in the dialog. If the bitmap should be saved without palette, activate the check box "Without palette"</p> <p>The bitmap converter will create a separate file in the specified destination, containing the "C" source code for the bitmap.</p>	

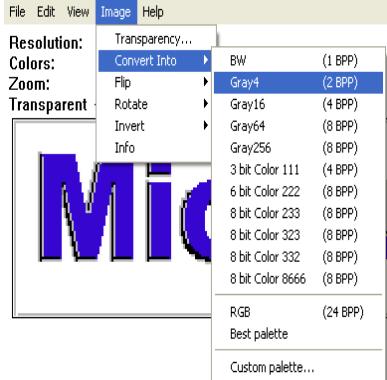
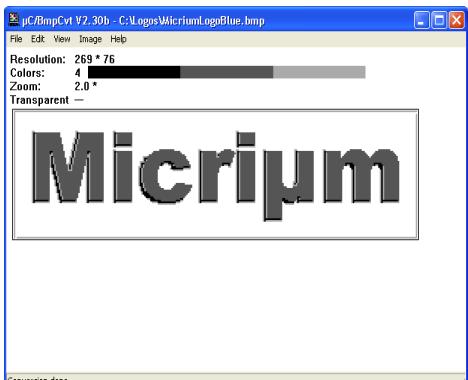
11.4 Color conversion

The primary reason for converting the color format of a bitmap is to reduce memory consumption. The most common way of doing this is by using the option **Best palette** as in the above example, which customizes the palette of a particular bitmap to include only the colors which are used in the image. It is especially useful with full-color bitmaps in order to make the palette as small as possible while still fully supporting the image. Once a bitmap file has been opened in the bitmap converter, simply select **Image/Convert Into/Best palette** from the menu.

For certain applications, it may be more efficient to use a fixed color palette, chosen from the menu under **Image/Convert Into**. For example, suppose a bitmap in full-color mode is to be shown on a display which supports only four grayscales. It would be a waste of memory to keep the image in the original format, since it would only appear as four grayscales on the display. The full-color bitmap can be converted into a four-grayscale, 2bpp bitmap for maximum efficiency.

The procedure for conversion would be as follows:

Procedure	Screen shot
<p>The bitmap converter is opened and the same file is loaded as in steps 1 and 2 of the previous example.</p> <p>The bitmap converter displays the loaded bitmap.</p>	

Procedure	Screen shot
Choose Image/Convert Into/Gray4.	
<p>The bitmap converter displays the converted bitmap.</p> <p>In this example, the image uses less memory since a palette of only 4 grayscales is used instead of the full-color mode. If the target display supports only 4 grayscales, there is no use in having a higher pixel depth as it would only waste memory.</p>	

11.5 Compressed bitmaps

The bitmap converter and μC/GUI support run-length encoding (RLE) compression of bitmaps in the resulting source code files. The RLE compression method works most efficiently if your bitmap contains many horizontal sequences of equal-colored pixels. An efficiently compressed bitmap will save a significant amount of space. However, compression is not recommended for photographic images since they do not normally have sequences of identical pixels. It should also be noted that a compressed image may take slightly longer to display.

If you want to save a bitmap using RLE compression, you can do so by selecting one of the compressed output formats when saving as a "C" file: "C with palette, compressed" or "C without palette, compressed". There are no special functions needed for displaying compressed bitmaps; it works in the same way as displaying uncompressed bitmaps.

Compression ratios

The ratio of compression achieved will vary depending on the bitmap used. The more horizontal uniformity in the image, the better the ratio will be. A higher number of bits per pixel will also result in a higher degree of compression.

In the bitmap used in the previous examples, the total number of pixels in the image is $(200*94) = 18,800$. Since 2 pixels are stored in 1 byte, the total uncompressed size of the image is $18,800/2 = 9,400$ bytes. The total compressed size for this particular bitmap is 3,803 bytes for 18,800 pixels (see the example at the end of the chapter). The ratio of compression can therefore be calculated as $9,400/3,803 = 2.47$.

11.6 Using a custom palette

Under certain circumstances it may be desirable to use a custom palette for conversions. In these cases (usually only if you have a color display using a special custom palette and you would like to use the same palette for bitmaps) a custom palette may be used. In the menu, you would select `Image/Convert Into/Custom palette`.

File format for custom palette

Custom palette files are simple files defining the available colors for conversion. They contain the following:

- Header (8 bytes).
- NumColors (U32, 4 bytes).
- 0 (4 bytes).
- U32 Colors[NumColors] (NumColors*4 bytes, type `GUI_COLOR`).

Total file size is therefore: $16 + (\text{NumColors} * 4)$ bytes. A custom palette file with 8 colors would be $16 + (8 * 4) = 48$ bytes. At this point, a binary editor must be used in order to create such a file.

The maximum number of colors supported is 256; the minimum is 2.

Custom palette sample file

This sample file would define a palette containing 2 colors -- red and white:

```
0000: 65 6d 57 69 6e 50 61 6c 02 00 00 00 00 00 00 00  
0010: ff 00 00 00 ff ff ff 00
```

The 8 headers make up the first eight bytes of the first line. The U32 is stored LSB first (big endian) and represents the next four bytes, followed by the four 0 bytes. Colors are stored 1 byte per color, where the 4th byte is 0 as follows: RRGGBB00. The second line of code therefore defines the two colors used in this sample.

11.7 BmpCvt.exe: Command line usage

It is also possible to work with the bitmap converter using the command prompt. All conversion functions available in the bitmap converter menu are available as commands, and any number of functions may be performed on a bitmap in one command line.

11.7.1 Format for commands

Commands are entered using the following format:

```
BmpCvt <filename>.bmp <-command>
```

(If more than one command is used, one space is typed between each.)

For example, a bitmap with the name logo.bmp is converted into Best palette format and saved as a "C" file named logo.bmp all at once by entering the following at the command prompt:

```
BmpCvt logo.bmp -converttobestpalette -saveaslogo,1 -exit
```

Note that while the file to be loaded into the bitmap converter always includes its .bmp extension, no file extension is written in the -saveas command. An integer is used instead to specify the desired file type. The number 1 in the -saveas command above designates "C with palette". The -exit command automatically closes the program upon completion. See the table below for more information.

11.7.2 Valid command line options

The following table lists all permitted bitmap converter commands. It can also be viewed at any time by entering BmpCvt -? at the command prompt.

Command	Explanation
-converttobw	Convert to BW.
-converttogram4	Convert to Gray4.
-converttogram16	Convert to Gray16.
-converttogram64	Convert to Gray64.
-converttogram256	Convert to Gray256.
-convertto111	Convert to 111.
-convertto222	Convert to 222.
-convertto233	Convert to 233.
-convertto323	Convert to 323.
-convertto332	Convert to 332.
-convertto8666	Convert to 8666.
-converttorgb	Convert to RGB.
-converttobestpalette	Convert to best palette.
-converttocustompalette<filename>	Convert to a custom palette.
<filename>	User-specified filename of desired custom palette.
-fliph	Flip image horizontally.
-flipv	Flip image vertically.
-rotate90cw	Rotate image by 90 degrees clockwise.
-rotate90cc	Rotate image by 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
-rotate180	Rotate image by 180 degrees.
-invertindices	Invert indices.
-saveas<filename>,<type>[,<fmt>[,<nopl>]]	Save file as filename.
<filename>	User-specified file name including the file extension.
<type>	Must be an integer from 1 to 3 as follows: 1: "C" with palette (.c file) 2: Windows Bitmap file (.bmp file) 3: "C" stream (.dta file)

Command	Explanation
<code><fmt></code>	<p>Specifies the bitmap format (only if type == 1):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1: 1 bit per pixel 2: 2 bits per pixel 3: 4 bits per pixel 4: 8 bits per pixel 5: RLE4 compression 6: RLE8 compression 7: High color (565) 8: High color (565), red and blue swapped <p>If this parameter is not given, the bitmap converter uses the following default formats in dependence of the number of colors of the bitmap:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Number of colors <= 2: 1 bit per pixel Number of colors <= 4: 2 bits per pixel Number of colors <= 16: 4 bits per pixel Number of colors <= 256: 8 bits per pixel RGB: High color (565)
<code><noplt></code>	Saves the bitmap with or without palette (only if type == 1) 0: Save bitmap with palette (default) 1: Save bitmap without palette
<code>-exit</code>	Terminate PC program automatically.
<code>-help</code>	Display this box.
<code>-?</code>	Display this box.

11.8 Example of a converted bitmap

A typical example for the use of the bitmap converter would be the conversion of your company logo into a C bitmap. Take a look at the sample bitmap pictured:



The bitmap is loaded into the bitmap converter, converted to Best palette, and saved as "C with palette". The resulting C source code is displayed below (some data is not shown to conserve space).

Resulting C code (generated by bitmap converter)

Compressing the file

We can use the same bitmap image to create a compressed C file, which is done simply by loading and converting the bitmap as before, and saving it as "C with palette, compressed". The source code is displayed below (some data is not shown to conserve space).

The total number of pixels used in the image is $(269 \times 76) = 20444$. Since every pixel can take any of the 16 colors used to compose this bitamp, each pixel takes 4 bits. Two pixels are stored per byte and the total uncompressed size of the image is $20444/2 = 10222$ bytes. At the end of the following code, the total compressed image size can be seen as 4702 bytes for 20444 pixels. The ratio of compression can therefore be calculated as $10222/4702 = 2.17$.

Resulting compressed C code (generated by bitmap converter)

C-file generated by μ C/BmpCvt V2.30b, compiled May 8 2002, 10:05:37

(c) 2002 Micrium, Inc.
www.micrium.com

(c) 1998-2002 Segger
Microcontroller Systeme GmbH
www.segger.com

*Source file: LogoCompressed
Dimensions: 269 * 76
NumColors: 10
/

```
#include "stdlib.h"  
  
#include "GUI.H"  
  
/* Palette  
The following are the entries of the palette table.  
Every entry is a 32-bit value (of which 24 bits are actually used)  
the lower 8 bits represent the Red component.
```

*the middle 8 bits represent the Green component,
the highest 8 bits (of the 24 bits used) represent the Blue component
as follows: 0xBBGGRR
/

```
const GUI_COLOR ColorsLogoCompressed[] = {
    0xBFBFBF, 0xFFFFFFF, 0xB5B5B5, 0x000000
    , 0xFF004C, 0xB5002B, 0x888888, 0xCF0038
    , 0xCFCFCF, 0xC0C0C0
};

const GUI_LOGPALETTE PalLogoCompressed = {
    10, /* number of entries */
    0, /* No transparency */
    &ColorsLogoCompressed[0]
};

const unsigned char acLogoCompressed[] = {
    /* RLE: 270 Pixels @ 000,000 */ 254, 0x00, 16, 0x00,
    /* RLE: 268 Pixels @ 001,001 */ 254, 0x01, 14, 0x01,
    /* RLE: 001 Pixels @ 000,002 */ 1, 0x00,
    /* RLE: 267 Pixels @ 001,002 */ 254, 0x01, 13, 0x01,
    /* ABS: 002 Pixels @ 268,002 */ 0, 2, 0x20,
    .
    .
    .
    /* ABS: 002 Pixels @ 268,073 */ 0, 2, 0x20,
    /* RLE: 267 Pixels @ 001,074 */ 254, 0x01, 13, 0x01,
    /* ABS: 003 Pixels @ 268,074 */ 0, 3, 0x20, 0x10,
    /* RLE: 267 Pixels @ 002,075 */ 254, 0x02, 13, 0x02,
    0}; /* 4702 for 20444 pixels */

const GUI_BITMAP bmLogoCompressed = {
    269, /* XSize */
    76, /* YSize */
    135, /* BytesPerLine */
    GUI_COMPRESS_RLE4, /* BitsPerPixel */
    acLogoCompressed, /* Pointer to picture data (indices) */
    &PalLogoCompressed /* Pointer to palette */
    , GUI_DRAW_RLE4
};

/* *** End of file *** */
```

Chapter 12

Colors

μ C/GUI supports black/white, grayscale (monochrome with different intensities) and color displays. The same user program can be used with any display; only the LCD-configuration needs to be changed. The color management tries to find the closest match for any color that should be displayed.

Logical colors are the colors the application deals with. A logical colors is always defined as an RGB value. This is a 24-bit value containing 8 bits per color as follows: 0xBBGGRR. Therefore, white would be 0xFFFFF, black would be 0x000000, bright red 0xFF.

Physical colors are the colors which can actually be displayed by the display. They are specified in the same 24-bit RGB format as logical colors. At run-time, logical colors are mapped to physical colors.

For displays with few colors (such as monochrome displays or 8/16-color LCDs), μ C/GUI converts them by using an optimized version of the "least-square deviation search". It compares the color to display (the logical color) with all the available colors that the LCD can actually show (the physical colors) and uses the one that the LCD-metric considers closest.

12.1 Predefined colors

In addition to self-defined colors, some standard colors are predefined in µC/GUI, as shown in the following table:

GUI_BLUE		0xFF0000
GUI_GREEN		0x00FF00
GUI_RED		0x0000FF
GUI_CYAN		0xFFFF00
GUI_MAGENTA		0xFF00FF
GUI_YELLOW		0x00FFFF
GUI_LIGHTBLUE		0xFF8080
GUI_LIGHTGREEN		0x80FF80
GUI_LIGHTRED		0x8080FF
GUI_LIGHTCYAN		0xFFFF80
GUI_LIGHTMAGENTA		0xFF80FF
GUI_LIGHTYELLOW		0x80FFFF
GUI_DARKBLUE		0x800000
GUI_DARKGREEN		0x008000
GUI_DARKRED		0x000080
GUI_DARKCYAN		0x808000
GUI_DARKMAGENTA		0x800080
GUI_DARKYELLOW		0x008080
GUI_WHITE		0xFFFFFFF
GUI_LIGHTGRAY		0xD3D3D3
GUI_GRAY		0x808080
GUI_DARKGRAY		0x404040
GUI_BLACK		0x000000
GUI_BROWN		0x2A2AA5

Example:

```
/* Set background color to magenta */
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_MAGENTA);
GUI_Clear();
```

12.2 The color bar test routine

The color bar program below is used to show 13 color bars as follows:

Black -> Red, White -> Red, Black -> Green, White -> Green, Black -> Blue, White -> Blue, Black -> White, Black -> Yellow, White -> Yellow, Black -> Cyan, White -> Cyan, Black -> Magenta and White -> Magenta.

This little routine may be used on all displays in any color format. Of course, the results vary depending on the colors that can be displayed; the routine requires a display size of 320*240 in order to show all colors. The routine is used to demonstrate the effect of the different color settings for displays. It may also be used by a test program to verify the functionality of the display, to check available colors and grayscales, as well as to correct color conversion. The screen shots are taken from the windows simulation and will look exactly like the actual output on your display if your settings and hardware are working properly. The routine is available as COLOR_ShowColorBar.c in the samples shipped with µC/GUI.

```

*****
*                               Micrium Inc.
*                           Empowering embedded systems
*
*                         µC/GUI sample code
*
*****
-----  

File      : COLOR_ShowColorBar.c  

Purpose   : Example draws a color bar  

-----  

*/  

#include "GUI.H"  

/*****  

*  

*           Draws 13 color bars
*  

*****  

*/  

void ShowColorBar(void) {
    int x0 = 60, y0 = 40, yStep = 15, i;
    int NumColors = LCD_GetDevCap(LCD_DEVCAP_NUMCOLORS);
    int xszie     = LCD_GetDevCap(LCD_DEVCAP_XSIZE) - x0;
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font13HB_1);
    GUI_DisPStringHCenterAt("µC/GUI-sample: Show color bars", 160, 0);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
    #if (LCD_FIXEDPALETTE)
        GUI_DisPString("Fixed palette: ");
        GUI_DisPDecMin(LCD_FIXEDPALETTE);
    #endif
    GUI_DisPStringAt("Red", 0, y0 + yStep);
    GUI_DisPStringAt("Green", 0, y0 + 3 * yStep);
    GUI_DisPStringAt("Blue", 0, y0 + 5 * yStep);
    GUI_DisPStringAt("Grey", 0, y0 + 6 * yStep);
    GUI_DisPStringAt("Yellow", 0, y0 + 8 * yStep);
    GUI_DisPStringAt("Cyan", 0, y0 + 10 * yStep);
    GUI_DisPStringAt("Magenta", 0, y0 + 12 * yStep);
    for (i = 0; i < xszie; i++) {
        U16 cs = (255 * (U32)i) / xszie;
        U16 x = x0 + i;
        /* Red */
        GUI_SetColor(cs);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0, y0 + yStep - 1);
        GUI_SetColor(0xff + (255 - cs) * 0x10100L);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + yStep, y0 + 2 * yStep - 1);
        /* Green */
        GUI_SetColor(cs<<8);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 2 * yStep, y0 + 3 * yStep - 1);
        GUI_SetColor(0xff00 + (255 - cs) * 0x10001L);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 3 * yStep, y0 + 4 * yStep - 1);
        /* Blue */
        GUI_SetColor(cs * 0x10000L);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 4 * yStep, y0 + 5 * yStep - 1);
        GUI_SetColor(0xff0000 + (255 - cs) * 0x101L);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 5 * yStep, y0 + 6 * yStep - 1);
        /* Gray */
        GUI_SetColor((U32)cs * 0x10101L);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 6 * yStep, y0 + 7 * yStep - 1);
        /* Yellow */
        GUI_SetColor(cs * 0x101);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 7 * yStep, y0 + 8 * yStep - 1);
        GUI_SetColor(0xffff + (255 - cs) * 0x10000L);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 8 * yStep, y0 + 9 * yStep - 1);
        /* Cyan */
        GUI_SetColor(cs * 0x10100L);
        GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 9 * yStep, y0 + 10 * yStep - 1);
}

```

```

    GUI_SetColor(0xfffff00 + (255 - cs) * 0x1L);
    GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 10 * yStep, y0 + 11 * yStep - 1);
    /* Magenta */
    GUI_SetColor(cs * 0x10001);
    GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 11 * yStep, y0 + 12 * yStep - 1);
    GUI_SetColor(0xff00ff + (255 - cs) * 0x100L);
    GUI_DrawVLine(x, y0 + 12 * yStep, y0 + 13 * yStep - 1);
}
}

*****
*
*          main
*
*****
*/
void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    ShowColorBar();
    while(1)
        GUI_Delay(100);
}

```

12.3 Fixed palette modes

The following table lists the available fixed palette color modes and the necessary #defines which need to be made in the file `LCDConf.h` in order to select them. Detailed descriptions follow.

LCD_FIXEDPALETTE (Color Mode)	No. available colors	LCD_SWAP_RB	Mask
1	2 (black and white)	x	0x01
2	4 (grayscale)	x	0x03
4	16 (grayscale)	x	0x0F
111	8	0	BGR
111	8	1	RGB
222	64	0	BBGGRR
222	64	1	RRGGBB
233	256	0	BBGGGRRR
233	256	1	RRGGGBBB
323	256	0	BBBGGRRR
323	256	1	RRRGGBBB
332	256	0	BBBGGGRR

LCD_FIXEDPALETTE (Color Mode)	No. available colors	LCD_SWAP_RB	Mask
332	256	1	RRRGGBB
44412	4096	0	0000BBBBGGGGRRRR
44412	4096	1	0000RRRRGGGGBBBB
444121	4096	0	BBBBGGGGRRRR0000
44416	4096	0	0BBBB0GGGG0RRR0
44416	4096	1	0RRR0GGGG0BBBB0
555	32768	0	0BBBBBGGGGGRRRRR
555	32768	1	0RRRRRGGGGBBBBBB
556	65536	0	BBBBBBGGGGGRRRRRR
556	65536	1	RRRRRGGGGGGBBBBBB
565	65536	0	BBBBBBGGGGGRRRRRR
565	65536	1	RRRRRGGGGGGBBBBBB
655	65536	0	BBBBBBGGGGGRRRRRR
655	65536	1	RRRRRRGGGGGBBBBBB
666	262144	0	BBBBBBGGGGGRRRRRR
822216	256	x	0xFF
84444	240	x	0xFF
8666	232	x	0xFF
86661	233 (232 + transparency)	x	0xFF
888	16777216	0	BBBBBBBBGGGGGGGGRRRRRRR
888	16777216	1	RRRRRRRRGGGGGGGBBBBBBBB
8888	16777216 + 8 bit alpha blending	0	AAAAAAAAABBBBBBBBGGGGGGGGRRRRRRR
8888	16777216 + 8 bit alpha blending	1	AAAAAAAAARRRRRRRRGGGGGGGGBBBBBBBB
-1	x	x	x

1 mode: 1 bpp (black and white)

Use of this mode is necessary for monochrome displays with 1 bit per pixel.

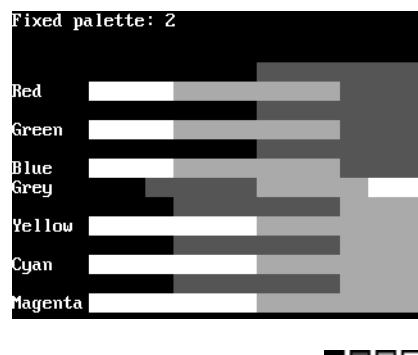
Available colors: 2:



2 mode: 2 bpp (4 grayscales)

Use of this mode is necessary for monochrome displays with 2 bits per pixel.

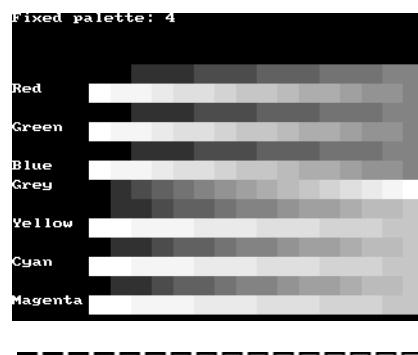
Available colors: $2 \times 2 = 4$:



4 mode: 4 bpp (16 grayscales)

Use of this mode is necessary for monochrome displays with 4 bits per pixel.

Available colors: $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 16$:

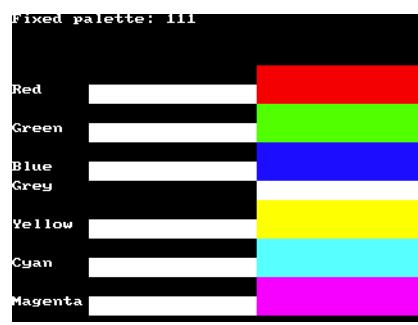


111 mode: 3 bpp (2 levels per color)

Use this mode if the basic 8 colors are enough, if your hardware supports only one bit per pixel and color or if you do not have sufficient video memory for a higher color depth.

Color mask: BGR

Available colors: $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$:



111 mode: 3 bpp (2 levels per color), red and blue swapped

Use this mode if the basic 8 colors are enough, if your hardware supports only one bit per pixel and color or if you do not have sufficient video memory for a higher color depth. The available colors are the same as those in 111 mode.

Color mask: RGB

Available colors: $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$:



222 mode: 6 bpp (4 levels per color)

This mode is a good choice if your hardware does not have a palette for every individual color. 2 bits per pixel and color are reserved; usually 1 byte is used to store one pixel.

Color mask: BBGGRR



Available colors: $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$:



222 mode: 6 bpp (4 levels per color), red and blue swapped

This mode is a good choice if your hardware does not have a palette for every individual color. 2 bits per pixel and color are reserved; usually 1 byte is used to store one pixel. The available colors are the same as those in 222 mode.

Color mask: RRGGBB

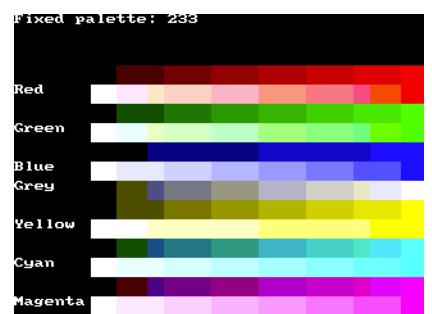
Available colors: $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$:



233 mode: 8 bpp

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and green components of the color and 2 bits for the blue component. As shown in the picture, the result is 8 grades for green and red and 4 grades for blue. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: BBGGGR_{RR}



Available colors: $4 \times 8 \times 8 = 256$:

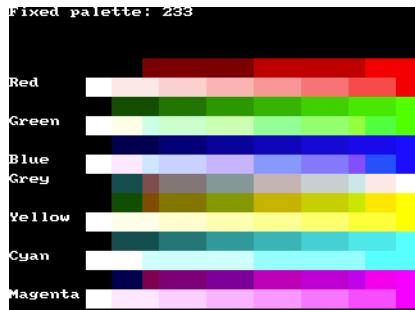


233 mode: 8 bpp, red and blue swapped

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and green components of the color and 2 bits for the blue component. The result is 8 grades for green and blue and 4 grades for red. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: RRGGGBBB

Available colors: $4 \times 8 \times 8 = 256$:

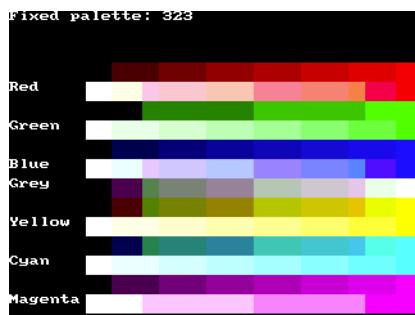


323 mode: 8 bpp

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and blue components of the color and 2 bits for the green component. As shown in the picture, the result is 8 grades for blue and red and 4 grades for green. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: BBBGGRRR

Available colors: $8 \times 4 \times 8 = 256$:



323 mode: 8 bpp, red and blue swapped

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and blue components of the color and 2 bits for the green component. The available colors are the same as those in 323 mode. The result is 8 grades for red and blue and 4 grades for green. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: RRRGGBBB

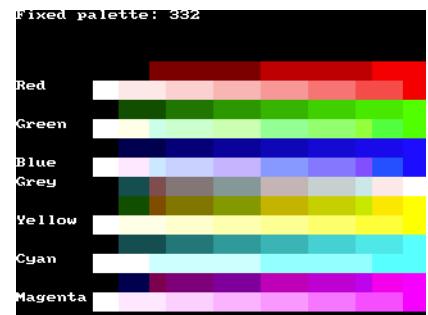
Available colors: $8 \times 4 \times 8 = 256$:



332 mode: 8 bpp

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the blue and green components of the color and 2 bits for the red component. As shown in the picture, the result is 8 grades for green and blue and 4 grades for red. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: BBBGGGRR



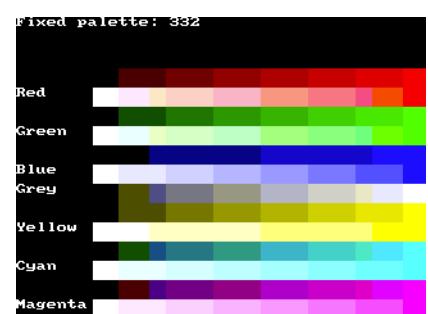
Available colors: $8 \times 8 \times 4 = 256$:



332 mode: 8 bpp, red and blue swapped

This mode supports 256 colors. 3 bits are used for the red and green components of the color and 2 bits for the blue component. The result is 8 grades for red and green and only 4 grades for blue. We discourage the use of this mode because it do not contain real shades of gray.

Color mask: RRGGGGBB



Available colors: $8 \times 8 \times 4 = 256$:

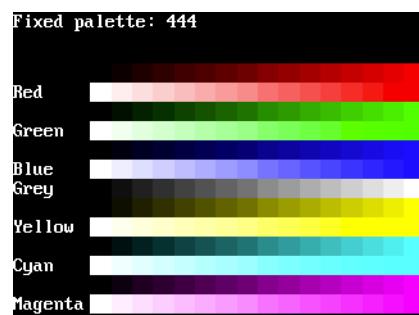


44412 mode:

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits.

Color mask: 0000BBBBGGGGRRRR

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.



44416 mode:

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits.

One bit between the color components is not used. The available colors are the same as those in 44412 mode.

Color mask: 0 BBBB0 G G G G 0 R R R R 0

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.

44412 mode: red and blue swapped

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits. The available colors are the same as those in 44412 mode.

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.

Color mask: R R R R 0 G G G G 0 B B B B 0

44416 mode: red and blue swapped

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits. One bit between the color components is not used. The available colors are the same as those in 44412 mode.

Color mask: 0 R R R R 0 G G G G 0 B B B B 0

Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.

444121 mode:

The red, green and blue components are each 4 bits. The lower 4 bits of the color mask are not used. The available colors are the same as those in 44412 mode.

Color mask: B B B B G G G G R R R R 0 0 0 0

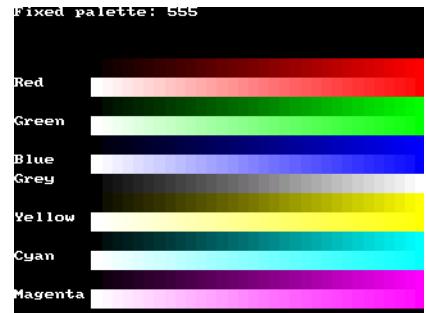
Available colors: $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$.

555 mode: 15 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for an LCD controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 15 bpp (such as SED1356 or SED13806). The red, green and blue components are each 5 bits.

Color mask: BBBBGGGGGRRRRR

Available colors: $32 \times 32 \times 32 = 32768$.



555 mode: 15 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for an LCD controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 15 bpp. The red, green and blue components are each 5 bits. The available colors are the same as those in 555 mode.

Color mask: RRRRGGGGGGBBBBB

Available colors: $32 \times 32 \times 32 = 32768$.

565 mode: 16 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for an LCD controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The red and the blue component is 5 bits and the green component is 6 bit.

Color mask: BBBBGGGGGGRRRRR

Available colors: $32 \times 64 \times 32 = 65536$.



565 mode: 16 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for an LCD controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The available colors are the same as those in 565 mode.

Color sequence: RRRRGGGGGGBBBBB

Available colors: $32 \times 64 \times 32 = 65536$.

556 mode: 16 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for an LCD controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The blue and the green component is 5 bit and the red component is 6 bit.

Color mask: BBBBGGGGGGRRRRR

Available colors: $32 \times 32 \times 64 = 65536$.

556 mode: 16 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for an LCD controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The red and the green component is 5 bit and the blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: RRRRGGGGGGBBBBB

Available colors: $32 \times 32 \times 64 = 65536$.

655 mode: 16 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The red and the green component is 5 bit and the blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: BBBBGGGGRRRR
 Available colors: $64 \times 32 \times 32 = 65536$.

655 mode: 16 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 16 bpp. The blue and the green component is 5 bit and the red component is 6 bit.

Color mask: RRRRRRGGGGGBBBBB
 Available colors: $64 \times 32 \times 32 = 65536$.

666 mode: 18 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 18 bpp. The red, green and the blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: BBBBBGeeeeeeeRRRRRR
 Available colors: $64 \times 64 \times 64 = 262144$.

666 mode: 18 bpp, red and blue swapped

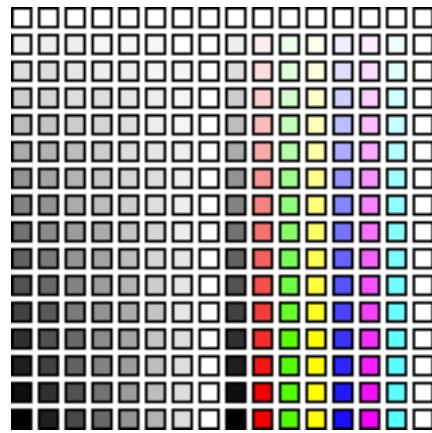
Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color-depth of 18 bpp. The red, green and the blue component is 6 bit.

Color mask: RRRRRRGGGGGGGBBBBB
 Available colors: $64 \times 64 \times 64 = 262144$.

22216 mode: 8 bpp, 2 levels per color + 8 grayscales + 16 levels of alpha blending

This mode can be used with a programmable color lookup table (LUT), supporting a total of 256 possible colors and alpha blending support. It supports the 8 basic colors, 8 grayscales and 16 levels of alpha blending for each color / grayscale. With other words it can be used if only a few colors are required but more levels of alpha blending.

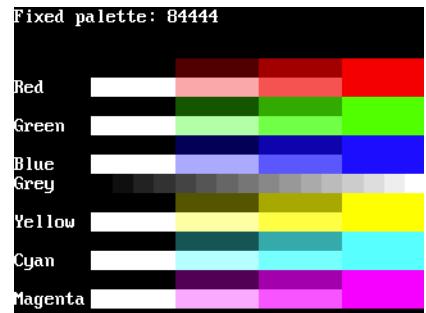
Available colors: $(2 \times 2 \times 2 + 8) * 16 = 256$



84444 mode: 8 bpp, 4 levels per color + 16 grayscales + 4(3) levels of alpha blending

This mode can be used with a programmable color lookup table (LUT), supporting a total of 256 possible colors and alpha blending support. 4 levels of intensity are available for each color, in addition to 16 grayscales and 4 levels of alpha blending for each color / grayscale. With other words it can be used if only a few levels of alpha blending are required and different shades of colors.

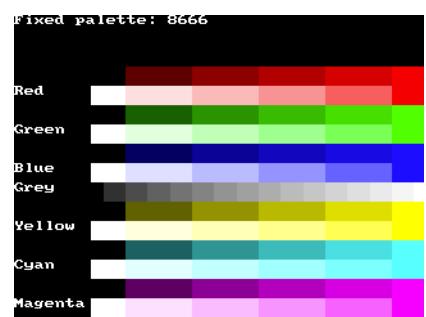
Available colors: $(4 \times 4 \times 4 + 16) * 3 = 240$



8666 mode: 8bpp, 6 levels per color + 16 grayscales

This mode is most frequently used with a programmable color lookup table (LUT), supporting a total of 256 possible colors using a palette. The screen shot gives an idea of the available colors; this mode contains the best choice for general purpose applications. Six levels of intensity are available for each color, in addition to 16 grayscales.

Available colors: $6 \times 6 \times 6 + 16 = 232$:



86661 mode: 8bpp, 6 levels per color + 16 grayscales + transparency

This mode is most frequently used with multi layer configurations and a programmable color lookup table (LUT), supporting a total of 256 possible colors using a palette. The difference between 8666 and 86661 is, that the first color indices of the 86661 mode are not used. So the color conversion routine GUI_Color2Index does never return 0 which is used for transparency.

Available colors: $6 \times 6 \times 6 + 16 = 232$.

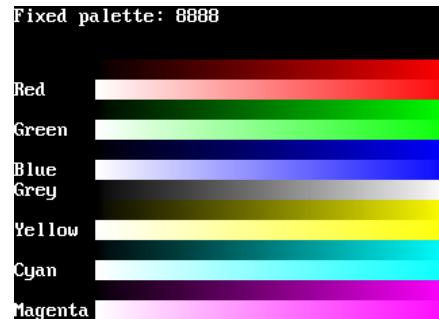


888 mode: 24 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color depth of 24 bpp. The red, green and blue components are each 8 bits.

Color mask: BBBB BBBB BBBB GGGGGGGG RRRRRRRR

Available colors: $256 \times 256 \times 256 = 16777216$.



888 mode: 24 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color depth of 24 bpp. The red, green and blue components are each 8 bits.

Color mask: RRRRRRRRGGGGGGGGBBBBBBBB

Available colors: $256 \times 256 \times 256 = 16777216$.

8888 mode: 32 bpp

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color depth of 32 bpp, where the lower 3 bytes are used for the color components and the upper byte is used for alpha blending. The red, green, blue and alpha blending components are each 8 bits.

Color mask: AAAAAAAABBBBBBBGGGGGGGGRRRRRRRR

Available colors: $256 \times 256 \times 256 = 16777216$.

8888 mode: 32 bpp, red and blue swapped

Use of this mode is necessary for a display controller that supports RGB colors with a color depth of 32 bpp, where the lower 3 bytes are used for the color components and the upper byte is used for alpha blending. The red, green, blue and alpha blending components are each 8 bits.

Color mask: AAAAAAAARRRRRRRGGGGGGGGBBBBBBBB

Available colors: $256 \times 256 \times 256 = 16777216$.

-1 mode: Application defined fixed palette mode

If none of the fixed palette modes matches the need of color conversion this mode makes it possible to use an application defined fixed palette mode. Color conversion (RGB -> Index, Index -> RGB) will be done by calling application defined conversion routines. When setting `LCD_FIXEDPALETTE` to -1, μ C/GUI expects the following conversion functions as part of the application program:

```
unsigned LCD_Color2Index_User(LCD_COLOR Color);
LCD_COLOR LCD_Index2Color_User(int Index);
unsigned LCD_GetIndexMask_User(void);
```

The function `LCD_Color2Index_User()` is called by μ C/GUI if a RGB value should be converted into an index value for the display controller whereas the function `LCD_Index2Color_User()` is called if an index value should be converted into a RGB value.

`LCD_GetIndexMask_User()` should return a bit mask value, which has each bit set to 1 which is used by the display controller and unused bits should be set to 0. For example the index mask of the 44416 mode is 0BBBB0GGGG0RRR0, where 0 stands for unused bits. The bit mask for this mode is 0x7BDE.

12.4 Custom palette modes

μ C/GUI can handle a custom hardware palette. A custom palette simply lists all the available colors in the same order as they are used by the hardware. This means that no matter what colors your LCD controller/display combination is able to display, μ C/GUI will be able to simulate them in the PC simulation and handle these colors correctly in your target system.

Working with a custom palette requires a color depth \leq 8 bpp.

In order to define a custom palette, you should do so in the configuration file `LCDConf.h`.

Example

The following example (part of `LCDConf.h`) would define a custom palette with 4 colors, all of which are shades of gray:

```
#define LCD_FIXEDPALETTE 0
#define LCD_PHYSCOLORS 0xffffffff, 0xaaaaaaaa, 0x55555555, 0x00000000
```

12.5 Modifying the color lookup table at run time

The color information at each pixel is stored either in RGB mode (in which the red, green and blue components are kept for each pixel) or in color-index mode (in which a single number called the color index is stored for each pixel). Each color index corresponds to an entry in a lookup table, or color map, that defines a specific set of R, G and B values.

If your LCD controller features a color lookup table (LUT), it is properly initialized by μ C/GUI during the initialization phase (`GUI_Init()` \rightarrow `LCD_Init()` \rightarrow `LCD_InitLUT()` \rightarrow `LCD_L0_SetLUTEntry()`). However, it might be desirable (for various reasons) to modify the LUT at run time. Some possible reasons include:

- Color corrections in order to compensate for display problems (non-linearities) or gamma-correction
- Inversion of the display.
- The need to use more colors (at different times) than the hardware can show (at one time).

If you are simply modifying the LUT at run time, the color conversion routines will not be aware of this and will therefore still assume that the LUT is initialized as it was originally.

Using different colors

The default contents of the color table are defined at compile time in the configuration file `GUIConf.h` (`LCD_PHYS_COLORS`). In order to minimize RAM consumption, this data is normally declared `const` and is therefore stored in ROM. In order to be able to modify it, it needs to be stored in RAM. This can be achieved by activation of the configuration switch `LCD_LUT_IN_RAM`. If this is enabled, the API function `GUI_SetLUTColor()` becomes available and can be used to modify the contents of the color table and the LUT at the same time.

A call to `LCD_InitLUT()` will restore the original (default) settings.

12.6 Color API

The following table lists the available color-related functions in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed description of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
Basic color functions	
<code>GUI_GetBkColor()</code>	Return the current background color.
<code>GUI_GetBkColorIndex()</code>	Return the index of the current background color.
<code>GUI_GetColor()</code>	Return the current foreground color.
<code>GUI_GetColorIndex()</code>	Return the index of the current foreground color.
<code>GUI_SetBkColor()</code>	Set the current background color.
<code>GUI_SetBkColorIndex()</code>	Set the index of the current background color.
<code>GUI_SetColor()</code>	Set the current foreground color.
<code>GUI_SetColorIndex()</code>	Set the index of the current foreground color.
Index & color conversion	
<code>GUI_Color2Index()</code>	Convert color into color index.
<code>GUI_Index2Color()</code>	Convert color index into color.
Lookup table (LUT) group	
<code>GUI_InitLUT()</code>	Initialize the LUT (hardware).
<code>GUI_SetLUTColor()</code>	Set color of a color index (both hardware and color table).
<code>GUI_SetLUTEEntry()</code>	Write a value into the LUT (hardware).

12.7 Basic color functions

`GUI_GetBkColor()`

Description

Returns the current background color.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GUI_GetBkColor(void);
```

Return value

The current background color.

`GUI_GetBkColorIndex()`

Description

Returns the index of the current background color.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetBkColorIndex(void);
```

Return value

The current background color index.

GUI_GetColor()

Description

Returns the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GUI_GetColor(void);
```

Return value

The current foreground color.

GUI_GetColorIndex()

Description

Returns the index of the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetColorIndex(void);
```

Return value

The current foreground color index.

GUI_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the current background color.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color for background, 24-bit RGB value.

Return value

The selected background color.

GUI_SetBkColorIndex()

Description

Sets the index of the current background color.

Prototype

```
int GUI_SetBkColorIndex(int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index of the color to be used.

Return value

The selected background color index.

GUI_SetColor()

Description

Sets the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color for foreground, 24-bit RGB value.

Return value

The selected foreground color.

GUI_SetColorIndex()

Description

Sets the index of the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetColorIndex(int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index of the color to be used.

Return value

The selected foreground color index.

12.8 Index & color conversion

GUI_Color2Index()

Returns the index of a specified RGB color value.

Prototype

```
int GUI_Color2Index(GUI_COLOR Color)
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	RGB value of the color to be converted.

Return value

The color index.

GUI_Index2Color()

Returns the RGB color value of a specified index.

Prototype

```
int GUI_Index2Color(int Index)
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index of the color, to be converted

Return value

The RGB color value.

12.9 Lookup table (LUT) group

These functions are optional and will work only if supported by the LCD controller hardware. An LCD controller with LUT hardware is required. Please consult the manual for the LCD controller you are using for more information on LUTs.

GUI_InitLUT()

Description

Initializes the lookup table of the LCD controller(s).

Prototype

```
void LCD_InitLUT(void);
```

Additional information

The lookup table needs to be enabled (by the `LCD_INITCONTROLLER` macro) for this function to have any effect.

GUI_SetLUTColor()

Description

Modifies a single entry to the color table and the LUT of the LCD controller(s).

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetLUTColor(U8 Pos, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Pos	Position within the lookup table. Should be less than the number of colors (e.g. 0-3 for 2 bpp, 0-15 for 4 bpp, 0-255 for 8 bpp).
Color	24-bit RGB value.

Additional information

The closest value possible will be used for the LUT. If a color LUT is to be initialized, all 3 components are used. In monochrome modes the green component is used, but it is still recommended (for better understanding of the program code) to set all 3 colors to the same value (such as 0x555555 or 0xa0a0a0).

The lookup table needs to be enabled (by the `LCD_INITCONTROLLER` macro) for this function to have any effect. This function is always available, but has an effect only if:

- a) The LUT is used
- b) The color table is located in RAM (`LCD_PHYSCOLORS_IN_RAM`)

GUI_SetLUTEntry()

Description

Modifies a single entry to the LUT of the LCD controller(s).

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetLUTEntry(U8 Pos, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Pos	Position within the lookup table. Should be less than the number of colors (e.g. 0-3 for 2 bpp, 0-15 for 4 bpp, 0-255 for 8 bpp).
Color	24-bit RGB value.

Additional information

The closest value possible will be used for the LUT. If a color LUT is to be initialized, all 3 components are used. In monochrome modes the green component is used, but it is still recommended (for better understanding of the program code) to set all 3 colors to the same value (such as 0x555555 or 0xa0a0a0).

The lookup table needs to be enabled (by the `LCD_INITCONTROLLER` macro) for this function to have any effect. This function is often used to ensure that the colors actually displayed match the logical colors (linearization).

Example

```
//  
// Linearize the palette of a 4-grayscale LCD  
//  
GUI_SetLUTEntry(0, 0x000000);  
GUI_SetLUTEntry(1, 0x777777); // 555555 would be linear  
GUI_SetLUTEntry(2, 0xbbbbbb); // aaaaaa would be linear  
GUI_SetLUTEntry(3, 0xffffff);
```


Chapter 13

Memory Devices

Memory devices can be used in a variety of situations, mainly to prevent the display from flickering when using drawing operations for overlapping items. The basic idea is quite simple. Without the use of a memory device, drawing operations write directly to the display. The screen is updated as drawing operations are executed, which gives it a flickering appearance as the various updates are made. For example, if you want to draw a bitmap in the background and some transparent text in the foreground, you would first have to draw the bitmap and then the text. The effect would be a flickering of the text.

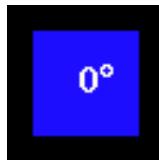
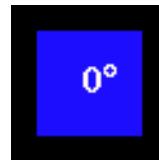
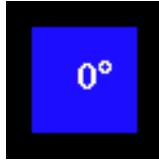
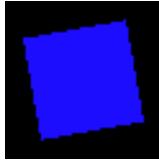
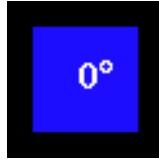
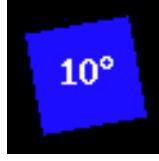
If a memory device is used for such a procedure, however, all drawing operations are executed in memory. The final result is displayed on the screen only when all operations have been carried out, with the advantage of no flickering. This difference can be seen in the example in the following section, which illustrates a sequence of drawing operations both with and without the use of a memory device.

The distinction may be summarized as follows: If no memory device is used, the effects of drawing operations can be seen step by step, with the disadvantage of a flickering display. With a memory device, the effects of all routines are made visible as a single operation. No intermediate steps can actually be seen. The advantage, as explained above, is that display flickering is completely eliminated, and this is often desirable.

Memory devices are an additional (optional) software item and are not shipped with the µC/GUI basic package. The software for memory devices is located in the subdirectory `GUI\Memdev`.

13.1 Using memory devices: an illustration

The following table shows screen shots of the same operations handled with and without a memory device. The objective in both cases is identical: a work piece is to be rotated and labeled with the respective angle of rotation (here, 10 degrees). In the first case (without a memory device) the screen must be cleared, then the polygon is redrawn in the new position and a string with the new label is written. In the second case (with a memory device) the same operations are performed in memory, but the screen is not updated during this time. The only update occurs when the routine `GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()` is called, and this update reflects all the operations at once. Note that the initial states and final outputs of both procedures are identical.

API function	Without memory device	With memory device
Step 0: Initial state		
Step 1: GUI_Clear		
Step 2: GUI_DrawPolygon		
Step 3: GUI_DispString		
Step 4: GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD (only when using memory device)		

13.2 Supported color depth (bpp)

Memory devices are available in 3 different color depth:
1bpp, 8 bpp and 16 bpp.

Creating memory devices "compatible" to the display

There are two ways to create memory devices. If they are used to avoid flickering, a memory device compatible to the display is created. This "compatible" memory device needs to have the same or a higher color depth as the display. µC/GUI automatically selects the "right" type of memory device for the display if the functions `GUI_MEMDEV_Create()`, `GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx()` are used.

The Window manager, which also has the ability to use memory devices for some or all windows in the system, also uses these functions.

This way, the memory device with the lowest color depth (using the least memory) is automatically used.

Creating memory devices for other purposes

Memory devices of any type can be created using `GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed()`. A typical application would be the use of a memory device for printing as described later in this chapter.

13.3 Memory devices and the window manager

The window manager works seamlessly with memory devices. Every window has a flag which tells the window manager if a memory device should be used for rendering. This flag can be specified when creating the window or set/reset at any time.

If the memory device flag is set for a particular window, the WM automatically uses a memory device when drawing the window. It creates a memory device before drawing a window and deletes it after the drawing operation. If enough memory is available, the whole window fits into the size of the memory device created by the WM. If not enough memory is available for the complete window in one memory device, the WM uses 'banding' for drawing the window. Details about 'banding' are described in the documentation, chapter 'Memory Devices\Banding memory device'. The memory used for the drawing operation is only allocated during the drawing operation. If there is not enough memory available when (re-)drawing the window, the window is redrawn without memory device.

13.4 Memory requirements

If creating a memory device the required number of bytes depends on the color depth of the memory device and whether transparency support is needed or not.

Memory usage without transparency support

The following table shows the memory requirement in dependence of the system color depth for memory devices without transparency support.

Color depth of memory device	System color depth (LCD_BITSPERPIXEL)	Memory usage
1 bpp	1 bpp	1 byte / 8 pixels: $(XSIZE + 7) / 8 * YSIZE$
8 bpp	2, 4 and 8 bpp	$XSIZE * YSIZE$

Color depth of memory device	System color depth (LCD_BITSPIXEL)	Memory usage
16 bpp	12 and 16 bpp	2 bytes / pixel: XSIZE * YSIZE * 2

Example:

A memory device of 111 pixels in X and 33 pixels in Y should be created. It should be compatible to a display with a color depth of 12 bpp and should support transparency. The required number of bytes can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Number of required bytes} = (111 * 2 + (111 + 7) / 8) * 33 = 7788 \text{ bytes}$$

Memory usage with transparency support

If a memory device should support transparency it needs one additional byte / 8 pixels for internal management.

Color depth of memory device	System color depth (LCD_BITSPIXEL)	Memory usage
1 bpp	1 bpp	1 byte / pixel + 1 byte / 8 pixels: (XSIZE + (XSIZE + 7) / 8) * YSIZE
8 bpp	2, 4 and 8 bpp	2 bytes / pixel + 1 byte / 8 pixels: (XSIZE * 2 + (XSIZE + 7) / 8) * YSIZE
16 bpp	12 and 16 bpp	2 bytes / pixel + 1 byte / 8 pixels: (XSIZE * 2 + (XSIZE + 7) / 8) * YSIZE

Example:

A memory device of 200 pixels in X and 50 pixels in Y should be created. It should be compatible to a display with a color depth of 4bpp and should support transparency. The required number of bytes can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Number of required bytes} = (200 + (200 + 7) / 8) * 50 = 11250 \text{ bytes}$$

13.5 Performance

Using memory devices typically does no significantly affect performance. When memory devices are used, the work of the driver is easier: It simply transfers bitmaps to the display controller. On systems with slow drivers (for example displays connected via serial interface), the performance is better if memory devices are used; on systems with a fast driver (such as memory mapped display memory, LCDLin driver and others) the use of memory devices costs some performance.

If 'banding' is needed, the used time to draw a window increases with the number of bands. The more memory available for memory devices, the better the performance.

13.6 Basic functions

The following routines are those that are normally called when using memory devices. Basic usage is rather simple:

1. Create the memory device (using `GUI_MEMDEV_Create()`).

2. Activate it (using `GUI_MEMDEV_Select()`).
3. Execute drawing operations.
4. Copy the result into the display (using `GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()`).
5. Delete the memory device if you no longer need it (using `GUI_MEMDEV_Delete()`).

13.7 In order to be able to use memory devices...

Memory devices are enabled by default. In order to optimize performance of the software, support for memory devices can be switched off in the configuration file `GUIConf.h` by including the following line:

```
#define GUI_SUPPORT_MEMDEV 0
If this line is in the configuration file and you want to use memory devices, either delete the line or change the define to 1.
```

13.8 Memory device API

The table below lists the available routines of the μ C/GUI memory device API. All functions are listed in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
Basic functions	
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_Clear()</code>	Marks the memory device contents as unchanged.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_CopyFromLCD()</code>	Copies contents of LCD to memory device.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()</code>	Copies contents of memory device to LCD.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDA()</code>	Copies the contents of memory device antialiased.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt()</code>	Copies contents of memory device to LCD at the given position.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_Create()</code>	Creates the memory device (first step).
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx()</code>	Creates the memory device with additional creation flags.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed()</code>	Creates a memory device with a given color depth.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_Delete()</code>	Frees the memory used by the memory device.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr()</code>	Returns a pointer to the data area for direct manipulation.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_GetXSize()</code>	Returns the X-size (width) of memory device.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_GetYSize()</code>	Returns the Y-size (height) of memory device.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty()</code>	Marks the given area as containing pixels to be drawn.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_ReduceYSize()</code>	Reduces Y-size of memory device.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_Select()</code>	Selects a memory device as target for drawing operations.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_SetOrg()</code>	Changes the origin of the memory device on the LCD.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_Write()</code>	Writes the contents of a memory device into a memory device.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha()</code>	Writes the contents of a memory device into a memory device using alpha blending.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlphaAt()</code>	Writes the contents of a memory device into a memory device using the given position and alpha blending.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt()</code>	Writes the contents of a memory device into a memory device to the given position.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx()</code>	Writes the contents of a memory device into a memory device using alpha blending and scaling.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt()</code>	Writes the contents of a memory device into a memory device to the given position using alpha blending and scaling.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_SelectLCD()</code>	Selects the LCD as target for drawing operations. Banding memory device
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_Draw()</code>	Use a memory device for drawing.
	Auto device object functions
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto()</code>	Creates an auto device object.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto()</code>	Deletes an auto device object.
<code>GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto()</code>	Uses a GUI_AUTODEV object for drawing.
	Measurement device object functions
<code>GUI_MEASDEV_ClearRect()</code>	Clears the measurement rectangle
<code>GUI_MEASDEV_Create()</code>	Creates a measurement device
<code>GUI_MEASDEV_Delete()</code>	Deletes a measurement device
<code>GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect()</code>	Retrieves the measurement result
<code>GUI_MEASDEV_Select()</code>	Selects a measurement device as target for drawing operations

13.9 Basic functions

`GUI_MEMDEV_Clear()`

Description

Marks the entire contents of a memory device as "unchanged".

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_Clear(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hMem</code>	Handle to memory device.

Additional information

The next drawing operation with `GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()` will then write only the bytes modified between `GUI_MEMDEV_Clear()` and `GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()`.

`GUI_MEMDEV_CopyFromLCD()`

Description

Copies the contents of a memory device from LCD data (video memory) to the memory device. In other words: read back the contents of the LCD to the memory device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_CopyFromLCD(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hMem</code>	Handle to memory device.

`GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()`

Description

Copies the contents of a memory device from memory to the LCD.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.

Additional information

Do not use this function within a paint callback function called by the window manager, because it deactivates the clipping area of the window manager. The function GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt should be used instead.

GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDA()

Description

Copies the contents of a memory device (antialiased) from memory to the LCD.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDA(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle MemDev);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.

Additional information

The device data is handled as antialiased data. A matrix of 2x2 pixels is converted to 1 pixel. The intensity of the resulting pixel depends on how many pixels are set in the matrix.

Example

Creates a memory device and selects it for output. A large font is then set and a text is written to the memory device:

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem = GUI_MEMDEV_Create(0, 0, 60, 32);
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font32B_ASCII);
GUI_DispString("Text");
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDA(hMem);
```

Screen shot of above example



GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt()

Description

Copies the contents of a memory device from memory to the LCD at the given position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDat(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int x, int y)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.
x	Position in X
y	Position in Y

GUI_MEMDEV_Create()**Description**

Creates a memory device.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_Create(int x0, int y0, int xSize, int ySize)
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of memory device.
y0	Y-position of memory device.
xsize	X-size of memory device.
ysize	Y-size of memory device.

Return value

Handle for created memory device. If the routine fails the return value is 0.

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx()**Description**

Creates a memory device.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_CreateEx(int x0, int y0,
                                         int XSize, int YSize
                                         int Flags)
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of memory device.
y0	Y-position of memory device.
xsize	X-size of memory device.
ysize	Y-size of memory device.
Flags	(see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Flags	
0 (recommended)	Default: The memory device is created with a transparency flag which ensures that the background will be drawn correctly.
GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS	Creates a memory device without transparency. The user must make sure that the background is drawn correctly. This way the memory device can be used for non-rectangular areas. An other advantage is the higher speed: Using this flag accelerates the memory device app. 30 - 50%.

Return value

Handle for created memory device. If the routine fails the return value is 0.

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed()

Description

Creates a memory device of fixed size, color depth (bpp) and specified color conversion.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed(
    int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
    int Flags,
    const tLCDDEV_APIList * pMemDevAPI,
    const LCD_API_COLOR_CONV * pColorConvAPI)
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of memory device.
y0	Y-position of memory device.
xsize	X-size of memory device.
ysize	Y-size of memory device.
Flags	(see table below).
pMemDevAPI	(see table below).
pColorConvAPI	(see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Flags	
0 (recommended)	Default: The memory device is created with a transparency flag which ensures that the background will be drawn correctly.
GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS	Creates a memory device without transparency. The user must make sure that the background is drawn correctly. This way the memory device can be used for non-rectangular areas. An other advantage is the higher speed: Using this flag accelerates the memory device app. 30 - 50%.

Parameter <code>pMemDevAPI</code>	
Defines the color depth of the memory device in bpp. The color depth of the memory device should be equal or greater than the required bits for the color conversion routines.	
A memory device with a 1bpp color conversion (GUI_COLOR_CONV_1) for example requires at least a memory device with 1bpp color depth. The available memory devices are 1bpp, 8bpp and 16bpp memory devices. So an 1bpp memory device should be used.	
If using a 4 bit per pixel color conversion (GUI_COLOR_CONV_4) at least 4bpp are needed for the memory device. In this case an 8bpp memory device should be used.	
Permitted values	
GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_1	Create memory device with 1bpp color depth (1 byte per 8 pixels) Use if the specified color conversion requires 1bpp.
GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_8	Create memory device with 8bpp color depth (1 byte per pixel) Use if the specified color conversion requires 8bpp or less.
GUI_MEMDEV_APILIST_16	Create memory device with 16bpp color depth (1 U16 per pixel) Use if the specified color conversion requires more than 8 bpp. (High color modes)

Parameter <code>pColorConvAPI</code>	
This parameter defines the desired color conversion. For more details about the used bits per pixel and the color conversion please refer to the chapter "Colors".	
Permitted values	
GUI_COLOR_CONV_1	Same color conversion like the fixed palette mode 1. (black/white)
GUI_COLOR_CONV_2	Same color conversion like the fixed palette mode 2. (4 gray scales)
GUI_COLOR_CONV_4	Same color conversion like the fixed palette mode 4. (16 gray scales)
GUI_COLOR_CONV_8666	Same color conversion like the fixed palette mode 8666.

Return value

Handle for created memory device. If the routine fails the return value is 0.

Additional information

This function can be used if a memory device with a specified color conversion should be created. This could make sense if for example some items should be printed on a printer device. The sample folder contains the code sample `MEMDEV_Printing.c` which shows, how to use the function to print something in 1bpp color conversion mode.

GUI_MEMDEV_Delete()

Description

Deletes a memory device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_Delete(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle MemDev) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.

Return value

Handle for deleted memory device.

GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr()

Description

Returns a pointer to the data area (image area) of a memory device. This data area can then be manipulated without the use of GUI functions; it can for example be used as output buffer for a JPEG or video decompression routine.

Prototype

```
void* GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.

Additional information

The device data is stored from the returned addr. onwards. An application modifying this data has to take extreme caution that it does not overwrite memory outside of this data area. If this data area is used with µC/GUIs default memory management, the memory area must remain locked as long as the pointer is in use.

Organization of the data area:

The pixels are stored in the mode "native" to the display (or layer) for which they are intended. For layers with 8 bpp or less, 8 bits (1 byte) are used per pixel; for layers with more than 8 and less or equal 16 bpp, a 16 bit value (U16) is used for one pixel. The memory is organized in reading order which means: First byte (or U16), stored at the start address, represents the color index of the pixel in the upper left corner ($y=0, x=0$); the next pixel, stored right after the first one, is the one to the left at ($y=0, x=1$). (Unless the memory device area is only 1 pixel wide). The next line is stored right after the first line in memory, without any kind of padding. Endian mode is irrelevant, it is assumed that 16 bit units are accessed as 16 bit units and not as 2 separate bytes. The data area is comprised of $(xSize * ySize)$ pixels, so $xSize * ySize$ bytes for 8bpp or lower memory devices, $2 * xSize * ySize$ bytes (accessed as $xSize * ySize$ units of 16 bits) for 16 bpp memory devices.

GUI_MEMDEV_GetXSize()

Description

Returns the X-size (width) of a memory device.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_GetXSize(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.

GUI_MEMDEV_GetYSize()**Description**

Returns the Y-size (height) of a memory device in pixels.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_GetYSize(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.

GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty()**Description**

Tells the memory device that the pixels in the given area have been changed.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
                           int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.
x0	Leftmost pixel to be marked.
y0	Topmost pixel to be marked.
x1	Rightmost pixel to be marked.
y1	Bottommost pixel to be marked.

Additional information

When drawing into a memory device with the µC/GUI drawing API functions like `GUI_DrawLine()` a memory device with transparency support (default) marks each modified pixel. The drawing functions like `GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD()` then draw only the modified pixels.

If the contents of a memory device have been changed by the application program using the pointer returned by `GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr()`, the memory device does not know which pixels are changed. In this case the function `GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty()` should be used to mark these pixels.

Using this function with memory devices without transparency, created with the flag `GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS`, makes no sense.

GUI_MEMDEV_ReduceYSize()**Description**

Reduces the Y-size of a memory device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_Reduceysize(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int YSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.
YSize	New Y-size of the memory device.

Additional information

Changing the size of the memory device is more efficient than deleting and then recreating it.

GUI_MEMDEV_Select()

Description

Activates a memory device (or activates LCD if handle is 0)

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_Select(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.

GUI_MEMDEV_SetOrg()

Description

Changes the origin of the memory device on the LCD.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_SetOrg(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.
x0	Horizontal position (of the upper left pixel).
y0	Vertical position (of the upper left pixel).

Additional information

This routine can be helpful when the same device is used for different areas of the screen or when the contents of the memory device are to be copied into different areas.

Changing the origin of the memory device is more efficient than deleting and then recreating it.

GUI_MEMDEV_Write()

Description

Writes the contents of the given memory device into the currently selected memory device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_Write(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha()**Description**

Writes the contents of the given memory device into the currently selected memory device using alpha blending.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int Alpha);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.
Alpha	Alpha blending factor, 0 - 255

Additional information

Alpha blending means mixing 2 colors with a given intensity. This function makes it possible to write semi-transparent from one memory device into an other memory device. The [Alpha](#)-parameter specifies the intensity used when writing to the currently selected memory device.

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlphaAt()**Description**

Writes the contents of the given memory device into the currently selected memory device at the specified position using alpha blending.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlphaAt(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
                             int Alpha, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.
Alpha	Alpha blending factor, 0 - 255
x	Position in X
y	Position in Y

Additional information

(See [GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha](#))

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt()**Description**

Writes the contents of the given memory device into the currently selected memory device at the specified position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.
x	Position in X
y	Position in Y

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx()

Description

Writes the contents of the given memory device into the currently selected memory device at position (0, 0) using alpha blending and scaling.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
                         int xMag, int yMag, int Alpha);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.
xMag	Scaling factor for X-axis * 1000.
yMag	Scaling factor for Y-axis * 1000.
Alpha	Alpha blending factor, 0 - 255.

Additional information

A negative scaling factor mirrors the output. Please also refer to function GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt().

GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt()

Description

Writes the contents of the given memory device into the currently selected memory device at the specified position using alpha blending and scaling.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx(GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem,
                         int x, int y, int xMag, int yMag, int Alpha);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to memory device.
x	Position in X.
y	Position in Y.
xMag	Scaling factor for X-axis * 1000.
yMag	Scaling factor for Y-axis * 1000.
Alpha	Alpha blending factor, 0 - 255.

Additional information

A negative scaling factor mirrors the output.

Example

The following sample creates 2 memory devices: hMem0 (40x10) and hMem1 (80x20). A small white text is drawn at the upper left position of hMem0 and hMem1. Then the function GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx() writes the contents of hMem0 to hMem1 using mirroring and magnifying:

```
GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem0, hMem1;
GUI_Init();
hMem0 = GUI_MEMDEV_Create(0, 0, 40, 10);
hMem1 = GUI_MEMDEV_Create(0, 0, 80, 20);
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem0);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
GUI_DispString("Text");
GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem1);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_RED);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_DispStringAt("Text", 0, 0);
GUI_MEMDEV_WriteExAt(hMem0, 0, 0, -2000, -2000, 160);
GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD(hMem1);
```

Screenshot of the above sample



GUI_SelectLCD()

Description

Selects the LCD as target for drawing operations.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SelectLCD(void))
```

Example for using a memory device

This example demonstrates the use of a memory device. Some items are written to a memory device and then copied to the LCD. It is available as `MEMDEV_MemDev.c` in the μ C/GUI samples.

```
/*
 *      Micrium Inc.
 *      Empowering embedded systems
 *
 *       $\mu$ C/GUI sample code
 *
 ****
 -----
 File      : MEMDEV_MemDev.c
 Purpose   : Simple demo shows the use of memory devices
 -----
 */
#include "GUI.h"
/*
 *      static variables
 *
 ****
 */
static GUI_RECT Rect = {0, 130, 100, 180};
```

```

*****
*
*      static code
*
*****
*/

```

```

*****
*
*      _Draw
*/
static void _Draw(int Delay) {
    GUI_SetPenSize(5);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
    GUI_DrawLine(Rect.x0 + 3, Rect.y0 + 3, Rect.x1 - 3, Rect.y1 - 3);
    GUI_Delay(Delay);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_GREEN);
    GUI_DrawLine(Rect.x0 + 3, Rect.y1 - 3, Rect.x1 - 3, Rect.y0 + 3);
    GUI_Delay(Delay);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_FontComic24B_ASCII);
    GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
    GUI_DispStringInRect("Closed", &Rect, GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER);
    GUI_Delay(Delay);
}

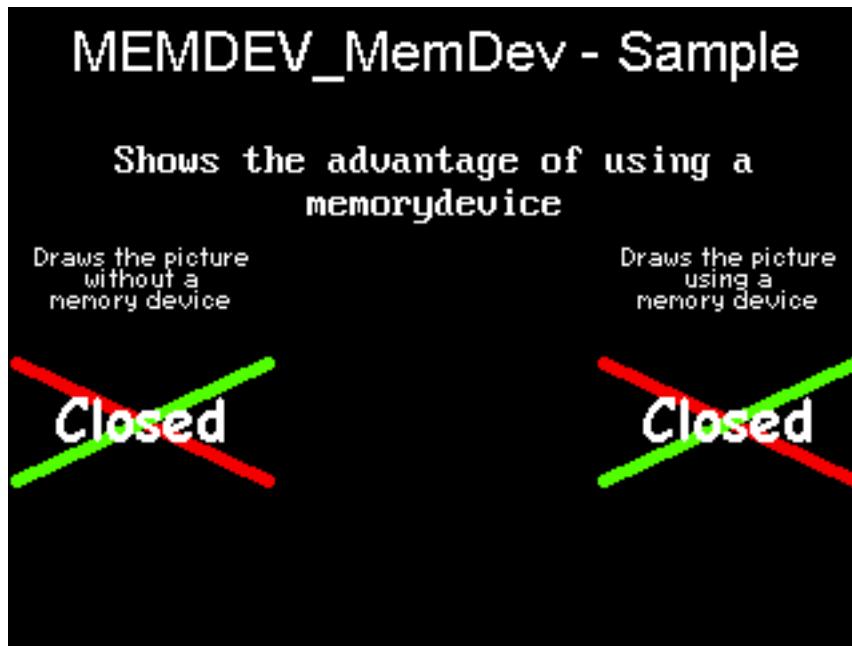
*****
*
*      _DemoMemDev
*/
static void _DemoMemDev(void) {
    GUI_MEMDEV_Handle hMem;
    int i;
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("MEMDEV_MemDev - Sample", 160, 5);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Shows the advantage of using a\nmemory device", 160, 50);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8_1);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Draws the picture\nwithout a\nmemory device", 50, 90);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Draws the picture\nusing a\nmemory device", 270, 90);
    /* Create the memory device */
    hMem = GUI_MEMDEV_Create(Rect.x0, Rect.y0, Rect.x1 - Rect.x0, Rect.y1 - Rect.y0);
    /* Routes the drawing operations to the memory device */
    GUI_MEMDEV_Select(hMem);
    Draw(0);
    /* Routes the drawing operations to the LCD */
    GUI_MEMDEV_Select(0);
    while (1) {
        for (i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
            GUI_Delay(250);
            GUI_ClearRect(LCD_GetXSize() - Rect.x1, Rect.y0, LCD_GetXSize(), Rect.y1);
            GUI_Delay(250);
            GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt(hMem, LCD_GetXSize() - Rect.x1, Rect.y0);
        }
        GUI_Delay(500);
        /* Uses no memory device */
        Draw(400);
        GUI_Delay(400);
        GUI_ClearRect(0, 130, 319, 219);
    }
    GUI_MEMDEV_Delete(hMem); /* Destroy memory device */
}

*****
*
*      MainTask
*
*      Demonstrates the use of memory devices
*
*****

```

```
 */
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    _DemoMemDev();
}
```

Screenshot of the above example:



13.10 Banding memory device

A memory device is first filled by executing the specified drawing functions. After filling the device, the contents are drawn to the LCD. There may not be enough memory available to store the complete output area at once, depending on your configuration (see the `GUI_ALLOC_SIZE` configuration macro in Chapter 29: "High-Level Configuration"). A banding memory device divides the drawing area into bands, in which each band covers as many lines as possible with the currently available memory.

GUI_MEMDEV_Draw()

Description

Basic drawing function that prevents flickering of the display.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_Draw(GUI_RECT* pRect,
                     GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_P* pfDraw,
                     void* pData,
                     int NumLines,
                     int Flags)
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pRect</code>	Pointer to a <code>GUI_RECT</code> structure for the used LCD area.
<code>pfDraw</code>	Pointer to a callback function for executing the drawing.

Parameter	Meaning
pData	Pointer to a data structure used as parameter for the callback function.
NumLines	0 (recommended) or number of lines for the memory device.
Flags	(see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Flags	
0 (recommended)	Default: The memory device is created with a transparency flag which ensures that the background will be drawn correctly.
GUI_MEMDEV_NOTRANS	Creates a memory device without transparency. The user must make sure that the background is drawn correctly. Should be used for optimization purposes only.

Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the routine fails.

Additional information

If the parameter NumLines is 0, the number of lines in each band is calculated automatically by the function. The function then iterates over the output area band by band by moving the origin of the memory device.

Example for using a banding memory device

The following example demonstrates the use of a banding memory device. It is available as `MEMDEV_Banding.c`.

```
*****
*           Micrium Inc.          *
*           Empowering embedded systems   *
*           *                         *
*           μC/GUI sample code        *
*           *                         *
*****
```

```
-----  
File      : MEMDEV_Banding.c  
Purpose   : Example demonstrating the use of banding memory devices  
-----  
*/
```

```
#include "gui.h"

static const GUI_POINT aPoints[] = {
    {-50, 0},
    {-10, 10},
    { 0, 50},
    { 10, 10},
    { 50, 0},
    { 10,-10},
    { 0,-50},
    {-10,-10}
};

#define SIZE_OF_ARRAY(Array) (sizeof(Array) / sizeof(Array[0]))

typedef struct {
    int XPos_Poly, YPos_Poly;
    int XPos_Text, YPos_Text;
    GUI_POINT aPointsDest[8];
} tDrawItContext;

*****
```

```

*
*          Drawing routine
*
***** ****
*/
static void DrawIt(void * pData) {
    tDrawItContext * pDrawItContext = (tDrawItContext *)pData;
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
    GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
    /* draw background */
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_GREEN);
    GUI_FillRect(pDrawItContext->XPos_Text,
                 pDrawItContext->YPos_Text - 25,
                 pDrawItContext->XPos_Text + 100,
                 pDrawItContext->YPos_Text - 5);
    /* draw polygon */
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
    GUI_FillPolygon(pDrawItContext->aPointsDest, SIZE_OF_ARRAY(aPoints), 160, 120);
    /* draw foreground */
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
    GUI_FillRect(220 - pDrawItContext->XPos_Text,
                 pDrawItContext->YPos_Text + 5,
                 220 - pDrawItContext->XPos_Text + 100,
                 pDrawItContext->YPos_Text + 25);
}

/*****
*
*          Demonstrates the banding memory device
*
***** ****
*/
#define USE_BANDING_MEMDEV (1) /* Set to 0 for drawing without banding memory device
*/
void DemoBandingMemdev(void) {
    int i;
    int XSize = LCD_GET_XSIZE();
    int YSize = LCD_GET_YSIZE();
    tDrawItContext DrawItContext;
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x9);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Banding memory device\nwithout flickering",
                           XSize / 2, 40);
    DrawItContext.XPos_Poly = XSize / 2;
    DrawItContext.YPos_Poly = YSize / 2;
    DrawItContext.YPos_Text = YSize / 2 - 4;
    for (i = 0; i < (XSize - 100); i++) {
        float angle = i * 3.1415926 / 60;
        DrawItContext.XPos_Text = i;
        /* Rotate the polygon */
        GUI_RotatePolygon(DrawItContext.aPointsDest,
                           aPoints,
                           SIZE_OF_ARRAY(aPoints), angle);
    #if USE_BANDING_MEMDEV
    {
        GUI_RECT Rect = {0, 70, 320, 170};
        /* Use banding memory device for drawing */
        GUI_MEMDEV_Draw(&Rect, &DrawIt, &DrawItContext, 0, 0);
    }
    #else
        /* Simple drawing without using memory devices */
        DrawIt((void *)&DrawItContext);
    #endif
    #ifdef WIN32
        GUI_Delay(20); /* Use a short delay only in the simulation */
    #endif
    }
}
}

```

```
*****
*
*          main
*
*****
*/
void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    while(1) {
        DemoBandingMemdev();
    }
}
```

Screen shot of above example



13.11 Auto device object

Memory devices are useful when the display must be updated to reflect the movement or changing of items, since it is important in such applications to prevent the LCD from flickering. An auto device object is based on the banding memory device, and may be more efficient for applications such as moving indicators, in which only a small part of the display is updated at a time.

The device automatically distinguishes which areas of the display consist of fixed objects and which areas consist of moving or changing objects that must be updated. When the drawing function is called for the first time, all items are drawn. Each further call updates only the space used by the moving or changing objects. The actual drawing operation uses the banding memory device, but only within the necessary space. The main advantage of using an auto device object (versus direct usage of a banding memory device) is that it saves computation time, since it does not keep updating the entire display.

GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto()

Description

Creates an auto device object.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto(GUI_AUTODEV * pAutoDev);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pAutoDev	Pointer to a GUI_AUTODEV object.

Return value

Currently 0, reserved for later use.

GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto()**Description**

Deletes an auto device object.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto(GUI_AUTODEV * pAutoDev);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pAutoDev	Pointer to a GUI_AUTODEV object.

GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto()**Description**

Executes a specified drawing routine using a banding memory device.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto(GUI_AUTODEV * pAutoDev,
                        GUI_AUTODEV_INFO * pAutoDevInfo,
                        GUI_CALLBACK_VOID_P * pfDraw,
                        void * pData);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pAutoDev	Pointer to a GUI_AUTODEV object.
pAutoDevInfo	Pointer to a GUI_AUTODEV_INFO object.
pfDraw	Pointer to the user-defined drawing function which is to be executed.
pData	Pointer to a data structure passed to the drawing function.

Return value

0 if successful, 1 if the routine fails.

Additional information

The GUI_AUTODEV_INFO structure contains the information about what items must be drawn by the user function:

```
typedef struct {
    char DrawFixed;
} GUI_AUTODEV_INFO;
```

DrawFixed is set to 1 if all items have to be drawn. It is set to 0 when only the moving or changing objects have to be drawn. We recommend the following procedure when using this feature:

```
typedef struct {
    GUI_AUTODEV_INFO AutoDevInfo; /* Information about what has to be drawn */
    /* Additional data used by the user function */
    ...
} PARAM;

static void Draw(void * p) {
    PARAM * pParam = (PARAM *)p;
    if (pParam->AutoDevInfo.DrawFixed) {
```

```

    /* Draw fixed background */
    ...
}
/* Draw moving objects */
...
if (pParam->AutoDevInfo.DrawFixed) {
    /* Draw fixed foreground (if needed) */
    ...
}
}

void main(void) {
    PARAM Param;                                /* Parameters for drawing routine */
    GUI_AUTODEV AutoDev;                         /* Object for banding memory device */
    /* Set/modify informations for drawing routine */
    ...
    GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto(&AutoDev); /* Create GUI_AUTODEV-object */
    GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto(&AutoDev,      /* Use GUI_AUTODEV-object for drawing */
                        &Param.AutoDevInfo,
                        &Draw,
                        &Param);
    GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto(&AutoDev); /* Delete GUI_AUTODEV-object */
}

```

Example for using an auto device object

The following example demonstrates the use of an auto device object. It can be found as `MEMDEV_AutoDev.c`. A scale with a moving needle is drawn in the background and a small text is written in the foreground. The needle is drawn with the antialiasing feature of μ C/GUI. High-resolution antialiasing is used here to improve the appearance of the moving needle. For more information please see Chapter 23: "Antialiasing".

```

*****
*           Micrium Inc. *
*           Empowering embedded systems *
*
*            $\mu$ C/GUI sample code *
*
*****
```

```

File      : MEMDEV_AutoDev.c
Purpose   : Example demonstrating the use of GUI_AUTODEV-objects
-----*/
#include "GUI.h"
#include <math.h>
#include <stddef.h>

*****
*           defines
*
*****
```

```

#define countof(Obj) (sizeof(Obj)/sizeof(Obj[0]))

#define DEG2RAD (3.1415926f/180)
#define MAG 4

*****
*           static data, scale bitmap
*
*****
```

```

static const GUI_COLOR ColorsScaleR140[] = {
    0x000000, 0x00AA00, 0xFFFFFFF, 0x0000AA,
    0x0OFF00, 0xAEEAEAE, 0x737373, 0xD3D3D3,
    0xDFDFDF, 0xBBBDFBB, 0x6161DF, 0x61DF61,
    0xBBBBD, 0xC7C7C7, 0x616193
};

static const GUI_LOGPALETTE PalScaleR140 = {
    15, /* number of entries */
    0, /* No transparency */
    &ColorsScaleR140[0]
};

static const unsigned char acScaleR140[] = {
    /* ... The pixel data is not shown in the manual.
     * Please take a look at the sample source file ... */
};

static const GUI_BITMAP bmScaleR140 = {
    200, /* XSize */
    73, /* YSize */
    100, /* BytesPerLine */
    4, /* BitsPerPixel */
    acScaleR140, /* Pointer to picture data (indices) */
    &PalScaleR140 /* Pointer to palette */
};

/*****************
*      static data, shape of polygon
*****************/
static const GUI_POINT _aNeedle[] = {
    { MAG * ( 0 ), MAG * ( 0 + 125 ) },
    { MAG * (-3), MAG * (-15 + 125) },
    { MAG * (-3), MAG * (-65 + 125) },
    { MAG * ( 3 ), MAG * (-65 + 125) },
    { MAG * ( 3 ), MAG * (-15 + 125) },
};

/*****************
*      structure containing information for drawing routine
*/
typedef struct {
    /* Information about what has to be displayed */
    GUI_AUTODEV_INFO AutoDevInfo;
    /* Polygon data */
    GUI_POINT aPoints[7];
    float Angle;
} PARAM;

/*****************
*      static code
*/
/*****************/
*      _GetAngle

This routine returns the value to indicate. In a real
application, this value would somehow be measured.
*/
static float _GetAngle(int tDiff) {
    if (tDiff < 15000) {
        return 225 - 0.006 * tDiff ;
    }
}

```

```

tDiff -= 15000;
if (tDiff < 7500) {
    return 225 - 90 + 0.012 * tDiff ;
}
tDiff -= 7000;
return 225;
}

*****
*
*      _Draw
*/
static void _Draw(void * p) {
PARAM * pParam = (PARAM *)p;
/* Fixed background */
if (pParam->AutoDevInfo.DrawFixed) {
    GUI_ClearRect (60, 80 + bmScaleR140.YSize, 60 + bmScaleR140.XSize - 1, 180);
    GUI_DrawBitmap(&bmScaleR140, 60, 80);
}
/* Moving needle */
GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_AA_FillPolygon(pParam->aPoints, countof(_aNeedle), MAG * 160, MAG * 220);
/* Fixed foreground */
if (pParam->AutoDevInfo.DrawFixed) {
    GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24B_ASCII);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("RPM / 1000", 160, 140);
}
}

*****
*
*      _DemoScale
*/
static void _DemoScale(void) {
int Cnt;
int tDiff, t0;
PARAM Param;           /* Parameters for drawing routine */
GUI_AUTODEV AutoDev;   /* Object for banding memory device */
/* Show message */
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("MEMDEV_AutoDev - Sample", 160, 5);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Scale using GUI_AUTODEV-object", 160, 50);
/* Enable high resolution for antialiasing */
GUI_AA_EnableHiRes();
GUI_AA_SetFactor(MAG);
while (1) {
    t0 = GUI_GetTime();
    /* Create GUI_AUTODEV-object */
    GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto(&AutoDev);
    /* Show needle for a fixed time */
    for (Cnt = 0; (tDiff = GUI_GetTime() - t0) < 24000; Cnt++) {
        /* Get value to display an calculate polygon for needle */
        Param.Angle = _GetAngle(tDiff) * DEG2RAD;
        GUI_RotatePolygon(Param.aPoints, _aNeedle, countof(_aNeedle), Param.Angle);
        GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto(&AutoDev, &Param.AutoDevInfo, &_Draw, &Param);
    }
    /* Display milliseconds / picture */
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Milliseconds / picture:", 160, 200);
    GUI_SetTextAlign(GUI_TA_CENTER);
    GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_NORMAL);
    GUI_DispNextLine();
    GUI_GotoX(160);
    GUI_DispFloatMin((float)tDiff / (float)Cnt, 2);
    /* Delete GUI_AUTODEV-object */
    GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto(&AutoDev);
}
}

```

```

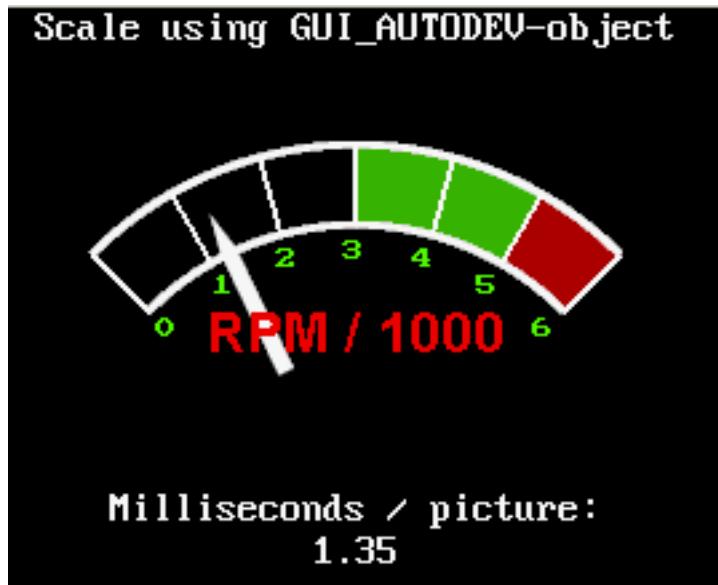
        GUI_Delay(3000);
        GUI_ClearRect(0, 70, 319, 239);
    }

/*********************************************
*          MainTask
*
*      Demonstrates the use of an auto memory device
*
*********************************************/

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    while(1) {
        _DemoScale();
    }
}

```

Screen shot of above example



13.12 Measurement device object

Measurement devices are useful when you need to know the area used to draw something. Creating and selecting a measurement device as target for drawing operations makes it possible to retrieve the rectangle used for drawing operations.

GUI_MEASDEV_Create()

Description

Creates a measurement device.

Prototype

```
GUI_MEASDEV_Handle GUI_MEASDEV_Create(void);
```

Return value

The handle of the measurement device.

GUI_MEASDEV_ClearRect()

Description

Call this function to clear the measurement rectangle of the given measurement device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEASDEV_ClearRect (GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMem) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to measurement device.

GUI_MEASDEV_Delete()

Description

Deletes a measurement device.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEASDEV_Delete (GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMem) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to measurement device.

GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect()

Description

Retrieves the result of the drawing operations.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect (GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMem, GUI_RECT *pRect) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to measurement device.
pRect	Pointer to GUI_RECT-structure to store result.

GUI_MEASDEV_Select()

Description

Selects a measurement device as target for drawing operations.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MEASDEV_Select (GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMem) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Handle to measurement device.

Example

The following sample shows the use of a measurement device. It creates a measurement device, draws a line and displays the result of the measurement device:

```
void MainTask(void) {
```

```
GUI_MEASDEV_Handle hMeasdev;
GUI_RECT Rect;
GUI_Init();
hMeasdev = GUI_MEASDEV_Create();
GUI_MEASDEV_Select(hMeasdev);
GUI_DrawLine(10, 20, 30, 40);
GUI_SelectLCD();
GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect(hMeasdev, &Rect);
GUI_MEASDEV_Delete(hMeasdev);
GUI_DispString("X0:");
GUI_DispDec(Rect.x0, 3);
GUI_DispString(" Y0:");
GUI_DispDec(Rect.y0, 3);
GUI_DispString(" X1:");
GUI_DispDec(Rect.x1, 3);
GUI_DispString(" Y1:");
GUI_DispDec(Rect.y1, 3);
}
```

Screenshot of the above example:

X0:010 Y0:020 X1:030 Y1:040

Chapter 14

Execution Model: Single Task / Multitask

μ C/GUI has been designed from the beginning to be compatible with different types of environments. It works in single task and in multitask applications, with a proprietary operating system or with any commercial RTOS such as uC/OS.

14.1 Supported execution models

We have to basically distinguish between 3 different execution models:

Single task system (superloop)

The entire program runs in one superloop. Normally, all software components are periodically called. Interrupts must be used for real time parts of the software since no real time kernel is used.

μC/GUI Multitask system: one task calling μC/GUI

A real time kernel (RTOS) is used, but only one task calls μC/GUI functions. From the graphic software's point of view, it is the same as being used in a single task system.

μC/GUI Multitask system: multiple tasks calling μC/GUI

A real time kernel (RTOS) is used, and multiple tasks call μC/GUI functions. This works without a problem as long as the software is made thread-safe, which is done by enabling multitask support in the configuration and adapting the kernel interface routines. For popular kernels, the kernel interface routines are readily available.

14.2 Single task system (superloop)

Description

The entire program runs in one superloop. Normally, all components of the software are periodically called. No real time kernel is used, so interrupts must be used for real time parts of the software. This type of system is primarily used in smaller systems or if real time behavior is not critical.

Superloop example (without μC/GUI)

```
void main (void) {
    HARDWARE_Init();

    /* Init software components */
    XXX_Init();
    YYY_Init();

    /* Superloop: call all software components regularly */
    while (1) {
        /* Exec all components of the software */
        XXX_Exec();
        YYY_Exec();
    }
}
```

Advantages

No real time kernel is used (-> smaller ROM size, just one stack -> less RAM for stacks), no preemption/synchronization problems.

Disadvantages

The superloop type of program can become hard to maintain if it exceeds a certain program size. Real time behavior is poor, since one software component cannot be interrupted by any other component (only by interrupts). This means that the reaction time of one software component depends on the execution time of all other components in the system.

Using µC/GUI

There are no real restrictions regarding the use of µC/GUI. As always, `GUI_Init()` has to be called before you can use the software. From there on, any API function can be used. If the window manager's callback mechanism is used, then an µC/GUI update function has to be called regularly. This is typically done by calling the `GUI_Exec()` from within the superloop. Blocking functions such as `GUI_Delay()` and `GUI_ExecDialog()` should not be used in the loop since they would block the other software modules.

The default configuration, which does not support multitasking (`#define GUI_MT 0`) can be used; kernel interface routines are not required.

Superloop example (with µC/GUI)

```
void main (void) {
    HARDWARE_Init();

    /* Init software components */
    XXX_Init();
    YYY_Init();
    GUI_Init();           /* Init µC/GUI */

    /* Superloop: call all software components regularly */
    while (1) {
        /* Exec all components of the software */
        XXX_Exec();
        YYY_Exec();
        GUI_Exec();          /* Exec µC/GUI for functionality like updating windows */
    }
}
```

14.3 µC/GUI Multitask system: one task calling µC/GUI

Description

A real time kernel (RTOS) is used. The user program is split into different parts, which execute in different tasks and typically have different priorities. Normally the real time critical tasks (which require a certain reaction time) will have the highest priorities. **One single task** is used for the user interface, which calls µC/GUI functions. This task usually has the lowest priority in the system or at least one of the lowest (some statistical tasks or simple idle processing may have even lower priorities).

Interrupts can, but do not have to be used for real time parts of the software.

Advantages

The real time behavior of the system is excellent. The real time behavior of a task is affected only by tasks running at higher priority. This means that changes to a program component running in a low priority task do not affect the real time behavior at all. If the user interface is executed from a low priority task, this means that changes to the user interface do not affect the real time behavior. This kind of system makes it easy to assign different components of the software to different members of the development team, which can work to a high degree independently from each other.

Disadvantages

You need to have a real time kernel (RTOS), which costs money and uses up ROM and RAM (for stacks). In addition, you will have to think about task synchronization and how to transfer information from one task to another.

Using µC/GUI

If the window manager's callback mechanism is used, then an µC/GUI update function (typically `GUI_Exec()`, `GUI_Delay()`) has to be called regularly from the task calling µC/GUI. Since µC/GUI is only called by one task, to µC/GUI it is the same as being used in a single task system.

The default configuration, which does not support multitasking (`#define GUI_MT 0`) can be used; kernel interface routines are not required. You can use any real time kernel, commercial or proprietary.µC/GUI

14.4 µC/GUI Multitask system: multiple tasks calling µC/GUI

Description

A real time kernel (RTOS) is used. The user program is split into different parts, which execute in different tasks with typically different priorities. Normally the real time critical tasks (which require a certain reaction time) will have the highest priorities. **Multiple tasks** are used for the user interface, calling µC/GUI functions. These tasks typically have low priorities in the system, so they do not affect the real time behaviour of the system.

Interrupts can, but do not have to be used for real time parts of the software.

Advantages

The real time behavior of the system is excellent. The real time behavior of a task is affected only by tasks running at higher priority. This means that changes of a program component running in a low priority task do not affect the real time behavior at all. If the user interface is executed from a low priority task, this means that changes on the user interface do not affect the real time behavior. This kind of system makes it easy to assign different components of the software to different members of the development team, which can work to a high degree independently from each other.

Disadvantages

You have to have a real time kernel (RTOS), which costs money and uses up some ROM and RAM (for stacks). In addition, you will have to think about task synchronization and how to transfer information from one task to another.

Using µC/GUI

If the window manager's callback mechanism is used, then an µC/GUI update function (typically `GUI_Exec()`, `GUI_Delay()`) has to be called regularly from one or more tasks calling µC/GUI.

The default configuration, which does not support multitasking (`#define GUI_MT 0`) can **NOT** be used. The configuration needs to enable multitasking support and define a maximum number of tasks from which µC/GUI is called (excerpt from `GUIConf.h`):

```
#define GUI_MT 1           // Enable multitasking support
#define GUI_MAX_TASK 5     // Max. number of tasks that may call µC/GUI
```

Kernel interface routines are required, and need to match the kernel being used. You can use any real time kernel, commercial or proprietary. Both the macros and the routines are discussed in the following chapter sections.

Recommendations

- Call the µC/GUI update functions (i.e. `GUI_Exec()`, `GUI_Delay()`) from just one task. It will help to keep the program structure clear. If you have sufficient RAM in your system, dedicate one task (with the lowest priority) to updating µC/GUI. This task will continuously call `GUI_Exec()` as shown in the example below and will do nothing else.
- Keep your real time tasks (which determine the behavior of your system with respect to I/O, interface, network, etc.) separate from tasks that call µC/GUI. This will help to assure best real time performance.
- If possible, use only one task for your user interface. This helps to keep the program structure simple and simplifies debugging. (However, this is not required and may not be suitable in some systems.)

Example

This excerpt shows the dedicated µC/GUI update task. It is taken from the example `MT_Multitasking`, which is included in the samples shipped with µC/GUI:

```
*****
*
*          GUI background processing
*
* This task does the background processing.
* The main job is to update invalid windows, but other things such as
* evaluating mouse or touch input may also be done.
*/
void GUI_Task(void) {
    while(1) {
        GUI_Exec();           /* Do the background work ... Update windows etc. */
        GUI_X_ExecIdle();    /* Nothing left to do for the moment ... Idle processing */
    }
}µC/GUI
```

14.5 GUI configuration macros for multitasking support

The following table shows the configuration macros used for a multitask system with multiple tasks calling µC/GUI:

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	GUI_MAXTASK	4	Define the maximum number of tasks from which µC/GUI is called when multitasking support is enabled (see below).
B	GUI_OS	0	Activate to enable multitasking support.
F	GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT()	-	Defines a function that signals an event.
F	GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT()	GUI_X_ExecIdle()	Defines a function that waits for an event.

GUI_MAXTASK

Description

Defines the maximum number of tasks from which µC/GUI is called to access the display.

Type

Numerical value

Additional information

This function is only relevant when `GUI_OS` is activated.

GUI_OS

Description

Enables multitasking support by activating the module `GUITask`.

Type

Binary switch

0: inactive, multitask support disabled (default)

1: active, multitask support enabled

GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT

Description

Defines a function that signals an event.

Type

Function replacement

Additional information

Per default the GUI needs to periodically check for events unless a function is defined which waits and one that triggers an event. This macro defines the function which triggers an event. It makes only sense in combination with `GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT`. The advantage of using the macros `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT` and `GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT` instead of polling is the reduction of CPU load of the waiting task to 0% while it waits for input. If the macro has been defined as recommended and the user gives the system any input (keyboard or pointer input device) the defined function should signal an event.

It is recommended to specify the function `GUI_X_SignalEvent()` for the job.

Sample

```
#define GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT() GUI_X_SignalEvent()
```

GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT

Description

Defines a function which waits for an event.

Type

Function replacement

Additional information

Per default the GUI needs to periodically check for events unless a function is defined which waits and one that triggers an event. This macro defines the function which waits for an event. Makes only sense in combination with `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT`. The advantage of using the macros `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT` and `GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT` instead of polling is the reduction of CPU load of the waiting task to 0% while it waits for input. If the macro has been defined as recommended and the system waits for user input the defined function should wait for an event signaled from the function defined by the macro `GUI_X_SIGNAL_EVENT`.

It is recommended to specify the function `GUI_X_WaitEvent()` for the job.

Sample

```
#define GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT() GUI_X_WaitEvent()
```

14.6 Kernel interface routine API

An RTOS usually offers a mechanism called a resource semaphore, in which a task using a particular resource claims that resource before actually using it. The display is an example of a resource that needs to be protected with a resource semaphore. `μC/GUI` uses the macro `GUI_USE` to call the function `GUI_Use()` before it accesses the display or before it uses a critical internal data structure. In a similar way, it calls `GUI_Unuse()` after accessing the display or using the data structure. This is done in the module `GUITask.c`.

`GUITask.c` in turn uses the GUI kernel interface routines shown in the table below. These routines are prefixed `GUI_X_` since they are high-level (hardware-dependent) functions. They must be adapted to the real time kernel used in order to make the `μC/GUI` task (or thread) safe. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow, as well as examples of how they are adapted for different kernels.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_X_InitOS()</code>	Initialize the kernel interface module (create a resource semaphore/mutex).
<code>GUI_X_GetTaskID()</code>	Return a unique, 32-bit identifier for the current task/thread.
<code>GUI_X_Lock()</code>	Lock the GUI (block resource semaphore/mutex).
<code>GUI_X_Unlock()</code>	Unlock the GUI (unblock resource semaphore/mutex).

`GUI_X_InitOS()`

Description

Creates the resource semaphore or mutex typically used by `GUI_X_Lock()` and `GUI_X_Unlock()`.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_InitOS(void)
```

`GUI_X_GetTaskID()`

Description

Returns a unique ID for the current task.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_X_GetTaskID(void);
```

Return value

ID of the current task as a 32-bit integer.

Additional information

Used with a real-time operating system.

It does not matter which value is returned, as long as it is unique for each task/thread using the µC/GUI API and as long as the value is always the same for each particular thread.

GUI_X_Lock()**Description**

Locks the GUI.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_Lock(void);
```

Additional information

This routine is called by the GUI before it accesses the display or before using a critical internal data structure. It blocks other threads from entering the same critical section using a resource semaphore/mutex until `GUI_X_Unlock()` has been called.

When using a real time operating system, you normally have to increment a counting resource semaphore.

GUI_X_Unlock()**Description**

Unlocks the GUI.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_Unlock(void);
```

Additional information

This routine is called by the GUI after accessing the display or after using a critical internal data structure.

When using a real time operating system, you normally have to decrement a counting resource semaphore.

Examples**Kernel interface routines for µC/OS-II**

The following example shows an adaption of the four routines for uC/OS-II (excerpt from file `GUI_X_uCOS-II.c`):

```
#include "INCLUDES.H"

static OS_EVENT * DispSem;

U32 GUI_X_GetTaskId(void) { return ((U32)(OSTCBCur->OSTCBPrio)); }
void GUI_X_InitOS(void) { DispSem = OSSemCreate(1); }
void GUI_X_Unlock(void) { OSSemPost(DispSem); }
void GUI_X_Lock(void) {
```

```

    INT8U err;
    OSSemPend(DispSem, 0, &err);
}

```

Kernel interface routines for Win32

The following is an excerpt from the Win32 simulation for µC/GUI. (When using the µC/GUI simulation, there is no need to add these routines, as they are already in the library.)

Note: cleanup code has been omitted for clarity.

```

/****************************************************************************
*
*      µC/GUI - Multitask interface for Win32
*
***** The following section consisting of 4 routines is used to make
*      µC/GUI thread safe with WIN32
*/

static HANDLE hMutex;

void GUI_X_InitOS(void) {
    hMutex = CreateMutex(NULL, 0, "µC/GUISim - Mutex");
}

unsigned int GUI_X_GetTaskId(void) {
    return GetCurrentThreadId();
}

void GUI_X_Lock(void) {
    WaitForSingleObject(hMutex, INFINITE);
}

void GUI_X_Unlock(void) {
    ReleaseMutex(hMutex);
}

```


Chapter 15

The Window Manager (WM)

When using the uC/GUI window manager (WM), everything which appears on the display is contained in a window -- a rectangular area on the screen. A window can be any size, and you can display multiple windows on the screen at once, even partially or entirely in front of other windows.

The window manager supplies a set of routines which allow you to easily create, move, resize, and otherwise manipulate any number of windows. It also provides lower-level support by managing the layering of windows on the display and by alerting your application to display changes that affect its windows.

The uC/GUI window manager is a separate (optional) software item and is not included in the uC/GUI basic package. The software for the window manager is located in the subdirectory `GUI\WM`.

15.1 Explanation of terms

Windows are rectangular in shape, defined by their origin (the X- and Y-coordinates of the upper left corner) as well as their X- and Y-sizes (width and height, respectively). A window in uC/GUI:

- is rectangular.
- has a Z-position.
- may be hidden or shown.
- may have valid and/or invalid areas.
- may or may not have transparency.
- may or may not have a callback routine.

Active window

The window which is currently being used for drawing operations is referred to as the active window. It is not necessarily the same as the topmost window.

Callback routines

Callback routines are defined by the user program, instructing the graphic system to call a specific function when a specific event occurs. Normally they are used to automatically redraw a window when its content has changed.

Child/parent windows, siblings

A child window is one that is defined relative to another window, called the parent. Whenever a parent window moves, its child or children move correspondingly. A child window is always completely contained within its parent, and will be clipped if necessary. Multiple child windows with the same parent are considered "siblings" to one another.

Client area

The client area of a window is simply its usable area. If a window contains a frame or title bar, then the client area is the rectangular inner area. If there is no such frame, then the coordinates of the client area are identical to those of the window itself.

Clipping, clip area

Clipping is the process of limiting output to a window or part of it.

The clip area of a window is its visible area. This is the window area minus the area obstructed by siblings of higher Z-order, minus any part that does not fit into the visible area of the parent window.

Coordinates

Coordinates are usually 2 dimensional coordinates, expressed in units of pixels. A coordinate consists of 2 values. The first value specifies the horizontal component (also called the x-coordinate), the second value specifies the vertical component (also called the y-coordinate).

Desktop coordinates

Desktop coordinates are coordinates of the desktop window. The upper left position (the origin) of the display is (0,0).

Desktop window

The desktop window is automatically created by the window manager, and always covers the entire display area. It is always the bottommost window, and when no other window has been defined, it is the default (active) window. All windows are descendants (children, grandchildren, etc.) of the desktop window.

Handle

When a new window is created, the WM assigns it a unique identifier called a handle. The handle is used in any further operations performed on that particular window.

Hiding/showing windows

A hidden window is not visible, although it still exists (has a handle). When a window is created, it is hidden by default if no create flag is specified. Showing a window makes it visible; hiding it makes it invisible.

Parent coordinates

Parent coordinates are window coordinates relative to the parent window. The upper left position (the origin) of the window is (0,0).

Transparency

A window that has transparency contains areas that are not redrawn with the rest of the window. These areas operate as though the window behind "shows through" them. In this case, it is important that the window behind is redrawn before the window with transparency. The WM automatically handles redrawing in the correct order.

Validation/validation

A valid window is a fully updated window which does not need redrawing. An invalid window does not yet reflect all updates and therefore needs to be redrawn, either completely or partially. When changes are made that affect a particular window, the WM marks that window as invalid. The next time the window is redrawn (either manually or by a callback routine) it will be validated.

Window coordinates

Window coordinates are coordinates of a window. The upper left position (the origin) of the window is (0,0).

Z-position, bottom/top

Although a window is displayed on a two-dimensional screen in terms of X and Y, the WM also manages what is known as a Z-position, or depth coordinate -- a position in a virtual third dimension which determines its placement from background to foreground. Windows can therefore appear on top of or beneath one another. Setting a window to the bottom will place it "underneath" all of its sibling windows (if any); setting it to the top will place it "on top of" its siblings. When a window is created, it is set to the top by default if no create flag is specified.

15.2 Callback mechanism, invalidation and rendering

The WM may be used with or without callback routines. In most cases, using callbacks is preferable.

The idea behind the callback mechanism that uC/GUI offers for windows and window objects (widgets) is that of an event-driven system. As in most windowing systems, the principle is that the flow of control is not just from the user program to the graphic system, but also from the user program to the graphic system and back up to the user program by means of the callback routines provided by the user program. This mechanism -- often characterized as the Hollywood principle ("Don't call us, we'll call you!") -- is needed by the window manager mainly in order to trigger the redrawing of windows. This contrasts with classical programming, but it makes it possible to exploit the invalidation logic of the window manager.

15.2.1 Rendering without callbacks

You do not have to use callback routines, but in doing so, the WM loses the ability to manage redrawing (updating) of the windows. It is also possible to mix; for example, having some windows use callbacks and others not. However, if a window does not use the callback mechanism, your application is responsible for updating its contents.

Warning: When not using the callback mechanism, it is your responsibility to manage screen updates!

15.2.2 Rendering using callbacks

In order to create a window with a callback, you must have a callback routine. The routine is used as part of the `WM_CreateWindow()` function when creating the window (the `cb` parameter).

All callback routines must have the following prototype:

Prototype

```
void callback(WM_MESSAGE* pMsg);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pMsg</code>	Pointer to a data structure of type <code>WM_MESSAGE</code> .

The action performed by the callback routine depends on the type of message it receives. The prototype above is usually followed by a `switch` statement, which defines different behaviors for different messages using one or more `case` statements (typically at least `WM_PAINT`).

Processing the WM_PAINT message

When a window receives a `WM_PAINT` message, it should repaint itself. Before sending this message to the window, the WM makes sure it is selected.

A non transparent window (default !) has to repaint its entire invalid area.

The easiest way is to repaint the entire area of the window. The clipping mechanism of the WM makes sure that only the invalid area will be redrawn. In order to accelerate the drawing process, it can make sense to only repaint the invalid area. How to get the invalid area is described later in this chapter (Information is part of the message).

A **transparent window** on the other hand does not have to redraw the entire invalid area; it can leave the window area partially untouched. This untouched area will then be transparent.

Before the WM sends a `WM_PAINT` message to a transparent window, the area below has been redrawn (by sending a `WM_PAINT` message to the window(s) below).

Warning: Certain things should not be done when processing WM_PAINT

When processing the `WM_PAINT` message, the callback routine should do nothing but redrawing the contents of the window. When processing the `WM_PAINT` event, the following functions may not be called: `WM_SelectWindow`, `WM_Paint`, `WM_DeleteWindow` and `WM_CreateWindow`. Also any other functions which changes the properties of a window may not be called: `WM_Move`, `WM_Resize`, ...

Example

Creates a callback routine to automatically redraw a window:

```

void WinHandler(WM_MESSAGE* pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_PAINT:
            GUI_SetBkColor(0xFF00);
            GUI_Clear();
            GUI_DispStringAt("Hello world", 0, 0);
            break;
    }
}

```

15.2.3 Background window redrawing and callback

During initialization of the window manager, a window containing the whole LCD area is created as a background window. The handle of this window is `WM_HBKWIN`. The WM does not redraw areas of the background window automatically, because there is no default background color. That means if you create a further window and then delete it, the deleted window will still be visible. The routine `WM_SetDesktopColor()` needs to be specified in order to set a color for redrawing the background window.

You can also set a callback function to take care of this problem. If a window is created and then deleted as before, the callback routine will trigger the WM to recognize that the background window is no longer valid and redraw it automatically. For more information on using a callback routine to redraw the background, see the example at the end of the chapter.

15.2.4 Invalidation

Invalidation of a window or a part of it tells the WM that the invalid area of the window should be redrawn the next time `GUI_Exec()` or `GUI_Delay()` is called. The invalidation routines of uC/GUI do not redraw the invalid part of a window. They only manage the invalid areas of the windows.

The invalid area of a window

The WM uses just one rectangle per window to store the smallest rectangle containing the entire invalid area. If for example a small part in the upper left corner and a small part in the lower right corner becomes invalid, the complete window is invalidated.

Why using invalidation

The advantage of using window invalidation in opposite of drawing each window immediately is that the window will be drawn only one time even if it is invalidated more than one time. If for example several properties of a window need to be changed (for example the background color, the font and the size of the window) it takes more time to draw the window immediately after each property has been changed than drawing the window only one time after all properties have been changed.

Redrawing of invalid windows

The function `GUI_Exec()` redraws all invalid windows. This is done by sending one or more `WM_PAINT` messages to each invalid window.

15.2.5 Rendering of transparent windows

If a transparent window needs to be drawn, the WM automatically makes sure, that the background of the window is drawn before the transparent window receives a `WM_PAINT` message. This is done by redrawing all window areas below the invalid area of the transparent window first before sending a `WM_PAINT` message to the transparent window.

To make sure the window manager can handle the redrawing of transparent windows it is necessary to redraw the window in reaction to the `WM_PAINT` message. Otherwise it can not be guaranteed that the appearance of a transparent window will be correctly.

The use of transparent windows is more CPU-intensive than the use of non transparent windows. If performance is a problem, trying to avoid transparent windows may be an option

15.3 Messages

The following section shows which system messages are used by uC/GUI, how to use the message data and how to use application defined messages.

15.3.1 Message structure

When a callback routine is called, it receives the message specified as its `pMsg` parameter. This message is actually a `WM_MESSAGE` data structure, with elements defined as follows.

Elements of WM_MESSAGE

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	MsgId	Type of message (see table below).
WM_HWIN	hWin	Destination window.
WM_HWIN	hWinSrc	Source window.
void*	Data.p	Data pointer.
int	Data.v	Data value.

15.3.2 List of messages

The following messages are defined by uC/GUI.

Message Id (MsgId)	Explanation
System defined messages	
WM_CREATE	Sent immediately after a window has been created, giving the window the chance to initialize and create any child windows.
WM_DELETE	Sent just before a window is deleted, telling the window to free its data structures (if any).
WM_GET_ID	Sent to a window to request the Id of the window.
WM_INIT_DIALOG	Sent to a dialog window immediately after the creation of the dialog.
WM_KEY	Sent to the window currently containing the focus if a key has been pressed.
WM_MOVE	Sent to a window immediately after it has been moved.
WM_NOTIFY_PARENT	Informs a parent window that something has occurred in one of its child windows.
WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED	Sent to a window if its visibility has been changed.
WM_PAINT	Sent to a window after it has become invalid and it should be redrawn.
WM_SET_FOCUS	Sent to a window if it gains or loses the input focus.
WM_SET_ID	Sent to a window to change the window Id.
WM_SIZE	Sent to a window after its size has changed.
Pointer input device (PID) messages	
WM_MOUSEOVER	Sent to a window if a pointer input device touches the outline of a window.
WM_MOUSEOVER_END	Sent to a window if a pointer input device has been moved out of the outline of a window. Only sent if mouse support is enabled.
WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED	Sent to the window pointed by the pointer input device when the pressed state has been changed.

Message Id (MsgId)	Explanation
WM_TOUCH	Sent to a window if a pointer input device touches the outline of a window in pressed state.
WM_TOUCH_CHILD	Sent to a parent window if a child window has been touched by the pointer input device.
Notification codes	
WM_NOTIFICATION_CHILD_DELETED	This notification message will be send from a window to its parent before it will be deleted.
User defined messages	
WM_USER	The WM_USER constant could be used by applications to define private messages, usually of the form WM_USER+X, where X is an integer value.
WM_MOUSEOVER_END	Sent to a window if a pointer input device has been moved out of the outline of a window. Only sent if mouse support is enabled.

15.3.3 System-defined messages

These kind of messages are send by the GUI library. Do not send system defined messages from the user application to a window or a widget.

WM_CREATE

Description

This message is sent immediately after a window has been created, giving the window the chance to initialize and create any child windows.

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_DELETE

Description

This message is sent just before a window is deleted, telling the window to free its data structures (if any).

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_GET_ID

Description

This message is sent to a window to request it's Id. All uC/GUI widgets handle this message. Application defined windows should handle this message in their callback routine. Otherwise this message will be ignored.

Data

The callback routine of the window should store the Id in the Data.v value.

WM_INIT_DIALOG

Description

This message is sent to a window immediately after the creation of the dialog and before the dialog is displayed. Dialog procedures typically use this message to initialize widgets and carry out any other initialization tasks that affect the appearance of the dialog box.

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_KEY

Description

Sent to the window currently containing the focus if a key has been pressed.

Data

The Data.p pointer of the message points to a WM_KEY_INFO structure.

Elements of WM_KEY_INFO

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	Key	The key which has been pressed.
int	PressedCount	> 0 if the key has been pressed, 0 if the key has been released.

WM_MOVE

Description

This message is sent to a window immediately after it has been moved. If the window has any child windows, they will be moved first. Also each child window will receive this message after it has been moved. The message is sent regardless if the window is visible or not.

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_NOTIFY_PARENT

Description

Informs a parent window that something has occurred in one of its child windows. These messages are typically sent by widgets to their parent windows to give them a chance to react on the event.

Data

The Data.v value of the message contains the notification code of the message. For more information's about the notification codes please refer to the according widget.

WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED

Description

This message is sent to a window if its visibility is changed and the configuration switch WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED is set to 1. The visibility of a window changes if

- obstruction changes: The window is partially or totally covered or uncovered by a

- higher level window (a window which is displayed on top of the window),
- the window is deleted or
- the window changes from not hidden to hidden or reverse.

Typical application

Applications which show a video in a window using a hardware decoder. The hardware decoder can write directly into the display, bypassing uC/GUI, if the window containing the video is completely visible. If the visibility changes, the hardware decoder needs to be reprogrammed.

Example

The following shows a typical reaction on this message:

```
case WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED:
    if (WM_IsCompletelyVisible(WM_GetClientWindow(pMsg->hWin))) {
        ...
    }
```

The sample folder of uC/GUI contains the sample WM_Video.c which shows how to use the message.

Data

This message contains no data.

WM_PAINT

Description

The WM sends this message to a window if it has become invalid (partially or complete) and needs to be drawn. When a window receives a WM_PAINT message, it should repaint itself. Before sending this message to the window, the WM makes sure it is selected. More details about how to react on the WM_PAINT message is described earlier in this chapter under "Using callback routines".

Data

The Data.p pointer of the message points to a GUI_RECT structure containing the invalid rectangle of the window in screen coordinates. This information could be used to optimize the paint function.

WM_SET_FOCUS

Description

Send to a window if it gains or loses the input focus.

Data

If the window gains the input focus, the Data.v value is set to 1. If the window 'accepts' the input focus, it should set the Data.v value to 0 in reaction on this message.

If the window loses the input focus, the Data.v value is set to 0.

WM_SET_ID

Description

Send to a window to change the Id. All uC/GUI widgets handle this message. Application defined windows should handle this message in their callback routine. Otherwise this message will be ignored.

Data

The Data.v value contains the new Id of the window.

WM_SIZE

Description

Sent to a window after its size has changed. Gives the window the chance to reposition its child windows (if any).

Data

This message contains no data.

15.3.4 Pointer input device (PID) messages

These kind of messages are send by the GUI library in reaction of PID input. Do not send this messages from the user application to a window or a widget.

WM_MOUSEOVER

Description

A WM_MOUSEOVER message is send to a window if a pointer input device touches the outline of a window. It is send only if mouse support is enabled.
This message is not sent to disabled windows.

Data

The Data.p pointer of the message points to a GUI_PID_STATE structure.

Elements of GUI_PID_STATE

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	x	Horizontal position of the PID in window coordinates.
int	y	Vertical position of the PID in window coordinates.
U8	Pressed	Is always set to 0 when receiving a WM_MOUSEOVER message.

WM_MOUSEOVER_END

Description

A WM_MOUSEOVER_END message is sent to a window if the mouse pointer has been moved out of the window. It is send only if mouse support is enabled. This message is not sent to disabled windows.

Data

The Data.p pointer of the message points to a GUI_PID_STATE structure. For details about this structure please refer to the message WM_MOUSEOVER.

WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED

Description

Sent to the window affected by the pointer input device when the pressed state has changed. The affected window is the visible window at the input position. With other words: If the user releases for example the touch screen over a window, the pressed state changes from 1 (pressed) to 0 (unpressed). In this case a WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED message is send to the window. This message is send before the touch message is send. An invisible window does not receive this message. Transparent windows are handled the same way as visible windows.
This message is not sent to disabled windows.

Data

The Data.p pointer of the message points to a WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED_INFO structure.

Elements of WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED_INFO

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	x	Horizontal position of the PID in window coordinates.
int	y	Vertical position of the PID in window coordinates.
U8	State	Pressed state (> 0 if PID is pressed).
U8	StatePrev	Previous pressed state

WM_TOUCH

Description

A WM_TOUCH message is send to a window if

- the PID is in pressed state and the pointer is over the visible part of the window
- or the PID just has been released.

This message is not sent to disabled windows.

Data

The Data.p pointer of the message points to a GUI_PID_STATE structure. For details about the structure please refer to the message WM_MOUSEOVER.

Elements of GUI_PID_STATE

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	x	Horizontal position of the PID in window coordinates.
int	y	Vertical position of the PID in window coordinates.
U8	Pressed	If the message is originated by a touch screen this value can be 0 (unpressed) or 1 (pressed). If the message is originated by a mouse each bit represents a mouse button (0 for unpressed and 1 for pressed state): - Bit 0 represents the first button (normally the left button) - Bit 1 represents the second button (normally the left button) - Bit 2 represents the third button (normally the middle button) The remaining bits can be used for further buttons.

WM_TOUCH_CHILD

Description

This message is send to the parent window if the outline of a child window has been touched with a pointer input device in pressed or unpressed state.

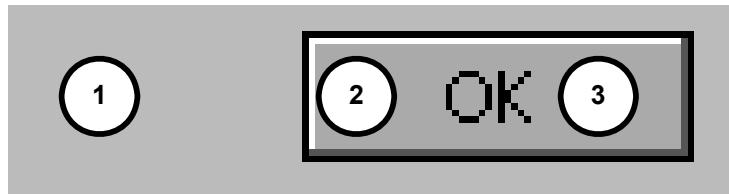
This message is not sent to disabled windows.

Data

The Data.p pointer of the message points to the touch message send to the child window. For details about the message data please refer to the WM_TOUCH description.

Example

The following sample explains what happens if a pointer input device is dragged over a dialog with a button:



Position	Explanation
1	<p>The pointer input device (PID) is pressed at this position. This causes the WM to send the following WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED message to the window at this position: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates.</p> <p>State = 1 StatePrev = 0</p> <p>The WM also sends a WM_TOUCH message with the same x and y coordinates to the window: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates. Pressed = 1</p>
2	<p>The PID is dragged to this position. The window below (the button) will receive no WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED message, because the PID remains in pressed state.</p> <p>The WM only sends a WM_TOUCH message to the window: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates. Pressed = 1</p>
3	<p>The PID is released at this position. This causes the WM to send the following WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED message to the window at this position: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates.</p> <p>State = 0 StatePrev = 1</p> <p>The WM also sends a WM_TOUCH message with the same x and y coordinates to the window: x = Horizontal position in desktop coordinates. y = Vertical position in desktop coordinates. Pressed = 0</p>

15.3.5 System-defined notification codes

A message of this type is sent from a window to its parent window to notify it of a change in the child window. This gives the parent window the chance to react on this event. Please do not send system defined notification codes from the user application to a window.

WM_NOTIFICATION_CHILD_DELETED

Description

This notification code is send to the parent window before a child window will be deleted.

Data

The `hWinSrc` element of the message contains the handle of the window to be deleted.

15.3.6 Application-defined messages

The application program can define additional messages for its own usage. In order to ensure that they do not use the same message Id's as those used by uC/GUI, user-defined messages start numbering after `WM_USER`. You would define your own messages as follows:

```
#define MY_MESSAGE_AAA WM_USER+0  
#define MY_MESSAGE_BBB WM_USER+1  
and so on.
```

15.4 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
B	WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED	0	Enables the WM to send a WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED message to a window if its visibility has changed.
B	WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY	1	Enable support for transparent windows. If set to 0 the additional code for transparency support is not included.

WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED

Per default uC/GUI does not inform windows if their visibility has changed. If enabled, the WM sends WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED messages.

WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY

Per default uC/GUI supports transparent windows. This means per default the additional code used to handle transparent windows is linked if the WM is used. If the application does not use transparent windows the memory requirement of the application can be reduced if setting WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY to 0.

15.5 WM API

The following table lists the available routines of the uC/GUI window manager API. All functions are listed in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found later in the chapter.

Routine	Explanation
Basic functions	
<code>WM_Activate()</code>	Activates the window manager.
<code>WM_AttachWindow()</code>	Attaches a window to a new parent window.
<code>WM_AttachWindowAt()</code>	Attaches a window to a new parent window at the given position.
<code>WM_BroadcastMessage()</code>	Sends a message to all existing windows.
<code>WM_BringToBottom()</code>	Places a window behind its siblings.
<code>WM_BringToTop()</code>	Places a window in front of its siblings.
<code>WM_ClrHasTrans()</code>	Clears the has transparency flag.
<code>WM_CreateWindow()</code>	Creates a window.
<code>WM_CreateWindowAsChild()</code>	Creates a child window.
<code>WM_Deactivate()</code>	Deactivates the window manager.
<code>WM_DefaultProc()</code>	Default routine to handle messages.
<code>WM_DeleteWindow()</code>	Deletes a window.
<code>WM_DetachWindow()</code>	Detaches a window from its parent window.
<code>WM_DisableWindow()</code>	Sets the widget state to disabled.
<code>WM_EnableWindow()</code>	Sets the window state to enabled (default).
<code>WM_Exec()</code>	Redraws invalid windows by executing callbacks (all jobs).
<code>WM_Exec1()</code>	Redraws one invalid window by executing one callback (one job only).
<code>WM_ForEachDesc()</code>	Iterates over all descendants of a window.
<code>WM_GetActiveWindow()</code>	Returns handle of the active window.
<code>WM_GetCallback()</code>	Returns a pointer to the callback function of a window.
<code>WM_GetClientRect()</code>	Returns the size of the active window.
<code>WM_GetClientRectEx()</code>	Returns the size of a window.
<code>WM_GetDesktopWindow()</code>	Returns the window handle of the desktop window
<code>WM_GetDesktopWindowEx()</code>	Returns the window handle of the specified desktop window
<code>WM_GetDialogItem()</code>	Returns the window handle of a dialog box item (widget).
<code>WM_GetFirstChild()</code>	Returns handle of a window's first child window.
<code>WM_GetFocussedWindow()</code>	Returns the handle of the window with the input focus.
<code>WM_GetHasTrans()</code>	Returns current value of the has transparency flag.
<code>WM_GetInvalidRect()</code>	Returns the invalid rectangle of the given window.
<code>WM_GetNextSibling()</code>	Returns the handle of a window's next sibling.
<code>WM_GetOrgX()</code>	Returns the origin in X of the active window.
<code>WM_GetOrgY()</code>	Returns the origin in Y of the active window.
<code>WM_GetParent()</code>	Returns handle of a window's parent window.
<code>WM_GetPrevSibling()</code>	Returns the handle of a window's previous sibling.
<code>WM_GetStayOnTop()</code>	Returns current value of the stay on top flag.
<code>WM_GetUserData()</code>	Retrieves the user data of a window
<code>WM_GetWindowOrgX()</code>	Returns the origin in X of a window.
<code>WM_GetWindowOrgY()</code>	Returns the origin in Y of a window.
<code>WM_GetWindowRect()</code>	Returns the screen coordinates of the active window.

Routine	Explanation
<code>WM_GetWindowRectEx()</code>	Returns the screen coordinates of a window.
<code>WM_GetWindowSizeX()</code>	Returns the horizontal size (width) of a window.
<code>WM_GetWindowSizeY()</code>	Returns the vertical size (height) of a window.
<code>WM_HasCaptured()</code>	Checks if the given window has captured mouse- and touch-screen-input.
<code>WM_HasFocus()</code>	Checks if the given window has the input focus.
<code>WM_HideWindow()</code>	Makes a window invisible.
<code>WM_InvalidateArea()</code>	Invalidates a certain section of the display.
<code>WM_InvalidateRect()</code>	Invalidates a part of a window.
<code>WM_InvalidateWindow()</code>	Invalidates a window.
<code>WM_IsCompletelyVisible()</code>	Checks if a window is completely visible or not.
<code>WM_IsEnabled()</code>	Returns if a window is enabled or not.
<code>WM_IsVisible()</code>	Returns if a window is visible or not.
<code>WM_IsWindow()</code>	Determine whether a specified handle is a valid window handle.
<code>WM_MakeModal()</code>	Changes the window to a 'modal' window.
<code>WM_MoveChildTo()</code>	Sets the position of a window in window coordinates.
<code>WM_MoveTo()</code>	Sets the position of a window in desktop coordinates.
<code>WM_MoveWindow()</code>	Moves a window to another position.
<code>WM_NotifyParent()</code>	Sends a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message to the parent of the given window.
<code>WM_Paint()</code>	Draws or redraws a window immediately.
<code>WM_PaintWindowAndDescs()</code>	Draws a given window and all descendant windows immediately.
<code>WM_ReleaseCapture()</code>	Stops capturing mouse- and touch screen-input.
<code>WM_ResizeWindow()</code>	Changes window size.
<code>WM_SelectWindow()</code>	Sets the active window to be used for drawing operations.
<code>WM_SendMessage()</code>	Sends a message to a window.
<code>WM_SendToParent()</code>	Sends the given message to the parent window of the given window.
<code>WM_SetDesktopColor()</code>	Sets desktop window color.
<code>WM_SetDesktopColorEx()</code>	Sets desktop window color of the given desktop.
<code>WM_SetCallback()</code>	Sets the callback routine for a window.
<code>WM_SetCapture()</code>	Starts capturing mouse- and touch screen-input.
<code>WM_SetCreateFlags()</code>	Sets the flags to be used as default when creating new windows
<code>WM_SetFocus()</code>	Sets input focus to a specified window.
<code>WM_SetHasTrans()</code>	Sets the has transparency flag.
<code>WM_SetId()</code>	Sends a WM_SET_ID message to the given window.
<code>WM_SetpfPollPID()</code>	Sets a function to be called by the WM for polling the PID.
<code>WM_SetSize()</code>	Sets the new size of a window.
<code>WM_SetWindowPos()</code>	Sets size and position of a window.
<code>WM_SetXSize()</code>	Sets the new X-size of a window.
<code>WM_SetYSize()</code>	Sets the new Y-size of a window.
<code>WM_SetStayOnTop()</code>	Sets the stay on top flag.
<code>WM_SetTransState()</code>	Sets or clears the WM_CF_HASTRANS and WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE flags.
<code>WM_SetUserClipRect()</code>	Temporarily reduce the clipping area.
<code>WM_SetUserData()</code>	Sets the user data of the given window.
<code>WM_ShowWindow()</code>	Makes a window visible.

Routine	Explanation
<code>WM_Update()</code>	Draws the invalid part of the given window.
<code>WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs()</code>	Draws the invalid part of a given window and the invalid part of all descendant windows.
<code>WM_ValidateRect()</code>	Validates parts of a window.
<code>WM_ValidateWindow()</code>	Validates a window.
Memory device support (optional)	
<code>WM_DisableMemdev()</code>	Disables usage of memory devices for redrawing.
<code>WM_EnableMemdev()</code>	Enables usage of memory devices for redrawing.
Widget related functions	
<code>WM_GetClientWindow()</code>	Returns the handle of the client window.
<code>WM_GetId()</code>	Returns the ID of a widget.
<code>WM_GetInsideRect()</code>	Returns the size of the active window less the border.
<code>WM_GetInsideRectEx()</code>	Returns the size of a window less the border.
<code>WM_GetScrollPosH()</code>	Returns the scroll position of the windows horizontal scroll bar.

15.5.1 Using the WM API functions

Many of the WM functions have window handles as parameters. Please observe the following rules when using handles:

- A window handle can be 0. In this case the function returns immediately unless the documentation of the function says otherwise.
- If a window handle is != 0, it should be a valid handle. The WM does not check if the given handle is valid. If an invalid handle is given to a function it fails or may even crashes.

15.6 Basic functions

WM_Activate()

Description

Activates the window manager.

Prototype

```
void WM_Activate(void);
```

Additional information

The WM is activated by default after initialization. This function only needs to be called if there has been a previous call of `WM_Deactivate()`.

WM_AttachWindow()

Description

The given window will be detached from its parent window and attached to the new parent window. The new origin in window coordinates of the new parent window will be the same as the old origin in window coordinates of the old parent window.

Prototype

```
void WM_AttachWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_HWIN hParent);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
hWinParent	Window handle of the new parent.

Additional Information

If the given window handle is 0 or both handles are the same the function returns immediately.

If only the given parent window handle is 0 the function detaches the given window and returns; the window remains unattached.

WM_AttachWindowAt()

Description

The given window will be detached from its parent window and attached to the new parent window. The given position will be used to set the origin of the window in window coordinates of the parent window.

Prototype

```
void WM_AttachWindowAt(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_HWIN hParent, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
hWinParent	Window handle of the new parent.
x	X position of the window in window coordinates of the parent window.
y	Y position of the window in window coordinates of the parent window.

Additional Information

If the given window handle is 0 or both handles are the same the function returns immediately.

If only the given parent window handle is 0 the function detaches the given window, moves it to the new position and returns; the window remains unattached.

WM_BringToBottom()

Description

Places a specified window underneath its siblings.

Prototype

```
void WM_BringToBottom(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

The window will be placed underneath all other sibling windows, but will remain in front of its parent.

WM_BringToTop()

Description

Places a specified window on top of its siblings.

Prototype

```
void WM_BringToTop(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

The window will be placed on top of all other sibling windows and its parent.

WM_BroadcastMessage()

Description

Sends the given message to all existing windows.

Prototype

```
int WM_BroadcastMessage(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pMsg	Pointer to message to be send.

WM_ClrHasTrans()

Description

Clears the has transparency flag (sets it to 0).

Prototype

```
void WM_ClrHasTrans(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

When set, this flag tells the window manager that a window contains sections which are not redrawn and will therefore be transparent. The WM then knows that the background needs to be redrawn prior to redrawing the window in order to make sure the transparent sections are restored correctly.

When the flag is cleared with `WM_ClrHasTrans()`, the WM will not automatically redraw the background before redrawing the window.

WM_CreateWindow()

Description

Creates a window of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_CreateWindow(int x0, int y0,
```

```
int width, int height,
U8 Style,
WM_CALLBACK* cb
    int NumExtraBytes);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Upper left X-position in desktop coordinates.
y0	Upper left Y-position in desktop coordinates.
width	X-size of window.
height	Y-size of window.
Style	Window create flags, listed below.
cb	Pointer to callback routine, or NULL if no callback used.
NumExtra-Bytes	Number of extra bytes to be allocated, normally 0.

Permitted values for parameter <i>Style</i> (OR-combinable)	
WM_CF_ANCHOR_BOTTOM	Anchors the bottom edge of the new window relative to the bottom edge of the parent window. If the position of the parent windows bottom edge will be adjusted due to a size change, the position of new window will also be adjusted.
WM_CF_ANCHOR_LEFT	Anchors the left edge of the new window relative to the left edge of the parent window (default). If the position of the parent windows left edge will be adjusted due to a size change, the position of new window will also be adjusted.
WM_CF_ANCHOR_RIGHT	Anchors the right edge of the new window relative to the right edge of the parent window. If the position of the parent windows right edge will be adjusted due to a size change, the position of new window will also be adjusted.
WM_CF_ANCHOR_TOP	Anchors the top edge of the new window relative to the top edge of the parent window (default). If the position of the parent windows top edge will be adjusted due to a size change, the position of new window will also be adjusted.
WM_CF_BGND	Put window in background after creation.
WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE	This flag is an optimization for transparent windows. It gives the window manager a chance to optimize redraw and invalidation of a transparent window. A transparent window is normally redrawn as part of the background, which is less efficient than redrawing the window separately. However, this flag may NOT be used if the window has semi transparency (alpha blending / antialiasing with background) or the outline (the shape) changes. Can normally be used; in case of doubt do not use it.
WM_CF_FGND	Put window in foreground after creation (default).
WM_CF_HASTRANS	Has transparency flag. Must be defined for windows whose client area is not entirely filled.
WM_CF_HIDE	Hide window after creation (default).

Permitted values for parameter <i>Style</i> (OR-combinable)	
WM_CF_LATE_CLIP	This flag can be used to tell the WM that the clipping should be done in the drawing routines (late clipping). The default behavior of the WM is early clipping. That means that the clipping rectangle will be calculated before a WM_PAINT message will be send to a window. In dependence of other existing windows it can be necessary to send more than one WM_PAINT message to a window. If using WM_CF_LATE_CLIP the WM makes sure only one message will be send to an invalid window and the clipping will be done by the drawing routines. The sample folder of µC/GUI contains the sample WM_LateClipping.c to show the effect.
WM_CF_MEMDEV	Automatically use a memory device when redrawing. This will avoid flicker and also improve the output speed in most cases, as clipping is simplified. Note that the memory device package is required (and needs to be enabled in the configuration) in order to be able to use this flag. If memory devices are not enabled, this flag is ignored.
WM_CF_MEMDEV_ON_REDRAW	After the window is drawn the first time the WM will automatically use a memory device for redrawing. This flag can be used as a replacement of WM_CF_MEMDEV. It typically accelerates the initial rendering of the window, but maintains the advantage of flicker free updates.
WM_CF_SHOW	Show window after creation.
WM_CF_STAYONTOP	Make sure window stays on top of all siblings created without this flag.

Return value

Handle for created window.

Additional information

Several create flags can be combined by using the (OR) operator.
Negative-position coordinates may be used.

Examples

Creates a window with callback:

```
hWin2 = WM_CreateWindow(100, 10 ,180, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, &WinHandler, 0);
```

Creates a window without callback:

```
hWin2 = WM_CreateWindow(100, 10 ,180, 100,WM_CF_SHOW, NULL, 0);
```

WM_CreateWindowAsChild()

Description

Creates a window as a child window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_CreateWindowAsChild(int x0, int y0,
                                int width, int height,
                                WM_HWIN hWinParent,
                                U8 Style,
                                WM_CALLBACK* cb
```

```
int NumExtraBytes);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Upper left X-position in window coordinates of the parent window.
y0	Upper left Y-position in window coordinates of the parent window.
width	X-size of window. If 0, X-size of client area of parent window.
height	Y-size of window. If 0, Y-size of client area of parent window.
hWinParent	Handle of parent window.
Style	Window create flags (see WM_CreateWindow()).
cb	Pointer to callback routine, or NULL if no callback used.
NumExtra- Bytes	Number of extra bytes to be allocated, normally 0.

Return value

Handle for the child window.

Additional information

If the hWinParent parameter is set to 0, the background window is used as parent. A child window is placed on top of its parent and any previous siblings by default, so that if their Z-positions are not changed, the "youngest" window will always be top-most.

The Z-positions of siblings may be changed, although they will always remain on top of their parent regardless of their order.

WM_Deactivate()

Description

Deactivates the window manager.

Prototype

```
void WM_Deactivate(void);
```

Additional information

After calling this function, the clip area is set to the complete LCD area and the WM will not execute window callback functions.

WM_DefaultProc()

Description

Default message handler.

Prototype

```
void WM_DefaultProc(WM_MESSAGE* pMsg)
```

Parameter	Meaning
pMsg	Pointer to message.

Additional information

Use this function to handle unprocessed messages as in the following example:

```
static WM_RESULT cbBackgroundWin(WM_MESSAGE* pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
```

```

    case WM_PAINT:
        GUI_Clear();
    default:
        WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}

```

WM_DeleteWindow()

Description

Deletes a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_DeleteWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

Before the window is deleted, it receives a WM_DELETE message. This message is typically used to delete any objects (widgets) it uses and to free memory dynamically allocated by the window.

If the specified window has any existing child windows, these are automatically deleted before the window itself is deleted. Child windows therefore do not need to be separately deleted.

Before the window will be deleted it sends a WM_NOTIFICATION_CHILD_DELETED message to its parent window.

WM_DetachWindow()

Description

Detaches a window from its parent window. Detached windows will not be redrawn by the window manager.

Prototype

```
void WM_DetachWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

WM_DisableWindow()

Description

Set the specified window to a disabled state. The WM does not pass pointer input device (PID) messages (touch, mouse, joystick, ...) to a disabled window.

Prototype

```
void WM_DisableWindow(WM_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

Additional information

A widget that is disabled will typically appear gray, and will not accept input from the user. However, the actual appearance may vary (depends on widget/configuration settings, etc.).

A disabled window will not receive the following messages: WM_TOUCH, WM_TOUCH_CHILD, WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED and WM_MOUSEOVER.

WM_EnableWindow()

Description

Sets the specified window to enabled state. An enabled window receives pointer input device (PID) messages (touch, mouse, joystick, ...) from the WM.

Prototype

```
void WM_EnableWindow(WM_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of window.

Additional information

This is the default setting for any widget.

WM_Exec()

Description

Redraws invalid windows by executing callback functions (all jobs).

Prototype

```
int WM_Exec(void);
```

Return value

0 if there were no jobs performed.

1 if a job was performed.

Additional information

This function will automatically call WM_Exec1() repeatedly until it has completed all jobs -- essentially until a 0 value is returned.

It is recommended to call the function GUI_Exec() instead.

Normally this function does not need to be called by the user application. It is called automatically by GUI_Delay(). If you are using a multitasking system, we recommend executing this function by a separate task as seen below:

```
void ExecIdleTask(void) {
    while(1) {
        WM_Exec();
    }
}
```

WM_Exec1()

Description

Redraws an invalid window by executing one callback function (one job only).

Prototype

```
int WM_Exec1(void);
```

Return value

0 if there were no jobs performed.
1 if a job was performed.

Additional information

This routine may be called repeatedly until 0 is returned, which means all jobs have been completed.

It is recommended to call the function `GUI_Exec1()` instead.

This function is called automatically by `WM_Exec()`.

WM_ForeachDesc()

Description

Iterates over all descendants of the given window. A descendant of a window is a child window or a grand child window or a child of a grand child or

Prototype

```
void WM_ForeachDesc(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_tfForEach * pcb, void * pData);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hWin</code>	Window handle.
<code>pcb</code>	Pointer to callback function to be called by <code>WM_ForeachDesc</code> .
<code>pData</code>	User data to be passed to the callback function.

Additional Information

This function calls the callback function given by the pointer `pcb` for each descendant of the given window. The parameter `pData` will be passed to the user function and can be used to point to user defined data.

Prototype of callback function

```
void CallbackFunction(WM_HWIN hWin, void * pData);
```

Sample

The following sample shows how the function can be used. It creates 3 windows, the first as a child window of the desktop, the second as a child window of the first window and the third as a child window of the second window. After creating the window it uses `WM_ForeachDesc()` to move each window within its parent window:

```
#include "GUI.h"
#include "WM.h"

*****
*
*      _cbWin
*/
static void _cbWin(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    GUI_COLOR Color;
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
    case WM_PAINT:
        WM_GetUserData(pMsg->hWin, &Color, 4);
        GUI_SetBkColor(Color);
        GUI_Clear();
        break;
    default:
        WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}
```

```
*****
*
*      _cbDoSomething
*/
static void _cbDoSomething(WM_HWIN hWin, void * p) {
    int Value = *(int *)p;
    WM_MoveWindow(hWin, Value, Value);
}

*****
*
*      MainTask
*/
void MainTask(void) {
    WM_HWIN hWin_1, hWin_2, hWin_3;
    int Value = 10;
    GUI_COLOR aColor[] = {GUI_RED, GUI_GREEN, GUI_BLUE};
    GUI_Init();
    WM_SetDesktopColor(GUI_BLACK);
    hWin_1 = WM_CreateWindow( 10, 10, 100, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin, 4);
    hWin_2 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(10, 10, 80, 80, hWin_1, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin, 4);
    hWin_3 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(10, 10, 60, 60, hWin_2, WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin, 4);
    WM_SetUserData(hWin_1, &aColor[0], 4);
    WM_SetUserData(hWin_2, &aColor[1], 4);
    WM_SetUserData(hWin_3, &aColor[2], 4);
    while(1) {
        WM_ForEachDesc(WM_HBKWIN, _cbDoSomething, (void *)&Value);
        Value *= -1;
        GUI_Delay(500);
    }
}
```

WM_GetActiveWindow()

Description

Returns the handle of the active window used for drawing operations.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetActiveWindow(void);
```

Return value

The handle of the active window.

WM_GetCallback()

Description

Returns a pointer to the callback function of the given window

Prototype

```
WM_CALLBACK * WM_GetCallback(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

Pointer of type WM_CALLBACK * which points to the callback function of the given window. If the window has no callback function, NULL is returned. **WM_GetClientRect()**

Description

Returns the coordinates of the client area in the active window in window coordinates. That means x0 and y0 of the GUI_RECT structure will be 0, x1 and y1 corresponds to the size - 1.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetClientRect(GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure.

WM_GetClientRectEx()

Description

Returns the coordinates of the client area of a window in window coordinates. That means x0 and y0 of the GUI_RECT structure will be 0, x1 and y1 corresponds to the size - 1.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetClientRectEx(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure.

WM_GetDesktopWindow()

Description

Returns the handle of the desktop window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetDesktopWindow(void);
```

Return value

The handle of the desktop window.

Additional information

The desktop window is always the bottommost window and any further created windows are its descendants.

WM_GetDesktopWindowEx()

Description

Returns the handle of the specified desktop window when working in a multi layer environment.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(unsigned int LayerIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
LayerIndex	Index of layer

Return value

The handle of the specified desktop window.

WM_GetDialogItem()**Description**

Returns the window handle of a dialog box item (widget).

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetDialogItem(WM_HWIN hDialog, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hDialog	Handle of dialog box.
Id	Window Id of the widget.

Return value

The window handle of the widget.

Additional information

This function is always used when creating dialog boxes, since the window Id of a widget used in a dialog must be converted to its handle before it can be used.

WM_GetFirstChild()**Description**

Returns the handle of a specified window's first child window.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetFirstChild(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

Handle of the window's first child window; 0 if no child window exists.

Additional information

A window's first child window is the first child created to that particular parent. If the Z-positions of the windows have not been changed, it will be the window directly on top of the specified parent.

WM_GetFocussedWindow()**Description**

Returns the handle of the window with the input focus.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetFocussedWindow(void);
```

Return value

Handle of the window with the input focus or 0 if no window has the input focus.

WM_GetHasTrans()**Description**

Returns the current value of the has transparency flag.

Prototype

```
U8 WM_GetHasTrans(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

0: no transparency

1: window has transparency

Additional information

When set, this flag tells the window manager that a window contains sections which are not redrawn and will therefore be transparent. The WM then knows that the background needs to be redrawn prior to redrawing the window in order to make sure the transparent sections are restored correctly.

WM_GetInvalidRect()**Description**

Returns the invalid rectangle of a window in desktop coordinates.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetInvalidRect(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT * pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT-structure for storing the invalid rectangle.

Return value

0 if nothing is invalid, otherwise 1.

WM_GetNextSibling()**Description**

Returns the handle of a specified window's next sibling.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetNextSibling(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

Handle of the window's next sibling; 0 if none exists.

Additional information

A window's next sibling is the next child window that was created relative to the same parent. If the Z-positions of the windows have not been changed, it will be the window directly on top of the one specified.

WM_GetOrgX(), WM_GetOrgY()**Description**

Returns the X- or Y-position (respectively) of the origin of the active window in desktop coordinates.

Prototypes

```
int WM_GetOrgX(void);
int WM_GetOrgY(void);
```

Return value

X- or Y-position of the origin of the active window in desktop coordinates.

WM_GetParent()**Description**

Returns the handle of a specified window's parent window.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetParent(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

Handle of the window's parent window; 0 if none exists.

Additional information

The only case in which no parent window exists is if the handle of the desktop window is used as parameter.

WM_GetPrevSibling()**Description**

Returns the handle of a specified window's previous sibling.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetPrevSibling(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

Handle of the window's previous sibling; 0 if none exists.

Additional information

A window's previous sibling is the previous child window that was created relative to the same parent. If the Z-positions of the windows have not been changed, it will be the window directly below of the one specified.

WM_GetStayOnTop()**Description**

Returns the current value of the stay on top flag.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetStayOnTop(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

0: stay on top flag not set
1: stay on top flag set

WM_GetUserData()**Description**

Retrieves the data set with WM_SetUserData.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetUserData(WM_HWIN hWin, void* pDest, int SizeofBuffer);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
pDest	Pointer to buffer.
SizeofBuffer	Size of buffer.

Return value

Number of bytes retrieved.

Additional information

The maximum number of bytes returned by this function is the number of ExtraBytes specified when creating the window.

WM_GetWindowOrgX(), WM_GetWindowOrgY()

Description

Returns the X- or Y-position (respectively) of the origin of the specified window in desktop coordinates.

Prototypes

```
int WM_GetWindowOrgX(WM_HWIN hWin);
int WM_GetWindowOrgY(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

X- or Y-position of the client area in pixels.

WM_GetWindowRect()

Description

Returns the coordinates of the active window in desktop coordinates.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetWindowRect(GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure.

WM_GetWindowRectEx()

Description

Returns the coordinates of a window in desktop coordinates.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetWindowRectEx(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure.

Additional Information

If the given window handle is 0 or the given pointer to the GUI_RECT structure is NULL the function returns immediately.

WM_GetWindowSizeX(), WM_GetWindowSizeY()

Description

Return the X- or Y-size (respectively) of a specified window.

Prototypes

```
int WM_GetWindowSizeX(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

```
int WM_GetWindowSizeY(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

X- or Y-size of the window in pixels.

Defined as $x1-x0+1$ in horizontal direction, $y1-y0+1$ in vertical direction, where $x0$, $x1$, $y0$, $y1$ are the leftmost/rightmost/topmost/bottommost positions of the window.
If the given window handle is 0 the function returns the size of the desktop window.

WM_HasCaptured()

Description

Returns 1 if the given window has captured mouse- and touchscreen-input, 0 if not.

Prototype

```
int WM_HasCaptured(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

1 if the given window has captured mouse- and touchscreen-input, 0 if not.

Additional Information

If the given window handle is invalid or 0 the function returns a wrong result.

WM_HasFocus()

Description

Checks if the given window has the input focus.

Prototype

```
int WM_HasFocus(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

1 if the given window has the input focus, otherwise 0.

Additional Information

If the given window handle is invalid or 0 the function returns a wrong result.

WM_HideWindow()

Description

Makes a specified window invisible.

Prototype

```
void WM_HideWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

The window will not immediately appear "invisible" after calling this function. The invalid areas of other windows (areas which appear to lie "behind" the window which should be hidden) will be redrawn when executing `WM_Exec()`. If you need to hide (draw over) a window immediately, you should call `WM_Paint()` to redraw the other windows.

WM_InvalidateArea()**Description**

Invalidates a specified, rectangular area of the display.

Prototype

```
void WM_InvalidateArea(GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to a <code>GUI_RECT</code> structure with desktop coordinates.

Additional information

Calling this function will tell the WM that the specified area is not updated. This function can be used to invalidate any windows or parts of windows that overlap or intersect the area. The coordinates of the `GUI_RECT` structure have to be in desktop coordinates.

WM_InvalidateRect()**Description**

Invalidates a specified, rectangular area of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_InvalidateRect(WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
pRect	Pointer to a <code>GUI_RECT</code> structure with window coordinates of the parent window.

Additional information

Calling this function will tell the WM that the specified area is not updated. The next time `WM_Paint()` is called to redraw the window, the area will be redrawn as well. The coordinates of the `GUI_RECT` structure have to be in window coordinates.

WM_InvalidateWindow()

Description

Invalidates a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_InvalidateWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

Calling this function tells the WM that the specified window is not updated.

WM_IsCompletelyVisible()

Description

Checks if the given window is completely visible or not.

Prototype

```
char WM_IsCompletelyVisible(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

1 if the given window is completely visible, otherwise 0.

Additional Information

If the given window handle is invalid or 0 the function returns a wrong result.

WM_IsEnabled()

Description

This function returns if a window is enabled or not.

Prototype

```
int WM_IsEnabled(WM_HWIN hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of window.

Return value

1 if the window is enabled, 0 if not.

Additional information

A widget that is disabled will typically appear gray, and will not accept input from the user. However, the actual appearance may vary (depends on widget/configuration settings, etc.)

WM_IsVisible()

Description

Determines whether or not a specified window is visible.

Prototype

```
int WM_IsVisible(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

0: Window is not visible

1: Window is visible

WM_IsWindow()

Description

Determines whether or not a specified handle is a valid window handle.

Prototype

```
void WM_IsWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

0: handle is not a valid window handle

1: handle is a valid window handle

Additional Information

This function should be used only if absolutely necessary. The more windows exist the more time will be used to evaluate, if the given handle is a window.

WM_MakeModal()

Description

This function makes the window work in 'modal' mode. This means pointer device input will only be send to the 'modal' window or a child window of it if the input position is within the rectangle of the modal window.

Prototype

```
void WM_MakeModal(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

WM_MoveChildTo()

Description

Moves a specified window to a certain position.

Prototype

```
void WM_MoveChildTo(WM_HWIN hWin, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
x	New X-position in window coordinates of the parent window.
y	New Y-position in window coordinates of the parent window.

WM_MoveTo()

Description

Moves a specified window to a certain position.

Prototype

```
void WM_MoveTo(WM_HWIN hWin, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
x	New X-position in desktop coordinates.
y	New Y-position in desktop coordinates.

WM_MoveWindow()

Description

Moves a specified window by a certain distance.

Prototype

```
void WM_MoveWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, int dx, int dy);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
dx	Horizontal distance to move.
dy	Vertical distance to move.

WM_NotifyParent()

Description

Sends a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message to the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_NotifyParent(WM_HWIN hWin, int Notification);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
Notification	Value to send to the parent window.

Additional information

The `Notification`-parameter will be send in the `Data.v` element of the message.

WM_Paint()

Description

Draws or redraws a specified window immediately.

Prototype

```
void WM_Paint(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

The window is redrawn reflecting all updates made since the last time it was drawn.

WM_PaintWindowAndDescs()

Description

Paints the given window and all its descendants.

Prototype

```
void WM_PaintWindowAndDescs(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

The function draws the complete window regions by invalidating them before drawing.

WM_ReleaseCapture()

Description

Releases capturing of mouse- and touchscreen-input.

Prototype

```
void WM_ReleaseCapture(void);
```

Additional information

Use WM_SetCapture() to send all mouse- and touchscreen-input to a specific window.

WM_ResizeWindow()

Description

Changes the size of a specified window by adding (or subtracting) the given differences.

Prototype

```
void WM_ResizeWindow(WM_HWIN hWin, int XSize, int YSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
dx	Difference in X.
dy	Difference in Y.

WM_SelectWindow()

Description

Sets the active window to be used for drawing operations.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_SelectWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

The selected window.

Additional Information

This function should not be called within a paint function called by the window manager. If the window manager sends a WM_PAINT message the target window already has been selected.

When working with a multi layer configuration the function switches also to the layer of the top level parent window of the given window.

If the given window handle is 0 the function selects the first created window, normally the first desktop window.

Example

Sets a window with handle hWin2 to the active window, sets the background color, and then clears the window:

```
WM_SelectWindow(hWin2);
GUI_SetBkColor(0xFF00);
GUI_Clear();
```

WM_SendMessage()

Description

Sends a message to a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SendMessage(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_MESSAGE* pMsg)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
pMsg	Pointer to message.

WM_SendToParent()

Description

Sends the given message to the parent window of the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SendToParent(WM_HWIN hWin, WM_MESSAGE* pMsg);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
pMsg	Pointer to WM_MESSAGE-structure.

WM_SetDesktopColor()

Description

Sets the color for the desktop window.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR WM_SetDesktopColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color for desktop window, 24-bit RGB value.

Return value

The previously selected desktop window color.

Additional information

The default setting for the desktop window is not to repaint itself. If this function is not called, the desktop window will not be redrawn at all; therefore other windows will remain visible even after they are deleted.

Once a color is specified with this function, the desktop window will repaint itself. In order to restore the default, call this function and specify GUI_INVALID_COLOR.

WM_SetDesktopColorEx()

Description

Sets the color for the desktop window in a multi layer environment.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR WM_SetDesktopColorEx(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned int LayerIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color for desktop window, 24-bit RGB value.
LayerIndex	Index of the layer.

Return value

The previously selected desktop window color.

Additional information

(see WM_SetDesktopColor).

WM_SetCallback()

Description

Sets a callback routine to be executed by the window manager.

Prototype

```
WM_CALLBACK* WM_SetCallback (WM_HWIN hWin, WM_CALLBACK* cb)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
cb	Pointer to callback routine.

Return value

Pointer to the previous callback routine.

Additional Information

The given window will be invalidated. This makes sure the window will be redrawn.

WM_SetCapture()

Description

Routes all mouse- and touchscreen-messages to the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetCapture(WM_HWIN hObj, int AutoRelease);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
AutoRelease	1 if capturing should end when the user releases the touch.

WM_SetCreateFlags()

Description

Sets the flags to be used as default when creating a new window.

Prototype

```
U8 WM_SetCreateFlags (U8 Flags)
```

Parameter	Meaning
Flags	Window create flags (see WM_CreateWindow()).

Return value

Former value of this parameter.

Additional information

The flags specified here are binary ORED with the flags specified in the WM_CreateWindow() and WM_CreateWindowAsChild() routines.

The flag WM_CF_MEMDEV is frequently used to enable memory devices on all windows.

Example

```
WM_SetCreateFlags(WM_CF_MEMDEV); /* Auto. use memory devices on all windows */
```

WM_SetFocus

Description

Sets the input focus to a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetFocus(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

0 if window accepted focus; value other than 0 if it could not.

Additional information

The window receives a WM_SETFOCUS message which gives it the input focus. If for some reason the window could not accept the focus, nothing happens.

WM_SetHasTrans()

Description

Sets the has transparency flag (sets it to 1).

Prototype

```
void WM_SetHasTrans(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

When set, this flag tells the window manager that a window contains sections which are not redrawn and will therefore be transparent. The WM then knows that the background needs to be redrawn prior to redrawing the window in order to make sure the transparent sections are restored correctly.

WM_SetId()

Description

This function sends a WM_SET_ID message to the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetId(WM_HWIN hObj, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Window handle.
Id	Id to be send to the window.

Additional information

This function can be used to change the Id of a widget. It works with any `wmWin` widget. When using this function with a application defined window, the callback function of the window should handle the message. Otherwise it will be ignored.

WM_SetpfPollPID()

Description

Sets a function which will be called by the window manager in order to poll the pointer input device (touch-screen or mouse).

Prototype

```
WM_tfPollPID* WM_SetpfPollPID(WM_tfPollPID* pf);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pf	Pointer to a function of type WM_tfPollPID.

Additional information

The function type is defined as follows:

```
typedef void WM_tfPollPID(void);
```

Example

Example of a touch-screen handled as a device:

```
void ReadTouch(void) {
    // ...read touchscreen
}

WM_SetpfPollPID(ReadTouch);
```

WM_SetSize()

Description

Sets the new size of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetSize(WM_HWIN hWin, int XSize, int YSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
XSize	New size in X.
YSize	New size in Y.

WM_SetWindowPos()

Description

Sets the size and the position of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetWindowPos(WM_HWIN hWin,
                      int xPos, int yPos,
                      int xSize, int ySize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
xPos	New position in X in desktop coordinates.
yPos	New position in Y in desktop coordinates.
xSize	New size in X.
ySize	New size in Y.

WM_SetXSize()

Description

Sets the new X-size of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetXSize(WM_HWIN hWin, int XSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
XSize	New size in X.

WM_SetYSize()

Description

Sets the new Y-size of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetYSize(WM_HWIN hWin, int YSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
YSize	New size in Y.

WM_SetStayOnTop()

Description

Sets the stay on top flag.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetStayOnTop(WM_HWIN hWin, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
OnOff	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Stay on top flag would be cleared.
1	Stay on top flag would be set.

WM_SetTransState()

Description

This function sets or clears the flags WM_CF_HASTRANS and WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE of the given window.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetTransState(WM_HWIN hWin, unsigned State);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
State	Combination of the flags WM_CF_HASTRANS and WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE.

Additional information

For details about the flag WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE please refer to the function WM_CreateWindow().

WM_SetUserClipRect()

Description

Temporarily reduces the clip area of the current window to a specified rectangle.

Prototype

```
const GUI_RECT* WM_SetUserClipRect(const GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure defining the clipping region in desktop coordinates.

Return value

Pointer to the previous clip rectangle.

Additional information

A NULL pointer can be passed in order to restore the default settings. The clip rectangle will automatically be reset by the WM when callbacks are used.

The specified rectangle must be relative to the current window. You cannot enlarge the clip rectangle beyond the current window rectangle.

Your application must ensure that the specified rectangle retains its value until it is no longer needed; i.e. until a different clip rectangle is specified or until a NULL pointer is passed. This means that the rectangle structure passed as parameter should not be an auto variable (usually located on the stack) if the clip rectangle remains active until after the return. In this case, a static variable should be used.

Example

This example is taken from the drawing routine of a progress indicator. The progress indicator must write text on top of the progress bar, where the text color has to be different on the left and right parts of the bar. This means that half of a digit could be in one color, while the other half could be in a different color. The best way to do this is to temporarily reduce the clip area when drawing each part of the bar as shown below:

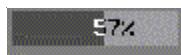
```

/* Draw left part of the bar */
r.x0=0; r.x1=x1-1; r.y0=0; r.y1 = GUI_YMAX;
WM_SetUserClipRect(&r);
GUI_SetBkColor(pThis->ColorBar[0]);
GUI_SetColor(pThis->ColorText[0]);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_GotoXY(xText,yText); GUI_DispatchMin(pThis->v); GUI_DispatchChar('%');

/* Draw right part of the bar */
r.x0=r.x1; r.x1=GUI_XMAX;
WM_SetUserClipRect(&r);
GUI_SetBkColor(pThis->ColorBar[1]);
GUI_SetColor(pThis->ColorText[1]);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_GotoXY(xText,yText); GUI_DispatchMin(pThis->v); GUI_DispatchChar('%');

```

Screen shot of progress bar



WM_SetUserData()

Description

Sets the extra data of a window. Memory for extra data is reserved with the parameter ExtraBytes when creating a window.

Prototype

```
int WM_SetUserData(WM_HWIN hWin, void* pDest, int SizeofBuffer);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
pDest	Pointer to buffer.
SizeofBuffer	Size of buffer.

Return value

Number of bytes reserved when creating the window.

Additional information

The maximum number of bytes used to store user data is the number of ExtraBytes specified when creating a window.

WM_ShowWindow()

Description

Makes a specified window visible.

Prototype

```
void WM_ShowWindow(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

The window will not immediately be visible after calling this function. It will be redrawn when executing `WM_Exec()`. If you need to show (draw) the window immediately, you should call `WM_Paint()`.

WM_Update()

Description

Draws the invalid part of the specified window immediately.

Prototype

```
void WM_Update(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

After updating a window its complete region is marked as valid.

WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs()

Description

Paints the invalid part of the given window and the invalid part of all its descendants.

Prototype

```
void WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

The function only draws the invalid window regions.

WM_ValidateRect()

Description

Validates a specified, rectangular area of a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_ValidateRect (WM_HWIN hWin, GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure with window coordinates of the parent window.

Additional information

Calling this function will tell the WM that the specified area is updated.

Normally this function is called internally and does not need to be called by the user application. The coordinates of the GUI_RECT structure have to be in desktop coordinates.

WM_ValidateWindow()

Description

Validates a specified window.

Prototype

```
void WM_ValidateWindow (WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Additional information

Calling this function will tell the WM that the specified window is updated. Normally this function is called internally and does not need to be called by the user application.

15.7 Memory device support (optional)

When a memory device is used for redrawing a window, all drawing operations are automatically routed to a memory device context and are executed in memory. Only after all drawing operations have been carried out is the window redrawn on the LCD, reflecting all updates at once. The advantage of using memory devices is that any flickering effects (which normally occur when the screen is continuously updated as drawing operations are executed) are eliminated.

For more information on how memory devices operate, see Chapter 13: "Memory Devices".

WM_DisableMemdev()

Description

Disables the use of memory devices for redrawing a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_DisableMemdev (WM_HWIN hWin)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

WM_EnableMemdev()

Description

Enables the use of memory devices for redrawing a window.

Prototype

```
void WM_EnableMemdev (WM_HWIN hWin)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

15.8 Widget related functions

WM_GetClientWindow()

Description

Returns the handle of the client window. The function sends a message to the active window to retrieve the handle of the client window. If the window does not handle the message the handle of the current window will be returned.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN WM_GetClientWindow(WM_HWIN hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Handle of widget.

Return value

Handle of the client window.

Additional information

Use this function to retrieve the client window handle of a FRAMEWIN widget.

WM_GetId()

Description

Returns the ID of a specified widget window.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetId(WM_HWIN hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

Return value

The ID of the widget specified at creation.

0 will be returned if the specified window is not a widget.

WM_GetInsideRect()

Description

Returns the coordinates of the client area of the active widget less the border size. The function sends a message to the active window to retrieve the inside rectangle. If the widget does not handle the message (that means the widget has no border) WM_GetClientRect will be used to calculate the rectangle. The result is given in window coordinates. That means x0 and y0 of the GUI_RECT structure corresponds to the border size in x and y, x1 and y1 corresponds to the size of the window less the border size - 1.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetInsideRect(GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure.

WM_GetInsideRectEx()

Description

Returns the coordinates of a window less the border size. For details please take a look at WM_GetInsideRect described above.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetInsideRectEx(WM_HWIN hObj, GUI_RECT* pRect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
pRect	Pointer to a GUI_RECT structure.

WM_GetScrollPosH()

Description

If a horizontal scroll bar is attached to the window, the function returns the scroll position of it.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetScrollPosH(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

Scroll position of the horizontal scroll bar attached to this window.

Additional information

If no horizontal scroll bar is attached to the window, the function returns 0. For more information, please refer to the scroll bar widget section.

WM_GetScrollPosV()

Description

If a vertical scroll bar is attached to the window, the function returns the scroll position of it.

Prototype

```
int WM_GetScrollPosV(WM_HWIN hWin);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.

Return value

Scroll position of the vertical scroll bar attached to this window.

Additional information

If no vertical scroll bar is attached to the window, the function returns 0. For more information, please refer to the scroll bar widget section.

WM_GetScrollState()

Description

Fills a data structure with information on the current state of a specified scroll bar widget window.

Prototype

```
void WM_GetScrollState(WM_HWIN hObj, WM_SCROLL_STATE* pScrollState);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar widget.
pScrollState	Pointer to a data structure of type WM_SCROLL_STATE.

Additional information

This function does not return since the state of a scroll bar is defined by more than one value.

It has no effect on other types of widgets or windows.

For more information, please refer to the scroll bar widget section.

Elements of WM_SCROLL_STATE

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	NumItems	Number of items.
int	v	Current value.
int	PageSize	Number of items visible on one page.

WM_SetScrollPosH()

Description

If a horizontal scroll bar is attached to the window, the function sets the scroll position of it.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetScrollPosH(WM_HWIN hWin, unsigned ScrollPos);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
ScrollPos	New scroll position of the scroll bar.

Additional information

If no horizontal scroll bar is attached to the window, the function returns. For more information, please refer to the scroll bar widget section.

WM_SetScrollPosV()

Description

If a vertical scroll bar is attached to the window, the function sets the scroll position of it.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetScrollPosV(WM_HWIN hWin, unsigned ScrollPos);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
ScrollPos	New scroll position of the scroll bar.

Additional information

If no vertical scroll bar is attached to the window, the function returns. For more information, please refer to the scroll bar widget section.

WM_SetScrollState()

Description

Sets the state of a specified scroll bar widget.

Prototype

```
void WM_SetScrollState(WM_HWIN hObj, const WM_SCROLL_STATE* pState);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar widget.

15.9 Example

The following example illustrates the difference between using a callback routine for redrawing the background and not having one. It also shows how to set your own callback function. The example is available as WM_Redraw.c in the samples shipped with µC/GUI:

```
/*
 *          Micrium Inc.
 *          Empowering embedded systems
 *
 *          µC/GUI sample code
 *
 ****
-----  

File      : WM_Redraw.c  

Purpose   : Demonstrates the redrawing mechanism of the window manager  

-----  

*/  

#include "GUI.H"  

/*
 *          Callback routine for background window
 *
 ****
*/  

static void cbBackgroundWin(WM_MESSAGE* pMsg) {  

    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {  

        case WM_PAINT:  

            GUI_Clear();  

        default:  

            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);  

    }  

}  

/*
 *          Callback routine for foreground window
 *
 ****
*/  

static void cbForegroundWin(WM_MESSAGE* pMsg) {  

    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {  

        case WM_PAINT:  

            GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_GREEN);  

            GUI_Clear();  

            GUI_DispString("Foreground window");  

            break;  

        default:  

            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);  

    }  

}  

/*
 *          Demonstrates the redraw mechanism of µC/GUI
 *
 ****
*/  

static void DemoRedraw(void) {  

    GUI_HWIN hWnd;  

    while(1) {  

        /* Create foreground window */  

        hWnd = WM_CreateWindow(10, 10, 100, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, cbForegroundWin, 0);  

        /* Show foreground window */  

    }
}
```

```
    GUI_Delay(1000);
    /* Delete foreground window */
    WM_DeleteWindow(hWnd);
    GUI_DispStringAt("Background of window has not been redrawn", 10, 10);
    /* Wait a while, background will not be redrawn */
    GUI_Delay(1000);
    GUI_Clear();
    /* Set callback for Background window */
    WM_SetCallback(WM_HBKWIN, cbBackgroundWin);
    /* Create foreground window */
    hWnd = WM_CreateWindow(10, 10, 100, 100, WM_CF_SHOW, cbForegroundWin, 0);
    /* Show foreground window */
    GUI_Delay(1000);
    /* Delete foreground window */
    WM_DeleteWindow(hWnd);
    /* Wait a while, background will be redrawn */
    GUI_Delay(1000);
    /* Delete callback for Background window */
    WM_SetCallback(WM_HBKWIN, 0);
}

/*****************
*          main
*
*/
void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    DemoRedraw();
}
```


Chapter 16

Window Objects (Widgets)

Widgets are windows with object-type properties; they are called controls in the windows world and make up the elements of the user interface. They can react automatically to certain events; for example, a button can appear in a different state if it is pressed. Widgets need to be created, have properties which may be changed at any time during their existence and are then typically deleted when they are no longer needed. Just like a window, a widget is referenced by a handle which is returned by its create function.

Widgets require the window manager. Once a widget is created, it is treated just like any other window; the WM ensures that it is properly displayed (and redrawn) whenever necessary. Widgets are not required when writing an application or a user interface, but they can make programming much easier.

16.1 Some basics

16.1.1 Available widgets

The following µC/GUI widgets are currently available:

Name	Screenshot	Explanation
BUTTON		Button which can be pressed. Text or bitmaps may be displayed on a button.
CHECKBOX		Check box which may be checked or unchecked.
DROPODOWN		Dropdown listbox, opens a listbox when pressed.
EDIT		Single-line edit field which prompts the user to type a number or text.
FRAMEWIN		Frame window. Creates the typical GUI look.
GRAPH		Graph widget, used to show curves or measured values.
HEADER		Header control, used to manage columns.
LISTBOX		Listbox which highlights items as they are selected by the user.
LISTVIEW		Listview widgets are used to creates tables.
MENU		Menu widgets are used to create horizontal and vertical menus.
MULTIEDIT		Multiedit widgets are used to edit multiple lines of text.

Name	Screenshot	Explanation
MULTIPAGE		Multipage widgets are used to create dialogs with multiple pages.
PROGBAR		Progress bar used for visualization.
RADIOBUTTON		Radio button which may be selected. Only one button may be selected at a time.
SCROLLBAR		Scrollbar which may be horizontal or vertical.
SLIDER		Slider bar used for changing values.
TEXT		Static text controls typically used in dialogs.

16.1.2 Understanding the redrawing mechanism

A widget draws itself according to its properties. This is done when `WM_Exec()` is called. If you do not call `WM_Exec()` from within your program, `WM_Paint()` must be called for the widget. In a multitasking environment, a background task is normally used to call `WM_Exec()` and update the widgets (and all other windows with callback functions). It is then not necessary to manually call `WM_Paint()`; however, it is still legal to do so and may also make sense if you want to ensure that the widget is redrawn immediately.

When a property of a widget is changed, the window of the widget (or part of it) is marked as invalid, but it is not immediately redrawn. Therefore, the section of code executes very fast. The redrawing is done by the WM at a later time or it can be forced by calling `WM_Paint()` for the widget (or `WM_Exec()` until all windows are redrawn).

16.1.3 How to use widgets

Suppose we would like to display a progress bar. All that is needed is the following code:

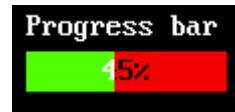
```
PROGBAR_Handle hProgBar;
GUI_DisplStringAt("Progress bar", 100, 20);
hProgBar = PROGBAR_Create(100, 40, 100, 20, WM_CF_SHOW);
```



The first line reserves memory for the handle of the widget. The last line actually creates the widget. The widget will then automatically be drawn by the window manager if `WM_Exec()` is called at a later point or in a separate task. Member functions are available for each type of widget which allow modifications to their appearance. Once the widget has been created, its properties can be changed by calling one of its member functions. These functions take the handle of the widget

as their first argument. In order to make the progress bar created above show 45% and to change the bar colors from their defaults (dark gray/light gray) to green/red, the following section of code may be used:

```
PROGBAR_SetBarColor(hProgBar, 0, GUI_GREEN);
PROGBAR_SetBarColor(hProgBar, 1, GUI_RED);
PROGBAR_SetValue(hProgBar, 45);
```



Default configuration

All widgets also have one or more configuration macros which define various default settings such as fonts and colors used. The available configuration options are listed for each widget in their respective sections later in the chapter.

How widgets communicate

Widgets are often created as child windows. The parent window may be any type of window, even another widget. A parent window usually needs to be informed whenever something occurs with one of its children in order to ensure synchronization. Child window widgets communicate with their parent window by sending a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message whenever an event occurs. The notification code sent as part of the message depends on the event.

Most widgets have one or more notification codes defining different types of events. The available notification codes for each widget (if any) are listed under their respective sections.

Dynamic memory usage for widgets

In embedded applications it is usually not very desirable to use dynamic memory at all because of fragmentation effects. There are a number of different strategies that can be used to avoid this, but they all work in a limited way whenever memory areas are referenced by a pointer in the application program. For this reason, µC/GUI uses a different approach: all objects (and all data stored at run-time) are stored in memory areas referenced by a handle. This makes it possible to relocate the allocated memory areas at run-time, thus avoiding the long-term allocation problems which occur when using pointers. All widgets are thus referenced by handles.

Determine the type of a widget

There is no function like WM_GetWidgetType() to determine the type of a widget. The type can be determined only by comparing the callback function of a specific widget with the public callback functions of the widget API. This works fine if the callback function is not overwritten. The following shows a short sample how to determine the type of a widget. In case of overwritten callback functions the method should be adapted:

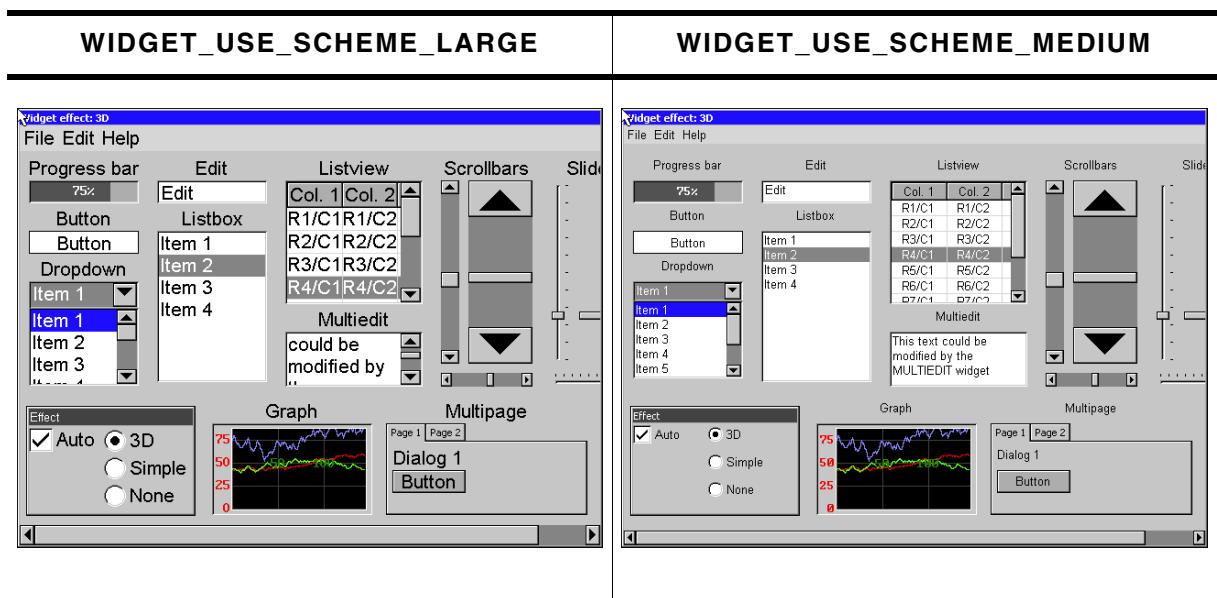
```
WM_CALLBACK * pCb = WM_GetCallback(hWidget);
if      (pCb == BUTTON_Callback) {
    /* Widget is a button */
} else if (pCb == DROPODOWN_Callback) {
    /* Widget is a dropdown */
} else if (pCb == LISTBOX_Callback) {
    /* Widget is a listbox */
} else if (...) {
    ...
}
```

16.2 Configuration options

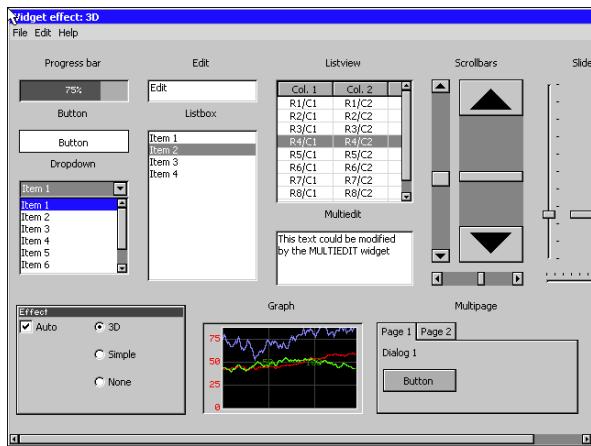
Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
B	WIDGET_USE_PARENT_EFFECT	0	If set to 1, each 'child widget' of a widget, has the same effect as the parent widget. If for example a listbox needs to create a scrollbar, the new scrollbar has the same effect as the listbox.
B	WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_LARGE	0	If set to 1, the default appearance of the widgets is large sized. That means that all widgets which show text are configured to use large sized default fonts.
B	WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_MEDIUM	0	If set to 1, the default appearance of the widgets is medium sized. That means that all widgets which show text are configured to use medium sized default fonts.
B	WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_SMALL	1	If set to 1, the default appearance of the widgets is small sized. That means that all widgets which show text are configured to use small sized default fonts.

WIDGET_USE_SCHEME...

The table below shows the default appearance of the widget schemes:



WIDGET_USE_SCHEME_SMALL



16.3 General widget API

16.3.1 API reference: WM routines used for widgets

Since widgets are essentially windows, they are compatible with any of the window manager API routines. The handle of the widget is used as the `hWin` parameter and the widget is treated like any other window. The WM functions most commonly used with widgets are listed as follows:

Routine	Explanation
<code>WM_DeleteWindow()</code>	Delete a window.
<code>WM_DisableMemdev()</code>	Disable usage of memory devices for redrawing.
<code>WM_EnableMemdev()</code>	Enable usage of memory devices for redrawing.
<code>WM_InvalidateWindow()</code>	Invalidate a window.
<code>WM_Paint()</code>	Draw or redraw a window immediately.

For a complete list of WM-related functions, please refer to Chapter 15: "The Window Manager".

16.3.2 API reference: routines common to all widgets

The table below lists available widget-related routines in alphabetical order. These functions are common to all widgets, and are listed here in order to avoid repetition. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow. The additional member functions available for each widget may be found in later sections.

Routine	Explanation
<code><WIDGET>_Callback()</code>	Default callback function.
<code><WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()</code>	Used for automatic creation in dialog boxes.
<code>WIDGET_GetDefaultEffect()</code>	Returns the default effect used for new widgets.
<code>WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()</code>	Sets the default effect used for new widgets.
<code>WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_None()</code>	Sets the default effect used for new widgets to 'None'.

Routine	Explanation
<code>WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_3D()</code>	Sets the default effect used for new widgets to '3D'.
<code>WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_Simple()</code>	Sets the default effect used for new widgets to 'Simple'.
<code>WIDGET_SetEffect()</code>	Sets the effect used for a given widget.

<WIDGET>_Callback()

Description

Default callback function of the widgets to be used from within overwritten callback function.

Prototype

```
void <WIDGET>_Callback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pMsg</code>	Pointer to a data structure of type WM_MESSAGE.

Additional information

A default callback function of a widget should not be called directly. It is only to be used from within an overwritten callback function.

For details about the WM_MESSAGE data structure please refer to the beginning of the chapter 'The Window Manager'.

<WIDGET>_CreateIndirect()

Description

Creates a widget to be used in dialog boxes.

Prototype

```
<WIDGET>_Handle <WIDGET>_CreateIndirect(const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO*
                                         pCreateInfo, WM_HWIN hParent,
                                         int x0, int y0, WM_CALLBACK* cb);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pCreateInfo</code>	Pointer to a GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO structure (see below).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window.
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>cb</code>	Pointer to a callback function.

Additional information

Any widget may be created indirectly by using the appropriate prefix. For example: `BUTTON_CreateIndirect()` to indirectly create a button widget, `CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect()` to indirectly create a check box widget, and so on.

A widget only needs to be created indirectly if it is to be included in a dialog box. Otherwise, it may be created directly by using the <WIDGET>_Create() functions. Please see Chapter 17: "Dialogs" for more information about dialog boxes.

Resource table

The `GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO` data structure is defined in the dialog resource table as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_FUNC* pfCreateIndirect; // Create function
    const char* pName;                      // Text (not used for all widgets)
    I16 Id;                                // Window ID of the widget
    I16 x0, y0, xSize, ySize;                // Size and position of the widget
    I16 Flags;                             // Widget-specific flags (or 0)
    I32 Para;                            // Widget-specific parameter (or 0)
} GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO;
```

Widget flags and parameters are optional, and vary depending on the type of widget. The available flags and parameters for each widget (if any) will be listed under the appropriate section later in the chapter.

`WIDGET_GetDefaultEffect()`

Description

Returns the default effect used for new widgets.

Prototype

```
const WIDGET_EFFECT * WIDGET_GetDefaultEffect(void);
```

Return value

The result of the function is a pointer to a `WIDGET_EFFECT` structure.

Additional information

For more information please refer to the function `WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()`.

`WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()`

Description

Sets the default effect used for new widgets.

Prototype

```
const WIDGET_EFFECT * WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect(const WIDGET_EFFECT* pEffect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pEffect</code>	Pointer to a <code>WIDGET_EFFECT</code> structure. See table below.

Permitted values for element <code>pEffect</code>	
<code>WIDGET_Effect_3D</code>	Sets the default effect to '3D'.
<code>WIDGET_Effect_None</code>	Sets the default effect to 'None'.
<code>WIDGET_Effect_Simple</code>	Sets the default effect to 'Simple'.

Return value

Previous used default effect.

Additional information

The following table shows the appearance of some widgets in dependence of the used effect:

'3D'	'None'	'Simple'

WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_3D()

Description

Sets the default effect used for new widgets to '3D'.

Prototype

```
void WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_3D(void);
```

Additional information

For more information please refer to the function `WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()`.

WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_None()

Description

Sets the default effect used for new widgets to 'None'.

Prototype

```
void WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_None(void);
```

Additional information

For more information please refer to the function `WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()`.

WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_Simple()

Description

Sets the default effect used for new widgets to 'Simple'.

Prototype

```
void WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_Simple(void);
```

Additional information

For more information please refer to the function `WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()`.

WIDGET_SetEffect()**Description**

Sets the effect for the given widget.

Prototype

```
void WIDGET_SetEffect(WM_HWIN hObj, const WIDGET_EFFECT* pEffect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>pEffect</code>	Pointer to a <code>WIDGET_EFFECT</code> structure. For details please refer to the function <code>WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()</code>

16.3.3 User drawn widgets

Some widgets supports owner drawing e.g. the LISTBOX widget. If the user draw mode of a widget has been activated a application-defined function of type `WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC` will be called to draw the widget(item). The prototype of a application-defined owner draw function should be defined as follows:

Prototype

```
int _OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo)
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pDrawItemInfo</code>	Pointer to a <code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO</code> structure.

Elements of WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO

Data type	Element	Meaning
WM_HWIN	<code>hWin</code>	Handle to the listbox.
int	<code>Cmd</code>	(see table below)
int	<code>ItemIndex</code>	Zero based index of LISTBOX entry.
int	<code>x0</code>	X position in window coordinates to be used to draw the item.
int	<code>y0</code>	Y position in window coordinates to be used to draw the item.

Permitted values for element <code>Cmd</code>	
<code>WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE</code>	The function returns the x-size (width) in pixels of the given item.
<code>WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE</code>	The function returns the y-size (height) in pixels of the given item.
<code>WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW</code>	The function draws the given item at the given position.

Return value

Depends on the given command.

Reaction to commands

The function has to react to the command given in the WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure. This can be done in one of 2 ways:

- By calling the appropriate default function supplied by the particular widget (e.g. LISTBOX_OwnerDraw())
- By supplying code that reacts accordingly.

Commands

The commands listed below are supported and should be reacted to by the function. As explained above, the default owner draw function should be called for all not handled functions. This is can save code size (for example if the height is the same as the default height) and makes sure that your code stays compatible if in a future version of the software and Additional command is introduced.

WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE

The X-size in pixels of the given item has to be returned.

WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE

The Y-size (height) in pixels of the given item has to be returned.

WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW

The given item has to be drawn. x0 and y0 of the WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure specify the position of the item in window coordinates. The item has to fill its entire rectangle; the rectangle is defined by the starting position x0, y0 supplied to the function and the sizes returned by the function as reaction to the commands WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE, WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE. It may NOT leave a part of this rectangular area unpainted. It can not paint outside of this rectangular area because the clip rectangle has been set before the function call.

16.4 BUTTON: Button widget

Button widgets are commonly used as the primary user interface element for touch-screens. If the button has the input focus, it also reacts on the keys GUI_KEY_SPACE and GUI_KEY_ENTER. Buttons may be displayed with text, as shown below, or with a bitmap.



All BUTTON-related routines are located in the file(s) `BUTTON*.c`, `BUTTON.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `BUTTON`.

16.4.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	<code>BUTTON_3D_MOVE_X</code>	1	Number of pixels that text/bitmap moves in horizontal direction in pressed state.
N	<code>BUTTON_3D_MOVE_Y</code>	1	Number of pixels that text/bitmap moves in vertical direction in pressed state.
N	<code>BUTTON_ALIGN_DEFAULT</code>	<code>GUI_TA_HCENTER GUI_TA_VCENTER</code>	Alignment used to display the button text.
N	<code>BUTTON_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT</code>	0xAAAAAA	Background color, unpressed state.
N	<code>BUTTON_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT</code>	<code>GUI_WHITE</code>	Background color, pressed state.
N	<code>BUTTON_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT</code>	<code>GUI_BLACK</code>	Default color for rendering the focus rectangle.
S	<code>BUTTON_FONT_DEFAULT</code>	<code>&GUI_Font13_1</code>	Font used for button text.
B	<code>BUTTON.REACT_ON_LEVEL</code>	0	See description below.
N	<code>BUTTON_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT</code>	<code>GUI_BLACK</code>	Text color, unpressed state.
N	<code>BUTTON_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT</code>	<code>GUI_BLACK</code>	Text color, pressed state.

BUTTON.REACT_ON_LEVEL

A button per default reacts on each touch message. For example if touching a dialog with a pointer input device (PID) not exactly on the button and then move the PID in pressed state over the button, the button changes from unpressed to pressed state. This behavior can be useful if using a touch panel.

If a button should only react on level changes, `BUTTON.REACT_ON_LEVEL` should be set to 1. Then a button changes the state only if the PID is pressed and released on the button. If then moving a PID in pressed state over the button it does not react. This behavior can be useful if dialogs should react on `WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED`.

Example (`BUTTON.REACT_ON_LEVEL = 0`): One dialog (dialog 2) is shown over an other dialog (dialog 1). The close button of dialog 2 is on the same position as a button of dialog 1. Now the close button of dialog 2 is pressed, which removes dialog 2. The PID now is in pressed state. If now moving the button before releasing it the button of dialog 1 would change from unpressed to pressed state.

This unwanted behavior can be avoid by setting `BUTTON.REACT_ON_LEVEL` to 1.

BUTTON_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT, BUTTON_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT

The default for the button is to use a white background in the pressed state. This has been done purposely because it makes it very obvious that the button is pressed, on any kind of display. If you want the background color of the button to be the same in both its pressed and unpressed states, change `BUTTON_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT` to `BUTTON_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT`.

16.4.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a button widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	Button has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	Button has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT	Button has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the button without releasing.

16.4.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_ENTER	If the keys is pressed, the button reacts as it has been pressed and immediately released.
GUI_KEY_SPACE	If the keys is pressed, the button state changes to pressed. If the keys is released, the button state changes to unpressed.

16.4.4 BUTTON API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI BUTTON-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
BUTTON_Create()	Create the button. (Obsolete)
BUTTON_CreateAsChild()	Create the button as a child window. (Obsolete)
BUTTON_CreateEx()	Creates the button.
BUTTON_CreateIndirect()	Create the button from resource table entry.
BUTTON_GetBitmap()	Returns a pointer to the BUTTON bitmap.
BUTTON_GetBkColor()	Returns the background color of the BUTTON
BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor()	Returns the default background color for new BUTTON widgets.
BUTTON_GetDefaultFont()	Returns the default font for new BUTTON widgets.
BUTTON_GetDefaultTextAlign()	Returns the default text alignment for new BUTTON widgets.
BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor()	Returns the default text color for new BUTTON widgets.
BUTTON_GetFont()	Returns a pointer to the font of the BUTTON
BUTTON_GetText()	Retrieves the text of a specified BUTTON.
BUTTON_GetTextColor()	Returns the text color of the specified BUTTON.
BUTTON_IsPressed()	Returns if a button is pressed or not.
BUTTON_SetBitmap()	Set the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON.
BUTTON_SetBitmapEx()	Set the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON.
BUTTON_SetBkColor()	Set the background color of the button.
BUTTON_SetBMP()	Set the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON.
BUTTON_SetBMPE()	Set the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON.
BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor()	Sets the default background color for new BUTTON widgets.
BUTTON_SetDefaultFont()	Sets the default font for new BUTTON widgets.
BUTTON_SetDefaultTextAlign()	Sets the default text alignment for new BUTTON widgets.

Routine	Explanation
<code>BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor()</code>	Sets the default text color for new BUTTON widgets.
<code>BUTTON_SetFocussable()</code>	Sets the ability to receive the input focus.
<code>BUTTON_SetFont()</code>	Select the font for the text.
<code>BUTTON_SetPressed()</code>	Sets the state of the button to pressed or unpressed.
<code>BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap()</code>	Set the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON.
<code>BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmapEx()</code>	Set the bitmap used when displaying the BUTTON.
<code>BUTTON_SetText()</code>	Set the text.
<code>BUTTON_SetTextAlign()</code>	Sets the alignment of the BUTTON text.
<code>BUTTON_SetTextColor()</code>	Set the color(s) for the text.

BUTTON_Create()

(Obsolete, `BUTTON_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a BUTTON widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
BUTTON_Handle BUTTON_Create(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                           int Id, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the button (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the button (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the button (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the button (in pixels).
<code>Id</code>	ID to be returned when button is pressed.
<code>Flags</code>	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).

Return value

Handle for the created BUTTON widget; 0 if the routine fails.

BUTTON_CreateAsChild()

(Obsolete, `BUTTON_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a BUTTON widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
BUTTON_Handle BUTTON_CreateAsChild(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                    WM_HWIN hParent, int Id, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	X-position of the button relative to the parent window.
<code>y0</code>	Y-position of the button relative to the parent window.
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the button (in pixels).

Parameter	Meaning
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the button (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new button window will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
<code>Id</code>	ID to be returned when button is pressed.
<code>Flags</code>	Window create flags (see <code>BUTTON_Create()</code>).

Return value

Handle for the created BUTTON widget; 0 if the routine fails.

BUTTON_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a BUTTON widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
BUTTON_Handle BUTTON_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsizex, int ysize,
                               WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                               int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsizex</code>	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new button window will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
<code>WinFlags</code>	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
<code>ExFlags</code>	Not used yet, reserved for future use.
<code>Id</code>	Window ID of the widget.

Return value

Handle for the created BUTTON widget; 0 if the routine fails.

BUTTON_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The elements `Flags` and `Para` of the resource passed as parameter are not used.

BUTTON_GetBitmap()

Description

Returns a pointer to the optional button bitmap.

Prototype

```
const GUI_BITMAP * BUTTON_GetBitmap(BUTTON_Handle hObj,
```

```
unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Index	Index of desired bitmap (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_BI_DISABLED	Bitmap for disabled state.
BUTTON_BI_PRESSED	Bitmap for pressed state.
BUTTON_BI_UNPRESSED	Bitmap for unpressed state.

Return value

Pointer to the bitmap, 0 if no bitmap exist.

Additional information

For details about how to set a button bitmap please refer to the functions `BUTTON_SetBitmap()` and `BUTTON_SetBitmapEx()`.

BUTTON_GetBkColor()

Description

Returns the background color of the given BUTTON widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_GetBkColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Index	Index for color (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_CI_DISABLED	Color for disabled state.
BUTTON_CI_PRESSED	Color for pressed state.
BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED	Color for unpressed state.

Return value

Background color of the given BUTTON widget

BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color used by new BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index for color (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_CI_DISABLED	Color for disabled state.
BUTTON_CI_PRESSED	Color for pressed state.
BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED	Color for unpressed state.

Return value

Background color used by new BUTTON widgets.

BUTTON_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to the GUI_FONT structure used used to display the BUTTON text of new BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * BUTTON_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the GUI_FONT structure used used to display the text of new BUTTON widgets.

BUTTON_GetDefault TextAlign()

Description

Returns the default text alignment used to display the text of new BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
int BUTTON_GetDefault TextAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default text alignment used to display the text of new BUTTON widgets.

BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used to display the text of new BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index for color (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_CI_DISABLED	Color for disabled state.
BUTTON_CI_PRESSED	Color for pressed state.
BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED	Color for unpressed state.

Return value

Default text color used to display the text of new BUTTON widgets.

BUTTON_GetFont()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the font used to display the text of the given BUTTON widget

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * BUTTON_GetFont(BUTTON_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

Return value

pointer to the font used to display the text of the given BUTTON widget.

BUTTON_GetText()**Description**

Retrieves the text of the specified BUTTON widget.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_GetText(BUTTON_Handle hObj, char * pBuffer, int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
pBuffer	Pointer to buffer.
MaxLen	Size of buffer.

BUTTON_GetTextColor()**Description**

Returns the text color of the given BUTTON widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_GetTextColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Index	Index for color (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_CI_DISABLED	Color for disabled state.
BUTTON_CI_PRESSED	Color for pressed state.
BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED	Color for unpressed state.

Return value

Text color of the given BUTTON widget.

BUTTON_IsPressed()

Description

Returns if the BUTTON is pressed or not.

Prototype

```
unsigned BUTTON_IsPressed(BUTTON_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

Return value

1 if the button is pressed, 0 if not.

BUTTON_SetBitmap()

Description

Sets the bitmap(s) to be used when displaying a specified button.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBitmap(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                      const GUI_BITMAP* pBitmap);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of button.
Index	Index for bitmap (see table below).
pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap structure.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_BI_DISABLED	Bitmap for disabled state.
BUTTON_BI_PRESSED	Bitmap for pressed state.
BUTTON_BI_UNPRESSED	Bitmap for unpressed state.

Additional information

If only a bitmap for the unpressed state is set the button will show it also when it is pressed or disabled.

BUTTON_SetBitmapEx()

Description

Sets the bitmap(s) to be used when displaying a specified button.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                        const GUI_BITMAP* pBitmap, int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of button.
Index	Index for bitmap (see BUTTON_SetBitmap()).

Parameter	Meaning
pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap structure.
x	X-position for the bitmap relative to the button.
y	Y-position for the bitmap relative to the button.

Additional information

If only a bitmap for the unpressed state is set the button will show it also when it is pressed or disabled.

BUTTON_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the button background color.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBkColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                      GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of button.
Index	Index for color (see table below).
Color	Background color to be set.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_CI_DISABLED	Sets the color to be used when button is disabled.
BUTTON_CI_PRESSED	Sets the color to be used when button is pressed.
BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED	Sets the color to be used when button is unpressed.

BUTTON_SetBMP()

Description

Sets the bitmap(s) to be used when displaying a specified button.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBMP(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                   const void * pBitmap);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Index	Index for bitmap (see table below).
pBitmap	Pointer to bitmap file data

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_BI_DISABLED	Sets the bitmap to be used when button is disabled.
BUTTON_BI_PRESSED	Sets the bitmap to be used when button is pressed.
BUTTON_BI_UNPRESSED	Sets the bitmap to be used when button is unpressed.

Additional information

If only a bitmap for the unpressed state is set the button will show it also when it is pressed or disabled.

For additional information's regarding bitmap files please take a look at chapter 6, "BMP File Support".

BUTTON_SetBMPE()

Description

Sets the bitmap(s) to be used when displaying a specified button.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetBMPE(BUTTON_Handle hObj,
                     unsigned int Index,
                     const void * pBitmap,
                     int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Index	Index for bitmap (see BUTTON_SetBitmap()).
pBitmap	Pointer to bitmap file data
x	X-position for the bitmap relative to the button.
y	Y-position for the bitmap relative to the button.

Additional information

If only a bitmap for the unpressed state is set the button will show it also when it is pressed or disabled.

For additional informations regarding bitmap files please take a look at chapter 6, "BMP File Support".

BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used by new BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used.
Index	Index for color (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_CI_DISABLED	Color for disabled state.
BUTTON_CI_PRESSED	Color for pressed state.
BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED	Color for unpressed state.

BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor()

Description

Sets the default focus rectangle color for new BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Default color to be used for new buttons.

Return value

Previous default focus rectangle color.

Additional information

For more information please refer to the function `BUTTON_SetFocusColor()`.

BUTTON_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets a pointer to a GUI_FONT structure used to display the text of new BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to GUI_FONT structure to be used.

BUTTON_SetDefault TextAlign()

Description

Sets the default text alignment used to display the text of new BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetDefault TextAlign(int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Align	Text alignment to be used. For details refer to <code>GUI_SetTextAlign()</code>

BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Seturns the default text color used to display the text of new BUTTON widgets.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Default text color to be used.
Index	Index for color (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Index	
BUTTON_CI_DISABLED	Color for disabled state.
BUTTON_CI_PRESSED	Color for pressed state.
BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED	Color for unpressed state.

BUTTON_SetFocusColor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle of the BUTTON widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR BUTTON_SetFocusColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Color	Color to be used for the focus rectangle.

Return value

Previous color of the focus rectangle.

Additional information

The focus rectangle is only visible if the widget has the input focus.

BUTTON_SetFocussable()

Description

Sets the ability to receive the input focus.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetFocussable(BUTTON_Handle hObj, int State);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWin	Window handle.
State	see table below

Permitted values for parameter <code>State</code>	
1	Button can receive the input focus
0	Button can't receive the input focus

BUTTON_SetFont()

Description

Sets the button font.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetFont(BUTTON_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT* pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of button.
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the font.

Additional information

If no font is selected, `BUTTON_FONT_DEF` will be used.

BUTTON_SetPressed()

Description

Sets the state of the button to pressed or unpressed.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetPressed(BUTTON_Handle hObj, int State);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of button.
<code>State</code>	State, 1 for pressed, 0 for unpressed

BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap()

Description

Sets the streamed bitmap(s) to be used when displaying a specified button object.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                             const GUI_BITMAP_STREAM* pBitmap);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of button.
<code>Index</code>	Index for bitmap (see <code>BUTTON_SetBitmap()</code>).
<code>pBitmap</code>	Pointer to a bitmap stream.

Additional information

To be able to use this function you must include the following line in `LCDConf.h`:

```
#define BUTTON_SUPPORT_STREAMED_BITMAP 1
```

For details about streamed bitmaps, please see `GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap()`.

BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmapEx()

Description

Sets the streamed bitmap(s) to be used when displaying a specified button object.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmapEx(BUTTON_Handle hObj,
                                unsigned int Index,
                                const GUI_BITMAP_STREAM * pBitmap,
                                int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of button.
Index	Index for bitmap (see BUTTON_SetBitmap()).
pBitmap	Pointer to a bitmap stream.
x	X-position for the bitmap relative to the button.
y	Y-position for the bitmap relative to the button.

Additional information

To be able to use this function you must include the following line in LCDConf.h:

```
#define BUTTON_SUPPORT_STREAMED_BITMAP 1
```

For details about streamed bitmaps, please see GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap().

BUTTON_SetText()

Description

Sets the text to be displayed on the button.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetText(BUTTON_Handle hObj, const char* s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of button.
s	Text to display.

BUTTON_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the alignment of the button text.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetTextAlign(BUTTON_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of button.
Align	Text alignment to be set (see GUI_SetTextAlign())

Additional information

The default value of the text alignment is GUI_TA_HCENTER | GUI_TA_VCENTER.

BUTTON_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the button text color.

Prototype

```
void BUTTON_SetTextColor(BUTTON_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                        GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of button.
Index	Index for text color (see BUTTON_SetBkColor()).
Color	Text color to be set.

16.4.5 Examples

Using the BUTTON widget

The following example demonstrates how to use two bitmaps to create a simple button. It is available as `WIDGET_SimpleButton.c` in the samples shipped with μC/GUI:

```
*****
*           Micrium Inc. *
*           Empowering embedded systems *
*
*           μC/GUI sample code *
*
*****
***** uC/GUI - Graphical user interface for embedded applications *****
uC/GUI is protected by international copyright laws. Knowledge of the
source code may not be used to write a similar product. This file may
only be used in accordance with a license and should not be re-
distributed in any way. We appreciate your understanding and fairness.
-----
File      : WIDGET_SimpleButton.c
Purpose   : Example demonstrating the use of a BUTTON widget
-----
*/
#include "GUI.h"
#include "BUTTON.h"

*****
*
*     static code
*
*****
*/
static void _DemoButton(void) {
    BUTTON_Handle hButton;
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Click on button...", 160, 90);
    /* Create the button*/
    hButton = BUTTON_Create(110, 110, 100, 40, GUI_ID_OK, WM_CF_SHOW);
    /* Set the button text */
    BUTTON_SetText(hButton, "Click me...");
    /* Let window manager handle the button */
}
```

```

while (GUI_WaitKey() != GUI_ID_OK);
/* Delete the button*/
BUTTON_Delete(hButton);
GUI_ClearRect(0, 50, 319, 239);
GUI_Delay(1000);
}

*****
*
*      MainTask
*
*      Demonstrates the use of a simple button
*
*****
*/



void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("WIDGET_SimpleButton - Sample", 160, 5);
    while (1) {
        _DemoButton();
    }
}

```

Screen shot of above example



Advanced use of the BUTTON widget

The following example illustrates how to create a button which displays a picture of a telephone. When pressed, the picture changes to show the receiver lifted. The example is also available in the samples as `WIDGET_PhoneButton.c`:

```

*****
*                               Micrium Inc.                                *
*                           Empowering embedded systems                  *
*                                                               *                                *
*                           µC/GUI sample code                         *
*                                                               *                                *
*****



***** uC/GUI - Graphical user interface for embedded applications ****
uC/GUI is protected by international copyright laws. Knowledge of the
source code may not be used to write a similar product. This file may
only be used in accordance with a license and should not be re-
distributed in any way. We appreciate your understanding and fairness.
-----
File       : WIDGET_PhoneButton.c
Purpose   : Example demonstrating the use of a BUTTON widget
-----
*/



#include "GUI.h"
#include "BUTTON.h"

*****
*
```

```

*           static variables
*
*****static const GUI_COLOR Colors[] = { 0x000000, 0xFFFF };
*/
*           Bitmap data, 2 phone logos
*/
static const GUI_LOGPALETTE Palette = { 2, 1, Colors };

static const unsigned char acPhone0[] = {
    _____, _____, _____, _____,
    _____, _____, _____, _____,
    _____, _____, _____, _____,
    _____, _____, _____, _____,
    _____, _____, _____, _____,
    _____, _____, _____, _____,
    _____, _____, _____, _____,
    _____, _____, _____, _____,
    _____, _____, _____, _____,
    XXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXX____,
    XXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX__,
    XXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXX__,
    XXXXXXX, X_____X, _____X, XXXXXXXX,
    XXXXXX, X__XX, XX_X, XXXXXXXX,
    XXXXXX, X__XX, XX_X, XXXXXXXX,
    XXXXXX, X__XX, XX_X, XXXXXXXX,
    _____, XX, XX, _____,
    _X, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, X____,
    _XX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XX__,
    XXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXX____,
    XXXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXX____,
    XXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX__,
    XXXXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXXXX__,
    XXXXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXXXX__,
    XXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX__,
    XXXXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXXXX__,
    XXXXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXXXX__,
    XXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX__,
    XXXXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXXXX__
};

static const unsigned char acPhone1[] = {
    _XX, X_____, _____, _____,
    XXXX, XXXXX, _____, _____,
    XXXX, XXXXXX, _____, _____,
    XXXXX, XXXXXXX, X_____, _____,
    XXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXX, _____,
    XXX, XXXX_X, XXXXX, _____,
    _X, XXXX_X, XXXXXXXX, _____,
    _XX, _____, XXXXX, X_____,
    _____, _____, XXX, XXXXX__,
    _____, _____, X, XXXXXX__,
    _____, _____, _____, XXXXXXXX__,
    _____, _____, _____, X, XXXXXXXX,
    _____, XX, XX_X, XXXXXXXX,
    _XX, XX, XX, _____, XXXXXXXX,
    _XX, XX, XX, _____, XXXXX__,
    _XX, XX, XX, _____, XX__,
    _X, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, X_____,
    _XX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XX_____,
    XXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXX_____,
    XXXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXX_____,
    XXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX__,
    XXXXX, XXXX_X, X_XXX, XXXXX__
};

```

```

____XXXXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXXXX____,
____XXXXX, XXXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXXX, XXXXX____,
____XXXXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXXXX____,
____XXXXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXXXX____,
____XXXXX, XXXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXXX, XXXXX____,
____XXXXX, XXXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXXX, XXXXX____
};

static const unsigned char acPhone2[] = {
_____, _____, _____, _____, _____,
_____, _____, _____, X, XX____,
_____, _____, _____, XXXXX, XXXX____,
_____, _____, _____, XXXXXXXX, XXXX____,
_____, _____, X, XXXXXXXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXX, XXXXXXXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXX_XXX, XXX____,
_____, XXXXXX, X__XXXX, X____,
_____, X, XXXXXX, __XX, _____,
_____, XXX, XXXXX, _____, _____,
_____, XXXXX, XXX____, _____, _____,
_____, XXXXXX, X____, _____, _____,
_____, XXXXXXX, _____, _____, _____,
_____, XXXXXXX, _____, _____, _____,
XXXXXXX, X____, _____, _____,
XXXXXXX, X__XX, __XX, _____,
XXXXXX_, __XX, __XX, _____,
_XXXX_, __XX, __XX, _____,
__XX, __XX, __XX, _____,
_____, X, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, X____,
_____, XX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XX____,
_____, XXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXX____,
_____, XXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXX_X_, _X__XXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX____,
_____, XXXXX, XXXXXX, XXXXXXXX, XXXXX____
};

static const GUI_BITMAP bm_1bpp_0 = { 32, 31, 4, 1, acPhone0, &Palette};
static const GUI_BITMAP bm_1bpp_1 = { 32, 31, 4, 1, acPhone1, &Palette};
static const GUI_BITMAP bm_1bpp_2 = { 32, 31, 4, 1, acPhone2, &Palette};

//*****************************************************************************
*
*      static code
*
*****
*/
//*****************************************************************************
*
*      _Wait
*/
static int _Wait(int Delay) {
    int EndTime, r = 1;
    EndTime = GUI_GetTime() + Delay;
    while (GUI_GetTime() < EndTime) {
        GUI_Exec();
        if (GUI_GetKey() == GUI_ID_OK) {
            r = 0;
            break;
        }
    }
    return r;
}

*****
*
*      _DemoButton
*/

```

```

static void _DemoButton(void) {
    BUTTON_Handle hButton;
    int Stat = 0;
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Click on phone button...", 160, 80);
    GUI_Delay(500);
    /* Create the button */
    hButton = BUTTON_Create(142, 100, 36, 40, GUI_ID_OK, WM_CF_SHOW);
    /* Modify the button attributes */
    BUTTON_SetBkColor(hButton, 1, GUI_RED);
    /* Loop until button is pressed */
    while (1) {
        BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 0, &bm_1bpp_1, 2, 4);
        BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 1, &bm_1bpp_1, 2, 4);
        if (!_Wait(50)) break;
        BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 0, &bm_1bpp_0, 2, 4);
        BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 1, &bm_1bpp_0, 2, 4);
        if (!_Wait(45)) break;
        BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 0, &bm_1bpp_2, 2, 4);
        BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 1, &bm_1bpp_2, 2, 4);
        if (!_Wait(50)) break;
        BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 0, &bm_1bpp_0, 2, 4);
        BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 1, &bm_1bpp_0, 2, 4);
        if (!_Wait(45)) break;
    }
    BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 0, &bm_1bpp_1, 2, 4);
    BUTTON_SetBitmapEx(hButton, 1, &bm_1bpp_1, 2, 4);
    GUI_ClearRect(0, 80, 319, 120);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("You have answered the telephone", 160, 145);
    GUI_Delay(2000);
    /* Delete button object */
    BUTTON_Delete(hButton);
    GUI_ClearRect(0, 50, 319, 239);
    GUI_Delay(400);
}

/*****************
*      MainTask
*      Demonstrates the use of a BUTTON widget
*/
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("WIDGET_PhoneButton - Sample", 160, 5);
    while (1) {
        _DemoButton();
    }
}

```

Screen shot of above example



16.5 CHECKBOX: Check box widget

One of the most familiar widgets for selecting various choices is the check box. A check box may be checked or unchecked by the user, and any number of boxes may be checked at one time. If using a keyboard interface the state of a focused check box can be toggled by the <SPACE> key. A box will appear gray if it is disabled, as seen in the table below where each of the possible check box appearances are illustrated:

	Unchecked	Checked	Third state
Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Item A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item B	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item C
Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/> Item D	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item E	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item F

All CHECKBOX-related routines are located in the file(s) CHECKBOX*.c, CHECKBOX.h. All identifiers are prefixed CHECKBOX.

16.5.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT	0xC0C0C0	Default background color.
N	CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT	0x808080	Background color of the default image, disabled state.
N	CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Background color of the default image, enabled state.
N	CHECKBOX_FGCCOLOR0_DEFAULT	0x101010	Foreground color of the default image, disabled state.
N	CHECKBOX_FGCCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Foreground color of the default image, enabled state.
N	CHECKBOX_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Color used to render the focus rectangle.
S	CHECKBOX_FONT_DEFAULT	&GUI_Font13_1	Default font used to display the optional checkbox text.
S	CHECKBOX_IMAGE0_DEFAULT	(see table above)	Pointer to bitmap used to draw the widget if checked, disabled state.
S	CHECKBOX_IMAGE1_DEFAULT	(see table above)	Pointer to bitmap used to draw the widget if checked, enabled state.
N	CHECKBOX_SPACING_DEFAULT	4	Spacing used to display the optional checkbox text beside the box.
N	CHECKBOX_TEXTALIGN_DEFAULT	GUI_TA_LEFT GUI_TA_VCENTER	Default alignment of the optional checkbox text.
N	CHECKBOX_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Default color used to display the optional checkbox text.

16.5.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a check box widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	Check box has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	Check box has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT	Check box has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the box without releasing.
WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED	Status of check box has been changed.

16.5.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_SPACE	Toggles the checked state of the widget.

16.5.4 CHECKBOX API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI CHECKBOX-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
CHECKBOX_Check()	Set the check box state to checked. (Obsolete)
CHECKBOX_Create()	Create the check box. (Obsolete)
CHECKBOX_CreateEx()	Creates the check box.
CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect()	Create the check box from resource table entry.
CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor()	Returns the default background color of new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont()	Returns the default font used to display the text of new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_GetDefaultSpacing()	Returns the default spacing between the box and the text of new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_GetDefault TextAlign()	Returns the default alignment used to display the check box text of new check box widgets..
CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextColor()	Returns the default text color used to display the text of new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_GetState()	Returns the current state of the check box.
CHECKBOX_GetText()	Returns the text of the check box.
CHECKBOX_IsChecked()	Return the current state (checked or not checked) of the check box.
CHECKBOX_SetBkColor()	Sets the background color of new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor()	Sets the background color of the check box widget.
CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor()	Sets the default background color of new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor()	Sets the default focus rectangle color for new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont()	Sets the default font used to display the text of new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage()	Sets the default image to be shown when a new box has been checked.
CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing()	Sets the default spacing between the box and the text of new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_SetDefault TextAlign()	Sets the default alignment used to display the check box text.
CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor()	Sets the default text color used to display the text of new check box widgets.
CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor()	Sets the color of the focus rectangle.
CHECKBOX_SetImage()	Sets the image to be shown when box has been checked.
CHECKBOX_SetNumStates()	Sets the number of possible states of the check box (2 or 3).
CHECKBOX_SetSpacing()	Sets the spacing between the box and the check box text.
CHECKBOX_SetState()	Sets the state of the check box.
CHECKBOX_SetText()	Sets the text of the check box.
CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign()	Sets the alignment used to display the check box text.
CHECKBOX_SetTextColor()	Sets the color used to display the text of the check box.
CHECKBOX_Uncheck()	Set the check box state to unchecked (default).

CHECKBOX_Check()

Before	After
<input type="checkbox"/> Item 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item 1

Description

Sets a specified check box to a checked state.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_Check(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of check box.

CHECKBOX_Create()

(Obsolete, `CHECKBOX_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a CHECKBOX widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
CHECKBOX_Handle CHECKBOX_Create(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                 WM_HWIN hParent, int Id, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the check box (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the check box (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the check box (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the check box (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window.
Id	ID to be returned.
Flags	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).

Return value

Handle for the created CHECKBOX widget; 0 if the routine fails.

Additional information

If the parameters `xsize` or `ysize` are 0 the size of the bitmap will be used as default size of the check box.

CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The elements `Flags` and `Para` of the resource passed as parameter are not used.

CHECKBOX_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a CHECKBOX widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
CHECKBOX_Handle CHECKBOX_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                  WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                  int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new CHECKBOX widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	Not used yet, reserved for future use.
Id	Window ID of the widget.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

Additional information

If the parameters xsize or ysize are 0 the size of the default check mark bitmap (11 x 11 pixels) plus the effect size will be used as default size of the check box. If the desired size of the check box is different to the default size it can be usefull to set a user defined check mark image using the function CHECKBOX_SetImage().

If check box text should be shown with the widget the size should be large enough to show the box + text + spacing between box and text.

CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor (void);
```

Return value

Default background color of new check box widgets.

Additional information

The background color returned by this function is not the background color shown in the box, but the background color of the rest of the widget.

For more information please refer to CHECKBOX_SetBkColor().

CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to a GUI_FONT structure used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to a GUI_FONT structure used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Additional information

For more information please refer to CHECKBOX_SetFont().

CHECKBOX_GetDefaultSpacing()

Description

Returns the default spacing between box and text used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_GetDefaultSpacing(void);
```

Return value

Default spacing between box and text used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Additional information

For more information please refer to CHECKBOX_SetSpacing().

CHECKBOX_GetDefault TextAlign()

Description

Returns the default alignment used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_GetDefaultAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default alignment used to display the check box text.

Additional information

For more information please refer to CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign().

CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextColor(void);
```

Return value

Default text color used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Additional information

For more information please refer to `CHECKBOX_SetTextColor()`.

CHECKBOX_GetState()**Description**

Returns the current state of the given check box.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_GetState(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.

Return value

Current state of the given check box.

Additional information

Per default a check box can have 2 states, checked (1) and unchecked (0). With the function `CHECKBOX_SetNumStates()` the number of possible states can be increased to 3. If the check box is in the third state the function returns 2.

For more information please refer to `CHECKBOX_SetNumStates()`.

CHECKBOX_GetText()**Description**

Returns the optional text of the given check box.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_GetText(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, char * pBuffer, int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>pBuffer</code>	Pointer to buffer to which the text will be copied.
<code>MaxLen</code>	Buffer size in bytes.

Return value

Length of the text copied into the buffer.

Additional information

If the check box contains no text the function returns 0 and the buffer remains unchanged.

CHECKBOX_IsChecked()

Description

Returns the current state (checked or not checked) of a specified CHECKBOX widget.

Prototype

```
int CHECKBOX_IsChecked(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of check box.

Return value

0: not checked

1: checked

CHECKBOX_SetBkColor()



Description

Sets the background color used to display the background of the check box.

Prototype

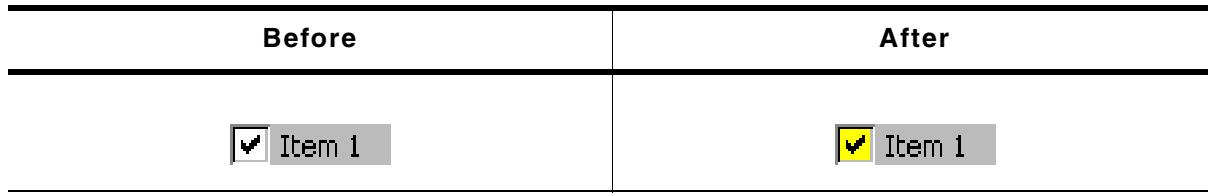
```
void CHECKBOX_SetBkColor(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Color	Color to be used to draw the background or GUI_INVALID_COLOR to work in transparent mode.

Additional information

If the check box should work in transparent mode GUI_INVALID_COLOR should be used.

CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor()



Description

Sets the background color of the box area.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj,
                                  GUI_COLOR Color, int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Color	Color to be used.
Index	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Index	
CHECKBOX_CI_DISABLED	Background color used for disabled state.
CHECKBOX_CI_ENABLED	Background color used for enabled state.

Return value

Previous background color.

Additional information

The color set by this function will only be visible, if the images used by the widget are transparent or no image is used. The default images of this widget are transparent.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used, GUI_INVALID_COLOR for transparency.

Additional information

For more information please refer to `CHECKBOX_SetBkColor()`.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor()

Description

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used.

Return value

Previous color used to render the focus rectangle.

Additional information

For more information please refer to `CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor()`.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets a pointer to a `GUI_FONT` structure used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to <code>GUI_FONT</code> structure to be used.

Additional information

For more information please refer to `CHECKBOX_SetFont()`.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage()

Description

Sets the images used for new check boxes to be shown if they has been checked.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage(const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
                             unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pBitmap</code>	Pointer to bitmap.
<code>Index</code>	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code>	
<code>CHECKBOX_BI_INACTIV_UNCHECKED</code>	Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is unchecked and disabled.
<code>CHECKBOX_BI_ACTIV_UNCHECKED</code>	Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is unchecked and enabled.
<code>CHECKBOX_BI_INACTIV_CHECKED</code>	Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is checked and disabled.
<code>CHECKBOX_BI_ACTIV_CHECKED</code>	Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is checked and enabled.
<code>CHECKBOX_BI_INACTIV_3STATE</code>	Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is in the third state and disabled.
<code>CHECKBOX_BI_ACTIV_3STATE</code>	Sets the bitmap displayed when the check box is in the third state and enabled.

Additional information

The image has to fill the complete inner area of the check box.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing()

Description

Sets the default spacing between box and text used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing(int Spacing);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Spacing	Number of pixels between box and text used for new check box widgets.

Additional information

For more information please refer to `CHECKBOX_SetSpacing()`.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign()

Description

Sets the default alignment used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefault TextAlign(int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Align	Text alignment used to display the text of new check box widgets.

Additional information

For more information please refer to `CHECKBOX_Set.TextAlign()`.

CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used to display the check box text of new check box widgets.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used.

Additional information

For more information please refer to `CHECKBOX_SetTextColor()`.

CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

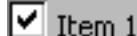
Return value

Previous color of the focus rectangle.

Additional information

The focus rectangle is only visible if the widget has the input focus.

CHECKBOX_SetImage()

Before	After
	
	

Description

Sets the images to be shown if the check box has been checked.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetImage(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj,
                      const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
                      unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of check box.
pBitmap	Pointer to bitmap.
Index	(see table shown under CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage)

Additional information

The image has to fill the complete inner area of the check box. If using this function make sure, the size of the check box used to create the widget is large enough to show the bitmap and (optional) the text.

CHECKBOX_SetNumStates()

Description

This function sets the number of possible states of the given check box.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetNumStates(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned NumStates);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
NumStates	Number of possible states of the given check box. Currently supported are 2 or 3 states.

Additional information

Per default a check box supports 2 states: checked (1) and unchecked (0). If the check box should support a third state the number of possible states can be increased to 3.

CHECKBOX_SetSpacing()

Before	After
 Item 1	 Item 1

Description

Sets the number of pixels between box and text of a given check box widget.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetSpacing(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Spacing);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Spacing	Number of pixels between box and text to be used.

Additional information

The default spacing is 4 pixels. The function `CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing()` or the configuration macro `CHECKBOX_SPACING_DEFAULT` can be used to set the default value.

CHECKBOX_SetState()

Before	After
<input type="checkbox"/> Item 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item 1

Description

Sets the new state of the given check box widget.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetState(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned State);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
State	Zero based number of new state.

Permitted values for parameter State	
0	Unchecked
1	Checked
2	Third state

Additional information

The passed state should not be greater than the number of possible states set with `CHECKBOX_SetNumStates()` minus 1.

CHECKBOX_SetText()

Before	After
<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> Item 1

Description

Sets the optional text shown beside the box.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetText(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, const char * pText);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
pText	Pointer to text to be shown beside the box.

Additional information

Clicking on the text beside the box has the same effect as clicking into the box.

CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign()

Before	After
Item 1	Item 1

Description

Sets the alignment used to display the check box text beside the box.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetTextAlign(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Align	Desired text alignment.

Additional information

Per default the text alignment is `GUI_TA_LEFT | GUI_TA_VCENTER`. The function `CHECKBOX_SetDefault TextAlign()` and the configuration macro `CHECKBOX_TEXTALIGN_DEFAULT` can be used to set a user defined default value.

CHECKBOX_SetTextColor()

Before	After
Item 1	Item 1

Description

Sets the color used to display the check box text.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_SetTextColor(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Color	Desired color of check box text.

Additional information

Per default the text color of a check box text is `GUI_BLACK`. The function `CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor()` and the configuration macro `CHECKBOX_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT` can be used to set a user defined default color.

CHECKBOX_Uncheck()

Before	After
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Item 1	<input type="checkbox"/> Item 1

Description

Sets a specified check box to an unchecked state.

Prototype

```
void CHECKBOX_Uncheck(CHECKBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of check box.

Additional information

This is the default setting for check boxes.

16.6 DROPODOWN: Dropdown widget

DROPODOWN widgets are used to select one element of a list with several columns. It shows the currently selected item in non open state. If the user opens a DROPODOWN widget a LISTBOX appears to select a new item.



16.6.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	DROPODOWN_ALIGN_DEFAULT	GUI_TA_LEFT	Text alignment used to display the drop-down text in closed state.
S	DROPODOWN_FONT_DEFAULT	&GUI_Font13_1	Default font
N	DROPODOWN_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Background color, unselected state.
N	DROPODOWN_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_GRAY	Background color, selected state without focus.
N	DROPODOWN_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT	GUI_BLUE	Background color, selected state with focus.
N	DROPODOWN_KEY_EXPAND	GUI_KEY_SPACE	Key which can be used to expand the dropdown list.
N	DROPODOWN_KEY_SELECT	GUI_KEY_ENTER	Key which can be used to select an item from the open dropdown list.
N	DROPODOWN_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Text color, unselected state.
N	DROPODOWN_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Text color, selected state without focus.
N	DROPODOWN_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Enable 3D support.

16.6.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	Widget has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	Widget has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT	Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the widget without releasing.
WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED	The scroll position of the optional scrollbar of the opened dropdown widget has been changed.
WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED	The selection of the dropdown list has been changes.

16.6.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_ENTER	Selects an item from the open dropdown list and closes the list.
GUI_KEY_SPACE	Opens the dropdown list.

16.6.4 DROPODOWN API

The table below lists the available μC/GUI DROPODOWN-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
DROPODOWN_AddString()	Adds an element to the DROPODOWN list.
DROPODOWN_Collapse()	Closes the dropdown list.
DROPODOWN_Create()	Creates a DROPODOWN widget. (Obsolete)
DROPODOWN_CreateEx()	Creates a DROPODOWN widget.
DROPODOWN_CreateIndirect()	Creates a DROPODOWN widget from a resource table entry.
DROPODOWN_DecSel()	Decrements selection.
DROPOWN_DeleteItem()	Deletes an item of the DROPODOWN list.
DROPODOWN_Expand()	Opens the dropdown list.
DROPODOWN_GetDefaultFont()	Returns the default font used to create DROPODOWN widgets.
DROPODOWN_GetNumItems()	Returns the number of items in the dropdown list.
DROPODOWN_GetSel()	Returns the number of the currently selected element.
DROPODOWN_IncSel()	Increments selection.
DROPODOWN_InsertString()	Inserts a string to the dropdown list.
DROPODOWN_SetAutoScroll()	Enables the automatic use of a scrollbar in the dropdown list.
DROPODOWN_SetBkColor()	Sets the background color.
DROPODOWN_SetColor()	Sets the color of the arrow and the button of the widget.
DROPODOWN_SetDefaultColor()	Sets the default color of the arrow and the button for new DROPODOWN widgets.
DROPODOWN_SetDefaultFont()	Sets the default font used to create DROPODOWN widgets.
DROPODOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor()	Sets the default colors of the optional scrollbar in the dropdown list.
DROPODOWN_SetFont()	Sets the font of the given DROPODOWN widget
DROPODOWN_SetItemSpacing()	Sets an additional spacing between the items of the dropdown list.
DROPODOWN_SetScrollbarColor()	Sets the colors of the scrollbar in the dropdown list.
DROPODOWN_SetSel()	Sets the current selection
DROPODOWN_SetTextAlign()	Sets the text alignment used to display the drop-down text in closed state.
DROPODOWN_SetTextColor()	Sets the text color of the given DROPODOWN widget.
DROPODOWN_SetTextHeight()	Sets the height of the rectangle used to display the dropdown text in closed state.

DROPDOWN_AddString()

Description

Adds a new element to the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPOWN_AddString(DROPOWN_Handle hObj, const char* s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
s	Pointer to string to be added

DROPDOWN_Collapse()

Description

Closes the dropdown list of the DROPOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPOWN_Collapse(DROPOWN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

DROPDOWN_Create()

(Obsolete, DROPOWN_CreateEx should be used instead)

Description

Creates a DROPOWN widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
DROPOWN_Handle DROPOWN_Create(WM_HWIN hWinParent,
                                 int x0, int y0,
                                 int xsize, int ysize,
                                 int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hWinParent	Handle of parent window
x0	Leftmost pixel of the DROPOWN widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the DROPOWN widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the DROPOWN widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the DROPOWN widget in open state (in pixels).
Flags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 12: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).

Return value

Handle for the created DROPOWN widget, 0 on failure.

Additional information

The ysize of the widget in closed state depends on the font used to create the widget. You can not set the ysize of a closed DROPODOWN widget.

DROPODOWN_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a DROPODOWN widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
DROPODOWN_Handle DROPODOWN_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                      WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                      int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget in open state (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new DROPODOWN widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	(see table below)
Id	Window ID of the widget.

Permitted values for parameter ExFlags	
0	No function.
DROPODOWN_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR	Enable automatic use of a scrollbar. For details please refer to DROPODOWN_SetAutoScroll
DROPODOWN_CF_UP	Creates a DROPODOWN widget which opens the dropdown list above the widget. This flag is usefull if the space below the widget is not sufficient for the dropdown list.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

DROPODOWN_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter.

DROPODOWN_DecSel()

Description

Decrement the selection, moves the selection of a specified DROPODOWN widget up by one item.

Prototype

```
void DROPOWN_DecSel(DROPOWN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

DROPOWN_DeleteItem()**Description**

Deletes the given item of the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPOWN_DeleteItem(DROPOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Index	Zero based index of the item to be deleted.

Additional information

If the index is greater than the number of items < 1 the function returns immediately.

DROPOWN_Expand()**Description**

Opens the dropdown list of the widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPOWN_Expand(DROPOWN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

Additional information

The dropdown list remains open until an element has been selected or the focus has been lost.

DROPOWN_GetNumItems()**Description**

Returns the number of items in the given DROPOWN widget.

Prototype

```
int DROPOWN_GetNumItems(DROPOWN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Return value

number of items in the given DROPODOWN widget

DROPODOWN_GetSel()**Description**

Returns the number of the currently selected item in a specified DROPODOWN widget.

Prototype

```
int DROPODOWN_GetSel (DROPODOWN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Return value

Number of the currently selected item.

DROPODOWN_IncSel()**Description**

Increment the selection, moves the selection of a specified DROPODOWN widget down by one item.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_IncSel (DROPODOWN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

DROPODOWN_InsertString()**Description**

Inserts a string to the dropdown list at the given position.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_InsertString (DROPODOWN_Handle hObj,
                             const char* s,
                             unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
s	Pointer to the string to be inserted.
Index	Zero based index of the position.

Additional information

If the given index is greater than the number of items the string will be appended to the end of the dropdown list.

DROPDOWN_SetAutoScroll()

Description

Enables the automatic use of a vertical scrollbar in the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPOWN_SetAutoScroll(DROPOWN_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
OnOff	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disable automatic use of a scrollbar.
1	Enable automatic use of a scrollbar.

Additional information

If enabled the dropdown list checks if all elements fits into the listbox. If not a vertical scrollbar will be added.

DROPDOWN_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the given DROPOWN widget.

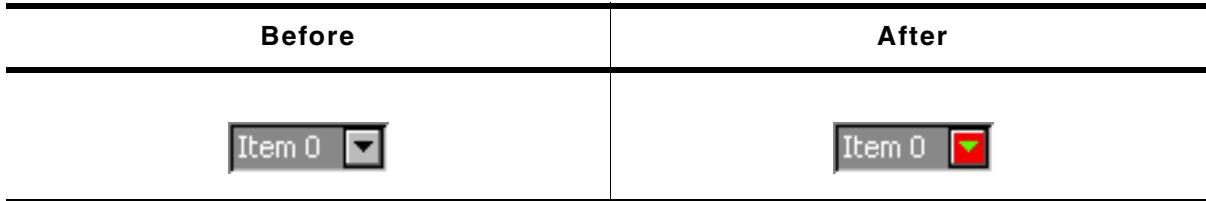
Prototype

```
void DROPOWN_SetBkColor(DROPOWN_Handle hObj,
                         unsigned int Index,
                         GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index for background color (see table below).
Color	Color to be set.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
DROPOWN_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
DROPOWN_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
DROPOWN_CI_SELF_FOCUS	Selected element, with focus.

DROPDOWN_SetColor()



Description

Sets the color of the button or the arrow of the given DROPODOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_SetColor(DROPODOWN_Handle hObj,
                        unsigned int Index,
                        GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of desired item (see table below).
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
DROPODOWN_CI_ARROW	Color of small arrow within the button.
DROPODOWN_CI_BUTTON	Button color.

DROPDOWN_SetDefaultColor()

Description

Sets the default colors for the arrow and the button of new DROPODOWN widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR DROPODOWN_SetDefaultColor(int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Please refer to the function DROPODOWN_SetColor().
Color	Color to be used.

DROPDOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor()

Description

Sets the default colors used for the optional scrollbar in the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR DROPODOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor(int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Please refer to the function DROPODOWN_SetScrollbarColor().
Color	Color to be used.

DROPDOWN_SetFont()

Description

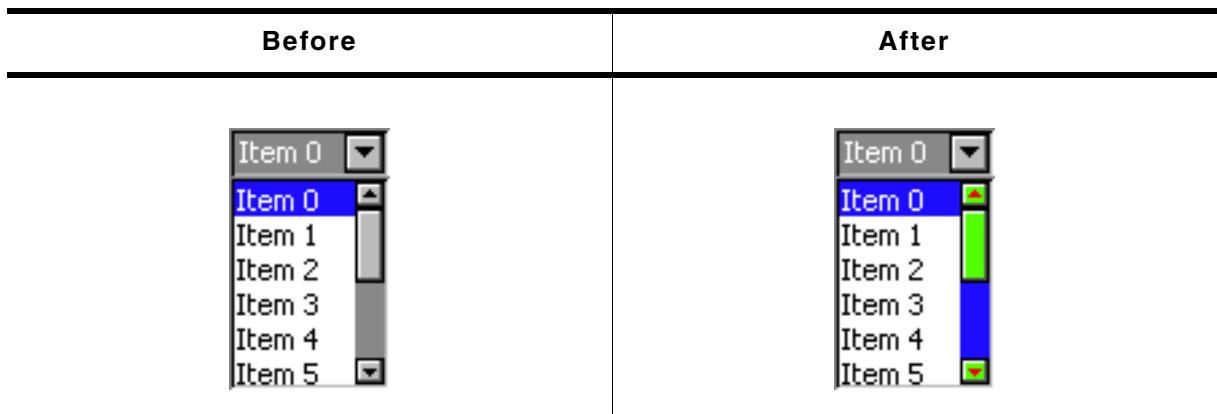
Sets the font used to display the given DROPODOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_SetFont(DROPODOWN_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT* pfont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
pFont	Pointer to the font.

DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarColor()



Description

Sets the colors of the optional scrollbar in the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_SetScrollbarColor(DROPODOWN_Handle hObj,
                                  unsigned int Index,
                                  GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of desired item (see table below).
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
SCROLLBAR_CI_THUMB	Color of thumb area.
SCROLLBAR_CI_SHAFT	Color of shaft.
SCROLLBAR_CI_ARROW	Color of arrows.

DROPDOWN_SetScrollbarWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the scrollbars used by the dropdown list of the given DROPODOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_SetScrollbarWidth(DROPODOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned Width);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code> <code>Width</code>	Handle of widget. Width of the scrollbar(s) used by the dropdown list of the given DROPODOWN widget.

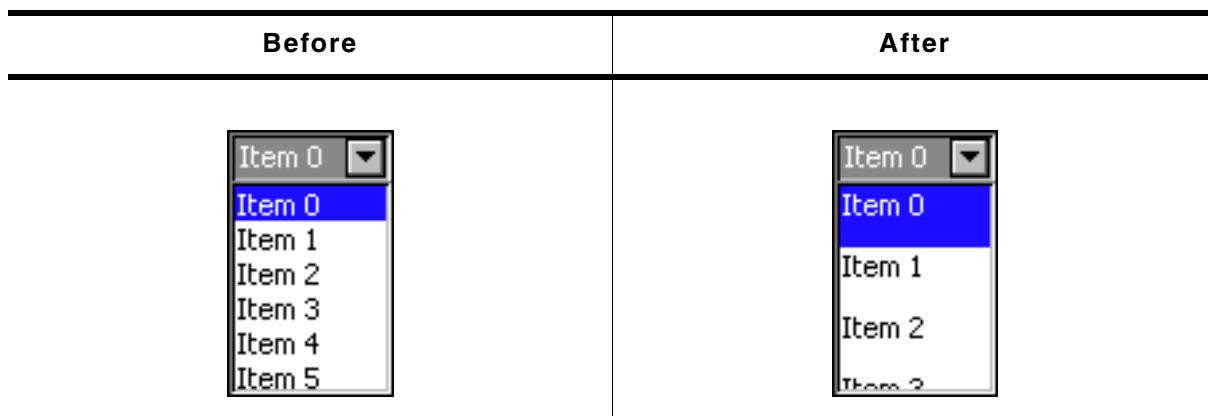
DROPODOWN_SetSel()**Description**

Sets the selected item of a specified DROPODOWN widget.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_SetSel(DROPODOWN_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code> <code>Sel</code>	Handle of widget Element to be selected.

DROPODOWN_SetItemSpacing()**Description**

Sets an additional spacing below the items of the dropdown list.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_SetItemSpacing(DROPODOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code> <code>Value</code>	Handle of widget Number of pixels used as additional space between the items of the dropdown list.

DROPDOWN_SetTextAlign()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the alignment used to display the dropdown text in closed state.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_SetTextAlign(DROPODOWN_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Align	Alignment used to display the dropdown text in closed state.

DROPDOWN_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the given DROPODOWN widget.

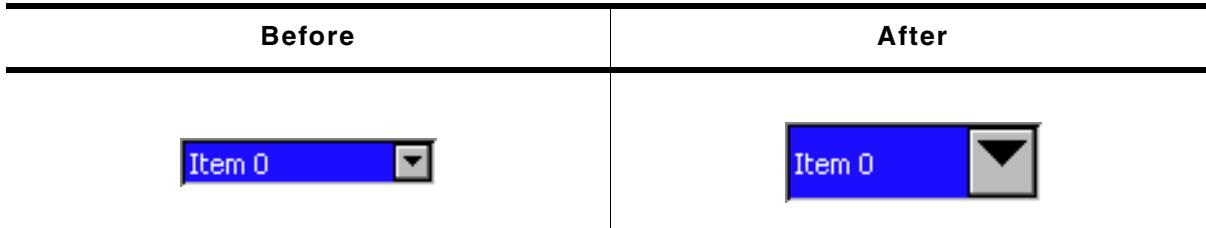
Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_SetTextColor(DROPODOWN_Handle hObj,
                            unsigned int Index,
                            GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index for background color (see table below).
Color	Color to be set.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
DROPODOWN_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
DROPODOWN_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
DROPODOWN_CI_SELFOCUS	Selected element, with focus.

DROPDOWN_SetTextHeight()



Description

Sets the height of the rectangle used to display the DROPODOWN text in closed state.

Prototype

```
void DROPODOWN_SetTextHeight(DROPODOWN_Handle hObj, unsigned TextHeight);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
TextHeight	Height of the rectangle used to display the text in closed state.

Additional Information

Per default the height of the DROPODOWN widget depends on the used font. Using this function with TextHeight > 0 means the given value should be used. TextHeight = 0 means the default behavior should be used.

16.7 EDIT: Edit widget

Edit fields are commonly used as the primary user interface for text input:

Blank edit field	Edit field with user input
	

You can also use edit fields for entering values in binary, decimal, or hexadecimal modes. A decimal-mode edit field might appear similar to those in the following table. Like a check box, an edit field will appear gray if disabled:

Edit field with user input (decimal)	Disabled edit field
	

All EDIT-related routines are located in the file(s) EDIT*.c, EDIT.h. All identifiers are prefixed EDIT.

16.7.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
S	EDIT_ALIGN_DEFAULT	GUI_TA_RIGHT GUI_TA_VCENTER	Alignment for edit field text.
N	EDIT_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT	0xc0c0c0	Background color, disabled state.
N	EDIT_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Background color, enabled state.
N	EDIT_BORDER_DEFAULT	1	Width of border, in pixels.
S	EDIT_FONT_DEFAULT	&GUI_Font13_1	Font used for edit field text.
N	EDIT_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Text color, disabled state.
N	EDIT_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Text color, enabled state.
N	EDIT_XOFF	2	Distance in X to offset text from left border of edit field.

Available alignment flags are:

GUI_TA_LEFT, GUI_TA_RIGHT, GUI_TA_HCENTER for horizontal alignment.

GUI_TA_TOP, GUI_TA_BOTTOM, GUI_TA_VCENTER for vertical alignment.

16.7.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from an edit widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	Widget has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	Widget has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT	Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the widget without releasing.
WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED	Value (content) of the edit widget has changed.

16.7.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_UP	Increases the current character. If for example the current character (the character below the cursor) is a 'A' it changes to 'B'.
GUI_KEY_DOWN	Decreases the current character. If for example the current character is a 'B' it changes to 'A'.
GUI_KEY_RIGHT	Moves the cursor one character to the right.
GUI_KEY_LEFT	Moves the cursor one character to the left.
GUI_KEY_BACKSPACE	If the widget works in text mode, the character before the cursor is deleted.
GUI_KEY_DELETE	If the widget works in text mode, the current is deleted.
GUI_KEY_INSERT	If the widget works in text mode, this key toggles the edit mode between GUI_EDIT_MODE_OVERWRITE and GUI_EDIT_MODE_INSERT. For details please refer to the function EDIT_SetInsertMode().

16.7.4 EDIT API

The table below lists the available μC/GUI EDIT-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
EDIT_AddKey()	Key input routine.
EDIT_Create()	Create the edit field. (Obsolete)
EDIT_CreateAsChild()	Create the edit field as a child window. (Obsolete)
EDIT_CreateEx()	Create the edit field.
EDIT_CreateIndirect()	Create the edit field from resource table entry.
EDIT_GetCursorCharPos()	Returns the number of the character at the cursor position.
EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos()	Returns the pixel position of the cursor.
EDIT_GetDefaultBkColor()	Returns the default background color.
EDIT_GetDefaultFont()	Returns the default font.
EDIT_GetDefaultTextAlign()	Returns the default text alignment.
EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor()	Returns the default text color.
EDIT_GetFloatValue()	Returns the current value as floating point value.
EDIT_GetNumChars()	Returns the number of characters of the given edit widget.
EDIT_GetText()	Get user input.

Routine	Explanation
<code>EDIT_GetValue()</code>	Returns the current value.
<code>EDIT_SetBinMode()</code>	Enables the binary edit mode.
<code>EDIT_SetBkColor()</code>	Sets the background color of the edit field.
<code>EDIT_SetCursorAtChar()</code>	Sets the edit widget cursor to a specified character position.
<code>EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel()</code>	Sets the edit widget cursor to a specified pixel position.
<code>EDIT_SetDecMode()</code>	Enables the decimal edit mode.
<code>EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor()</code>	Sets the default background color.
<code>EDIT_SetDefaultFont()</code>	Sets the default font used for edit fields.
<code>EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign()</code>	Sets the default text alignment for edit fields.
<code>EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor()</code>	Sets the default text color.
<code>EDIT_SetFloatMode()</code>	Enables the floating point edit mode.
<code>EDIT_SetFloatValue()</code>	Sets the floating point value if using the floating point edit mode.
<code>EDIT_SetFont()</code>	Select the font for the text.
<code>EDIT_SetHexMode()</code>	Enables the hexadecimal edit mode.
<code>EDIT_SetInsertMode()</code>	Enables or disables the insert mode.
<code>EDIT_SetMaxLen()</code>	Sets the maximum number of characters of the edit field.
<code>EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx()</code>	Sets a function which is called to add a character.
<code>EDIT_SetSel()</code>	Sets the current selection.
<code>EDIT_SetText()</code>	Sets the text.
<code>EDIT_SetTextAlign()</code>	Sets the text alignment for the edit field.
<code>EDIT_SetTextColor()</code>	Sets the color(s) for the text.
<code>EDIT_SetTextMode()</code>	Sets the edit mode of the widget back to text mode.
<code>EDIT_SetValue()</code>	Sets the current value.
<code>EDIT_SetUlongMode()</code>	Enables the unsigned long decimal edit mode.
<code>GUI>EditBin()</code>	Edits a binary value at the current cursor position.
<code>GUI>EditDec()</code>	Edits a decimal value at the current cursor position.
<code>GUI>EditHex()</code>	Edits a hexadecimal value at the current cursor position.
<code>GUI>EditString()</code>	Edits a string at the current cursor position.

EDIT_AddKey()

Description

Adds user input to a specified edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_AddKey(EDIT_Handle hObj, int Key);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of edit field.
<code>Key</code>	Character to be added.

Additional information

The specified character is added to the user input of the EDIT widget. If the last character should be erased, the key `GUI_KEY_BACKSPACE` can be used. If the maximum count of characters has been reached, another character will not be added.

EDIT_Create()

(Obsolete, `EDIT_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates an EDIT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
EDIT_Handle EDIT_Create(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                      int Id, int MaxLen, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the edit field (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the edit field (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the edit field (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the edit field (in pixels).
<code>Id</code>	ID to be returned.
<code>MaxLen</code>	Maximum count of characters.
<code>Flags</code>	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).

Return value

Handle for the created EDIT widget; 0 if the routine fails.

EDIT_CreateAsChild()

(Obsolete, `EDIT_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates an EDIT widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
EDIT_Handle EDIT_CreateAsChild(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                             WM_HWIN hParent, int Id, int Flags,
                             int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	X-position of the edit field relative to the parent window.
<code>y0</code>	Y-position of the edit field relative to the parent window.
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the edit field (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the edit field (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window.
<code>Id</code>	ID to be returned.
<code>Flags</code>	Window create flags (see <code>EDIT_Create()</code>).
<code>MaxLen</code>	Maximum count of characters.

Return value

Handle for the created EDIT widget; 0 if the routine fails.

EDIT_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a EDIT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
EDIT_Handle EDIT_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                         WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                         int ExFlags, int Id, int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new EDIT widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	Not used, reserved for future use.
Id	Window ID of the widget.
MaxLen	Maximum count of characters.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

EDIT_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The following flags may be used as the Flags element of the resource passed as parameter:

Permitted indirect creation flags ("OR" combinable)	
EDIT_CF_LEFT	Horizontal alignment: left
EDIT_CF_RIGHT	Horizontal alignment: right
EDIT_CF_HCENTER	Horizontal alignment: center
EDIT_CF_TOP	Vertical alignment: top
EDIT_CF_BOTTOM	Vertical alignment: bottom
EDIT_CF_VCENTER	Vertical alignment: center

The Para element is used as maximum length of a string to display / max. no. of digits if used in decimal, bin or hex mode.

EDIT_GetCursorCharPos()

Description

Returns the number of the character at the cursor position.

Prototype

```
int EDIT_GetCursorCharPos(EDIT_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.

Return value

Number of the character at the cursor position.

Additional Information

The widget returns the character position if it has the focus or not. This means the cursor position is also returned, if the cursor is currently not visible in the widget.

EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos()**Description**

Returns the pixel position of the cursor in window coordinates.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos(EDIT_Handle hObj, int * pxPos, int * pyPos);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
pxPos	Pointer to integer variable for the X-position in window coordinates.
pyPos	Pointer to integer variable for the Y-position in window coordinates.

Additional Information

The widget returns the pixel position if it has the focus or not. This means the cursor position is also returned, if the cursor is currently not visible in the widget.

EDIT_GetDefaultBkColor()**Description**

Returns the default background color used for EDIT widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR EDIT_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Color to be used when widget is inactive.
1	Color to be used when widget is active.

Return value

Default background color used for EDIT widgets.

EDIT_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font used for EDIT widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT* EDIT_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Default font used for EDIT widgets.

EDIT_GetDefault TextAlign()

Description

Returns the default text alignment used for EDIT widgets.

Prototype

```
int EDIT_GetDefault TextAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default text alignment used for EDIT widgets.

EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used for EDIT widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Has to be 0, reserved for future use.

Return value

Default text color used for EDIT widgets.

EDIT_GetFloatValue()

Description

Returns the current value of the edit field as floating point value.

Prototype

```
float EDIT_GetFloatValue(EDIT_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.

Return value

The current value.

Additional Information

The use of this function makes only sense if the edit field is in floating point edit mode.

EDIT_GetNumChars

Description

Returns the number of characters of the specified edit field.

Prototype

```
int EDIT_GetNumChars(EDIT_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.

Return value

Number of characters of the specified edit field.

EDIT_GetText()

Description

Retrieves the user input of a specified edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_GetText(EDIT_Handle hObj, char* sDest, int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
sDest	Pointer to buffer.
MaxLen	Size of buffer.

EDIT_GetValue()

Description

Returns the current value of the edit field. The current value is only useful if the edit field is in binary, decimal or hexadecimal mode.

Prototype

```
I32 EDIT_GetValue(EDIT_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.

Return value

The current value.

EDIT_SetBinMode()

Description

Enables the binary edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetBinMode(EDIT_Handle hObj, U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
Value	Value to be modified.
Min	Minimum value.
Max	Maximum value.

EDIT_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the edit field background color.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetBkColor(EDIT_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
Index	Index for background color (see table below).
Color	Color to be set.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
EDIT_CI_DISABLED	Disabled state.
EDIT_CI_ENABLED	Enabled state.

EDIT_SetCursorAtChar()

Description

Sets the edit widget cursor to a specified character position.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetCursorAtChar(EDIT_Handle hObj, int xPos);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
xPos	Character position to set cursor to.

Additional information

The character position works as follows:

- 0: left of the first (leftmost) character,
- 1: between the first and second characters,
- 2: between the second and third characters,
- and so on.

EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel()

Description

Sets the edit widget cursor to a specified pixel position.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel(EDIT_Handle hObj, int Pos);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
Pos	Pixel position to set cursor to.

EDIT_SetDecMode()

Description

Enables the decimal edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDecMode(EDIT_Handle hEdit, I32 Value, I32 Min, I32 Max,
                     int Shift, U8 Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
Value	Value to be modified.
Min	Minimum value.
Max	Maximum value.
Shift	If > 0 it specifies the position of the decimal point.
Flags	See table below.

Permitted values for parameter Flags ("OR" combinable)	
0 (default)	Edit in normal mode, sign is only displayed if the value is negative
GUI_EDIT_SIGNED	"+" and "-" sign is displayed.

EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for edit widgets.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	(see table below)
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Color to be used when widget is inactive.
1	Color to be used when widget is active.

EDIT_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used for edit fields.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT* pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to the font to be set as default.

EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign()

Description

Sets the default text alignment for edit fields.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDefault TextAlign(int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Align	Default text alignment. For details please refer to GUI_SetTextAlign().

EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used for edit widgets.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Has to be 0, reserved for future use.
Color	Color to be used.

EDIT_SetFloatMode()

Description

Enables the floating point edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetFloatMode(EDIT_Handle hObj, float Value,
                      float Min, float Max,
```

```
int Shift, U8 Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
Value	Value to be modified.
Min	Minimum value.
Max	Maximum value.
Shift	Number of post decimal positions.
Flags	See table below.

Permitted values for parameter Flags ("OR" combinable)	
0 (default)	Edit in normal mode, sign is only displayed if the value is negative
GUI_EDIT_SIGNED	"+" and "-" sign is displayed.

EDIT_SetFloatValue

Description

The function can be used to set the floating point value of the edit field if working in floating point mode.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetFloatValue(EDIT_Handle hObj, float Value);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
Value	New floating point value of the edit field.

Additional Information

The use of this function makes only sense if the edit field works in floating point mode. If working in text mode the function has no effect. If working in binary, decimal or hexadecimal mode the behavior of the edit field is undefined.

EDIT_SetFont()

Description

Sets the edit field font.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetFont(EDIT_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT* pfont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
pFont	Pointer to the font.

EDIT_SetHexMode()

Description

Enables the hexadecimal edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetHexMode(EDIT_Handle hObj, U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
Value	Value to be modified.
Min	Minimum value.
Max	Maximum value.

EDIT_SetInsertMode

Description

Enables or disables the insert mode of the edit widget.

Prototype

```
int EDIT_SetInsertMode(EDIT_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
OnOff	1 for insert mode (default if working in text mode), 0 for overwrite mode.

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disable insert mode.
1	Enable insert mode.

Return value

Returns the previous insert mode state.

Additional Information

The use of this function makes only sense if the edit widget operates in text mode or in any user defined mode. If working in hexadecimal, binary, floating point or decimal mode the use of this function has no effect except that it changes the appearance of the cursor.

EDIT_SetMaxLen()

Description

Sets the maximum number of characters to be edited by the given edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetMaxLen(EDIT_Handle hObj, int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
MaxLen	Number of characters.

EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx

Description

Sets the function pointer which is used by the EDIT widget to call the function which is responsible for adding characters.

Prototype

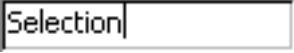
```
void EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx(EDIT_Handle hObj, tEDIT_AddKeyEx * pfAddKeyEx);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
pfAddKeyEx	Function pointer to the function to be used to add a character.

Additional Information

If working in text mode (default) or one of the modes for editing values, the edit widget uses its own routines to add a character. The use of this function only makes sense if the default behavior of the edit widget needs to be changed. If a function pointer has been set with this function the application program is responsible for the contents of the text buffer.

EDIT_SetSel

Before	After
	

Description

Used to set the current selection of the edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetSel(EDIT_Handle hObj, int FirstChar, int LastChar);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
FirstChar	Zero based index of the first character to be selected. -1 if no character should be selected.
LastChar	Zero based index of the last character to be selected. -1 if all characters from the first character until the last character should be selected.

Additional Information

Selected characters are usually displayed in reverse. Setting the cursor position deselects all characters.

Sample

```
EDIT_SetSel(0, -1) /* Selects all characters of the widget */
EDIT_SetSel(-1, 0) /* Deselect all characters */
EDIT_SetSel(0, 2) /* Selects the first 3 characters */
```

EDIT_SetText()

Description

Sets the text to be displayed in the edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetText(EDIT_Handle hObj, const char* s)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
s	Text to display.

EDIT_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment of the edit field.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetTextAlign(EDIT_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
Align	Text alignment to be set (see <code>GUI_SetTextAlign()</code>)

EDIT_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the edit field text color.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetTextColor(EDIT_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                      GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of edit field.
Index	Has to be 0, reserved for future use.
Color	Color to be set.

EDIT_SetTextMode()

Description

Sets the edit mode of the widget back to text mode.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetTextMode(EDIT_Handle hEdit);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

Additional information

If one of the functions `EDIT_SetBinMode()`, `EDIT_SetDecMode()`, `EDIT_SetFloatMode()` or `EDIT_SetHexMode()` has been used to set the edit field to one of the numeric edit modes, this function sets the edit mode back to text mode. It also clears the contents of the widget.

EDIT_SetUlongMode()

Description

Enables the unsigned long decimal edit mode of the edit field. The given value can be modified in the given range.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetUlongMode(EDIT_Handle hEdit, U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of edit field.
<code>Value</code>	Value to be modified.
<code>Min</code>	Minimum value.
<code>Max</code>	Maximum value.

EDIT_SetValue()

Description

Sets the current value of the edit field. Only useful if binary, decimal or hexadecimal edit mode is set.

Prototype

```
void EDIT_SetValue(EDIT_Handle hObj, I32 Value);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of edit field.
<code>Value</code>	New value.

GUI_EditBin()

Description

Edits a binary value at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_EditBin(U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max, int Len, int xszie);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>Value</code>	Value to be modified.
<code>Min</code>	Minimum value.
<code>Max</code>	Maximum value.
<code>Len</code>	Number of digits to edit.
<code>xsize</code>	Pixel-size in X of the edit field.

Return value

The new value will be returned if <ENTER> is pressed. If <ESC> is pressed, the old value is returned.

Additional Information

The routine returns after pressing <ENTER> or <ESC>. The contents of the given text will be modified only if <ENTER> is pressed.

GUI_EditDec()

Description

Edits a decimal value at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_EditDec(I32 Value, I32 Min, I32 Max, int Len, int xsize,
                 int Shift, U8 Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Value	Value to be modified.
Min	Minimum value.
Max	Maximum value.
Len	Number of digits to edit.
xsize	Pixel-size in X of edit field.
Shift	If > 0 it specifies the position of the decimal point.
Flags	See EDIT_SetDecMode().

Return value

The new value will be returned if <ENTER> is pressed. If <ESC> is pressed, the old value is returned.

Additional Information

The routine returns after pressing <ENTER> or <ESC>. The contents of the given text will be modified only if <ENTER> is pressed.

GUI_EditHex()

Description

Edits a hexadecimal value at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
U32 GUI_EditHex(U32 Value, U32 Min, U32 Max, int Len, int xsize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Value	Value to be modified.
Min	Minimum value.
Max	Maximum value.
Len	Number of digits to edit.
xsize	Pixel-size in X of the edit field.

Return value

The new value will be returned if <ENTER> is pressed. If <ESC> is pressed, the old value is returned.

Additional Information

The routine returns after pressing <ENTER> or <ESC>. The contents of the given text will be modified only if <ENTER> is pressed.

GUI_EditString()

Description

Edits a string at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_EditString(char * pString, int Len, int xsize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pString	Pointer to the string to be edited.
Len	Maximum number of characters.
xsize	Pixel-size in X of the edit field.

Additional Information

The routine returns after pressing <ENTER> or <ESC>. The contents of the given text will be modified only if <ENTER> is pressed.

16.7.5 Example

The following example demonstrates the use of the EDIT widget. It is available as WIDGET_Edit.c in the samples shipped with μC/GUI:

```
*****
*           Micrium Inc. *
*           Empowering embedded systems *
*           μC/GUI sample code *
*****
***** uC/GUI - Graphical user interface for embedded applications *****
uC/GUI is protected by international copyright laws. Knowledge of the
source code may not be used to write a similar product. This file may
only be used in accordance with a license and should not be re-
distributed in any way. We appreciate your understanding and fairness.
-----
File      : WIDGET_Edit.c
Purpose   : Example demonstrating the use of a EDIT widget
-----
*/
#include "GUI.h"
#include "EDIT.h"

*****
*
*     static code
*
*****
*/
*****
```

```

*      _DemoEdit
*
*      Edit a string until ESC or ENTER is pressed
*/
static void _DemoEdit(void) {
    EDIT_Handle hEdit;
    char aBuffer[28];
    int Key;
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("WIDGET_Edit - Sample", 160, 5);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Use keyboard to modify string...", 160, 90);
    /* Create edit widget */
    hEdit = EDIT_Create( 50, 110, 220, 25, ' ', sizeof(aBuffer), 0 );
    /* Modify edit widget */
    EDIT_SetText(hEdit, "Press <ENTER> when done...");
    EDIT_SetFont(hEdit, &GUI_Font8x16);
    EDIT_SetTextColor(hEdit, 0, GUI_RED);
    /* Set keyboard focus to edit widget */
    WM_SetFocus(hEdit);
    /* Handle keyboard until ESC or ENTER is pressed */
    do {
        WM_Exec();
        Key = GUI_GetKey();
    } while ((Key != GUI_KEY_ENTER) && (Key != GUI_KEY_ESCAPE));
    /* Fetch result from edit widget */
    if (Key == GUI_KEY_ENTER) {
        EDIT_GetText(hEdit, aBuffer, sizeof(aBuffer));
    }
    /* Delete the edit widget */
    EDIT_Delete(hEdit);
    GUI_ClearRect(0, 50, 319, 239);
    /* Display the changed string */
    if (Key == GUI_KEY_ENTER) {
        GUI_Delay(250);
        GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("The string you have modified is:", 160, 90);
        GUI_DispStringHCenterAt(aBuffer, 160, 110);
        GUI_Delay(3000);
        GUI_ClearRect(0, 50, 319, 239);
    }
    GUI_Delay(500);
}

*****
*
*      MainTask
*
*      Demonstrates the use of a EDIT widget
*
*****
*/
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    while (1) {
        _DemoEdit();
    }
}

```

Screen shot of above example

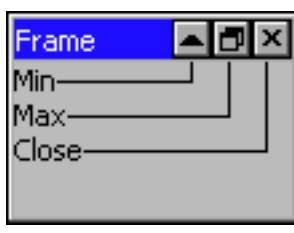


16.8 FRAMEWIN: Frame window widget

Frame windows give your application a PC application-window appearance. They consist of a surrounding frame, a title bar and a user area. The color of the title bar changes to show whether the window is active or inactive, as seen below:

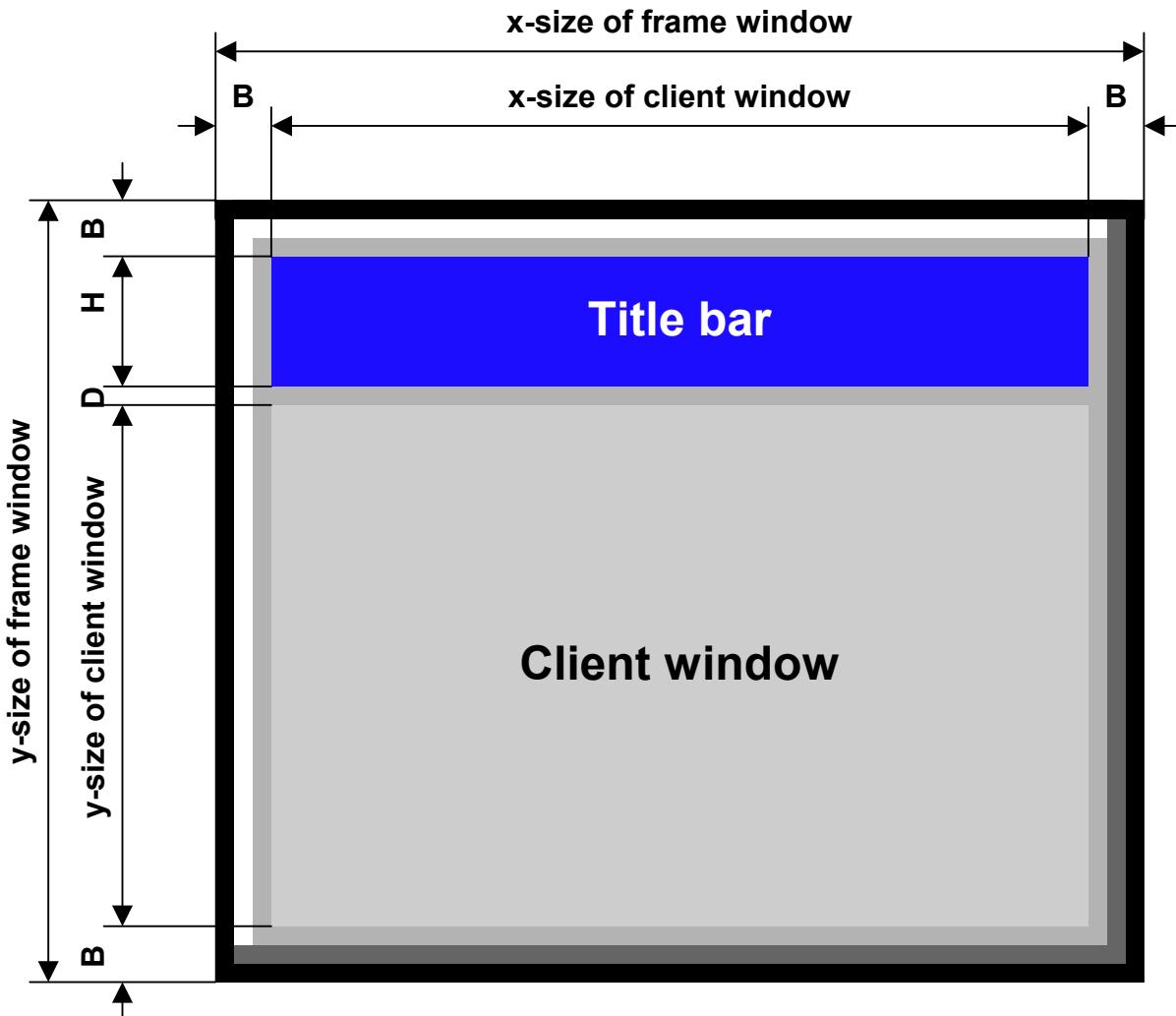
Active frame window	Inactive frame window
	

You can attach predefined buttons to the title bar as seen below or you can attach your own buttons to a title bar:

Explanation	Frame window
Frame window with minimize-, maximize- and close button.	
Frame window with minimize-, maximize- and close button in maximized state.	
Frame window with minimize-, maximize- and close button in minimized state	

16.8.1 Structure of the frame window

The following diagram shows the detailed structure and looks of a frame window:



The frame window actually consists of 2 windows; the main window and a child window. The child window is called **Client window**. It is important to be aware of this when dealing with callback functions: There are 2 windows with 2 different callback functions. When creating child windows, these child windows are typically created as children of the client window; their parent is therefore the client window.

Detail	Description
B	Border size of the frame window. The default size of the border is 3 pixels.
H	Height of the title bar. Depends on the size of the used font for the title.
D	Spacing between title bar and client window. (1 pixel)
Title bar	The title bar is part of the frame window and not a separate window.
Client window	The client window is a separate window created as a child window of the frame window.

16.8.2 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
B	FRAMEWIN_ALLOW_DRAG_ON_FRAME	1	Allows dragging the widget on the surrounding frame.
N	FRAMEWIN_BARCOLOR_ACTIVE_DEFAULT	0xff0000	Title bar color, active state.
N	FRAMEWIN_BARCOLOR_INACTIVE_DEFAULT	0x404040	Title bar color, inactive state.
N	FRAMEWIN_BORDER_DEFAULT	3	Outer border width, in pixels.
N	FRAMEWIN_CLIENTCOLOR_DEFAULT	0xc0c0c0	Color of client window area.
S	FRAMEWIN_DEFAULT_FONT	&GUI_Font8_1	Font used for title bar text.
N	FRAMEWIN_FRAMECOLOR_DEFAULT	0xaaaaaaaa	Frame color.
N	FRAMEWIN_IBORDER_DEFAULT	1	Inner border width, in pixels.
N	FRAMEWIN_TITLEHEIGHT_DEFAULT	0	Default height of title bar.

16.8.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

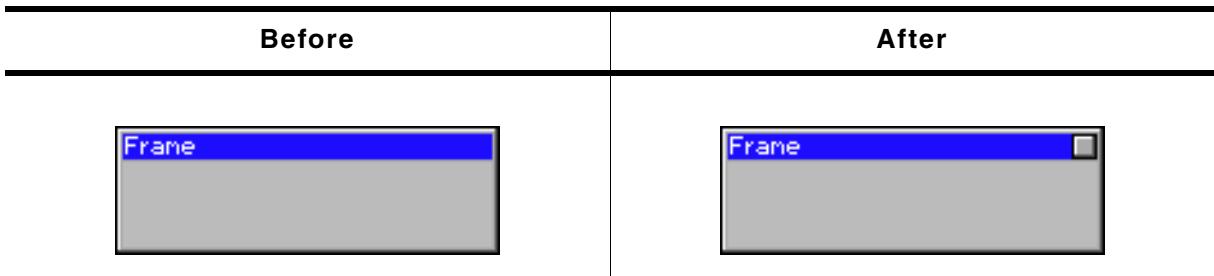
16.8.4 FRAMEWIN API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI FRAMEWIN-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
FRAMEWIN_AddButton()	Adds a button in the title bar.
FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton()	Adds a close button in the title bar.
FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton()	Adds a maximize button in the title bar.
FRAMEWIN_AddMenu()	Adds a menu widget to the frame window.
FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton()	Adds a minimize button in the title bar.
FRAMEWIN_Create()	Creates the frame window. (Obsolete)
FRAMEWIN_CreateAsChild()	Creates the frame window as a child window. (Obsolete)
FRAMEWIN_CreateEx()	Creates the frame window.
FRAMEWIN_GetBorderSize()	Returns the size of the border.
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBarColor()	Returns the default color of the title bar.
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBorderSize()	Returns the default border size
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultClientColor()	Returns the default color of the client area.
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultFont()	Returns the default font used for the title bar
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor()	Returns the default text color of the title.
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTitleHeight()	Returns the default size of the title bar
FRAMEWIN_GetTitleHeight()	Returns the height of the title bar.
FRAMEWIN_IsMinimized()	Returns if the framewin is minimized or not.
FRAMEWIN_IsMaximized()	Returns if the framewin is maximized or not.
FRAMEWIN_Maximize()	Enlarges the frame window to the size of its parent.
FRAMEWIN_Minimize()	Hides the client area of the frame window.
FRAMEWIN_Restore()	Restores a minimized or maximized frame window.
FRAMEWIN_SetActive()	Sets the state of the frame window. (Obsolete)
FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor()	Sets the color of the title bar.
FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize()	Sets the border size of the frame window.

Routine	Explanation
FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor()	Sets the color of the client area
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBarColor()	Sets the default color of the title bar
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBorderSize()	Sets the default border size
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultClientColor()	Sets the default color of the client area.
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFont()	Sets the default font used for the title bar.
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTextColor()	Sets the default text color of the title.
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight()	Sets the default height of the title bar
FRAMEWIN_SetFont()	Selects the font used for the title text.
FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable()	Sets the frame window to a moveable/non-moveable state.
FRAMEWIN_SetResizeable()	Sets the frame window to resizable state.
FRAMEWIN_SetText()	Sets the title text.
FRAMEWIN_SetTextAlign()	Sets the alignment of the title text.
FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor()	Sets the color(s) for the title text.
FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx()	Sets the color(s) for the title text.
FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight()	Sets the height of the title bar.
FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis()	Sets the visibility flag of the title bar

FRAMEWIN_AddButton()



Description

Adds a button to the title bar of the frame window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN FRAMEWIN_AddButton(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj,
                           int Flags, int Off, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Flags	(see table below)
Off	X-offset used to create the BUTTON widget
Id	ID of the BUTTON widget

Permitted values for parameter Flags	
0	The BUTTON will be created at the left side.
FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_RIGHT	The BUTTON will be created at the right side.

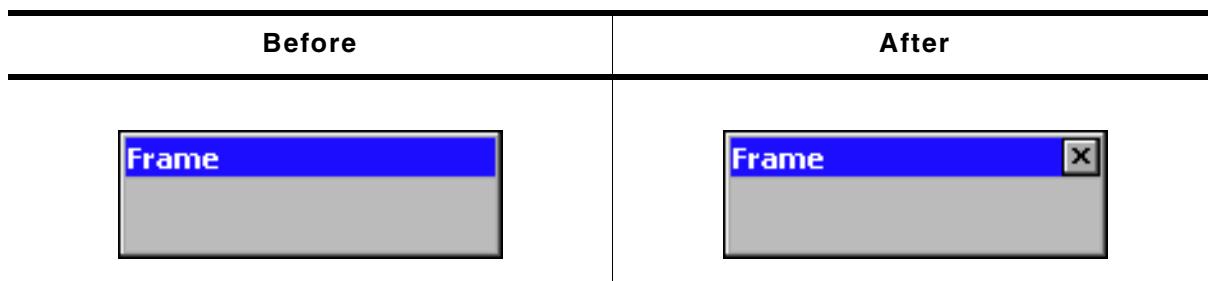
Return value

Handle of the BUTTON widget.

Additional information

The button will be created as a child window from the frame window. So the window manager keeps sure it will be deleted when the frame window will be deleted.

The button can be created at the left side or at the right side of the title bar depending on the parameter Flags. The parameter Offset specifies the space between the button and the border of the frame window or the space between the previous created button.

FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton()**Description**

Adds a close button to the title bar of the frame window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj,
                                  int Flags, int Off);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Flags	(see table below)
Off	X-offset used to create the BUTTON widget

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	The BUTTON will be created at the left side.
FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_RIGHT	The BUTTON will be created at the right side.

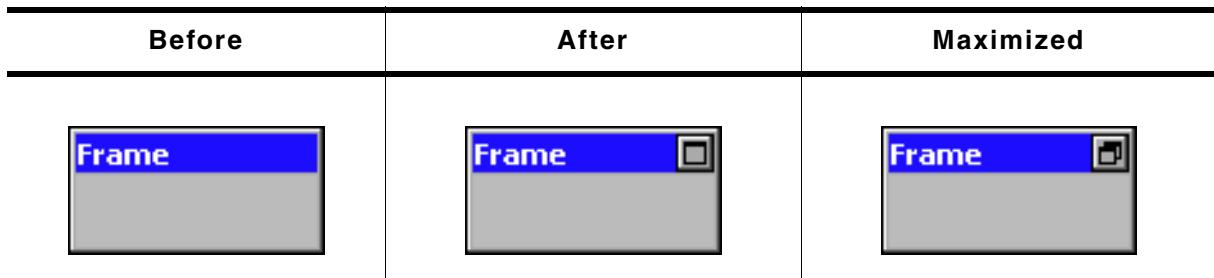
Return value

Handle of the close button.

Additional information

When the user presses the close button the frame window and all its children will be deleted.

FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton()



Description

Adds a maximize button to the title bar of the frame window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj,
                                int Flags, int Off);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Flags	(see table below)
Off	X-offset used to create the BUTTON widget

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	The BUTTON will be created at the left side.
FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_RIGHT	The BUTTON will be created at the right side.

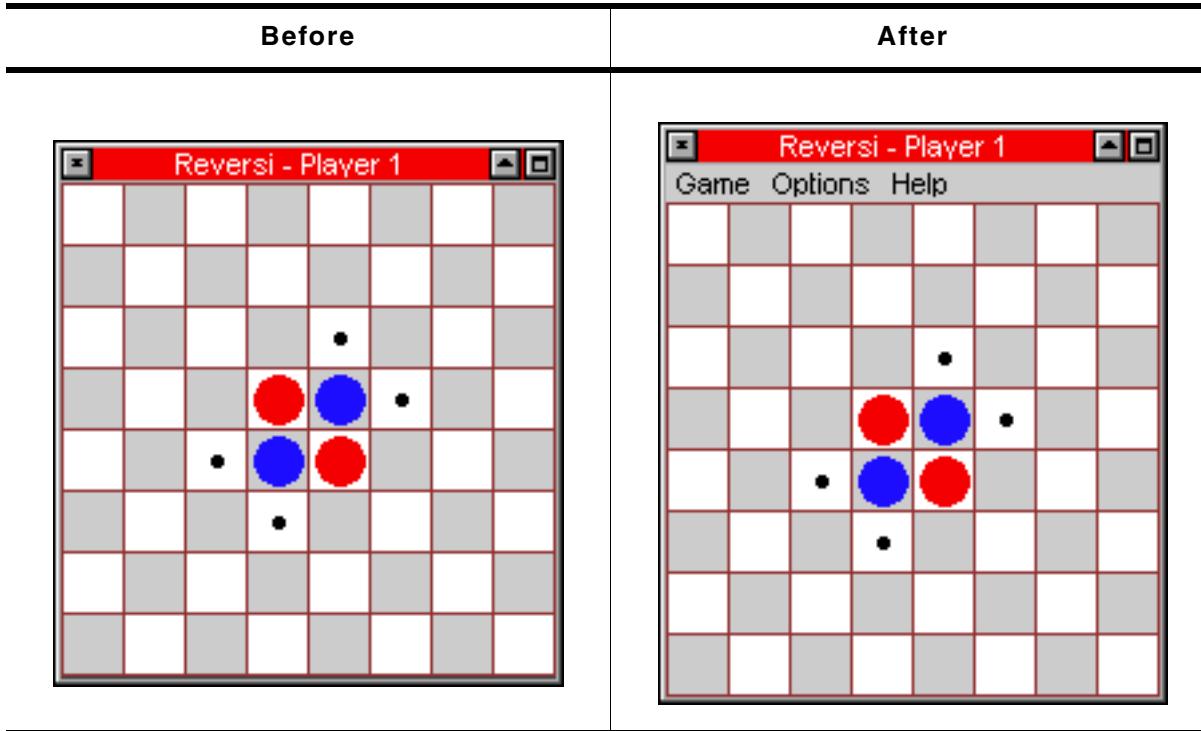
Return value

Handle of the maximize button.

Additional information

When the user presses the maximize button the first time the frame window will be enlarged to the size of its parent window. The second use of the button will reduce the frame window to its old size and restores the old position.

FRAMEWIN_AddMenu()



Description

Adds the given menu to a frame window. The menu is shown below the title bar.

Prototype

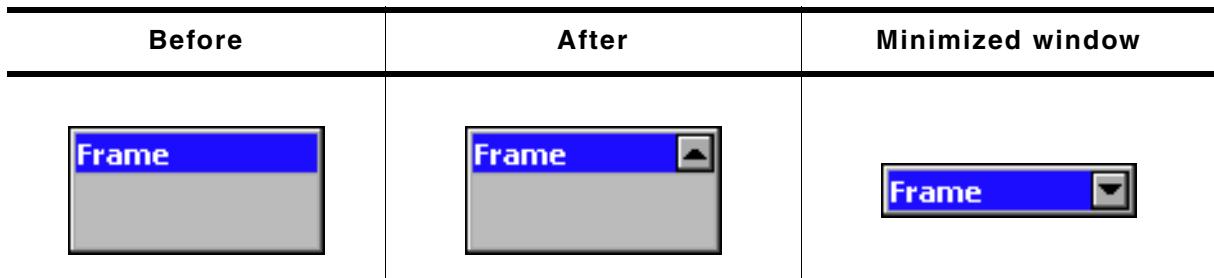
```
void FRAMEWIN_AddMenu(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, WM_HWIN hMenu);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of frame window.
<code>hMenu</code>	Handle of menu widget to be added.

Additional information

The added menu is attached as a child of the frame window. If the frame window has been created with a callback routine, the function makes sure, that the `WM_MENU` messages are passed to the client window of the frame window.

FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton()



Description

Adds a minimize button to the title bar of the frame window.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj,
                                int Flags, int Off);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Flags	(see table below)
Off	X-offset used to create the BUTTON widget

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	The BUTTON will be created at the left side.
FRAMEWIN_BUTTON_RIGHT	The BUTTON will be created at the right side.

Return value

Handle of the minimize button.

Additional information

When the user presses the minimize button the first time the client area of the frame window will be hidden and only the title bar remains visible. The second use of the button will restore the frame window to its old size.

FRAMEWIN_Create()

(Obsolete, FRAMEWIN_CreateEx should be used instead)

Description

Creates a FRAMEWIN widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
FRAMEWIN_Handle FRAMEWIN_Create(const char* pTitle, WM_CALLBACK* cb,
                                  int Flags, int x0, int y0,
```

```
int xsize, int ysize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pTitle	Title displayed in the title bar.
cb	Pointer to callback routine of client area.
Flags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
x0	Leftmost pixel of the frame window (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the frame window (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the frame window (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the frame window (in pixels).

Return value

Handle for the created FRAMEWIN widget; 0 if the routine fails.

FRAMEWIN_CreateAsChild()

(Obsolete, FRAMEWIN_CreateEx should be used instead)

Description

Creates a FRAMEWIN widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
FRAMEWIN_Handle FRAMEWIN_CreateAsChild(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                         WM_HWIN hParent, const char* pText,
                                         WM_CALLBACK* cb, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of the frame window relative to the parent window.
y0	Y-position of the frame window relative to the parent window.
xsize	Horizontal size of the frame window (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the frame window (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window.
pText	Text to be displayed in the title bar.
cb	Pointer to callback routine.
Flags	Window create flags (see FRAMEWIN_Create()).

Return value

Handle for the created FRAMEWIN widget; 0 if the routine fails.

FRAMEWIN_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a FRAMEWIN widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
FRAMEWIN_Handle FRAMEWIN_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                    WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                    int ExFlags, int Id,
```

```
const char* pTitle, WM_CALLBACK* cb);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new FRAMEWIN widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	(see table below)
Id	Window ID of the widget.
pTitle	Title displayed in the title bar.
cb	Pointer to user callback routine. This user callback routine is called by the window callback routine of the client window.

Permitted values for parameter ExFlags	
0	No function.
FRAMEWIN_CF_MOVEABLE	Sets the new frame window to a moveable state. For details please refer to FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

Additional information

The user callback routine is typically used for 2 purposes:

- to paint the client window (if filling with a color is not desired)
- to react to messages of child windows, typically dialog elements

The normal behaviour of the client window is to paint itself, filling the entire window with the client color.

If the user callback also fills the client window (or a part of it), it can be desireable to set the client color to GUI_INVALID_COLOR, causing the window callback to not fill the client window.

The user callback of the client window does not receive all messages sent to the client window; some system messages are completely handled by the window callback routine and are not passed to the user callback. All notification messages as well as WM_PAINT and all user messages are sent to the user callback routine.

The handle received by the user callback is the handle of the frame window (the parent window of the client window), except for the WM_PAINT message, which receives the handle of the client window.

FRAMEWIN_GetBorderSize()

Description

Returns the border size of the given frame window.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_GetBorderSize(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.

Return value

The border size of the given frame window.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBarColor()**Description**

Returns the default color for title bars in frame windows.

Prototype

```
const GUI_COLOR* FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBarColor(unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index for state of frame window (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Returns the bar color used when frame window is inactive.
1	Returns the bar color used when frame window is active.

Return value

Pointer to the default title bar color used for frame windows in the specified state.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBorderColor()**Description**

Returns the default size of a frame window border.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBorderColor(void);
```

Return value

Default size of a frame window border.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultClientColor()**Description**

Returns the default color of client areas in frame windows.

Prototype

```
const GUI_COLOR* FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultClientColor(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default client area color.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font used for frame window captions.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT* FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font used for frame window captions.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color of the title.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Color to be used when frame window is inactive.
1	Color to be used when frame window is active.

Return value

Default text color of the title.

FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTitleHeight()

Description

Returns the default height of title bars in frame windows.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultCaptionSize(void);
```

Return value

Default title bar height. For more informations about the title height please take a look to FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight.

FRAMEWIN_GetTitleHeight()

Description

Returns the height of title bar of the given frame window.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_GetTitleHeight(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.

Return value

The height of title bar of the given frame window. For more informations about the title height please take a look to FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight.

FRAMEWIN_IsMaximized()

Description

Returns if the frame window is maximized or not.

Prototype

```
int FRAMEWIN_IsMaximized(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.

Return value

1 if the frame window is maximized, 0 if not.

FRAMEWIN_IsMinimized()

Description

Returns if the frame window is minimized or not.

Prototype

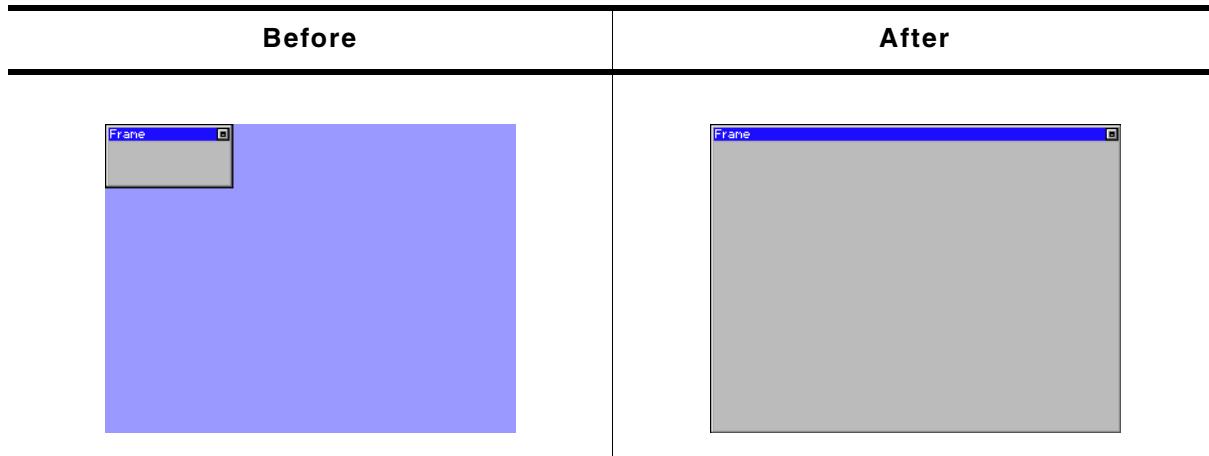
```
int FRAMEWIN_IsMinimized(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.

Return value

1 if the frame window is minimized, 0 if not.

FRAMEWIN_Maximize()



Description

Enlarges a frame window to the size of its parent window.

Prototype

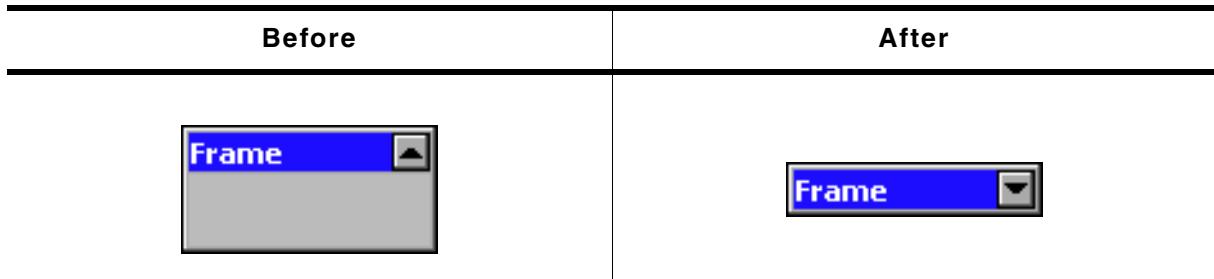
```
void FRAMEWIN_Maximize(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.

Additional information

When calling this function the frame window will show the same behavior as when the user presses the maximize button. The frame window will be enlarged to the size of its parent window.

FRAMEWIN_Minimize()



Description

Hides the client area of the given frame window.

Prototype

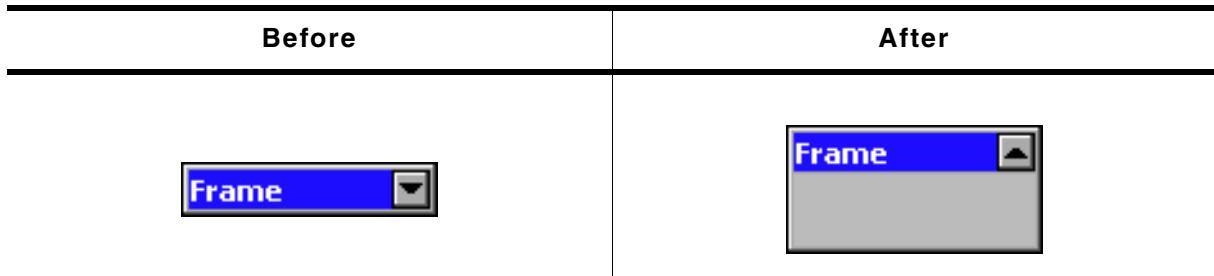
```
void FRAMEWIN_Minimize(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.

Additional information

When calling this function the frame window will show the same behavior as when the user presses the minimize button. The client area of the frame window will be hidden and only the title bar remains visible.

FRAMEWIN_Restore()



Description

Restores a minimized or maximized frame window to its old size and position.

Prototype

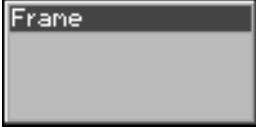
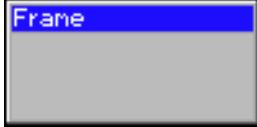
```
void FRAMEWIN_Restore(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.

Additional information

If the given frame window is neither maximized nor minimized the function takes no effect.

FRAMEWIN_SetActive()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the state of a specified frame window. Depending on the state, the color of the title bar will change.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetActive(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int State);
```

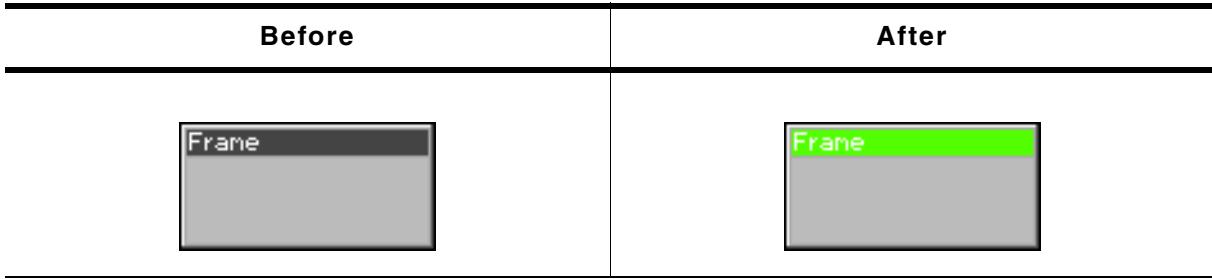
Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
State	State of frame window (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter State	
0	Frame window is inactive.
1	Frame window is active.

Additional information

This function is obsolete. If pointing with a input device to a child of a frame window the frame window will become active automaticly. It is not recommended to use this function. If using this function to set a frame window to active state, it is not warranted that the state becomes inactive if an other frame window becomes active.

FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor()



Description

Sets the color of the title bar of a specified frame window.

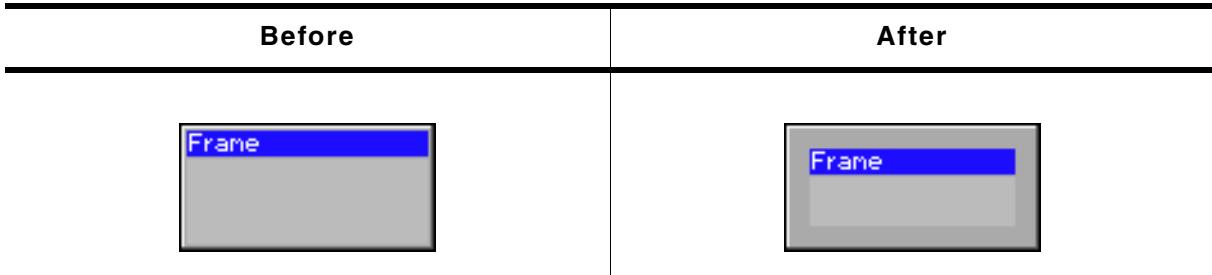
Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                           GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Index	Index for state of frame window (see table below).
Color	Color to be set.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Sets the color to be used when frame window is inactive.
1	Sets the color to be used when frame window is active.

FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize()



Description

Sets the border size of a specified frame window.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetBorderSize(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, unsigned Size);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Size	New border size of the frame window.

FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the color of the client window area of a specified frame window.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Color	Color to be set.

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBarColor()

Description

Sets the default color for title bars in frame windows.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBarColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index for state of frame window (see table below).
Color	Color to be set.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Sets the color to be used when frame window is inactive.
1	Sets the color to be used when frame window is active.

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBorderSize()

Description

Sets the default border size of frame windows.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBorderSize(int BorderSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
BorderSize	Size to be set.

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultClientColor()

Description

Sets the default color for client areas in frame windows.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultClientColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be set.

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used to display the title in frame windows.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT* pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to font to be used as default

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color of the title.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	(see table below)
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Color to be used when frame window is inactive.
1	Color to be used when frame window is active.

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight()

Description

Sets the size in Y for the title bar.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight(int Height);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Height	Size to be set

Additional information

The default value of the title height is 0. That means the height of the title depends on the font used to display the title text. If the default value is set to a value > 0 each new frame window will use this height for the title height and not the height of the font of the title.

FRAMEWIN_SetFont()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the title font.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetFont(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT* pfont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of frame window.
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the font.

FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable()

Description

Sets a frame window to a moveable or fixed state.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int State);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of frame window.
<code>State</code>	State of frame window (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter <code>State</code>	
0	Frame window is fixed (non-moveable).
1	Frame window is moveable.

Additional information

The default state of a frame window after creation is fixed.

Moveable state means, the frame window can be dragged with a pointer input device (PID). To move the frame window, it first needs to be touched with a PID in pressed state in the title area. Moving the pressed PID now moves also the widget.

If the config macro FRAMEWIN_ALLOW_DRAG_ON_FRAME is 1 (default), the frame window can also be dragged on the surrounding frame. This works only if the frame window is not in resizable state.

FRAMEWIN_SetResizable()



Description

Sets the resizable state of the given frame window.

Prototype

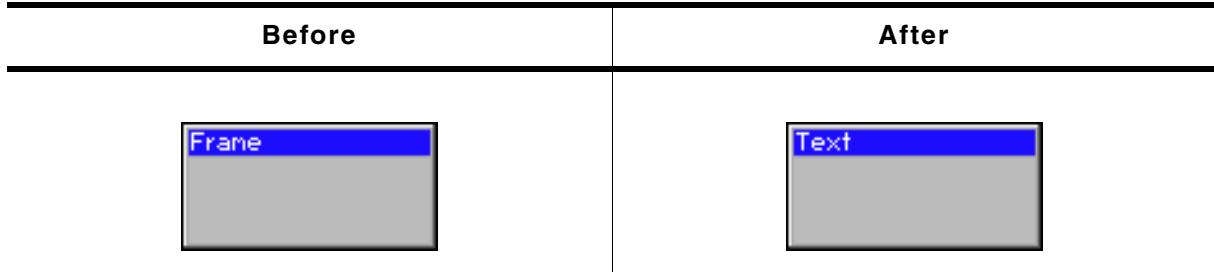
```
void FRAMEWIN_SetResizable(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int State);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
State	1 if the frame window should be resizable, 0 if not.

Additional information

If the frame window is resizable its size can be changed by dragging the borders. If a pointer input device points over the border, the cursor will change to a resize cursor. If pointing to the edge of the border, the X and Y size of the window can be changed simultaneously.

FRAMEWIN_SetText()



Description

Sets the title text.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetText(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, const char* s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
s	Text to display as the title.

FRAMEWIN_Set.TextAlign()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the text alignment of the title bar.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_Set.TextAlign(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Align	Alignment attribute for the title (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Align	
GUI_TA_HCENTER	Centers the title (default).
GUI_TA_LEFT	Displays the title to the left.
GUI_TA_RIGHT	Displays the title to the right.

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default behavior is to display the text centered.

FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor()

Before	After
	

Description

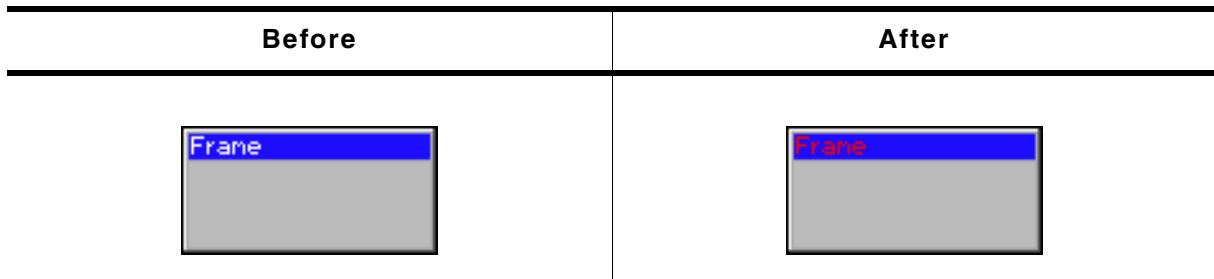
Sets the color of the title text for both states, active and inactive.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Color	Color to be set.

FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx()



Description

Sets the text color for the given state.

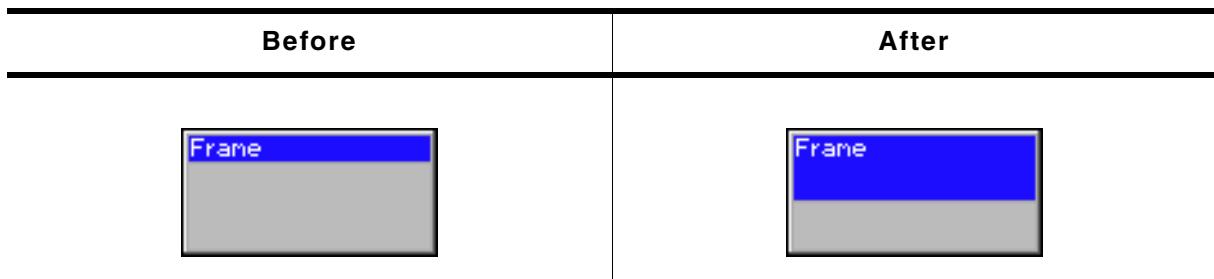
Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj,
                             unsigned Index,
                             GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Index	(see table below)
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Color to be used when frame window is inactive.
1	Color to be used when frame window is active.

FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight()



Description

Sets the height of the title bar.

Prototype

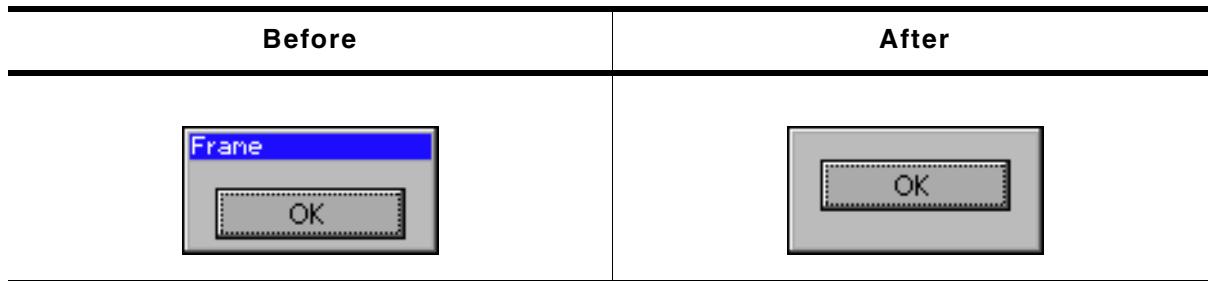
```
int FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Height);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Height	Height of the title bar.

Additional information

Per default the height of the title bar depends on the size on the font used to display the title text. When using FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight the height will be fixed to the given value. Changes of the font takes no effect concerning the height of the title bar. A value of 0 will restore the default behavior.

FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis()



Description

Sets the visibility flag of the title bar.

Prototype

```
void FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis(FRAMEWIN_Handle hObj, int Show);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of frame window.
Show	1 for visible (default), 0 for hidden

16.9 GRAPH: Graph widget

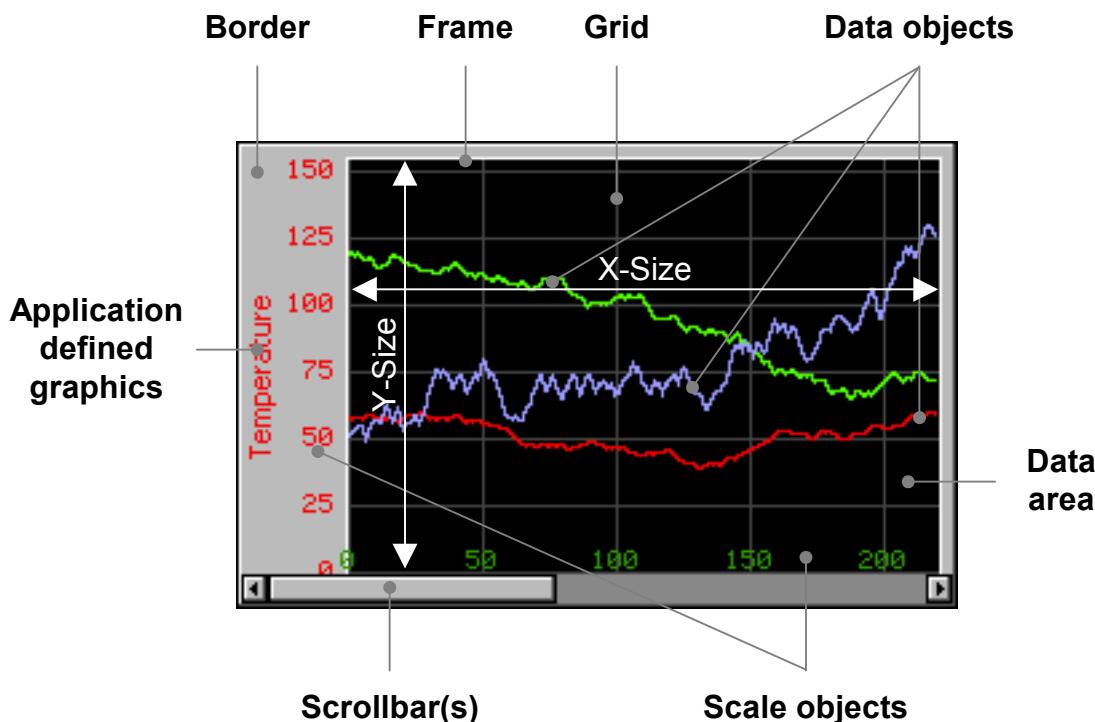
Graph widgets can be used to visualize data. Typical applications for graph widgets are showing measurement values or the curve of a function graph. Multiple curves can be shown simultaneously. Horizontal and vertical scales can be used to label the curves. A grid with different horizontal and vertical spacing can be shown on the background. If the data array does not fit into the visible area of the graph, the widget can automatically show scrollbars which allow scrolling through large data arrays.

16.9.1 Structure of the graph widget

A graph widget consists of different kinds objects:

- The graph widget itself to which data objects and scale objects can be attached.
- Optionally one or more data objects.
- Optionally one or more scale objects.

The following diagram shows the detailed structure of a graph widget:



The following table explains the details of the diagram above:

Detail	Description
Border	The optional border is part of the graph widget.
Frame	A thin line around the data area, part of the graph widget.
Grid	Shown in the background of the data area, part of the graph widget.
Data area	Area, in which grid and data objects are shown.
Data object(s)	For each curve one data object should be added to the graph widget.
Application defined graphic	An application defined callback function can be used to draw any application defined text and/or graphics.

Detail	Description
Scrollbar(s)	If the range of the data object is bigger than the data area of the graph widget, the graph widget can automatically show a horizontal and/or a vertical scrollbar.
Scale object(s)	Horizontal and vertical scales can be attached to the graph widget.
X-Size	X-Size of the data area.
Y-Size	Y-Size of the data area.

16.9.2 Creating and deleting a graph widget

The process of creating a graph widget should be the following:

- Create the graph widget and set the desired attributes.
- Create the data object(s).
- Attach the data object(s) to the graph widget.
- Create the optional scale object(s).
- Attach the scale object(s) to the graph widget.

Once attached to the graph widget the data and scale objects need not to be deleted by the application. This is done by the graph widget.

Example

The following shows a small sample how to create and delete a graph widget:

```
GRAPH_DATA_Handle hData;
GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScale;
WM_HWIN hGraph;
hGraph = GRAPH_CreateEx(10, 10, 216, 106, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW, 0, GUI_ID_GRAPH0);
hData = GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create(GUI_DARKGREEN, NumDataItems, aData0, MaxNumDataItems);
GRAPH_AttachData(hGraph, hData);
hScale = GRAPH_SCALE_Create(28, GUI_TA_RIGHT, GRAPH_SCALE_CF_VERTICAL, 20);
GRAPH_AttachScale(hGraph, hScale);
/*
   Do something with the widget...
*/
WM_DeleteWindow(hGraph);
```

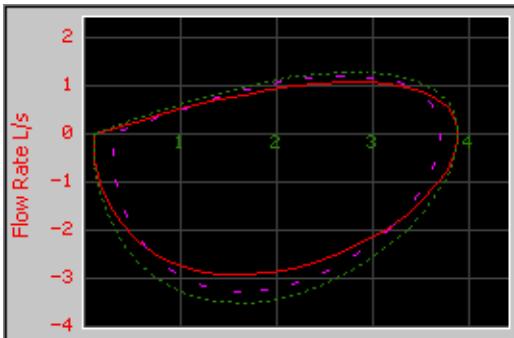
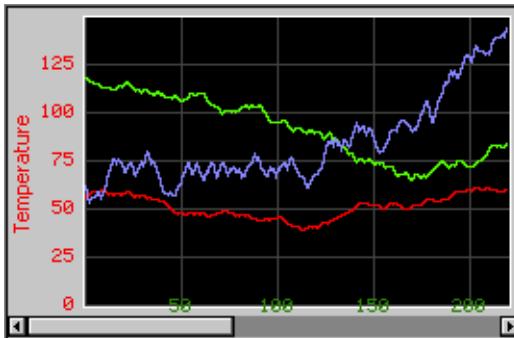
16.9.3 Drawing process

As explained above a graph widget consists of different parts and 'sub' objects. The following will explain, in which sequence the widget is drawn:

1. Filling the background with the background color.
2. Calling an optional callback routine. This makes it possible to draw for example a user defined grid.
3. Drawing the grid (if enabled).
4. Drawing the data objects and the border area.
5. Drawing the scale objects.
6. Calling an optional callback routine. This makes it possible to draw for example a user defined scale or some additional text and/or graphics.

16.9.4 Supported types of curves

The requirements for showing a curve with continuously updated measurement values can be different to the requirements when showing a function graph with X/Y coordinates. For that reason the widget currently supports 2 kinds of data objects, which are shown in the table below:

GRAPH_DATA_XY	GRAPH_DATA_YT
	

16.9.4.1 GRAPH_DATA_XY

This data object is used to show curves which consist of an array of points. The object data is drawn as a polyline. A typical application for using this data object is drawing a function graph.

16.9.4.2 GRAPH_DATA_YT

This data object is used to show curves with one Y-value for each X-position on the graph. A typical application for using this data object is showing a curve with continuously updated measurement values.

16.9.5 Configuration options

16.9.5.1 Graph widget

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	GRAPH_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Default background color of the data area.
N	GRAPH_BORDERCOLOR_DEFAULT	0xC0C0C0	Default background color of the border.
N	GRAPH_FRAMECOLOR_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Default color of the thin frame line.
N	GRAPH_GRIDCOLOR_DEFAULT	GUI_DARKGRAY	Default color used to draw the grid.
N	GRAPH_GRIDSPACING_X_DEFAULT	50	Default horizontal spacing of the grid.
N	GRAPH_GRIDSPACING_Y_DEFAULT	50	Default vertical spacing of the grid.
N	GRAPH_BORDER_L_DEFAULT	0	Default size of the left border.
N	GRAPH_BORDER_T_DEFAULT	0	Default size of the top border.
N	GRAPH_BORDER_R_DEFAULT	0	Default size of the right border.
N	GRAPH_BORDER_B_DEFAULT	0	Default size of the bottom border.

16.9.5.2 Scale object

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	GRAPH_SCALE_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Default text color.
S	GRAPH_SCALE_FONT_DEFAULT	&GUI_Font6x8	Default font used to draw the values.

16.9.6 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

16.9.7 GRAPH API

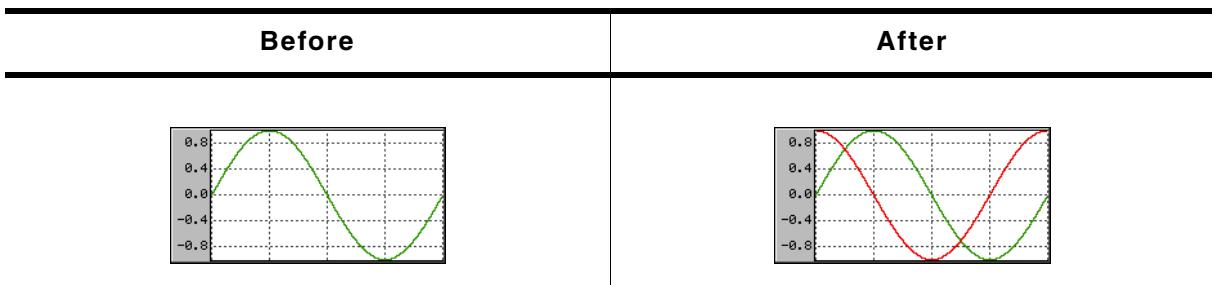
The table below lists the available μC/GUI GRAPH-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
Common routines	
GRAPH_AttachData()	Attaches a data object to an existing graph widget.
GRAPH_AttachScale()	Attaches a scale object to an existing graph widget.
GRAPH_CreateEx()	Creates a graph widget.
GRAPH_SetBorder()	Sets the size (right, left, top and bottom) of the border.
GRAPH_SetColor()	Sets the color of the graph widget.
GRAPH_SetGridDistX()	Sets the horizontal grid spacing.
GRAPH_SetGridDistY()	Sets the vertical grid spacing.
GRAPH_SetGridFixedX()	Fixes the grid in X-axis.
GRAPH_SetGridVis()	Enables the drawing of a grid.
GRAPH_SetLineStyleH()	Sets the line style for the horizontal grid lines.
GRAPH_SetLineStyleV()	Sets the line style for the vertical grid lines.
GRAPH_SetVSizeX()	Sets the horizontal range of the graph widget.
GRAPH_SetVSizeY()	Sets the vertical range of the graph widget.
GRAPH_SetUserDraw()	Sets the user callback function.

Routine	Explanation
GRAPH_DATA_YT related routines	
GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue()	Adds one data item to the data object.
GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create()	Creates a GRAPH_DATA_YT object.
GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY()	Sets a vertical offset for drawing the data.
GRAPH_DATA_XY related routines	
GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint()	Adds one point to the data object.
GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create()	Creates a GRAPH_DATA_YT object.
GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle()	Sets the line style used to draw the data.
GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX()	Sets a horizontal offset for drawing the data.
GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY()	Sets a vertical offset for drawing the data.
GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize()	Sets the pen size used to draw the data.
Scale related routines	
GRAPH_SCALE_Create()	Creates a scale object.
GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor()	Sets a calculation factor used to calculate from pixels to the desired unit.
GRAPH_SCALE_SetFixed()	Avoids scrolling of the scale.
GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont()	Sets the font used to draw the numbers.
GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs()	Sets the number of digits of the fractional portion.
GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff()	Sets an optional offset which is added to the numbers.
GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos()	Sets the horizontal or vertical position of the scale.
GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor()	Sets the text color of the scale.
GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist()	Sets the distance in pixels between the tick marks.

16.9.7.1 Common routines

GRAPH_AttachData()



Description

Attaches a data object to an existing graph widget.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_AttachData(GRAPH_Handle hObj, GRAPH_DATA_Handle hData);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
hData	Handle of the data object to be added to the widget. The data object should be created with GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create() or GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create()

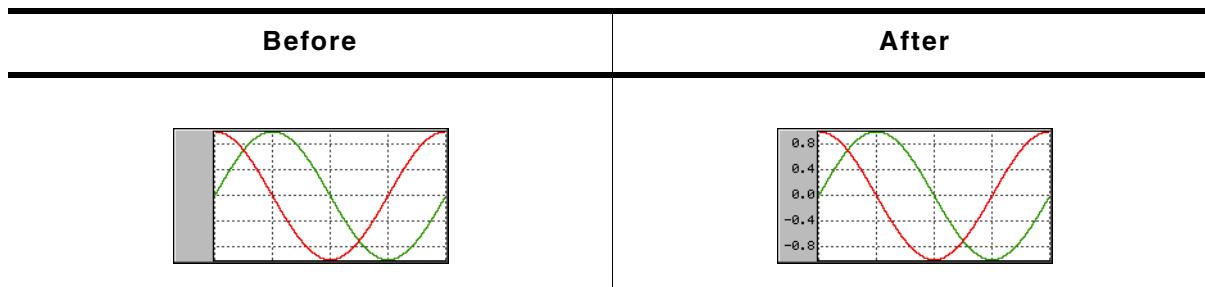
Additional Information

Once attached to a graph widget the application needs not to destroy the data object.

The graph widget deletes all attached data objects when it is deleted.

For details about how to create data objects please refer to the functions `GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create()` and `GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create()`.

GRAPH_AttachScale()



Description

Attaches a scale object to an existing graph widget.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_AttachScale(GRAPH_Handle hObj, GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScale);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget
<code>hScale</code>	Handle of the scale to be added.

Additional Information

Once attached to a graph widget the application needs not to destroy the scale object. The graph widget deletes all attached scale objects when it is deleted.

For details about how to create scale objects please refer to the function `GRAPH_SCALE_Create()`.

GRAPH_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a new graph widget.

Prototype

```
GRAPH_Handle GRAPH_CreateEx(int x0, int y0,
                           int xsize, int ysize, WM_HWIN hParent,
                           int WinFlags, int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).

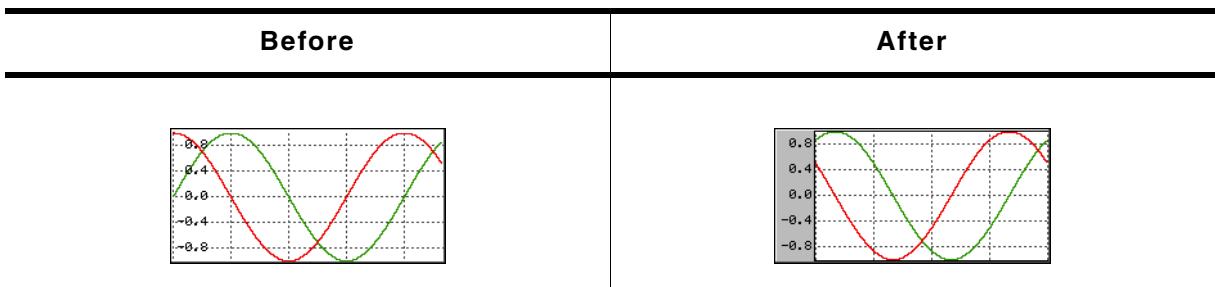
Parameter	Meaning
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new button window will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
<code>WinFlags</code>	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 14: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
<code>ExFlags</code>	(see table below)
<code>Id</code>	Window Id of the widget.

Permitted values for parameter <code>x</code>	
<code>GRAPH_CF_GRID_FIXED_X</code>	This flag 'fixes' the grid in X-axis. That means if horizontal scrolling is used, the grid remains on its position.

Return value

Handle for the created graph widget; 0 if the routine fails.

GRAPH_SetBorder()



Description

Sets the left, top, right and bottom border of the given graph widget.

Prototype

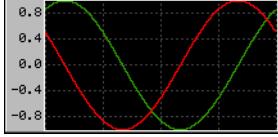
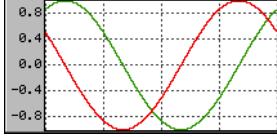
```
void GRAPH_SetBorder(GRAPH_Handle hObj,
                      unsigned BorderL, unsigned BorderT,
                      unsigned BorderR, unsigned BorderB);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>BorderL</code>	Size in pixels from the left border.
<code>BorderT</code>	Size in pixels from the top border.
<code>BorderR</code>	Size in pixels from the right border.
<code>BorderB</code>	Size in pixels from the bottom border.

Additional Information

The border size is the number of pixels between the widget effect frame and the data area of the graph widget. The frame, the thin line around the data area, is only visible if the border size is at least one pixel. For details about how to set the color of the border and the thin frame please refer to `GRAPH_SetColor()`.

GRAPH_SetColor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the desired color of the given graph widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR GRAPH_SetColor(GRAPH_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color,
                         unsigned Index);
```

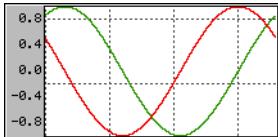
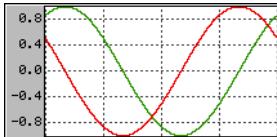
Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>Color</code>	Color to be used for the desired item.
<code>Index</code>	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code>	
GRAPH_CI_BK	Sets the background color.
GRAPH_CI_BORDER	Sets the color of the border area.
GRAPH_CI_FRAME	Sets the color of the thin frame line.
GRAPH_CI_GRID	Sets the color of the grid.

Return value

Previous color used for the desired item.

GRAPH_SetGridDistX(), GRAPH_SetGridDistY()

Before	After
	

Description

These functions set the distance from one grid line to the next.

Prototypes

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridDistX(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridDistY(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Value	Distance in pixels from one grid line to the next, default is 50 pixel.

Return value

Previous grid line distance.

Additional Information

The first vertical grid line is drawn at the leftmost position of the data area and the first horizontal grid line is drawn at the bottom position of the data area, except an offset is used.

GRAPH_SetGridFixedX()

Description

Fixes the grid in X-axis.

Prototype

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridFixedX(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
OnOff	1 if grid should be fixed in X-axis, 0 if not (default).

Return value

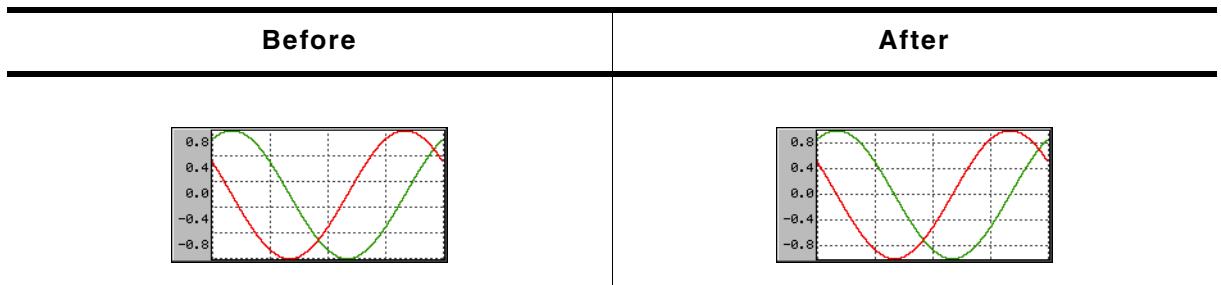
Previous value used

Additional Information

In some situations it can be useful to fix the grid in X-axis. A typical application would be a YT-graph, to which continuously new values are added and horizontal scrolling is possible. In this case it could be desirable to fix the grid in the background.

For details about how to activate scrolling for a graph widget please refer to the functions `GRAPH_SetVSizeX()` and `GRAPH_SetVSizeY()`.

GRAPH_SetGridOffY()



Description

Adds an offset used to show the horizontal grid lines.

Prototype

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridOffY(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Value	Offset to be used.

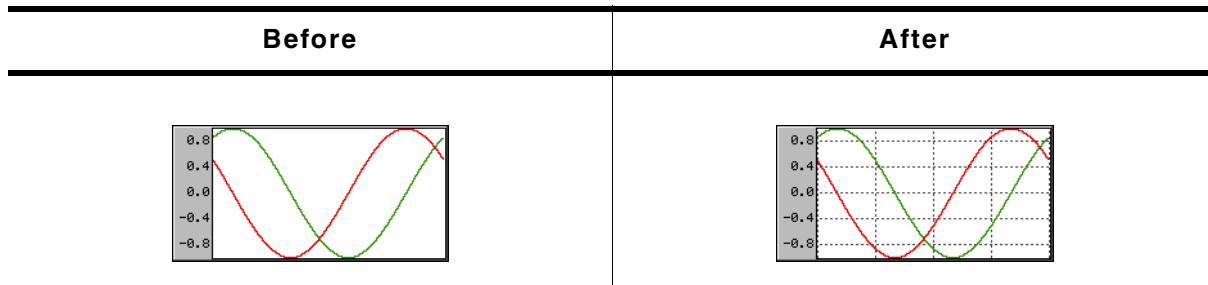
Return value

Previous offset used to draw the horizontal grid lines.

Additional Information

When rendering the grid the widget starts drawing the horizontal grid lines from the bottom of the data area and uses the current spacing. In case of a zero point in the middle of the Y-axis it could happen, that there is no grid line in the middle. In this case the grid can be shifted in Y-axis by adding an offset with this function. A positive value shifts the grid down and negative values shifts it up.

For details about how to set the grid spacing please refer to the functions `GRAPH_SetGridSpacingX()` and `GRAPH_SetGridSpacingY()`.

GRAPH_SetGridVis()**Description**

Sets the visibility of the grid lines.

Prototype

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetGridVis(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
OnOff	1 if the grid should be visible, 0 if not (default).

Return value

Previous value of the grid visibility.

GRAPH_SetLineStyleH(), GRAPH_SetLineStyleV

Before	After

Description

These functions are used to set the line style used to draw the horizontal and vertical grid lines.

Prototypes

```
U8 GRAPH_SetLineStyleH(GRAPH_Handle hObj, U8 LineStyle);
U8 GRAPH_SetLineStyleV(GRAPH_Handle hObj, U8 LineStyle);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
LineStyle	Line style to be used. For details about the supported line styles please refer to the function GUI_SetLineStyle() . Default is GUI_LS_SOLID .

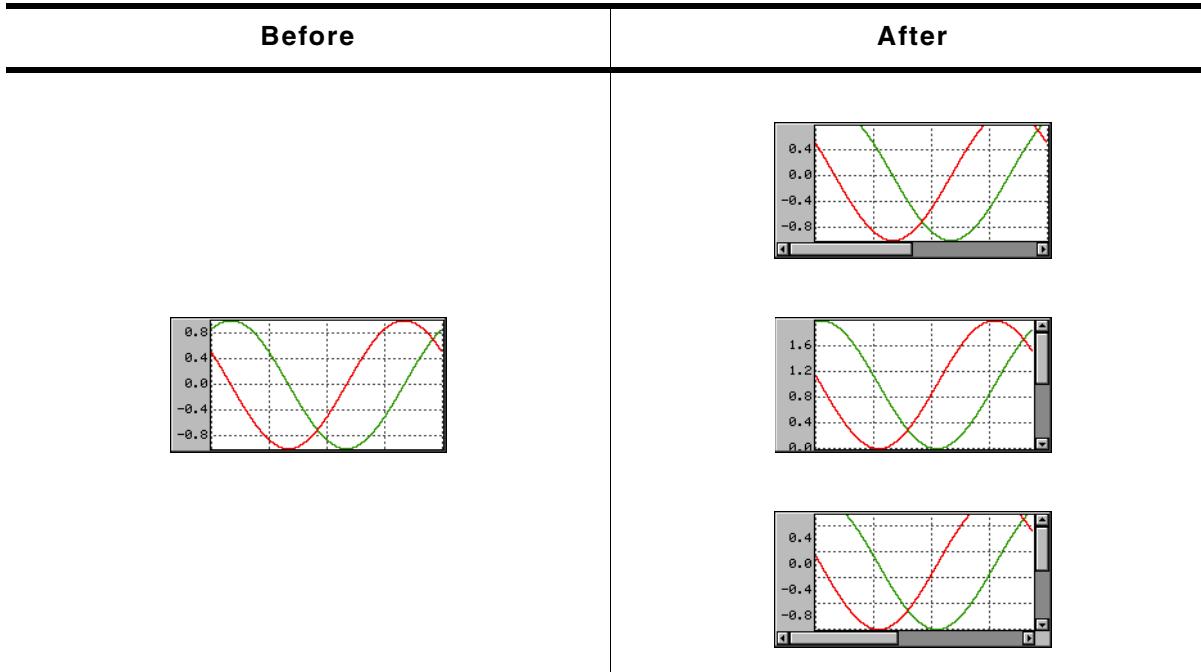
Return value

Previous line style used to draw the horizontal/vertical grid lines.

Additional Information

Please note that using other styles than [GUI_LS_SOLID](#) will need more time to show the grid.

GRAPH_SetVSizeX(), GRAPH_SetVSizeY()



Description

The functions set the virtual size in X and Y-axis.

Prototypes

```
unsigned GRAPH_SetVSizeX(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
unsigned GRAPH_SetVSizeY(GRAPH_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>Value</code>	Virtual size in pixels in X or Y axis.

Return value

Previous virtual size of the widgets data area in X or Y-axis.

Additional Information

If the widgets virtual size is bigger than the visible size of the data area, the widget automatically shows a scrollbar. If for example a data object, created by the function `GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create()`, contains more data than can be shown in the data area, the function `GRAPH_SetVSizeX()` can be used to enable scrolling. A function call like `GRAPH_SetVSizeX(NumDataItems)` enables the horizontal scrollbar, provided that the number of data items is bigger than the X-size of the visible data area.

GRAPH_SetUserDraw()

Before	After

Description

Sets the user draw function. This function is called by the widget during the drawing process to give the application the possibility to draw user defined data.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_SetUserDraw(GRAPH_Handle hObj,
                      void (* pUserDraw)(WM_HWIN hObj, int Stage));
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
pUserDraw	Pointer to application function to be called by the widget during the drawing process.

Permitted values for parameter Stage	
GRAPH_DRAW_FIRST	Function call after filling the background of the data area. Gives the application for example the possibility to draw a user defined grid.
GRAPH_DRAW_LAST	Function call after drawing all graph items. Gives the application for example the possibility to label the data with a user defined scale.

Additional Information

The user draw function is called at the beginning after filling the background of the data area and after drawing all graph items like described at the beginning of the chapter. On the first call the clipping region is limited to the data area. On the last call it is limited to the complete graph widget area except the effect frame.

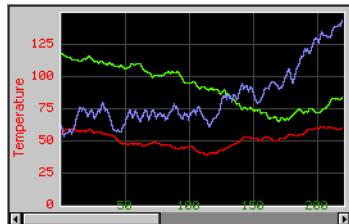
Example

The following small sample shows the use of a user draw function:

```
static void _UserDraw(WM_HWIN hWin, int Stage) {
    switch (Stage) {
        case GRAPH_DRAW_FIRST:
            /* Draw for example a user defined grid... */
            break;
        case GRAPH_DRAW_LAST:
            /* Draw for example a user defined scale or additional text... */
            break;
    }
}

static void _CreateGraph(void) {
    WM_HWIN hGraph;
    hGraph = GRAPH_CreateEx(10, 10, 216, 106, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW, 0, GUI_ID_GRAPH0);
    GRAPH_SetUserDraw(hGraph, _UserDraw); /* Enable user draw */
    ...
}
```

16.9.7.2 GRAPH_DATA_YT related routines



GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue()

Before	After

Description

Adds a new data item to a GRAPH_DATA_YT object.

Prototype

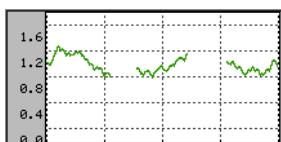
```
void GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, I16 Value);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hDataObj</code>	Handle of data object.
<code>Value</code>	Value to be added to the data object.

Additional Information

The given data value is added to the data object. If the data object is 'full', that means it contains as many data items as specified in parameter `MaxNumItems` during the creation, it first shifts the data items by one before adding the new value. So the first data item is shifted out when adding a data item to a 'full' object.

The value `0xFFFF` can be used to handle invalid data values. These values are excluded when drawing the graph. The following screenshot shows a graph with 2 gaps of invalid data:



GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create()

Description

Creates a data object of type GRAPH_DATA_YT.

Prototype

```
GRAPH_DATA_Handle GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create(GUI_COLOR Color,
                                         unsigned MaxNumItems,
                                         I16 * pData,
                                         unsigned NumItems);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used to draw the data.
MaxNumItems	Maximum number of data items.
pData	Pointer to data to be added to the object. The pointer should point to an array of I16 values.
NumItems	Number of data items to be added.

Return value

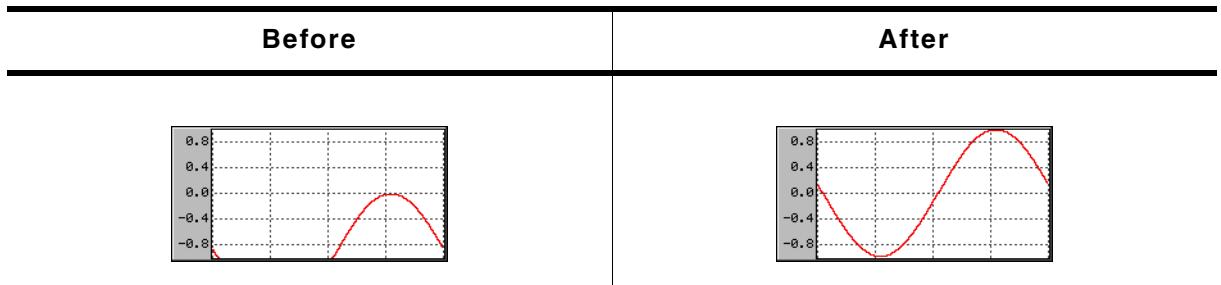
Handle of data object if creation was successful, otherwise 0.

Additional Information

The last data item is shown at the rightmost column of the data area. If a data object contains more data as can be shown in the data area of the graph widget, the function `GRAPH_SetVSizeX()` can be used to show a scrollbar which makes it possible to scroll through large data objects.

Once attached to a graph widget a data object needs not to be deleted by the application. This is automatically done during the deletion of the graph widget.

GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY()



Description

Sets a vertical offset used to draw the object data.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, int off);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hDataObj	Handle of data object.
Off	Vertical offset which should be used to draw the data.

Additional Information

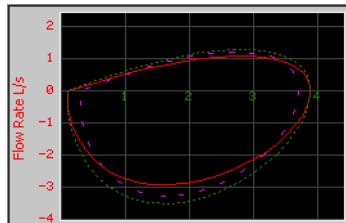
The vertical range of data, which is shown by the data object, is the range (0) - (Y-size of data area - 1). In case of using a scroll bar the current scroll position is added to the range.

Example

If for example the visible data range should be -200 to -100 the data needs to be shifted in positive direction by 200 pixels:

```
GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY(hDataObj, 200);
```

16.9.7.3 GRAPH_DATA_XY related routines



GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint()

Before	After

Description

Adds a new data item to a GRAPH_DATA_XY object.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, GUI_POINT * pPoint);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hDataObj</code>	Handle of data object.
<code>pPoint</code>	Pointer to a GUI_POINT structure to be added to the data object.

Additional Information

The given point is added to the data object. If the data object is 'full', that means it contains as many points as specified in parameter `MaxNumItems` during the creation, it first shifts the data items by one before adding the new point. So the first point is shifted out when adding a new point to a 'full' object.

GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create()

Description

Creates a data object of type GRAPH_DATA_XY.

Prototype

```
GRAPH_DATA_Handle GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create(GUI_COLOR Color,
                                         unsigned MaxNumItems,
```

```
    GUI_POINT * pData,
    unsigned NumItems);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used to draw the data.
MaxNumItems	Maximum number of points.
pData	Pointer to data to be added to the object. The pointer should point to an array of GUI_POINT's.
NumItems	Number of points to be added.

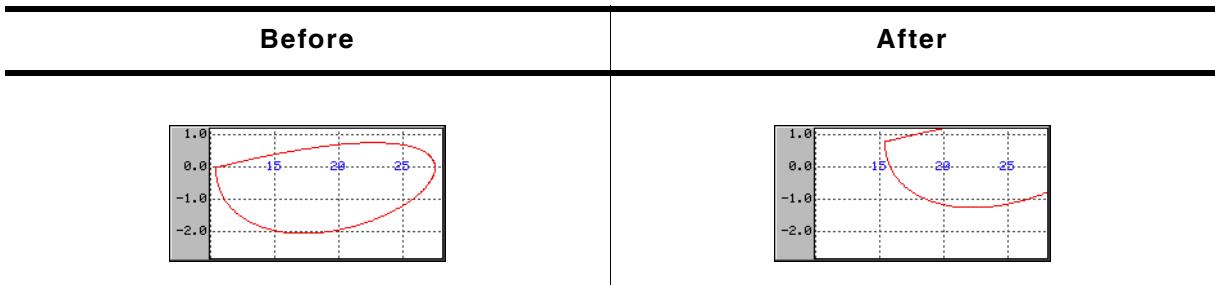
Return value

Handle of data object if creation was successful, otherwise 0.

Additional Information

Once attached to a graph widget a data object needs not to be deleted by the application. This is automatically done during the deletion of the graph widget.

GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX(), GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY()



Description

Sets a vertical or horizontal offset used to draw the polyline.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, int Off);
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, int Off);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hDataObj	Handle of data object.
Off	Horizontal/vertical offset which should be used to draw the polyline.

Additional Information

The range of data shown by the data object is (0, 0) - (X-size of data area - 1, Y-size of data area - 1). In case of using scroll bars the current scroll position is added to the respective range. To make other ranges of data visible this functions should be used to set an offset, so that the data is in the visible area.

Example

If for example the visible data range should be (100, -1200) - (200, -1100) the the following offsets need to be used:

```
GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX(hDataObj, -100);
GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffY(hDataObj, 1200);
```

GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the line style used to draw the polyline.

Prototype

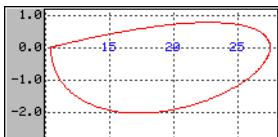
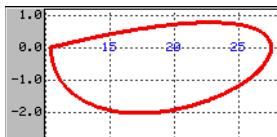
```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, U8 LineStyle);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hDataObj</code>	Handle of data object.
<code>LineStyle</code>	New line style to be used. For details about the supported line styles please refer to the function <code>GUI_SetLineStyle()</code> .

Limitations

Please note, that only curves with line style `GUI_LS_SOLID` (default) can be drawn with a pen size >1.

GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the pen size used to draw the polyline.

Prototype

```
void GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize(GRAPH_DATA_Handle hDataObj, int PenSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hDataObj</code>	Handle of data object.
<code>PenSize</code>	Pen size which should be used to draw the polyline.

16.9.7.4 Scale related routines

The graph widget supports horizontal and vertical scales for labeling purpose. The following describes the available functions for using scales.

GRAPH_SCALE_Create()

Description

Creates a scale object.

Prototype

```
GRAPH_SCALE_Handle GRAPH_SCALE_Create(int Pos, int Align,
                                      unsigned Flags, unsigned TickDist);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Pos	Position relative to the left/top edge of the graph widget.
TextAlign	Text alignment used to draw the numbers. For details please refer to the function <code>GUI_SetTextAlign()</code> .
Flags	(see table below)
TickDist	Distance from one tick mark to the next.

Permitted values for parameter Flags	
GRAPH_SCALE_CF_HORIZONTAL	Creates a horizontal scale object.
GRAPH_SCALE_CF_VERTICAL	Creates a vertical scale object.

Return value

Handle of the scale object if creation was successful, otherwise 0.

Additional Information

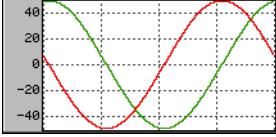
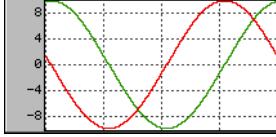
A horizontal scale object starts labeling from the bottom edge of the data area to the top and a vertical scale object from the left edge (horizontal scale) to the right, where the first position is the zero point. The parameter `TickDist` specifies the distance between the numbers.

The parameter `Pos` specifies in case of a horizontal scale the vertical distance in pixels from the top edge of the graph widget to the scale text. In case of a vertical scale the parameter specifies the horizontal distance from the left edge of the graph widget to the horizontal text position. Please note, that the actual text position also depends on the text alignment specified with parameter `TextAlign`.

The scale object draws a number for each position which is within the data area. In case of a horizontal scale there is one exception: If the first position is 0 no number is drawn at this position.

Once attached to a graph widget a scale object needs not to be deleted by the application. This is automatically done during the deletion of the graph widget.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets a factor used to calculate the numbers to be drawn.

Prototype

```
float GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj, float Factor);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hScaleObj</code>	Handle of scale object.
<code>Factor</code>	Factor to be used to calculate the number.

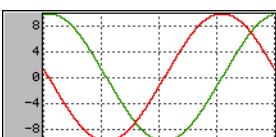
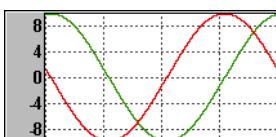
Return value

Old factor used to calculate the numbers.

Additional Information

Without using a factor the unit of the scale object is 'pixel'. So the given factor should convert the pixel value to the desired unit.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the font used to draw the scale numbers.

Prototype

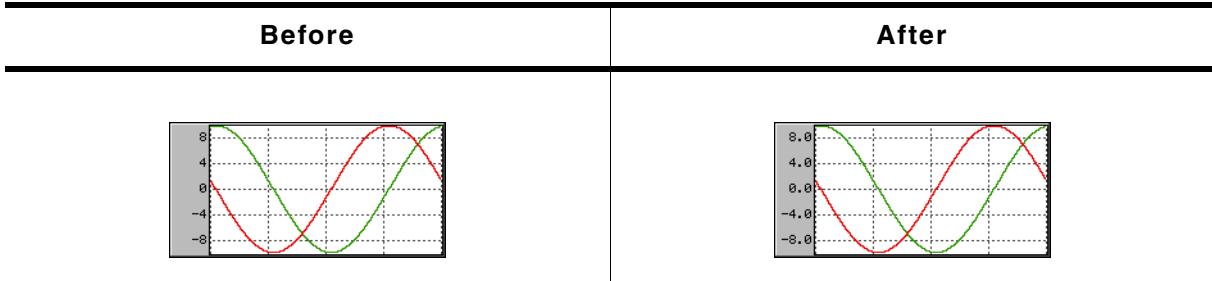
```
const GUI_FONT * GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj,
                                      const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hScaleObj</code>	Handle of scale object.
<code>pFont</code>	Font to be used.

Return value

Previous used font used to draw the numbers.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs()



Description

Sets the number of post decimal positions to be shown.

Prototype

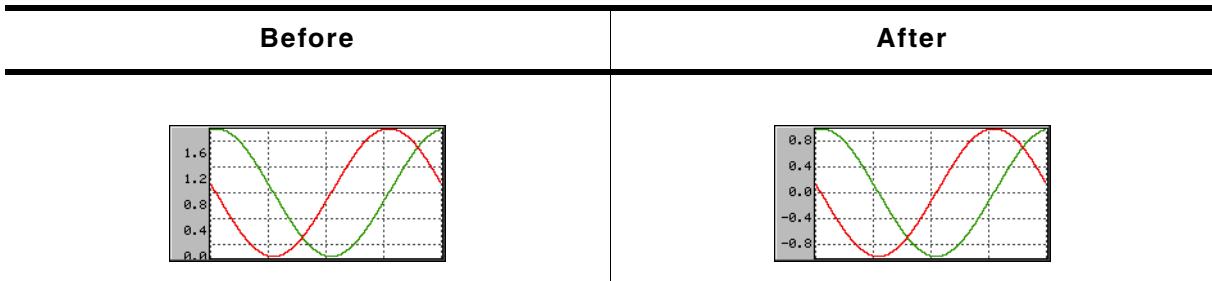
```
int GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj, int NumDecs);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hScaleObj</code>	Handle of scale object.
<code>NumDecs</code>	Number of post decimal positions.

Return value

Previous number of post decimal positions.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff()



Description

Sets an offset used to 'shift' the scale object in positive or negative direction.

Prototype

```
int GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj, int Off);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hScaleObj</code>	Handle of scale object.
<code>Off</code>	Offset used for drawing the scale.

Return value

Previous used offset.

Additional Information

As described under the function `GRAPH_SCALE_Create()` a horizontal scale object starts labeling from the bottom edge of the data area to the top and a vertical scale object from the left edge (horizontal scale) to the right, where the first position is the zero point. In many situations it is not desirable, that the first position is the zero point. If the scale should be 'shifted' in positive direction, a positive offset should be added, for negative direction a negative value.

`GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos()`

Before	After

Description

Sets the position for showing the scale object within the graph widget.

Prototype

```
int GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj, int Pos);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hScaleObj</code>	Handle of scale object.
<code>Pos</code>	Position, at which the scale should be shown.

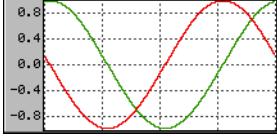
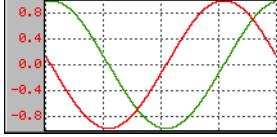
Return value

Previous position of the scale object.

Additional Information

The parameter `Pos` specifies in case of a horizontal scale the vertical distance in pixels from the top edge of the graph widget to the scale text. In case of a vertical scale the parameter specifies the horizontal distance from the left edge of the graph widget to the horizontal text position. Please note, that the actual text position also depends on the text alignment of the scale object.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the text color used to draw the numbers.

Prototype

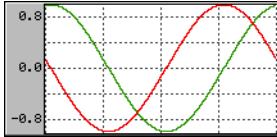
```
GUI_COLOR GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj,
                                    GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hScaleObj</code>	Handle of scale object.
<code>Color</code>	Color to be used to show the numbers.

Return value

Previous color used to show the numbers.

GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the distance from one number to the next.

Prototype

```
unsigned GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist(GRAPH_SCALE_Handle hScaleObj,
                                  unsigned Dist);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hScaleObj</code>	Handle of scale object.
<code>Dist</code>	Distance in pixels between the numbers.

Return value

Previous distance between the numbers.

16.10 HEADER: Header widget

HEADER widgets are used to label columns of a table:



When working with a touch screen or with mouse-support you can also manage the column width of a table. If you move the cursor nearby a divider the cursor will change:



There are 2 predefined cursors as shown below:

GUI_CursorHeaderM (default)	GUI_CursorHeaderMI

You can also create and use your own cursors when using a HEADER widget as described later in this chapter.

16.10.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	HEADER_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT	0xAAAAAA	Default value of background color
S	HEADER_CURSOR_DEFAULT	&GUI_CursorHeaderM	Default cursor
S	HEADER_FONT_DEFAULT	&GUI_Font13_1	Default font
N	HEADER_BORDER_H_DEFAULT	2	Horizontal space between text and border
N	HEADER_BORDER_V_DEFAULT	0	Vertical space between text and border
B	HEADER_SUPPORT_DRAG	1	Enable/disable dragging support
N	HEADER_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Default value of text color

16.10.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a HEADER widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	Widget has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	Widget has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT	Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the widget without releasing.

16.10.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

16.10.4 HEADER API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI HEADER-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
HEADER.AddItem()	Adds one item at the right side
HEADER.Create()	Creates a HEADER widget. (Obsolete)
HEADER.CreateAttached()	Creates a HEADER widget attached to a window
HEADER.CreateEx()	Creates a HEADER widget.
HEADER.CreateIndirect()	Creates a HEADER widget from a resource table entry
HEADER.GetDefaultBkColor()	Returns the default background color
HEADER.GetDefaultBorderH()	Returns the value of the horizontal spacing.
HEADER.GetDefaultBorderV()	Returns the value of the vertical spacing.
HEADER.GetDefaultCursor()	Returns the a pointer to the default cursor.
HEADER.GetDefaultFont()	Returns a pointer to the default font.
HEADER.GetDefaultTextColor()	Returns the default text color.
HEADER.GetHeight()	Returns the height of the widget.
HEADER.GetItemWidth()	Returns the item width.
HEADER.GetNumItems()	Returns the number of items.
HEADER.SetBitmap()	Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item.
HEADER.SetBitmapEx()	Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item.
HEADER.SetBkColor()	Sets the background color of the widget.
HEADER.SetBMP()	Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item.
HEADER.SetBMPEX()	Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item.
HEADER.SetDefaultBkColor()	Sets the default background color.
HEADER.SetDefaultBorderH()	Sets the default value for the horizontal spacing.
HEADER.SetDefaultBorderV()	Sets the default value for the vertical spacing.
HEADER.SetDefaultCursor()	Sets the default cursor.
HEADER.SetDefaultFont()	Sets the default font.
HEADER.SetDefaultTextColor()	Sets the default text color.
HEADER.SetDragLimit()	Sets the limit for dragging the items on or off.
HEADERSetFont()	Sets the font of the widget.
HEADER_SetHeight()	Sets the height of the widget.
HEADER_SetTextAlign()	Sets the alignment of the given item.
HEADER_SetItemText()	Sets the text of a given item.
HEADER_SetItemWidth()	Sets the width of a given item.
HEADER_SetStreamedBitmap()	Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item.
HEADER_SetStreamedBitmapEx()	Sets the bitmap used when displaying the given item.
HEADER_SetTextColor()	Sets the Text color of the widget.

HEADER.AddItem()

Description

Adds an item to an already existing HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
void HEADER.AddItem(HEADER_Handle hObj,
                    int Width,
```

```
const char * s,
int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget
<code>Width</code>	Width of the new item
<code>s</code>	Text to be displayed
<code>Align</code>	Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag.

Permitted values for parameter <code>Align</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable)	
Horizontal alignment	
<code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code>	Align X-position left (default).
<code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code>	Center X-position.
<code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code>	Align X-position right (default).
Vertical alignment	
<code>GUI_TA_TOP</code>	Align Y-position with top of characters (default).
<code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code>	Center Y-position.
<code>GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code>	Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font.

Additional information

The `Width`-parameter can be 0. If `Width` = 0 the width of the new item will be calculated by the given text and by the default value of the horizontal spacing.

HEADER_Create()

(Obsolete, HEADER_CreateEx should be used instead)

Description

Creates a HEADER widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
HEADER_Handle HEADER_Create(int x0, int y0,
                           int xsize, int ysize,
                           WM_HWIN hParent, int Id,
                           int Flags, int SpecialFlags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the HEADER widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the HEADER widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the HEADER widget (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the HEADER widget (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of the parent window
<code>Id</code>	Id of the new HEADER widget
<code>Flags</code>	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
<code>SpecialFlags</code>	(Reserved for later use)

Return value

Handle for the created HEADER widget; 0 if the routine fails.

HEADER_CreateAttached()**Description**

Creates a HEADER widget which is attached to an existing window.

Prototype

```
HEADER_Handle HEADER_CreateAttached(WM_HWIN hParent,
                                    int Id,
                                    int SpecialFlags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget
<code>Id</code>	Id of the HEADER widget
<code>SpecialFlags</code>	(Not used, reserved for later use)

Return value

Handle for the created HEADER widget; 0 if the routine fails.

Additional information

An attached HEADER widget is essentially a child window which will position itself on the parent window and operate accordingly.

HEADER_CreateEx()**Description**

Creates a HEADER widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
HEADER_Handle HEADER_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                               WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                               int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new HEADER widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
<code>WinFlags</code>	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
<code>ExFlags</code>	Not used, reserved for future use.
<code>Id</code>	Window ID of the widget.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

HEADER_CreateIndirect()

Description

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter.

HEADER_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR HEADER_GetDefaultBkColor(void);
```

Return value

Default background color used when creating a HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetDefaultBorderH()

Description

Returns the value used for the horizontal spacing when creating a HEADER widget. Horizontal spacing means the horizontal distance in pixel between text and the horizontal border of the item.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetDefaultBorderH(void);
```

Return value

Value used for the horizontal spacing when creating a HEADER widget.

Additional information

Horizontal spacing takes effect only if the given width of a new item is 0.

HEADER_GetDefaultBorderV()

Description

Returns the value used for the vertical spacing when creating a HEADER widget. Vertical spacing means the vertical distance in pixel between text and the vertical border of the HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetDefaultBorderV(void);
```

Return value

Value used for the vertical spacing when creating a HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetDefaultCursor()

Description

Returns a pointer to the cursor displayed when dragging the width of an item.

Prototype

```
const GUI_CURSOR * HEADER_GetDefaultCursor(void);
```

Return value

pointer to the cursor displayed when dragging the width of an item.

HEADER_GetDefaultFont()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the default font used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * HEADER_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font used when creating a HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Returns the default text color used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR HEADER_GetDefaultTextColor(void);
```

Return value

Default text color used when creating a HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetHeight()**Description**

Returns the height of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetHeight(HEADER_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Return value

Height of the given HEADER widget.

HEADER_GetItemWidth()**Description**

Returns the item width of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetItemWidth(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of the item

Return value

Width of the item.

HEADER_GetNumItems()**Description**

Returns the number of items of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_GetNumItems(HEADER_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Return value

Number of items of the given HEADER widget.

HEADER_SetBitmap()**Description**

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBitmap(HEADER_Handle hObj,
                      unsigned int Index,
                      const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of the item
pBitmap	Pointer to a bitmap structure to be displayed

Additional information

One item of a HEADER widget can contain text and a bitmap. (look at sample under HEADER_SetBitmapEx)

HEADER_SetBitmapEx()**Description**

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBitmapEx(HEADER_Handle hObj,
                       unsigned int Index,
                       const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
```

```
int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of the item
pBitmap	Pointer to a bitmap structure to be displayed
x	Additional offset in x
y	Additional offset in y

Additional information

One item of a HEADER widget can contain text and a bitmap.

Example:

```
...
HEADER_Handle hHeader;
GUI_Init();
HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_YELLOW);
HEADER_SetDefaultFont(&GUI_Font8x8);
hHeader = HEADER_Create(10, 10, 100, 40, WM_HBKWIN, 1234, WM_CF_SHOW, 0);
HEADER.AddItem(hHeader, 50, "Phone", GUI_TA_BOTTOM | GUI_TA_HCENTER);
HEADER.AddItem(hHeader, 50, "Code", GUI_TA_BOTTOM | GUI_TA_HCENTER);
HEADER_SetBitmapEx(hHeader, 0, &bmPhone, 0, -15);
HEADER_SetBitmapEx(hHeader, 1, &bmCode, 0, -15);
...
```

Screenshot of example above:



HEADER_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBkColor(HEADER_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Color	Background color to be set

HEADER_SetBMP()

Description

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBMP(HEADER_Handle hObj,
                    unsigned int Index,
```

```
const void * pBitmap);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of HEADER item
pBitmap	Pointer to bitmap file data

Additional information

For additional informations regarding bitmap files please take a look at chapter 6.

HEADER_SetBMPEx()

Description

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetBMPEx(HEADER_Handle hObj,
                      unsigned int Index,
                      const void * pBitmap,
                      int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of the item
pBitmap	Pointer to bitmap file data
x	Additional offset in x
y	Additional offset in y

Additional information

For additional informations regarding bitmap files please take a look at chapter 6.

HEADER_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR HEADER_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Background color to be used

Return value

Previous default background color.

HEADER_SetDefaultBorderH()

Description

Sets the value used for the horizontal spacing when creating a HEADER widget. Horizontal spacing means the horizontal distance in pixel between text and the horizontal border of the item.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_SetDefaultBorderH(int Spacing);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Spacing	Value to be used

Return value

Previous default value.

Additional information

Horizontal spacing takes effect only if the given width of a new item is 0.

HEADER_SetDefaultBorderV()

Description

Sets the value used for the vertical spacing when creating a HEADER widget. Vertical spacing means the vertical distance in pixel between text and the vertical border of the HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
int HEADER_SetDefaultBorderV(int Spacing);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Spacing	Value to be used

Return value

Previous default value.

HEADER_SetDefaultCursor()

Description

Sets the cursor which will be displayed when dragging the width of an HEADER item.

Prototype

```
const GUI_CURSOR * HEADER_SetDefaultCursor(const GUI_CURSOR * pCursor);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pCursor	Pointer to the cursor to be shown when dragging the width of an HEADER item

Return value

Pointer to the previous default cursor.

Additional information

There are 2 predefined cursors shown at the beginning of this chapter.

HEADER_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * HEADER_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to font to be used

Return value

Pointer to previous default font.

HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used when creating a HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used

Return value

Previous default value.

HEADER_SetDragLimit()

Description

Sets the limit for dragging the dividers on or off. If the limit is on, a divider can only be dragged within the widget area. If the limit is off, it can be dragged outside the widget.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetDragLimit(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
OnOff	1 for setting the drag limit on, 0 for off.

HEADER_SetFont()

Description

Sets the font used when displaying the given HEADER widget

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetFont(HEADER_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
pFont	Pointer to font to be used

HEADER_SetHeight()**Description**

Sets the height of the given HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetHeight(HEADER_Handle hObj, int Height);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Height	New height

HEADER_SetTextAlign()**Description**

Sets the text alignment of the specified HEADER item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetTextAlign(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of header item
Align	Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag.

**Permitted values for parameter Align
(horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable)**

Horizontal alignment	
GUI_TA_LEFT	Align X-position left (default).
GUI_TA_HCENTER	Center X-position.
GUI_TA_RIGHT	Align X-position right (default).
Vertical alignment	
GUI_TA_TOP	Align Y-position with top of characters (default).
GUI_TA_VCENTER	Center Y-position.
GUI_TA_BOTTOM	Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font.

HEADER_SetItemText()**Description**

Sets the text used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetItemText(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                      const char * s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of HEADER item
s	Pointer to string to be displayed

Additional information

One HEADER item can contain a string and a bitmap.

HEADER_SetItemWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the specified HEADER item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetItemWidth(HEADER_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index, int Width);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of HEADER item
Width	New width

HEADER_SetStreamedBitmap()

Description

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetStreamedBitmap(HEADER_Handle hObj,
                             unsigned int Index,
                             const GUI_BITMAP_STREAM * pBitmap);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of the item
pBitmap	Pointer to streamed bitmap data to be displayed

Additional information

For additional informations regarding streamed bitmap files please take a look at chapter 6, "2-D Graphic Library".

HEADER_SetStreamedBitmapEx()

Description

Sets the bitmap used when displaying the specified item.

Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetStreamedBitmapEx(HDR_Handle hObj,
                                 unsigned int Index,
                                 const GUI_BITMAP_STREAM * pBitmap,
                                 int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of the item
pBitmap	Pointer to streamed bitmap data to be displayed
x	Additional offset in x
y	Additional offset in y

Additional information

For additional informations regarding streamed bitmap files please take a look at chapter 6, "2-D Graphic Library".

HEADER_SetTextColor()**Description**

Sets the text color used when displaying the widget.

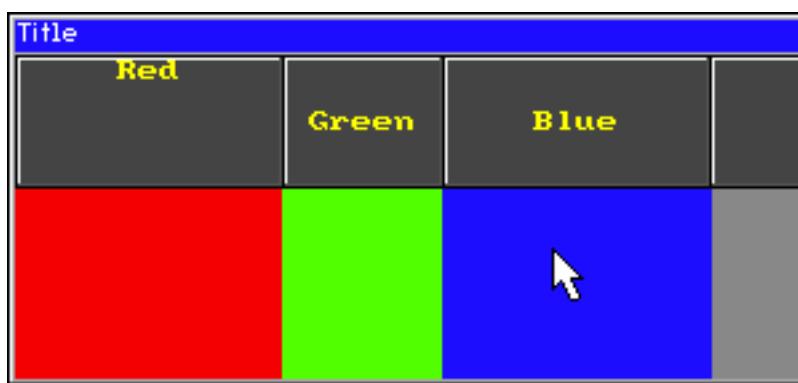
Prototype

```
void HEADER_SetTextColor(HDR_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Color	Color to be used

16.10.5 Example

The source of the following sample is available as WIDGET_Header.c in the samples shipped with µC/GUI:



16.11 LISTBOX: List box widget

List boxes are used to select one element of a list. A list box can be created without a surrounding frame window, as shown below, or as a child window of a FRAMEWIN widget (see the additional screen shots at the end of the section). As items in a list box are selected, they appear highlighted. Note that the background color of a selected item depends on whether the list box window has input focus.

List box with focus	List box without focus
	

All LISTBOX-related routines are in the file(s) LISTBOX*.c, LISTBOX.h. All identifiers are prefixed LISTBOX.

16.11.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	LISTBOX_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Background color, unselected state.
N	LISTBOX_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_GRAY	Background color, selected state without focus.
N	LISTBOX_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT	GUI_BLUE	Background color, selected state with focus.
S	LISTBOX_FONT_DEFAULT	&GUI_Font13_1	Font used.
N	LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Text color, unselected state.
N	LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Text color, selected state without focus.
N	LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Text color, selected state with focus.

16.11.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a list box widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	List box has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	List box has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT	List box has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the box without releasing.
WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED	The scroll position of the optional scrollbar has been changed.
WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED	The selection of the list box has changed.

16.11.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_SPACE	If the widget works in multi selection mode this key toggles the state of the current selected item.
GUI_KEY_RIGHT	If the maximum X-size of the list box items is larger than the list box itself this key scrolls the list box contents to the left.
GUI_KEY_LEFT	If the maximum X-size of the list box items is larger than the list box itself this key scrolls the list box contents to the right.
GUI_KEY_DOWN	Moves the selection bar down.
GUI_KEY_UP	Moves the selection bar up.

16.11.4 LISTBOX API

The table below lists the available μC/GUI LISTBOX-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
LISTBOX_AddString()	Adds an item to a list box.
LISTBOX_Create()	Creates the list box. (Obsolete)
LISTBOX_CreateAsChild()	Creates the list box as a child window. (Obsolete)
LISTBOX_CreateEx()	Creates the list box.
LISTBOX_CreateIndirect()	Creates the list box from resource table entry.
LISTBOX_DecSel()	Decrements selection.
LISTBOX_DeleteItem()	Deletes an element.
LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor()	Returns the default background color for LISTBOX widgets.
LISTBOX_GetDefaultFont()	Returns the default font for LISTBOX widgets.
LISTBOX_GetDefaultScrollStepH()	Returns the default number of pixels to be scrolled horizontal.
LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign()	Returns the default text alignment for new list boxes.
LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor()	Returns the default text color for new list boxes.
LISTBOX_GetFont()	Returns the font of the list box.
LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled()	Returns the disabled state of the given item.
LISTBOX_GetItemSel()	Returns the selection state of a LISTBOX entry.
LISTBOX_GetItemText()	Returns the text of a list box entry.
LISTBOX_GetMulti()	Returns if the multi select mode is active.
LISTBOX_GetNumItems()	Returns the number of items in a list box.
LISTBOX_GetScrollStepH()	Returns the number of pixels to be scrolled horizontal.
LISTBOX_GetSel()	Returns the number of the selected item.
LISTBOX_GetTextAlign()	Returns the text alignment of the LISTBOX.
LISTBOX_IncSel()	Increments selection.
LISTBOX_InsertString()	Inserts an element.
LISTBOX_InvalidateItem()	Invalidates an item of an owner drawn LISTBOX.
LISTBOX_OwnerDraw()	Default function for drawing a LISTBOX entry.
LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH()	Activates automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.
LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollV()	Activates automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.
LISTBOX_SetBkColor()	Sets the background color.
LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor()	Sets the default background color for LISTBOX widgets.

Routine	Explanation
<code>LISTBOX_SetDefaultFont()</code>	Changes the default font for LISTBOX widgets.
<code>LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH()</code>	Sets the default number of pixels to be scrolled horizontal.
<code>LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign()</code>	Sets the default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets.
<code>LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor()</code>	Sets the default text color for LISTBOX widgets.
<code>LISTBOX_SetFont()</code>	Selects the font.
<code>LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled()</code>	Sets the disabled state of the given item.
<code>LISTBOX_SetItemSelected()</code>	Sets the selection state of the given item.
<code>LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing()</code>	Sets a spacing between the items.
<code>LISTBOX_SetMulti()</code>	Sets the multi selection mode on or off.
<code>LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw()</code>	Enables the list box to be owner drawn.
<code>LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor()</code>	Sets the colors of the optional scrollbar.
<code>LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth()</code>	Sets the width of the scrollbars used by the LISTBOX.
<code>LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH()</code>	Sets the number of pixels to be scrolled horizontal.
<code>LISTBOX_SetSel()</code>	Sets the selected item.
<code>LISTBOX_SetString()</code>	Sets the text of an element.
<code>LISTBOX_SetTextAlign()</code>	Sets the text alignment of the LISTBOX.
<code>LISTBOX_SetTextColor()</code>	Sets the foreground color.

LISTBOX_AddString()

Description

Adds an item to an already existing list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_AddString(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, const char* s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of list box.
<code>s</code>	Text to display.

LISTBOX_Create()

Description

Creates a LISTBOX widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
LISTBOX_Handle LISTBOX_Create(const GUI_ConstString* ppText, int x0, int y0,
                               int xSize, int ySize, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>ppText</code>	Pointer to an array of string pointers containing the elements to be displayed.
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the list box (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the list box (in parent coordinates).
<code>xSize</code>	Horizontal size of the list box (in pixels).
<code>ySize</code>	Vertical size of the list box (in pixels).
<code>Flags</code>	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).

Return value

Handle for the created FRAMEWIN widget, 0 on failure.

Additional information

If the parameter `ySize` is greater than the required space for drawing the contents of the widget, the Y-size will be reduced to the required value. The same applies for the `xsize` parameter.

LISTBOX_CreateAsChild()**Description**

Creates a LISTBOX widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
LISTBOX_Handle LISTBOX_CreateAsChild(const GUI_ConstString* ppText,
                                     WM_HWIN hParent, int x0, int y0,
                                     int xSize, int ySize, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>ppText</code>	Pointer to an array of string pointers containing the elements to be displayed.
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window.
<code>x0</code>	X-position of the list box relative to the parent window.
<code>y0</code>	Y-position of the list box relative to the parent window.
<code>xSize</code>	Horizontal size of the list box (in pixels).
<code>ySize</code>	Vertical size of the list box (in pixels).
<code>Flags</code>	Window create flags (see <code>LISTBOX_Create()</code>).

Return value

Handle for the created LISTBOX widget; 0 if the routine fails.

Additional information

If the parameter `ySize` is greater than the space required for drawing the contents of the widget, the Y-size will be reduced to the required value. If `ySize` = 0 the Y-size of the widget will be set to the Y-size of the client area from the parent window. The same applies for the `xsize` parameter.

LISTBOX_CreateEx()**Description**

Creates a LISTBOX widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
LISTBOX_Handle LISTBOX_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsiz, int ysize,
                                 WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                 int ExFlags, int Id,
                                 const GUI_ConstString* ppText);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsiz</code>	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).

Parameter	Meaning
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new HEADER widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
<code>WinFlags</code>	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
<code>ExFlags</code>	Not used, reserved for future use.
<code>Id</code>	Window ID of the widget.
<code>ppText</code>	Pointer to an array of string pointers containing the elements to be displayed.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

LISTBOX_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The elements `Flags` and `Para` of the resource passed as parameter are not used.

LISTBOX_DecSel()

Description

Decrement the list box selection (moves the selection bar of a specified list box up by one item).

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_DecSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of list box.

Additional information

Please note that the numbering of items always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore decrementing the selection will actually move the selection one row up.

LISTBOX_DeleteItem()

Description

Deletes an element from a listbox.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_DeleteItem(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of list box.
<code>Index</code>	Zero based index of element to be deleted.

LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Zero based index for background color (see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTBOX_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTBOX_CI_SELF_FOCUS	Selected element, with focus.

Return value

Default background color for new LISTBOX widgets.

LISTBOX_GetDefaultFont()**Description**

Returns the default font used for creating LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT* LISTBOX_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font.

LISTBOX_GetDefaultScrollStepH()**Description**

Returns the default horizontal scroll step used for creating LISTBOX widgets. The horizontal scroll step defines the number of pixels to be scrolled if needed.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetDefaultScrollStepH(void);
```

Return value

Default horizontal scroll step.

LISTBOX_GetDefault TextAlign()**Description**

Returns the default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetDefault TextAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets.

Additional information

For more information please refer to [LISTBOX_Set TextAlign\(\)](#).

LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Zero based index for text color (see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTBOX_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTBOX_CI_SELFOCUS	Selected element, with focus.

Return value

Default text color for new LISTBOX widgets.

LISTBOX_GetFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to the font used to display the text of the list box.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * LISTBOX_GetFont(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.

Return value

Pointer to the font used to display the text of the list box.

LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled()

Description

Returns if the given list box item has been disabled.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Index	Zero based index of item.

Return value

1 if item has been disabled, 0 if not.

LISTBOX_GetItemSel()

Description

Returns the selection state of the given listbox item. The selection state of a LISTBOX item can be modified in multi selection mode only.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetItemSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Index	Zero based index of item.

Return value

1 if item has been selected, 0 if not.

LISTBOX_GetItemText()

Description

Returns the text of the given list box item.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_GetItemText(LISTBOX_Handle hObj,
                         unsigned Index, char * pBuffer, int MaxSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Index	Zero based index of item.
pBuffer	Pointer to buffer to store the item text.
MaxSize	Size of the buffer.

Additional information

The function copies the text of the given list box item into the given buffer.

LISTBOX_GetMulti()

Description

Returns if the multi selection mode of the given list box is active.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetMulti(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.

Return value

1 if active, 0 if not.

LISTBOX_GetNumItems()

Description

Returns the number of items in a specified list box.

Prototypes

```
unsigned LISTBOX_GetNumItems(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.

Return value

Number of items in the list box.

LISTBOX_GetScrollStepH()

Description

Returns the horizontal scroll step of the given list box.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetScrollStepH(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.

Return value

Horizontal scroll step of the given list box.

LISTBOX_GetSel()

Description

Returns the zero based index of the currently selected item in a specified list box. In multi selection mode the function returns the index of the focused element.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.

Return value

Zero based index of the currently selected item.

Additional information

If no element has been selected the function returns -1.

LISTBOX_GetTextAlign()

Description

Returns the text alignment of the given LISTBOX widget.

Prototype

```
int LISTBOX_GetTextAlign(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

Return value

Text alignment of the given LISTBOX widget.

Additional information

For more information please refer to `LISTBOX_SetTextAlign()`.

LISTBOX_IncSel()

Description

Increment the list box selection (moves the selection bar of a specified list box down by one item).

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_IncSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.

Additional information

Please note that the numbering of items always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore incrementing the selection will actually move the selection one row down.

LISTBOX_InsertString()

Description

Inserts an element into a listbox.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_InsertString(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, const char* s,
                           unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
s	Pointer to string to be inserted.
Index	Zero based index of element to be inserted.

LISTBOX_InvalidateItem()

Description

Invalidates an item of a owner drawn listbox.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_InvalidateItem(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Index	Zero based index of element to be invalidated or LISTBOX_ALL_ITEMS if all items should be invalidated.

Additional information

This function only needs to be called if an item of an owner drawn listbox has been changed. If a listbox API function (like LISTBOX_SetString) has been used to modify a listbox item LISTBOX_InvalidateItem needs not to be called. It needs to be called if the user decides, that for example the vertical size of an item has been changed. With other words if no listbox API function has been used to modify the item this function needs to be called.

LISTBOX_ALL_ITEMS

If all items of a listbox should be invalidated use this define as Index parameter.

LISTBOX_OwnerDraw()

Description

Default function to handle a LISTBOX entry.

Prototypes

```
int LISTBOX_OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pDrawItemInfo	Pointer to a WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO structure.

Additional information

This function is useful if LISTBOX_SetOwnerDrawn has been used. It can be used from your drawing function to retrieve the original x size of a LISTBOX entry and/or to display the text of a LISTBOX entry and should be called for all unhandled commands.

For more information, refer to the section explaining user drawn widgets, LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw() and to the provided sample.

LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
OnOff	(See table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disable automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.
1	Enable automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.

Additional information

If enabled the listbox checks if all elements fits into the listbox. If not a horizontal scrollbar will be attached to the window.

LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollIV()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollIV(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
OnOff	(See table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disable automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.
1	Enable automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.

Additional information

If enabled the listbox checks if all elements fits into the listbox. If not a vertical scrollbar will be added.

LISTBOX_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the list box background color.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetBkColor(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
                        GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Index	Index for background color (see table below).
Color	Color to be set.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTBOX_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTBOX_CI_SELFOCUS	Selected element, with focus.
LISTBOX_CI_DISABLED	Disabled element.

LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor(unsigned Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Zero based index for background color (see table below)
Color	Desired background color.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTBOX_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTBOX_CI_SELFOCUS	Selected element, with focus.
LISTBOX_CI_DISABLED	Disabled element.

LISTBOX_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used for creating LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT* pFont)
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to the font.

LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH()

Description

Sets the default horizontal scroll step used when creating a LISTBOX widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH(int Value);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Value	Number of pixels to be scrolled.

LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign()

Description

Sets the default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign(int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Align	Default text alignment for new LISTBOX widgets.

Additional information

For more information please refer to `LISTBOX_SetTextAlign()`.

LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Sets the default text color for new LISTBOX widgets.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>Index</code>	Zero based index for text color (see table below)
<code>Color</code>	Desired text color.

Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code>	
<code>LISTBOX_CI_UNSEL</code>	Unselected element.
<code>LISTBOX_CI_SEL</code>	Selected element, without focus.
<code>LISTBOX_CI_SELF_FOCUS</code>	Selected element, with focus.

LISTBOX_SetFont()**Description**

Sets the list box font.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetFont(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT* pfont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of list box.
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the font.

LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled()**Description**

Modifies the disable state of the given list box item.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled(LISTBOX_Handle hObj,
                             unsigned Index,
                             int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of list box.
<code>Index</code>	Zero based index of the listbox item.
<code>OnOff</code>	1 for disabled, 0 for not disabled.

Additional information

When scrolling through a list box disabled items will be skipped. You can not scroll to a disabled list box item.

LISTBOX_SetItemSel()

Description

Modifies the selection state of the given list box item.

Prototype

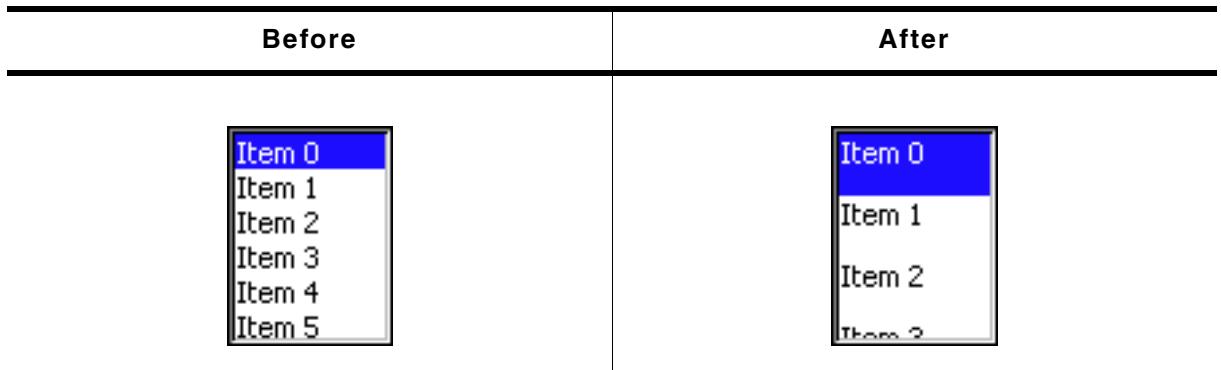
```
void LISTBOX_SetItemSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Index, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Index	Zero based index of the listbox item.
OnOff	1 for selected, 0 for not selected.

Additional information

Setting the selection state of a list box item makes only sense when using the multi selection mode. See also LISTBOX_SetMulti().

LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing()



Description

Sets an additional spacing below the items of a list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Value);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Value	Number of pixels used as additional spacing between the items.

LISTBOX_SetMulti()

Description

Switches the multi selection mode of a LISTBOX on or off.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetMulti(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Mode);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Mode	0 for off, 1 for on.

Additional information

The multi selection mode enables the list box to have more than one selected element. Using the space key would toggle the selection state of a list box item.

LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw()

Description

Sets the list box to be owner drawn.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw(LISTBOX_Handle hObj,
                           WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC * pfDrawItem);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
pfDrawItem	Pointer to owner draw function.

Additional information

This function sets a function pointer to a function which will be called by the widget if a list box item has to be drawn and when the x or y size of a item is needed. It gives you the possibility to draw anything as list box item, not just plain text. pfDrawItem is a pointer to a application-defined function of type WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC which is explained at the beginning of the chapter.

Structure of the user defined owner draw function

The following shows the structure of a typical owner draw function. It assumes that your LISTBOX entrys are 30 pixels wider than and have the same height as the item drawn by the default function:

```
static int _OwnerDraw(const WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO * pDrawItemInfo) {
    switch (pDrawItemInfo->Cmd) {
        case WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE:
            return LISTBOX_OwnerDraw(pDrawItemInfo) + 30; /* Returns the default xsize+10 */
        case WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW:
            /* Your code to be added to draw the LISTBOX item */

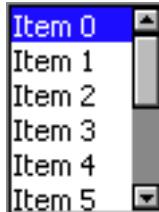
            return 0;
        return LISTBOX_OwnerDraw(pDrawItemInfo); /* Def. function for unhandled cmds */
    }
}
```

Example



The source code of this example is available in the samples as WIDGET_ListBoxOwnerDraw.

LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the colors of the optional scrollbar.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetScrollbarColor(LISTBOX_Handle hObj,
                               unsigned int Index,
                               GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of desired item (see table below).
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
SCROLLBAR_CI_THUMB	Color of thumb area.
SCROLLBAR_CI_SHAFT	Color of shaft.
SCROLLBAR_CI_ARROW	Color of arrows.

LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the scrollbars used by the given list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned Width);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Width	Width of the scrollbar(s) used by the given listbox.

LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH()

Description

Sets the horizontal scroll step of the given list box. The horizontal scroll step defines the number of pixels to be scrolled if needed.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Value);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Value	Number of pixels to be scrolled.

LISTBOX_SetSel()

Description

Sets the selected item of a specified list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetSel(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Sel	Element to be selected.

LISTBOX_SetString()

Description

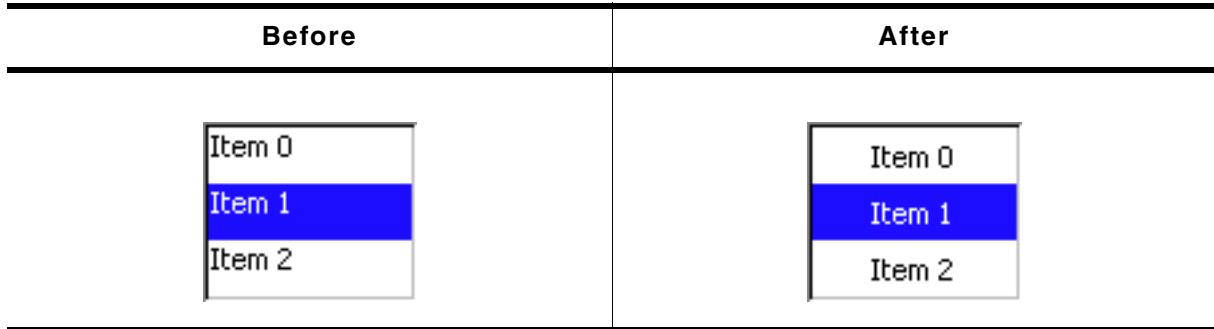
Sets the contents of the given item.

Prototypes

```
void LISTBOX_SetString(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, const char* s,
                      unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
s	Pointer to string containing the new contents.
Index	Zero based index of element to be changed.

LISTBOX_SetTextAlign()



Description

The function sets the text alignment used to display each item of the list box.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetTextAlign(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>Align</code>	Text alignment to be used./**/

Permitted values for parameter <code>Align</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable)	
Horizontal alignment	
<code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code>	Align X-position left (default).
<code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code>	Center X-position.
<code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code>	Align X-position right (default).
Vertical alignment	
<code>GUI_TA_TOP</code>	Align Y-position with top of characters (default).
<code>GUI_TA_VCENTER</code>	Center Y-position.
<code>GUI_TA_BOTTOM</code>	Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font.

Additional information

The default alignment of list boxes is `GUI_TA_LEFT`. Per default the height of each item depends on the height of the font used to render the list box items. So vertical text alignment makes only sense if the function `LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing()` is used to set an additional spacing below the items.

LISTBOX_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the list box text color.

Prototype

```
void LISTBOX_SetTextColor(LISTBOX_Handle hObj, unsigned int Index,
```

```
    GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of list box.
Index	Index for text color (see LISTBOX_SetBackColor()).
Color	Color to be set.

16.11.5 Examples

Using the LISTBOX widget

The following example demonstrates the simple use of the LISTBOX widget. It is available in the samples as WIDGET_SimpleListBox.c:

```
*****
*           Micrium Inc.
*           Empowering embedded systems
*
*           µC/GUI sample code
*
***** uC/GUI- Graphical user interface for embedded applications *****
uC/GUI is protected by international copyright laws. Knowledge of the
source code may not be used to write a similar product. This file may
only be used in accordance with a license and should not be re-
distributed in any way. We appreciate your understanding and fairness.
-----
File      : WIDGET_SimpleListBox.c
Purpose   : Example demonstrating the LISTBOX widget
-----
*/
#include "GUI.h"
#include "LISTBOX.h"
#include <stddef.h>

*****
*
*      defines
*
*****
*/
#define countof(Array) (sizeof(Array) / sizeof(Array[0]))

*****
*
*      static variables
*
*****
*/
static const GUI_ConstString _ListBox[] = {
    "English", "Deutsch", "Français", "Japanese", "Italiano", NULL
};

*****
*
*      static code
*
*****
*/
/*
*      _DemoListBox
```

```

/*
void _DemoListBox(void) {
    int i;
    int Entries = countof(_ListBox) - 1;
    LISTBOX_Handle hListBox;
    int ySize = GUI_GetYDistOfFont(&GUI_Font13B_1) * Entries;
    /* Create the listbox */
    hListBox = LISTBOX_Create(_ListBox, 130, 80, 60, ySize, WM_CF_SHOW);
    /* Change current selection of the listbox */
    for (i = 0; i < Entries-1; i++) {
        GUI_Delay(500);
        LISTBOX_IncSel(hListBox);
        WM_ExecIdle();
    }
    for (i = 0; i < Entries-1; i++) {
        GUI_Delay(500);
        LISTBOX_DecSel(hListBox);
        WM_ExecIdle();
    }
    GUI_Delay(750);
    /* Delete listbox widget */
    LISTBOX_Delete(hListBox);
    GUI_ClearRect(0, 50, 319, 239);
    GUI_Delay(750);
}

*****
*
*      MainTask
*
*      Demonstrates LISTBOX widget
*
*****
*/
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLUE);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("WIDGET_SimpleListBox - Sample", 160, 5);
    while(1) {
        _DemoListBox();
    }
}

```

Screen shot of above example



Using the LISTBOX widget with and without frames

The following example illustrates the use of the LISTBOX widget with and without a frame window. It is available as `WIDGET_ListBox.c`:

```

*****
*                      Micrium Inc. *
*          Empowering embedded systems   *
*                                     *
*          µC/GUI sample code           *
*                                     *
*****
***** uC/GUI- Graphical user interface for embedded applications *****
uC/GUI is protected by international copyright laws. Knowledge of the

```

source code may not be used to write a similar product. This file may only be used in accordance with a license and should not be redistributed in any way. We appreciate your understanding and fairness.

```
-----  
File      : WIDGET_ListBox.c  
Purpose   : Example demonstrating the LISTBOX widget  
-----  
*/  
  
#include "GUI.h"  
#include "FRAMEWIN.h"  
#include "LISTBOX.h"  
#include <stddef.h>  
  
#define SPEED 1000  
  
/*  
 *      static variables  
 *  
 */  
  
static const GUI_ConstString _ListBox[] = {  
    "English", "Deutsch", NULL  
};  
  
/*  
 *      static code  
 *  
 */  
/*  
 */  
/*  
 *      _ShowSeveralFunctions  
 */  
static void _ShowSeveralFunctions(LISTBOX_Handle hListBox) {  
    int NumEntries, i;  
    /* Add scrollbar */  
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached", 5, 55);  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);  
    SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached(hListBox, SCROLLBAR_CF_VERTICAL);  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);  
    /* Add strings */  
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_AddString", 5, 55);  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);  
    LISTBOX_AddString(hListBox, "Français");  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 6);  
    LISTBOX_AddString(hListBox, "Japanese");  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 6);  
    LISTBOX_AddString(hListBox, "Italiano");  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 6);  
    LISTBOX_AddString(hListBox, "Español");  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 6);  
    LISTBOX_AddString(hListBox, "Other language ...");  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.6);  
    /* Set focus */  
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("WM_SetFocus", 5, 55);  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.9);  
    WM_SetFocus(hListBox);  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.7);  
    /* Set font */  
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_SetFont", 5, 55);  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.9);  
    LISTBOX_SetFont(hListBox, &GUI_Font13B_1);  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.7);  
    /* Increment selection */  
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_IncSel", 5, 55);  
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);  
    NumEntries = LISTBOX_GetNumItems(hListBox);  
    for (i = 0; i < NumEntries - 1; i++) {  
        LISTBOX_IncSel(hListBox);  
    }
```

```

        GUI_Delay(SPEED / 6);
    }
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 4);
    /* Show automatic scrollbar */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("Optional automatic scrollbar", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);
    LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH(hListBox, 1);
    LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollV(hListBox, 1);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
    /* Set font */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_SetFont", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);
    LISTBOX_SetFont(hListBox, &GUI_Font16B_1);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
    /* Decrement selection */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_DecSel", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);
    for (i = 0; i < NumEntries - 1; i++) {
        LISTBOX_DecSel(hListBox);
        GUI_Delay(SPEED / 6);
    }
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 4);
    /* Change width of scrollbar */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("Change scrollbar width", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.7);
    {
        SCROLLBAR_Handle hScrollH = WM_GetDialogItem(hListBox, GUI_ID_HSCROLL);
        SCROLLBAR_Handle hScrollV = WM_GetDialogItem(hListBox, GUI_ID_VSCROLL);
        SCROLLBAR_SetWidth(hScrollV, 14);
        GUI_Delay(SPEED / 4);
        SCROLLBAR_SetWidth(hScrollH, 14);
        GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.6);
    }
    /* Change size of listbox */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("Change size of listbox", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
    WM_ResizeWindow(hListBox, -15, 0);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 4);
    WM_ResizeWindow(hListBox, 0, -15);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 4);
    WM_ResizeWindow(hListBox, 15, 0);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 4);
    WM_ResizeWindow(hListBox, 0, 15);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 2);
    /* Disable item */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);
    LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled(hListBox, 4, 1);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
    /* Set multi selection mode */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_SetMulti", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);
    LISTBOX_SetMulti(hListBox, 1);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
    /* Select item */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_SetItemSel", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);
    LISTBOX_SetItemSel(hListBox, 0, 1);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 4);
    LISTBOX_SetItemSel(hListBox, 1, 1);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 4);
    LISTBOX_SetItemSel(hListBox, 2, 1);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.8);
    /* Delete listbox widget */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_Delete", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 1.1);
    LISTBOX_Delete(hListBox);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
}
*****  

*          _DemoListBox

```

```
/*
static void _DemoListBox(void) {
    LISTBOX_Handle hListBox;
    /* Display title */
    GUI_SetBkColor(0xB00000);
    GUI_SetColor(0xFFFFF);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Listbox - Sample", 160, 5);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 2);
    /* Create listbox */
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_SetTextAlign(GUI_TA_LEFT);
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("using", 5, 40);
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_Create", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.9);
    hListBox = LISTBOX_Create(_ListBox, 100, 80, 120, 115, WM_CF_SHOW);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
    /* Show several functions of listbox */
    _ShowSeveralFunctions(hListBox);
    /* Clear display */
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 1.5);
}

*****
*
*      _DemoListBoxAsChild
*/
static void _DemoListBoxAsChild(void) {
    FRAMEWIN_Handle hFrame;
    LISTBOX_Handle hListBox;
    /* Display title */
    GUI_SetBkColor(0xB00000);
    GUI_SetColor(0xFFFFF);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Listbox as child - Sample", 160, 5);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED / 2);
    /* Create framewin */
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_SetTextAlign(GUI_TA_LEFT);
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("using", 5, 40);
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("FRAMEWIN_Create", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);
    hFrame = FRAMEWIN_Create("List box", NULL, WM_CF_SHOW, 100, 80, 120, 140);
    FRAMEWIN_SetFont(hFrame, &GUI_Font16B_ASCII);
    FRAMEWIN_SetActive(hFrame, 1);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
    /* Create listbox */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("LISTBOX_CreateAsChild", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);
    hListBox = LISTBOX_CreateAsChild(_ListBox, WM_GetClientWindow(hFrame), 0, 0, 0, 0,
    WM_CF_SHOW);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
    /* Show several functions of listbox */
    _ShowSeveralFunctions(hListBox);
    /* Delete framewin widget */
    GUI_DispStringAtCEOL("FRAMEWIN_Delete", 5, 55);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED);
    FRAMEWIN_Delete(hFrame);
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 0.75);
    /* Clear display */
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_Delay(SPEED * 1.5);
}

*****
*
*      MainTask
*
*      Demonstrates LISTBOX widget
*****
*/
```

```
void MainTask(void) {  
    GUI_Init();  
    WM_SetDesktopColor(0xB00000);  
    GUI_Exec();  
    while(1) {  
        _DemoListBox();  
        _DemoListBoxAsChild();  
    }  
}
```

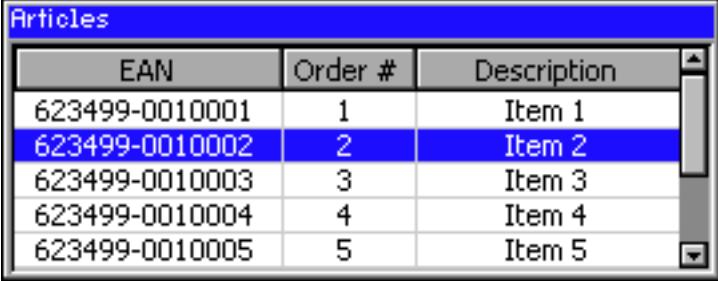
Screen shots of above example



16.12 LISTVIEW: Listview widget

LISTVIEW widgets are used to select one element of a list with several columns. To manage the columns a LISTVIEW widget contains a HEADER widget. A LISTVIEW can be created without a surrounding frame window or as a child window of a FRAMEWIN widget. As items in a listview are selected, they appear highlighted. Note that the background color of a selected item depends on whether the LISTVIEW window has input focus. The table below shows the appearance of the LISTVIEW widget:

Explanation	LISTVIEW widget																		
No focus No surrounding FRAMEWIN No SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines not visible	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr style="background-color: #cccccc;"> <th style="width: 15%;">EAN</th> <th style="width: 15%;">Order #</th> <th style="width: 70%;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>623499-0010001</td><td>1</td><td>Item 1</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010002</td><td>2</td><td>Item 2</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010003</td><td>3</td><td>Item 3</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010004</td><td>4</td><td>Item 4</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010005</td><td>5</td><td>Item 5</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	EAN	Order #	Description	623499-0010001	1	Item 1	623499-0010002	2	Item 2	623499-0010003	3	Item 3	623499-0010004	4	Item 4	623499-0010005	5	Item 5
EAN	Order #	Description																	
623499-0010001	1	Item 1																	
623499-0010002	2	Item 2																	
623499-0010003	3	Item 3																	
623499-0010004	4	Item 4																	
623499-0010005	5	Item 5																	
Has input focus No surrounding FRAMEWIN No SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines not visible	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr style="background-color: #cccccc;"> <th style="width: 15%;">EAN</th> <th style="width: 15%;">Order #</th> <th style="width: 70%;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>623499-0010001</td><td>1</td><td>Item 1</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010002</td><td>2</td><td>Item 2</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010003</td><td>3</td><td>Item 3</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010004</td><td>4</td><td>Item 4</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010005</td><td>5</td><td>Item 5</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	EAN	Order #	Description	623499-0010001	1	Item 1	623499-0010002	2	Item 2	623499-0010003	3	Item 3	623499-0010004	4	Item 4	623499-0010005	5	Item 5
EAN	Order #	Description																	
623499-0010001	1	Item 1																	
623499-0010002	2	Item 2																	
623499-0010003	3	Item 3																	
623499-0010004	4	Item 4																	
623499-0010005	5	Item 5																	
Has input focus With surrounding FRAMEWIN No SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines not visible	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr style="background-color: #0000ff; color: white;"> <th style="width: 15%;">EAN</th> <th style="width: 15%;">Order #</th> <th style="width: 70%;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>623499-0010001</td><td>1</td><td>Item 1</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010002</td><td>2</td><td>Item 2</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010003</td><td>3</td><td>Item 3</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010004</td><td>4</td><td>Item 4</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010005</td><td>5</td><td>Item 5</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	EAN	Order #	Description	623499-0010001	1	Item 1	623499-0010002	2	Item 2	623499-0010003	3	Item 3	623499-0010004	4	Item 4	623499-0010005	5	Item 5
EAN	Order #	Description																	
623499-0010001	1	Item 1																	
623499-0010002	2	Item 2																	
623499-0010003	3	Item 3																	
623499-0010004	4	Item 4																	
623499-0010005	5	Item 5																	
Has input focus With surrounding FRAMEWIN SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines not visible	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr style="background-color: #0000ff; color: white;"> <th style="width: 15%;">EAN</th> <th style="width: 15%;">Order #</th> <th style="width: 70%;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>623499-0010001</td><td>1</td><td>Item 1</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010002</td><td>2</td><td>Item 2</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010003</td><td>3</td><td>Item 3</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010004</td><td>4</td><td>Item 4</td></tr> <tr><td>623499-0010005</td><td>5</td><td>Item 5</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	EAN	Order #	Description	623499-0010001	1	Item 1	623499-0010002	2	Item 2	623499-0010003	3	Item 3	623499-0010004	4	Item 4	623499-0010005	5	Item 5
EAN	Order #	Description																	
623499-0010001	1	Item 1																	
623499-0010002	2	Item 2																	
623499-0010003	3	Item 3																	
623499-0010004	4	Item 4																	
623499-0010005	5	Item 5																	

Explanation	LISTVIEW widget
Has input focus With surrounding FRAMEWIN SCROLLBAR attached Grid lines visible	

16.12.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
S	LISTVIEW_FONT_DEFAULT	&GUI_Font13_1	Default font
N	LISTVIEW_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Background color, unselected state.
N	LISTVIEW_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_GRAY	Background color, selected state without focus.
N	LISTVIEW_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT	GUI_BLUE	Background color, selected state with focus.
N	LISTVIEW_SCROLLSTEP_H_DEFAULT	10	Defines the number of pixels to be scrolled if needed.
N	LISTVIEW_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Text color, unselected state.
N	LISTVIEW_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Text color, selected state without focus.
N	LISTVIEW_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Text color, selected state with focus.
N	LISTVIEW_GRIDCOLOR_DEFAULT	GUI_LIGHTGRAY	Color of grid lines (if shown)
N	LISTVIEW_ALIGN_DEFAULT	GUI_TA_VCENTER GUI_TA_HCENTER	Default text alignment

16.12.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a LISTVIEW widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	Widget has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	Widget has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT	Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the widget without releasing.
WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED	The scroll position of the optional scrollbar has been changed.
WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED	The selection of the list box has changed.

16.12.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_UP	Moves the selection bar up.
GUI_KEY_DOWN	Moves the selection bar down.
GUI_KEY_RIGHT	If the total amount of the column width is > than the inside area of the listview, the contents scrolls to the left.
GUI_KEY_LEFT	If the total amount of the column width is > than the inside area of the listview, the contents scrolls to the right.

16.12.4 LISTVIEW API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI LISTVIEW-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>LISTVIEW_AddColumn()</code>	Adds a column to a LISTVIEW.
<code>LISTVIEW_AddRow()</code>	Adds a row to a LISTVIEW.
<code>LISTVIEW_CompareDec()</code>	Compare function for comparing 2 integer values.
<code>LISTVIEW_CompareText()</code>	Compare function for comparing 2 strings.
<code>LISTVIEW_Create()</code>	Creates a LISTVIEW widget. (Obsolete)
<code>LISTVIEW_CreateAttached()</code>	Creates a LISTVIEW widget attached to a window.
<code>LISTVIEW_CreateEx()</code>	Creates a LISTVIEW widget.
<code>LISTVIEW_CreateIndirect()</code>	Creates a LISTVIEW widget from a resource table entry.
<code>LISTVIEW_DecSel()</code>	Decrements selection.
<code>LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn()</code>	Deletes the given column.
<code>LISTVIEW_DeleteRow()</code>	Deletes the given row.
<code>LISTVIEW_DisableRow()</code>	Sets the state of the given row to disabled.
<code>LISTVIEW_DisableSort()</code>	Disables sorting of the LISTVIEW.
<code>LISTVIEW_EnableRow()</code>	Sets the state of the given row to enabled.
<code>LISTVIEW_EnableSort()</code>	Enables sorting of the LISTVIEW.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetBkColor()</code>	Returns the background color of the LISTVIEW.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetFont()</code>	Returns the font of the LISTVIEW.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetHeader()</code>	Returns the handle of the attached HEADER widget.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetItemText()</code>	Returns the text of the given cell.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns()</code>	Returns the number of columns.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetNumRows()</code>	Returns the number of rows.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetSel()</code>	Returns the number of the selected item.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted()</code>	Returns the number of the selected item in unsorted state.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetTextColor()</code>	Returns the text color of the LISTVIEW.
<code>LISTVIEW_GetUserData()</code>	Returns the user data of the given row.
<code>LISTVIEW_IncSel()</code>	Increments selection.
<code>LISTVIEW_InsertRow()</code>	Inserts a new row at the given position.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollH()</code>	Enables the automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollV()</code>	Enables the automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetBkColor()</code>	Sets the background color.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetColumnWidth()</code>	Sets the column width.

Routine	Explanation
<code>LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()</code>	Sets the compare function for the given column.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor()</code>	Sets the default background color for HEADER widgets.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetDefaultFont()</code>	Sets the default font for HEADER widgets.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetDefaultGridColor()</code>	Sets the default text color for HEADER widgets.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor()</code>	Sets the default color of the grid lines for HEADER widgets.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetFixed()</code>	Fixes the given number of columns.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetFont()</code>	Sets the font of the LISTVIEW.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetGridVis()</code>	Sets the visibility flag of the grid lines.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor()</code>	Sets the background color of a LISTVIEW cell
<code>LISTVIEW_SetItemText()</code>	Sets the text of a LISTVIEW cell.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor()</code>	Sets the text color of a LISTVIEW cell
<code>LISTVIEW_SetLBorder()</code>	Sets the number of pixels used for the left border.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetRBorder()</code>	Sets the number of pixels used for the right border.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight()</code>	Sets the row height of the LISTVIEW
<code>LISTVIEW_SetSel()</code>	Sets the current selection.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted()</code>	Sets the current selection in unsorted state.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetSort()</code>	Sets the column and sorting order to be sorted by.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetTextAlign()</code>	Sets the text alignment of a column.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetTextColor()</code>	Sets the text color.
<code>LISTVIEW_SetUserData()</code>	Sets the user data of the given row.

LISTVIEW_AddColumn()

Description

Adds a new column to a LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_AddColumn(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                        int Width,
                        const char * s,
                        int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget
<code>Width</code>	Width of the new column
<code>s</code>	Text to be displayed in the HEADER widget
<code>Align</code>	Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag.

Permitted values for parameter <code>Align</code> (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable)	
Horizontal alignment	
<code>GUI_TA_LEFT</code>	Align X-position left (default).
<code>GUI_TA_HCENTER</code>	Center X-position.
<code>GUI_TA_RIGHT</code>	Align X-position right (default).
Vertical alignment	

Permitted values for parameter Align (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable)	
GUI_TA_TOP	Align Y-position with top of characters (default).
GUI_TA_VCENTER	Center Y-position.
GUI_TA_BOTTOM	Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font.

Additional information

The `Width`-parameter can be 0. If `Width` = 0 the width of the new column will be calculated by the given text and by the default value of the horizontal spacing. You can only add columns to an 'empty' LISTVIEW widget. If it contains 1 or more rows you can not add a new column.

LISTVIEW_AddRow()

Description

Adds a new row to a LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_AddRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                      const GUI_ConstString * ppText);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget
<code>ppText</code>	Pointer to array containing the text of the LISTVIEW cells

Additional information

The `ppText`-array should contain one item for each column of the HEADER-widget.

LISTVIEW_CompareDec()

Description

Compare function for comparing 2 integer values.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_CompareDec(const void * p0, const void * p1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>p0</code>	Void pointer to first value:
<code>p1</code>	Void pointer to second value.

Return value

< 0 if value of cell 0 greater than value of cell 1.
0 if value of cell 0 identical to value of cell 1.
> 0 if value of cell 0 less than value of cell 1.

Additional information

The purpose of this function is to be used by the listviews sorting algorithm if the cell text represens integer values.

For details about how to use this function for sorting please also refer to `LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()`.

The sample folder contains the sample `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_CompareText()

Description

Compare function for comparing 2 integer values.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_CompareText(const void * p0, const void * p1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>p0</code>	Void pointer to first text:
<code>p1</code>	Void pointer to second text.

Return value

> 0 if text of cell 0 greater than text of cell 1.
 0 if text of cell 0 identical to text of cell 1.
 < 0 if text of cell 0 less than text of cell 1.

Additional information

The purpose of this function is to be used by the listviews sorting algorithm.
 For details about how to use this function for sorting please also refer to `LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()`.
 The sample folder contains the sample `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_Create()

(Obsolete, `LISTVIEW_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a LISTVIEW widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
LISTVIEW_Handle LISTVIEW_Create(int x0, int y0,
                                 int xsize, int ysize,
                                 WM_HWIN hParent, int Id,
                                 int Flags, int SpecialFlags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the HEADER widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the HEADER widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the HEADER widget (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the HEADER widget (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of the parent window
<code>Id</code>	Id of the new HEADER widget
<code>Flags</code>	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
<code>SpecialFlags</code>	(Reserved for later use)

Return value

Handle for the created LISTVIEW widget; 0 if the routine fails.

LISTVIEW_CreateAttached()**Description**

Creates a LISTVIEW widget which is attached to an existing window.

Prototype

```
LISTVIEW_Handle LISTVIEW_CreateAttached(WM_HWIN hParent,
                                         int Id,
                                         int SpecialFlags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget
<code>Id</code>	Id of the new LISTVIEW widget
<code>SpecialFlags</code>	(Not used, reserved for later use)

Return value

Handle for the created LISTVIEW widget; 0 if the routine fails.

Additional information

An attached LISTVIEW widget is essentially a child window which will position itself on the parent window and operate accordingly.

LISTVIEW_CreateEx()**Description**

Creates a LISTVIEW widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
LISTVIEW_Handle LISTVIEW_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                   WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                   int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new LISTVIEW widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
<code>WinFlags</code>	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
<code>ExFlags</code>	Not used, reserved for future use.
<code>Id</code>	Window ID of the widget.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

LISTVIEW_CreateIndirect()

Description

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter.

LISTVIEW_DecSel()

Description

Decrement the listview selection (moves the selection bar of a specified listview up by one item, if possible).

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_DecSel(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Additional information

Please note that the numbering of items always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore decrementing the selection will actually move the selection one row up.

LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn()

Description

Deletes the specified column of the listview.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Zero based index of column to be deleted.

Additional information

Please note that the numbering of items always starts from the left with a value of 0.

LISTVIEW_DeleteRow()

Description

Deletes the specified row of the listview.

Prototype

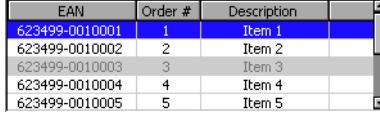
```
void LISTVIEW_DeleteRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Zero based index of row to be deleted.

Additional information

Please note that the numbering of items always starts from the top with a value of 0.

LISTVIEW_DisableRow()

Before	After
	

Description

The function sets the state of the given row to disabled.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_DisableRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Row);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Row	Zero based index of the row to be disabled.

Additional information

When scrolling through a listview disabled items will be skipped. You can not scroll to a disabled listview item.

LISTVIEW_DisableSort()

Description

Disables sorting of the given listview. After calling this function the contents of the listview will be shown unsorted.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_DisableSort(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

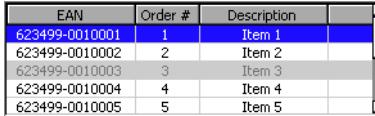
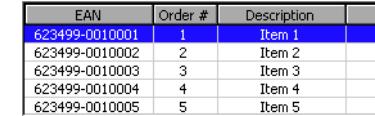
Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Additional information

For details about how to use sorting in listview widgets please also refer to the functions `LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()` and `LISTVIEW_SetSort()`.

The sample folder contains the sample WIDGET_SortedListview.c which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_EnableRow()

Before	After
	

Description

The function sets the state of the given row to enabled.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_EnableRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Row);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Row	Zero based index of the row to be disabled.

Additional information

Please refer to [LISTVIEW_DisableRow\(\)](#).

LISTVIEW_EnableSort()

Description

Enables sorting for the given listview. After calling this function the contents of the listview can be rendered sorted after clicking on the header item of the desired column, by which the listview should sort its data. Please note, that this works only after a compare function for the desired column has been set.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_EnableSort(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Additional information

For details about how to set a compare function please refer to [LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc\(\)](#).

The sample folder contains the sample `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_GetBkColor()

Description

Returns the background color of the given listview.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_GetBkColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget
<code>Index</code>	Index of color (see table below)

Permitted values for parameter <code>Index</code>	
<code>LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL</code>	Unselected element.
<code>LISTVIEW_CI_SEL</code>	Selected element, without focus.
<code>LISTVIEW_CI_SELF_FOCUS</code>	Selected element, with focus.

Return value

Background color of the given listview.

LISTVIEW_GetFont()

Description

Returns a pointer to the font used to display the text of the listview.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * LISTVIEW_GetFont(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.

Return value

Pointer to the font used to display the text of the listview.

LISTVIEW_GetHeader()

Description

Returns the handle of the HEADER widget.

Prototype

```
HEADER_Handle LISTVIEW_GetHeader(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget

Return value

Handle of the HEADER widget.

Additional information

Each LISTVIEW widget contains a HEADER widget to manage the columns. You can use this handle to change the properties of the LISTVIEW-HEADER, for example to change the text color of the HEADER widget.

Example:

```
LISTVIEW_Handle hListView = LISTVIEW_Create(10, 80, 270, 89, 0, 1234, WM_CF_SHOW, 0);
HEADER_Handle hHeader = LISTVIEW_GetHeader(hListView);
HEADER_SetTextColor(hHeader, GUI_GREEN);
```

LISTVIEW_GetItemText()

Description

Returns the text of the given listview cell by copying it to the given buffer.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_GetItemText(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                          unsigned Column, unsigned Row,
                          char* pBuffer, unsigned MaxSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Column	Zero based index of the cell's column.
Row	Zero based index of the cell's row
pBuffer	Pointer to a buffer to be filled by the routine.
MaxSize	Size in bytes of the buffer.

Additional information

If the text of the cell does not fit into the buffer, the number of bytes specified by the parameter MaxSize will be copied to the buffer.

LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns()

Description

Returns the number of columns of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Return value

Number of columns of the given LISTVIEW widget.

LISTVIEW_GetNumRows()

Description

Returns the number of rows of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_GetNumRows (LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Return value

Number of rows of the given LISTVIEW widget.

LISTVIEW_GetSel()**Description**

Returns the number of the currently selected row in a specified LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_GetSel (LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Return value

Number of the currently selected row.

LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted()**Description**

Returns the index of the currently selected row in unsorted state.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted (LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

Return value

Index of the currently selected row in unsorted state.

Additional information

This function returns the actually index of the selected row, whereas the function `LISTVIEW_GetSel()` only returns the index of the sorted row. The actuall (unsorted) row index should be used in function calls as row index.

The sample folder contains the sample `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_GetTextColor()**Description**

Returns the text color of the given listview.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_GetTextColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of color (see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTVIEW_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTVIEW_CI_SELF_FOCUS	Selected element, with focus.

Return value

Text color of the given listview.

LISTVIEW_GetUserData()

Description

Returns the user data of the given row.

Prototype

```
U32 LISTVIEW_GetUserData(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Row);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Row	Zero based index of row.

Return value

User data of the given row.

Additional information

For details about how to set user data of a row please refer to the function LISTVIEW_SetUserData().

LISTVIEW_IncSel()

Description

Increment the list box selection (moves the selection bar of a specified LISTVIEW down by one item).

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_IncSel(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget

LISTVIEW_InsertRow()

Description

Inserts a new row into the listview at the given position.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_InsertRow(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                      unsigned Index,
                      const GUI_ConstString * ppText);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index of the new row.
ppText	Pointer to a string array containing the cell data of the new row.

Return value

0 if function succeed, 1 if an error occurs.

Additional information

The `ppText`-array should contain one item for each column. If it contains less items the remaining cells left blank.

If the given index is \geq the current number of rows, the function `LISTVIEW_AddRow()` will be used to add the new row.

The sample folder contains the sample `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollH()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollH(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
OnOff	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter <code>OnOff</code>	
0	Disable automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.
1	Enable automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.

Additional information

If enabled the listview checks if all columns fit into the widgets area. If not a horizontal scrollbar will be added.

LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollV()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollV(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
OnOff	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disable automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.
1	Enable automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.

Additional information

If enabled the listview checks if all rows fit into the widgets area. If not a vertical scrollbar will be added.

LISTVIEW_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetBkColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                        unsigned int Index,
                        GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index for background color (see table below).
Color	Color to be set.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTVIEW_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS	Selected element, with focus.
LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED	Disabled element.

Additional Information

To set the background color for a single cell the function LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor() should be used.

LISTVIEW_SetColumnWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the given column.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetColumnWidth(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                            unsigned int Index,
```

```
int Width);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Number of column
Width	New width

LISTVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color for new LISTVIEW widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index of default background color (see table below)
Color	Color to be set as default

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTVIEW_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS	Selected element, with focus.
LISTVIEW_CI_DISABLED	Disabled element.

Return value

Previous default value.

LISTVIEW_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font for new LISTVIEW widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * LISTVIEW_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to font used for new LISTVIEW widgets

Return value

Previous default value.

LISTVIEW_SetDefaultGridColor()

Description

Sets the default color of the grid lines for new LISTVIEW widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_SetDefaultGridColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	New default value

Return value

Previous default value

LISTVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color for new LISTVIEW widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR LISTVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index of default text color (see table below)
Color	Color to be set as default

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Unselected element.
1	Selected element, without focus.
2	Selected element, with focus.

Return value

Previous default value.

LISTVIEW_SetFixed()

Description

Fixes the given number of columns at their horizontal positions.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_SetFixed(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Fixed);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of listview.
Fixed	Number of columns to be fixed at their horizontal positions.

Additional Information

Using this function makes sense if one or more columns should remain at their horizontal positions during scrolling operations.

LISTVIEW_SetFont()

Description

Sets the listview font.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetFont(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pfont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of listview.
pFont	Pointer to the font.

LISTVIEW_SetGridVis()

Description

Sets the visibility flag of the grid lines. When creating a LISTVIEW the grid lines are disabled per default.

Prototype

```
int LISTVIEW_SetGridVis(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int Show);
```

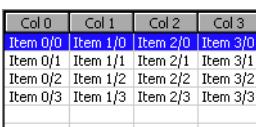
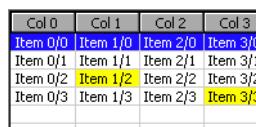
Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Show	Sets the visibility of the grid lines

Permitted values for parameter Show	
0	Not visible.
1	Visible

Return value

Previous value of the visibility flag.

LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the background color of the given cell.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                             unsigned Column, unsigned Row,
```

```
unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Column	Number of column.
Row	Number of row.
Index	Index of background color (see table below).
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTVIEW_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTVIEW_CI_SELF_FOCUS	Selected element, with focus.

Additional Information

This function overwrites the default background color for the given cell set by LISTVIEW_SetBkColor().

LISTVIEW_SetItemText()

Description

Sets the text of one cell of the LISTVIEW widget specified by row and column.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetItemText(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                           unsigned Column,
                           unsigned Row,
                           const char * s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Column	Number of column.
Row	Number of row.
s	Text to be displayed in the table cell.

LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor()

Before	After																																																
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Col 0</th><th>Col 1</th><th>Col 2</th><th>Col 3</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td><td>Item 1/0</td><td>Item 2/0</td><td>Item 3/0</td></tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td><td>Item 1/1</td><td>Item 2/1</td><td>Item 3/1</td></tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td><td>Item 1/2</td><td>Item 2/2</td><td>Item 3/2</td></tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td><td>Item 1/3</td><td>Item 2/3</td><td>Item 3/3</td></tr> <tr> <td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Col 0	Col 1	Col 2	Col 3	Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0	Item 3/0	Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1	Item 3/1	Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2	Item 3/2	Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3	Item 3/3					<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Col 0</th><th>Col 1</th><th>Col 2</th><th>Col 3</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td><td>Item 1/0</td><td>Item 2/0</td><td>Item 3/0</td></tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td><td>Item 1/1</td><td>Item 2/1</td><td>Item 3/1</td></tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td><td>Item 1/2</td><td>Item 2/2</td><td>Item 3/2</td></tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td><td>Item 1/3</td><td>Item 2/3</td><td>Item 3/3</td></tr> <tr> <td> </td><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Col 0	Col 1	Col 2	Col 3	Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0	Item 3/0	Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1	Item 3/1	Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2	Item 3/2	Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3	Item 3/3				
Col 0	Col 1	Col 2	Col 3																																														
Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0	Item 3/0																																														
Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1	Item 3/1																																														
Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2	Item 3/2																																														
Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3	Item 3/3																																														
Col 0	Col 1	Col 2	Col 3																																														
Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0	Item 3/0																																														
Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1	Item 3/1																																														
Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2	Item 3/2																																														
Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3	Item 3/3																																														

Description

Sets the text color of the given cell.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                               unsigned Column, unsigned Row,
                               unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Column	Number of column.
Row	Number of row.
Index	Index of text color (see table below).
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTVIEW_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS	Selected element, with focus.

Additional Information

This function overwrites the default text color for the given cell set by LISTVIEW_SetTextColor().

LISTVIEW_SetLBorder()

Before	After																														
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Column 0</th> <th>Column 1</th> <th>Column 2</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td> <td>Item 1/0</td> <td>Item 2/0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td> <td>Item 1/1</td> <td>Item 2/1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td> <td>Item 1/2</td> <td>Item 2/2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td> <td>Item 1/3</td> <td>Item 2/3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Column 0	Column 1	Column 2	Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0	Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1	Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2	Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Column 0</th> <th>Column 1</th> <th>Column 2</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Item 0/0</td> <td>Item 1/0</td> <td>Item 2/0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/1</td> <td>Item 1/1</td> <td>Item 2/1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/2</td> <td>Item 1/2</td> <td>Item 2/2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Item 0/3</td> <td>Item 1/3</td> <td>Item 2/3</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Column 0	Column 1	Column 2	Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0	Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1	Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2	Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3
Column 0	Column 1	Column 2																													
Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0																													
Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1																													
Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2																													
Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3																													
Column 0	Column 1	Column 2																													
Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0																													
Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1																													
Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2																													
Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3																													

Description

Sets the number of pixels used for the left border within each cell of the listview.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetLBorder(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned BorderSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
BorderSize	Number of pixels to be used.

Additional Information

Using this function has no effect to the header widget used by the listview.

LISTVIEW_SetRBorder()

Before	After																														
<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 33%;">Column 0</th><th style="width: 33%;">Column 1</th><th style="width: 33%;">Column 2</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Item 0/0</td><td>Item 1/0</td><td>Item 2/0</td></tr> <tr><td>Item 0/1</td><td>Item 1/1</td><td>Item 2/1</td></tr> <tr><td>Item 0/2</td><td>Item 1/2</td><td>Item 2/2</td></tr> <tr><td>Item 0/3</td><td>Item 1/3</td><td>Item 2/3</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Column 0	Column 1	Column 2	Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0	Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1	Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2	Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 33%;">Column 0</th><th style="width: 33%;">Column 1</th><th style="width: 33%;">Column 2</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Item 0/0</td><td>Item 1/0</td><td>Item 2/0</td></tr> <tr><td>Item 0/1</td><td>Item 1/1</td><td>Item 2/1</td></tr> <tr><td>Item 0/2</td><td>Item 1/2</td><td>Item 2/2</td></tr> <tr><td>Item 0/3</td><td>Item 1/3</td><td>Item 2/3</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Column 0	Column 1	Column 2	Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0	Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1	Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2	Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3
Column 0	Column 1	Column 2																													
Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0																													
Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1																													
Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2																													
Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3																													
Column 0	Column 1	Column 2																													
Item 0/0	Item 1/0	Item 2/0																													
Item 0/1	Item 1/1	Item 2/1																													
Item 0/2	Item 1/2	Item 2/2																													
Item 0/3	Item 1/3	Item 2/3																													

Description

Sets the number of pixels used for the right border within each cell of the listview.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetRBorder(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned BorderSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
BorderSize	Number of pixels to be used.

Additional Information

Using this function has no effect to the header widget used by the listview.

LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight()

Description

Sets the number of pixels used for the height of each row of the listview.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned RowHeight);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

Return value

Previous value of the row height set by this function. If the return value is 0, the height of the rows depends on the height of the font used by the widget.

Additional Information

Per default the height of the rows depends on the height of the used font.

LISTVIEW_SetSel()

Description

Sets the selected row of a specified LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetSel(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Sel	Element to be selected.

LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted()**Description**

Sets the index of the currently selected row in unsorted state.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, int Sel);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Sel	Zero based selection index in unsorted state.

Additional information

This function sets the actually index of the selected row, whereas the function LISTVIEW_SetSel() sets the index of the sorted row. The actuall (unsorted) row index should be used in function calls as row index.

The sample folder contains the sample WIDGET_SortedListview.c which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_SetSort()

Before			After																																																														
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Code</th> <th>Balance</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Name 12</td><td>OEJUV</td><td>-233</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 24</td><td>OEFXZ</td><td>97</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 30</td><td>PSFAD</td><td>3745</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 29</td><td>FXTLS</td><td>-2296</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 39</td><td>ENZKY</td><td>-2918</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 56</td><td>KASVW</td><td>1944</td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>			Name	Code	Balance	Name 12	OEJUV	-233	Name 24	OEFXZ	97	Name 30	PSFAD	3745	Name 29	FXTLS	-2296	Name 39	ENZKY	-2918	Name 56	KASVW	1944										<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name ▾</th> <th>Code</th> <th>Balance</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Name 56</td><td>KASVW</td><td>1944</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 39</td><td>ENZKY</td><td>-2918</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 30</td><td>PSFAD</td><td>3745</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 29</td><td>FXTLS</td><td>-2296</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 24</td><td>OEFXZ</td><td>97</td></tr> <tr><td>Name 12</td><td>OEJUV</td><td>-233</td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> <tr><td> </td><td> </td><td> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>			Name ▾	Code	Balance	Name 56	KASVW	1944	Name 39	ENZKY	-2918	Name 30	PSFAD	3745	Name 29	FXTLS	-2296	Name 24	OEFXZ	97	Name 12	OEJUV	-233									
Name	Code	Balance																																																															
Name 12	OEJUV	-233																																																															
Name 24	OEFXZ	97																																																															
Name 30	PSFAD	3745																																																															
Name 29	FXTLS	-2296																																																															
Name 39	ENZKY	-2918																																																															
Name 56	KASVW	1944																																																															
Name ▾	Code	Balance																																																															
Name 56	KASVW	1944																																																															
Name 39	ENZKY	-2918																																																															
Name 30	PSFAD	3745																																																															
Name 29	FXTLS	-2296																																																															
Name 24	OEFXZ	97																																																															
Name 12	OEJUV	-233																																																															

Description

This function sets the column to be sorted by and the sorting order.

Prototype

```
unsigned LISTVIEW_SetSort(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
```

```
unsigned Column, unsigned Reverse);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Column	Column to be sorted by.
Reverse	0 for normal sorting order (greatest element at the top), 1 for reverse order.

Return value

0 if function was successfully, 1 if not.

Additional information

Before calling this function a compare function needs to be set for the desired column. For details about how to set a compare function please refer to the function `LISTVIEW_SetCompareFunc()`.

The sample folder contains the sample `WIDGET_SortedListview.c` which shows how to use the function.

LISTVIEW_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the alignment for the given column.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetTextAlign(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                           unsigned int Index,
                           int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Number of column
Align	Text alignment mode to set. May be a combination of a horizontal and a vertical alignment flag.

Permitted values for parameter Align (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable)
Horizontal alignment

GUI_TA_LEFT	Align X-position left (default).
GUI_TA_HCENTER	Center X-position.
GUI_TA_RIGHT	Align X-position right (default).

Vertical alignment

GUI_TA_TOP	Align Y-position with top of characters (default).
GUI_TA_VCENTER	Center Y-position.
GUI_TA_BOTTOM	Align Y-position with bottom pixel line of font.

LISTVIEW_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the text color of the given LISTVIEW widget.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetTextColor(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj,
                           unsigned int Index,
                           GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget
Index	Index for text color (see table below).
Color	Color to be set.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
LISTVIEW_CI_UNSEL	Unselected element.
LISTVIEW_CI_SEL	Selected element, without focus.
LISTVIEW_CI_SELFOCUS	Selected element, with focus.

LISTVIEW_SetUserData()**Description**

Sets the user data of the given row.

Prototype

```
void LISTVIEW_SetUserData(LISTVIEW_Handle hObj, unsigned Row, U32 UserData);
```

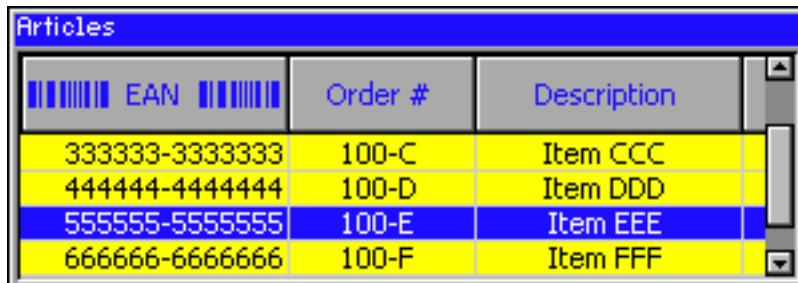
Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Row	Row for which the user data should be set.
UserData	Value to be associated with the row.

Additional information

Sets the 32-bit value associated with the row. Each row has a corresponding 32-bit value intended for use by the application.

16.12.5 Example

The source of the following sample is available as `WIDGET_Header.c` in the samples shipped with `μC/GUI`:

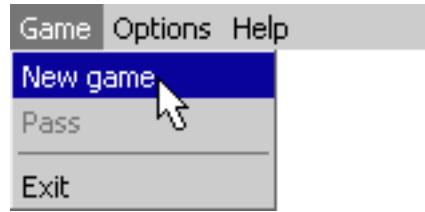
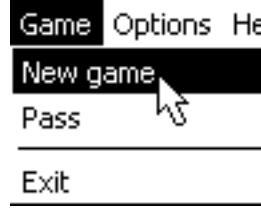
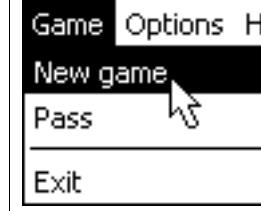


16.13 MENU: Menu widget

The MENU widget can be used to create several kinds of menus. Each menu item represents an application command or a submenu. MENUS can be shown horizontally and/or vertically. Menu items can be grouped using separators. Separators are supported for horizontal and vertical menus. Selecting a menu item sends a WM_MENU message to the owner of the menu or opens a submenu.

The shipment of µC/GUI contains a application sample which shows how to use the MENU widget. It can be found under Sample\Application\Reversi.c.

The table below shows the appearance of a horizontal MENU widget with a vertical submenu:

Explanation	Menu using WIDGET_Effect_3D1L	Menu using WIDGET_Effect_Simple
Color display (8666 mode)		
Monochrome display (16 gray scales)		
Black/white display		

The table above shows the appearance of the menu widget using its default effect WIDGET_Effect_3D1L and using WIDGET_Effect_Simple. It also works with all other effects.

16.13.1 Menu messages

To inform its owner about selecting an item or opening a submenu the menu widget sends a message of type `WM_MENU` to its owner.

WM_MENU

Description

This message is sent to inform the owner of a menu about selecting an item or opening a submenu. Disabled menu items will not send this message.

Data

The `Data.p` pointer of the message points to a `MENU_MSG_DATA` structure.

Elements of MENU_MSG_DATA

Data type	Element	Meaning
U16	MsgType	(see table below)
U16	ItemId	Id of menu item.

Permitted values for element <code>MsgType</code>	
MENU_ON_INITMENU	This message is send to the owner of menu immediately before the menu opens. This gives the application the chance to modify the menu before it is shown.
MENU_ON_ITEMSELECT	This message is send to the owner of a menu immediately after a menu item is selected. The <code>ItemId</code> element contains the Id of the pressed menu item.

Sample

The following sample shows how to react on a `WM_MENU` message:

```
void Callback(WM_MESSAGE* pMsg) {
    MENU_MSG_DATA * pData;
    WM_HWIN hWin = pMsg->hWin;
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_MENU:
            pData = (MENU_MSG_DATA*)pMsg->Data.p;
            switch (pData->MsgType) {
                case MENU_ON_INITMENU:
                    break;
                case MENU_ON_ITEMSELECT:
                    switch (pData->ItemId) {
                        case ID_MENU_ITEM0:
                            ... /* React on selection of menu item 0 */
                            break;
                        case ID_MENU_ITEM1:
                            ... /* React on selection of menu item 1 */
                            break;
                        case ...
                            ...
                    }
                    break;
            }
    }
}
```

16.13.2 Data structures

The following shows the menu widget related data structures.

MENU_ITEM_DATA

This structure serves as a container to set or retrieve information about menu items.

Elements of MENU_ITEM_DATA

Data type	Element	Meaning
const char *	pText	Menu item text.
U16	Id	Id of the menu item.
U16	Flags	(see table below)
MENU_Handle	h_submenu	If the item represents a submenu this element contains the handle of the submenu.

Permitted values for element Flags	
MENU_IF_DISABLED	Item is disabled.
MENU_IF_SEPARATOR	Item is a separator.

16.13.3 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	MENU_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_LIGHTGRAY	Background color for enabled and unselected items.
N	MENU_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT	0x980000	Background color for enabled and selected items.
N	MENU_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT	GUI_LIGHTGRAY	Background color for disabled items.
N	MENU_BKCOLOR3_DEFAULT	0x980000	Background color for disabled and selected items.
N	MENU_BKCOLOR4_DEFAULT	0x7C7C7C	Background color for active submenu items.
N	MENU_BORDER_BOTTOM_DEFAULT	2	Border between item text and item bottom.
N	MENU_BORDER_LEFT_DEFAULT	4	Border between item text and left edge of item.
N	MENU_BORDER_RIGHT_DEFAULT	4	Border between item text and right edge of item.
N	MENU_BORDER_TOP_DEFAULT	2	Border between item text and item top.
S	MENU_EFFECT_DEFAULT	WIDGET_Effect_3D1L	Default effect.
S	MENU_FONT_DEFAULT	GUI_Font13_1	Font used.
N	MENU_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Text color for enabled and unselected items.
N	MENU_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Text color for enabled and selected items.
N	MENU_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT	0x7C7C7C	Text color for disabled items.
N	MENU_TEXTCOLOR3_DEFAULT	GUI_LIGHTGRAY	Text color for disabled and selected items.
N	MENU_TEXTCOLOR4_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Text color for active submenu items.

16.13.4 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_RIGHT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is horizontal, the selection moves one item to the right. - If the menu is vertical and the current item is a submenu, the submenu opens and the input focus moves to the submenu. - If the menu is vertical and the current item is not a submenu and the top level menu is horizontal, the next item of the top level menu opens and the input focus moves to it.
GUI_KEY_LEFT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is horizontal the selection moves one item to the left. - If the menu is vertical and the menu is not the top level menu, the current menu closes and the focus moves to the previous menu. If the previous menu is horizontal the previous submenu of it opens and the focus moves to the previous submenu.
GUI_KEY_DOWN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is horizontal and the current menu item is a submenu this submenu opens. - If the menu is vertical, the selection moves to the next item.

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_UP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is vertical, the selection moves to the previous item. - If the menu is not the top level menu the current menu will be closed and the focus moves to the previous menu.
GUI_KEY_ESCAPE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the menu is the top level menu, the current menu item becomes unselected.
GUI_KEY_ENTER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the current menu item is a submenu, the submenu opens and the focus moves to the submenu. - If the current menu item is not a submenu, all submenus of the top level menu closes and a MENU_ON_ITEMSELECT message will be send to the owner of the menu.

16.13.5 MENU API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI MENU-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>MENU.AddItem()</code>	Adds an item to an existing menu.
<code>MENU.Attach()</code>	Attaches a menu with the given size at the given position to a specified window.
<code>MENU.CreateEx()</code>	Creates a menu widget.
<code>MENU.DeleteItem()</code>	Deletes the specified menu item.
<code>MENU_DisableItem()</code>	Disables the specified menu item.
<code>MENU_EnableItem()</code>	Enables the specified menu item.
<code>MENU_GetDefaultBkColor()</code>	Returns the default background color for new menus.
<code>MENU_GetDefaultBorderSize()</code>	Returns the default border size for new menus.
<code>MENU_GetDefaultEffect()</code>	Returns the default effect for new menus.
<code>MENU_GetDefaultFont()</code>	Returns a pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.
<code>MENU_GetDefaultTextColor()</code>	Returns the default text color for new menus.
<code>MENU_GetItem()</code>	Retrieves information about the given menu item.
<code>MENU_GetItemText()</code>	Returns the text of the given menu item.
<code>MENU_GetNumItems()</code>	Returns the number of items of the given menu.
<code>MENU_InsertItem()</code>	Inserts a menu item.
<code>MENU_Popup()</code>	Opens a popup menu at the given position.
<code>MENU_SetBkColor()</code>	Sets the background color of the given menu.
<code>MENU_SetBorderSize()</code>	Sets the border size of the given menu.
<code>MENU_SetDefaultBkColor()</code>	Sets the default background color for new menus.
<code>MENU_SetDefaultBorderSize()</code>	Sets the default border size for new menus.
<code>MENU_SetDefaultEffect()</code>	Sets the default effect for new menus.
<code>MENU_SetDefaultFont()</code>	Sets a pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.
<code>MENU_SetDefaultTextColor()</code>	Sets the default text color for new menus.
<code>MENU_SetFont()</code>	Sets the font used to display the menu item text of the given menu.
<code>MENU_SetItem()</code>	Changes the information about the given menu item.
<code>MENU_SetOwner()</code>	Sets the window to be informed by the menu.
<code>MENU_SetTextColor()</code>	Sets the text color of the given menu.

MENU.AddItem()

Before	After
	

Description

This function adds a new item to the end of the given menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_AddItem(MENU_Handle hObj, const MENU_ITEM_DATA * pItemData);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>pItemData</code>	Pointer to a MENU_ITEM_DATA structure containing the information of the new item.

Additional Information

If using a menu with several submenus the Id of the menu items should be unique. Different submenus should not contain menu items with the same Ids.

When adding items to a menu and no fixed sizes are used the size of the menu will be adapted.

Please refer to the beginning of the menu chapter for details about the MENU_ITEM_INFO data structure.

MENU.Attach()

Description

Attaches the given menu at the given position with the given size to a specified window.

Prototype

```
void MENU_Attach(MENU_Handle hObj,
                  WM_HWIN hDestWin,
                  int x, int y, int xSize, int ySize,
                  int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>hDestWin</code>	Handle to the window to which the menu should be attached.
<code>x</code>	X position in window coordinates of the menu.
<code>y</code>	Y position in window coordinates of the menu.
<code>xSize</code>	Fixed X size of the menu. For details please refer to MENU_CreateEx().
<code>ySize</code>	Fixed Y size of the menu. For details please refer to MENU_CreateEx().
<code>Flags</code>	Reserved for future use

Additional Information

This function is useful if a menu should be shown in different windows. The typical use is a popup menu which should appear in different windows.

MENU_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a menu of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
MENU_Handle MENU_CreateEx(int x0, int y0,
                           int xSize, int ySize,
                           WM_HWIN hParent,
                           int WinFlags, int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xSize	Fixed horizontal size of the widget (in pixels). 0 if menu should handle the xSize.
ySize	Fixed vertical size of the widget (in pixels). 0 if menu should handle the ySize.
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	(see table below)
Id	Window ID of the widget.

Permitted values for parameter ExFlags	
MENU_CF_HORIZONTAL	Creates a horizontal menu.
MENU_CF_VERTICAL	Creates a vertical menu.
MENU_CF_OPEN_ON_POINTEROVER	This flag specifies if the menu should open a submenu if the pointer input device (PID) points on the menu item. The default behavior is opening on clicking, that means submenus are opened only if the PID is clicked and released during pointing on the menu.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

Additional Information

The parameters xSize and/or ySize specifies if a fixed width and/or height should be used for the menu.

If these parameters are > 0, fixed sizes should be used. If for example the menu should be attached as a horizontal menu to the top of a window it can be necessary to use a fixed X size which covers the whole top of the window. In this case the parameter xSize can be used to set a fixed X size of the menu. When attaching or deleting items of a menu with a fixed size the size of the widget does not change.

If the values are 0, the menu handles its size itself. That means the size of the menu depends on the size of the current menu items of a menu. If items are added or removed the size of the widget will be adapted.

MENU_DeleteItem()

Before	After
	

Description

Deletes a given menu entry from a menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_DeleteItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
ItemId	Id of the menu item to be deleted.

Additional Information

If the item does not exist the function returns immediately.

When deleting items from a menu and no fixed sizes are used the window size will be adapted.

MENU_DisableItem()

Before	After
	

Description

Disables the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_DisableItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
ItemId	Id of the menu item to be disabled.

Additional Information

If a disabled menu item is selected, the menu widget sends no WM_MENU message to the owner. A disabled submenu item can not be opened.

MENU_EnableItem()

Before	After
	

Description

Enables the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_EnableItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
ItemId	Id of the menu item to be enabled.

Additional Information

For details please refer to function [MENU_DisableItem\(\)](#).

MENU_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color used to draw new menu items.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR MENU_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned ColorIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
ColorIndex	Index of color to be returned (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter ColorIndex	
MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU	Background color of active submenu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED	Background color of disabled menu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL	Background color of disabled and selected menu items.
MENU_CI_ENABLED	Background color of enabled and not selected menu items.
MENU_CI_SELECTED	Background color of enabled and selected menu items.

Return value

Default background color used to draw new menu items.

Additional Information

For details please refer to function `MENU_SetBkColor()`.

MENU_GetDefaultBorderSize()**Description**

Returns the default border size used for new menu widgets.

Prototype

```
U8 MENU_GetDefaultBorderSize(unsigned BorderIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>BorderIndex</code>	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter <code>BorderIndex</code>	
<code>MENU_BI_BOTTOM</code>	Border between item text and item bottom.
<code>MENU_BI_LEFT</code>	Border between item text and left edge of item.
<code>MENU_BI_RIGHT</code>	Border between item text and right edge of item
<code>MENU_BI_TOP</code>	Border between item text and item top.

Return value

Default border size used for new menu widgets.

Additional Information

For details please refer to function `MENU_SetBorderSize()`.

MENU_GetDefaultEffect()**Description**

Returns the default effect for new menus.

Prototype

```
const WIDGET_EFFECT * MENU_GetDefaultEffect(void);
```

Return value

The result of the function is a pointer to a `WIDGET_EFFECT` structure.

Additional Information

For more information please refer to the function `WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()`.

MENU_GetDefaultFont()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT GUI_UNI_PTR * MENU_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.

MENU_GetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Returns the default text color for new menus.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR MENU_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned ColorIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
ColorIndex	Index of color to be returned (see table below)

Permitted values for parameter ColorIndex	
MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU	Text color of active submenu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED	Text color of disabled menu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL	Text color of disabled and selected menu items.
MENU_CI_ENABLED	Text color of enabled and not selected menu items.
MENU_CI_SELECTED	Text color of enabled and selected menu items.

Return value

Default text color for new menus.

Additional Information

For details please refer to function `MENU_SetTextColor()`.

MENU_GetItem()**Description**

Retrieves information about the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_GetItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId, MENU_ITEM_DATA * pItemData);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
ItemId	Id of the requested menu item.
pItemData	Pointer to a MENU_ITEM_DATA structure to be filled by the function.

Additional Information

If using a menu with several submenus the handle of the widget needs to be the handle of the menu/submenu containing the requested item or the handle of a higher menu/submenu.

The function sets the element `pText` of the `MENU_ITEM_INFO` data structure to 0. To retrieve the menu item text the function `MENU_GetItemText()` should be used.

Please refer to the beginning of the menu chapter for details about the `MENU_ITEM_INFO` data structure.

MENU_GetItemText()

Description

Returns the text of the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_GetItemText(MENU_Handle hObj,
                      U16 ItemId,
                      char * pBuffer, unsigned BufferSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
ItemId	Id of the requested menu item.
pBuffer	Buffer to be filled by the function.
BufferSize	Maximum number of bytes to be retrieved.

MENU_GetNumItems()

Description

Returns the number of items of the given menu.

Prototype

```
unsigned MENU_GetNumItems(MENU_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.

Return value

Number of items of the given menu.

MENU_InsertItem()

Before	After
	

Description

Inserts a menu item at the given position.

Prototype

```
void MENU_InsertItem(MENU_Handle hObj, U16 ItemId,
```

```
const MENU_ITEM_DATA * pItemData);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
ItemId	Id of the menu item the new item should be inserted before.
pItemData	Pointer to a MENU_ITEM_DATA structure containing the information of the new item.

Additional Information

Please refer to the beginning of the menu chapter for details about the MENU_ITEM_INFO data structure.

MENU_Popup()

Description

Opens the given menu at the given position. After selecting a menu item or after touching the display outside the menu the popup menu will be closed.

Prototype

```
void MENU_Popup(MENU_Handle hObj, WM_HWIN hDestWin,
                 int x, int y,
                 int xSize, int ySize, int Flags);
```

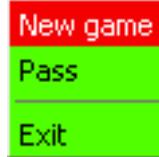
Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
hDestWin	Handle to the window to which the menu should be attached.
x	X position in window coordinates of the menu.
y	Y position in window coordinates of the menu.
xSize	Fixed X size of the menu. For details please refer to MENU_CreateEx().
ySize	Fixed Y size of the menu. For details please refer to MENU_CreateEx().
Flags	Reserved for future use

Additional Information

After selecting a menu item or after touching the display outside the popup menu the menu will be closed. Please note that the menu will not be deleted automatically.

The sample folder contains the sample WIDGET_PopupMenu.c which shows how to use the function.

MENU_SetBkColor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the background color of the given menu.

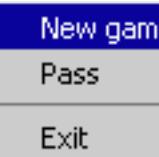
Prototype

```
void MENU_SetBkColor(MENU_Handle hObj, unsigned ColorIndex,
                      GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
ColorIndex	Index of color (see table below)
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter ColorIndex	
MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU	Background color of active submenu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED	Background color of disabled menu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL	Background color of disabled and selected menu items.
MENU_CI_ENABLED	Background color of enabled and not selected menu items.
MENU_CI_SELECTED	Background color of enabled and selected menu items.

MENU_SetBorderSize()

Before	After
	

The following code is executed between the screenshots above:

```
MENU_SetBorderSize(hMenuGame, MENU_BI_LEFT, 20);
```

Before	After
Game Options Help	Game Options Help

The following code is executed between the screenshots above:

```
MENU_SetBorderSize(hMenu, MENU_BI_LEFT, 10);
MENU_SetBorderSize(hMenu, MENU_BI_RIGHT, 10);
```

Description

Sets the border size of the given menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetBorderSize(MENU_Handle hObj, unsigned BorderIndex,
                       U8 BorderSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
BorderIndex	(see table below)
BorderSize	Size to be used.

Permitted values for parameter BorderIndex	
MENU_BI_BOTTOM	Border between item text and item bottom.
MENU_BI_LEFT	Border between item text and left edge of item.
MENU_BI_RIGHT	Border between item text and right edge of item
MENU_BI_TOP	Border between item text and item top.

MENU_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used to draw new menu items.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultBkColor(unsigned ColorIndex, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
ColorIndex	Index of color to be returned (see table below).
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter ColorIndex	
MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU	Background color of active submenu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED	Background color of disabled menu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL	Background color of disabled and selected menu items.
MENU_CI_ENABLED	Background color of enabled and not selected menu items.
MENU_CI_SELECTED	Background color of enabled and selected menu items.

Additional Information

For details please refer to function `MENU_SetBkColor()`.

MENU_SetDefaultBorderSize()

Description

Sets the default border size used for new menu widgets.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultBorderSize(unsigned BorderIndex, U8 BorderSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>BorderIndex</code>	(see table below)
<code>BorderSize</code>	Border size to be used.

Permitted values for parameter <code>BorderIndex</code>	
<code>MENU_BI_BOTTOM</code>	Border between item text and item bottom.
<code>MENU_BI_LEFT</code>	Border between item text and left edge of item.
<code>MENU_BI_RIGHT</code>	Border between item text and right edge of item
<code>MENU_BI_TOP</code>	Border between item text and item top.

Additional Information

For details please refer to function `MENU_SetBorderSize()`.

MENU_SetDefaultEffect()

Description

Sets the default effect for new menus.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultEffect(const WIDGET_EFFECT* pEffect);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pEffect</code>	Pointer to a <code>WIDGET_EFFECT</code> structure.

Additional Information

For more information please refer to the function `WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect()`.

MENU_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT GUI_UNI_PTR * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the <code>GUI_FONT</code> structure to be used.

Additional Information

For details please refer to function `MENU_SetFont()`.

MENU_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color for new menus.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetDefaultTextColor(unsigned ColorIndex, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>ColorIndex</code>	Index of color to be used (see table below)
<code>Color</code>	Color to be used

Permitted values for parameter <code>ColorIndex</code>	
<code>MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU</code>	Text color of active submenu items.
<code>MENU_CI_DISABLED</code>	Text color of disabled menu items.
<code>MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL</code>	Text color of disabled and selected menu items.
<code>MENU_CI_ENABLED</code>	Text color of enabled and not selected menu items.
<code>MENU_CI_SELECTED</code>	Text color of enabled and selected menu items.

Additional Information

For details please refer to function `MENU_SetTextColor()`.

MENU_SetFont()

Before	After
	

Description

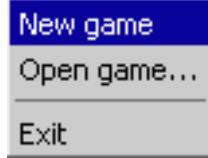
Sets the pointer to the default font used to display the menu item text of new menus.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetFont(MENU_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT GUI_UNI_PTR * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to the <code>GUI_FONT</code> structure to be used.

MENU_SetItem()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the item information for the given menu item.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetItem(MENU_Handle hObj,
                  U16 ItemId, const MENU_ITEM_DATA * pItemData);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>ItemId</code>	Id of the menu item to be changed.
<code>pItemData</code>	Pointer to a MENU_ITEM_DATA structure containing the new information.

MENU_SetOwner()

Description

Sets the owner of the menu to be informed by the widget.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetOwner(MENU_Handle hObj, WM_HWIN hOwner);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>hOwner</code>	Handle of the owner window which should receive the WM_MENU messages of the menu.

Additional Information

If no owner is set the parent window of the menu will receive WM_MENU messages. In some cases it makes sense to send the messages not to the parent window of the menu. In this case this function can be used to set the recipient for the WM_MENU messages.

MENU_SetTextColor()

Before	After

Description

Sets the text color of the given menu.

Prototype

```
void MENU_SetTextColor(MENU_Handle hObj,
                      unsigned ColorIndex, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
ColorIndex	Index of color to be used (see table below)
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter ColorIndex	
MENU_CI_ACTIVE_SUBMENU	Text color of active submenu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED	Text color of disabled menu items.
MENU_CI_DISABLED_SEL	Text color of disabled and selected menu items.
MENU_CI_ENABLED	Text color of enabled and not selected menu items.
MENU_CI_SELECTED	Text color of enabled and selected menu items.

16.14 MESSAGEBOX: Message box widget

A MESSAGEBOX widget is used to show a message in a frame window with a title bar, as well as an "OK" button which must be pressed in order to close the window. It requires only one line of code to create or to create and execute a message box. All MESSAGEBOX-related routines are in the file(s) MESSAGEBOX*.c, MESSAGEBOX.h and GUI.h. The table below shows the appearance of the MESSAGEBOX widget:

Simple message box



16.14.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	MESSAGEBOX_BORDER	4	Distance between the elements of a message box and the elements of the client window frame.
N	MESSAGEBOX_XSIZEOK	50	X-size of the "OK" button.
N	MESSAGEBOX_YSIZEOK	20	Y-size of the "OK" button.
S	MESSAGEBOX_BKCOLOR	GUI_WHITE	Color of the client window background.

16.14.2 Keyboard reaction

The widget consists of a frame window, a text and a button widget. When executing a message box the button gains the input focus. So please refer to the keyboard reaction of the button widget for more information.

16.14.3 MESSAGEBOX API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI MESSAGEBOX-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
GUI_MessageBox()	Creates and displays a message box.
MESSAGEBOX_Create()	Creates a message box.

GUI_MessageBox()

Description

Creates and displays a message box.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MessageBox(const char* sMessage, const char* sCaption, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
sMessage	Message to display.
sCaption	Caption for the title bar of the frame window.
Flags	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Flags	
GUI_MESSAGEBOX_CF_MOVEABLE	The message box can be moved by dragging the title bar or the frame.
0	No function.

Additional Information

This function gives you the possibility to create and execute a message box with one line of code. The sample folder contains the sample `DIALOG_MessageBox.c` which shows how to use this function.

For details about dragging please refer to the function `FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable()`.

MESSAGEBOX_Create()

Description

Creates a message box.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN GUI_MessageBox(const char* sMessage, const char* sCaption, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
sMessage	Message to display.
sCaption	Caption for the title bar of the frame window.
Flags	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Flags	
GUI_MESSAGEBOX_CF_MODAL	Creates a modal message box. The default is creating a non modal message box.

Return value

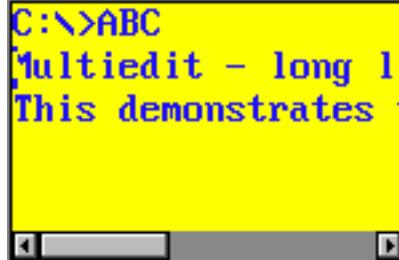
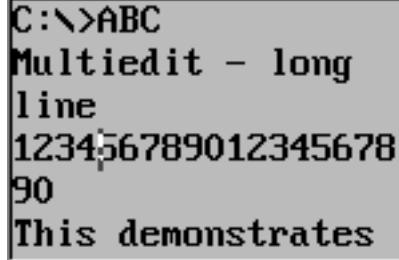
Handle of the message box window.

Additional information

This function gives you the possibility to create a messagebox before it is executed. The advantage of using this function is the possibility of changing the dialog properties or the dialog behaviour by using a user defined callback function. The function `GUI_ExecCreatedDialog()` should be used to execute the message box.

16.15 MULTIEDIT: Multi line text widget

The MULTIEDIT widget enables you to edit text with multiple lines. You can use it as a simple text editor or to display static text. The widget supports scrolling with and without scrollbars. All MULTIEDIT-related routines are in the file(s) MULTIEDIT*.c, MULTIEDIT.h. All identifiers are prefixed MULTIEDIT. The table below shows the appearance of the MULTIEDIT widget:

Explanation	Frame window
edit mode, automatic horizontal scrollbar, non wrapping mode, insert mode,	
edit mode, automatic vertical scrollbar, word wrapping mode, overwrite mode,	
read only mode, word wrapping mode	

16.15.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
S	MULTIEDIT_FONT_DEFAULT	GUI_Font13_1	Font used.
N	MULTIEDIT_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_WHITE	Background color.
N	MULTIEDIT_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT	0xC0C0C0	Background color read only mode.
N	MULTIEDIT_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Text color.
N	MULTIEDIT_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Text color read only mode.

16.15.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	Widget has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	Widget has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT	Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the widget without releasing.
WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED	The scroll position of the optional scrollbar has been changed.
WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED	The text of the widget has been changed.

16.15.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_UP	Moves the cursor one line up.
GUI_KEY_DOWN	Moves the cursor one line down.
GUI_KEY_RIGHT	Moves the cursor one character to the right.
GUI_KEY_LEFT	Moves the cursor one character to the left.
GUI_KEY_END	Moves the cursor to the end of the current row.
GUI_KEY_HOME	Moves the cursor to the begin of the current row.
GUI_KEY_BACKSPACE	If the widget works in read/write mode this key deletes the character before the cursor.
GUI_KEY_DELETE	If the widget works in read/write mode this key deletes the character below the cursor.
GUI_KEY_INSERT	Toggles between insert and overwrite mode.
GUI_KEY_ENTER	If the widget works in read/write mode this key inserts a new line ('\n') at the current position. If the widget works in read only mode the cursor will be moved to the beginning of the next line.

16.15.4 MULTIEDIT API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI MULTIEDIT-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>MULTIEDIT_AddKey()</code>	Key input routine.
<code>MULTIEDIT_AddText()</code>	Adds additional text at the current cursor position.
<code>MULTIEDIT_Create()</code>	Creates a multiedit widget. (Obsolete)
<code>MULTIEDIT_CreateEx()</code>	Creates a multiedit widget.
<code>MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos()</code>	Returns the number of the character at the cursor position.
<code>MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos()</code>	Returns the pixel position of the cursor.
<code>MULTIEDIT_GetPrompt()</code>	Returns the text of the prompt.
<code>MULTIEDIT_GetText()</code>	Returns the text.
<code>MULTIEDIT_GetTextSize()</code>	Returns the buffer size used by the current text.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollH()</code>	Activates automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollV()</code>	Activates automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetBkColor()</code>	Sets the background color.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetBufferSize()</code>	Sets the buffer size used for text and prompt.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetCursorOffset()</code>	Sets the cursor to the given character.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetFont()</code>	Sets the font.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetInsertMode()</code>	Enables/disables the insert mode.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars()</code>	Sets the maximum number of characters including the prompt.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode()</code>	Enables/disables password mode.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetPrompt()</code>	Sets the prompt text.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetReadOnly()</code>	Enables/disables the read only mode.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetText()</code>	Sets the text.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign()</code>	Sets the text alignment.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetTextColor()</code>	Sets the text color,
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetWrapWord()</code>	Enables/disables word wrapping.
<code>MULTIEDIT_SetWrapNone()</code>	Enables/disables the non wrapping mode.

`MULTIEDIT_AddKey()`

Description

Adds user input to a specified multiedit widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_AddKey(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int Key);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of multiedit widget.
<code>Key</code>	Character to be added.

Additional information

The specified character is added to the user input of the multiedit widget. If the maximum count of characters has been reached, another character will not be added.

MULTIEDIT_AddText()

Description

Adds the given text at the current cursor position.

Prototype

```
int MULTIEDIT_AddText(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, const char * s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
s	Pointer to a NULL terminated text to be added.

Additional information

If the number of characters exceeds the limit set with the function `MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars()` the function will add only the characters of the text which fit into the widget respecting the limit.

MULTIEDIT_Create()

(Obsolete, `MULTIEDIT_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a MULTIEDIT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
MULTIEDIT_HANDLE MULTIEDIT_Create(int x0, int y0,
                                    int xsize, int ysize,
                                    WM_HWIN hParent, int Id, int Flags,
                                    int ExFlags, const char * pText,
                                    int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the multiedit widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the multiedit widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the multiedit widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the multiedit widget (in pixels).
hParent	Parent window of the multiedit widget.
Id	ID of the multiedit widget.
Flags	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	(see table below)
pText	Text to be used.
MaxLen	Maximum number of bytes for text and prompt.

Permitted values for parameter ExFlags	
<code>MULTIEDIT_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_H</code>	Automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.
<code>MULTIEDIT_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_V</code>	Automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.
<code>MULTIEDIT_CF_INSERT</code>	Enables insert mode.
<code>MULTIEDIT_CF_READONLY</code>	Enables read only mode.

Return value

Handle for the created MULTIEDIT widget; 0 if the routine fails.

MULTIEDIT_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a MULTIEDIT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
MULTIEDIT_HANDLE MULTIEDIT_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                     WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                     int ExFlags, int Id,
                                     int BufferSize, const char* pText);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new MULTIEDIT widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	(see table below)
Id	Window ID of the widget.
BufferSize	Initial text buffer size of the widget. Use MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars to set the maximum number of characters.
pText	Text to be used.

Permitted values for parameter ExFlags	
MULTIEDIT_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_H	Automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.
MULTIEDIT_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR_V	Automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.
MULTIEDIT_CF_INSERT	Enables insert mode.
MULTIEDIT_CF_READONLY	Enables read only mode.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos()

Description

Returns the number of the character at the cursor position.

Prototype

```
int MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos(MULTIEDIT_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.

Return value

Number of the character at the cursor position.

Additional Information

The widget returns the character position if it has the focus or not. This means the cursor position is also returned, if the cursor is currently not visible in the widget.

MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos()**Description**

Returns the pixel position of the cursor in window coordinates.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos(MULTIEDIT_Handle hObj,
                                 int * pxPos, int * pyPos);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
pxPos	Pointer to integer variable for the X-position in window coordinates.
pyPos	Pointer to integer variable for the Y-position in window coordinates.

Additional Information

The widget returns the pixel position if it has the focus or not. This means the cursor position is also returned, if the cursor is currently not visible in the widget.

MULTIEDIT_GetPrompt()**Description**

Returns the current prompt text.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_GetPrompt(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, char * sDest, int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
sDest	Buffer for the prompt text to be returned.
MaxLen	Maximum number of bytes to be copied to sDest.

Additional information

The function copies the current prompt text to the buffer given by sDest. The maximum number of bytes copied to the buffer is given by MaxLen.

MULTIEDIT_GetText()**Description**

Returns the current text.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_GetText(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, char * sDest, int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
sDest	Buffer for the text to be returned.
MaxLen	Maximum number of bytes to be copied to sDest.

Additional information

The function copies the current text to the buffer given by sDest. The maximum number of bytes copied to the buffer is given by MaxLen.

MULTIEDIT_GetTextSize()

Description

Returns the buffer size used to store the current text (and prompt).

Prototype

```
int MULTIEDIT_GetTextSize(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.

Return value

Buffer size used to store the current text (and prompt).

MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollH()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollH(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
OnOff	(See table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disables automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.
1	Enables automatic use of a horizontal scrollbar.

Additional information

Enabling the use of a automatic horizontal scrollbar makes only sense with the non wrapping mode explained later in this chapter. If enabled the multiedit widget checks if the width of the non wrapped text fits into the client area. If not a horizontal scrollbar will be attached to the window.

MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollV()

Description

Enables/disables the automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollV(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
OnOff	(See table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disables automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.
1	Enables automatic use of a vertical scrollbar.

Additional information

If enabled the multiedit widget checks if the height of the text fits into the client area. If not a vertical scrollbar will be attached to the window.

MULTIEDIT_SetBkColor()

Description

Sets the background color of the given multiedit widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetBkColor(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj,
                           unsigned int Index,
                           GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
Index	(See table below)
Color	Background color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
MULTIEDIT_CI_EDIT	Edit mode.
MULTIEDIT_CI_READONLY	Read only mode.

MULTIEDIT_SetBufferSize()

Description

Sets the maximum number of bytes used by text and prompt.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetBufferSize(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int BufferSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
BufferSize	Maximum number of bytes.

Additional information

The function clears the current contents of the multiedit widget and allocates the given number of bytes for the text and for the prompt.

MULTIEDIT_SetCursorOffset()

Description

Sets the cursor position to the given character.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetCursorOffset(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int Offset);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
Offset	New cursor position.

Additional information

The number of characters used for the prompt has to be added to the parameter Offset. If a prompt is used the value for parameter Offset should not be smaller than the number of characters used for the prompt.

MULTIEDIT_SetFont()

Description

Sets the font used to display the text and the prompt.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetFont(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
pFont	Pointer to font to be used.

MULTIEDIT_SetInsertMode()

Description

Enables/disables the insert mode. The default behaviour is overwrite mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetInsertMode(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
OnOff	(See table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disables insert mode.
1	Enables insert mode.

MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars()**Description**

Sets the maximum number of characters used by text and prompt.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, unsigned MaxNumChars);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
MaxNumChars	Maximum number of characters.

MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode()**Description**

Enables/disables the password mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
OnOff	(See table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disables password mode.
1	Enables password mode.

Additional information

The password mode enables you to conceal the user input.

MULTIEDIT_SetPrompt()**Description**

Sets the prompt text.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetPrompt(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, const char * sPrompt);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
sPrompt	Pointer to the new prompt text.

Additional information

The prompt text is displayed first. The cursor can not be moved into the prompt.

MULTIEDIT_SetReadOnly()

Description

Enables/disables the read only mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetReadOnly(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int OnOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
OnOff	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter OnOff	
0	Disables read only mode.
1	Enables read only mode.

Additional information

If the read only mode has been set the widget does not change the text. Only the cursor will be moved.

MULTIEDIT_SetText()

Description

Sets the text to be handled by the widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetText(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, const char * s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
s	Pointer to the text to be handled by the multiedit widget.

Additional information

The function copies the given text to the buffer allocated when creating the widget or by [MULTIEDIT_SetMaxSize\(\)](#). The current text can be retrieved by [MULTIEDIT_GetText\(\)](#).

MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment for the given MULTIEDIT widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetTextAlign(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
Align	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Align	
GUI_TA_LEFT	Left text align.
GUI_TA_RIGHT	Right text align.

MULTIEDIT_SetTextColor()

Description

Sets the text color.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetTextColor(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj,
                           unsigned int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.
Index	(See table below)
Color	Text color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
MULTIEDIT_CI_EDIT	Edit mode.
MULTIEDIT_CI_READONLY	Read only mode.

MULTIEDIT_SetWrapWord()

Description

Enables the word wrapping mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetWrapWord(MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.

Additional information

If the word wrapping mode has been set the text at the end of a line will be wrapped at the beginning of the last word (if possible).

MULTIEDIT_SetWrapNone()

Description

Enables the non wrapping mode.

Prototype

```
void MULTIEDIT_SetWrapNone (MULTIEDIT_HANDLE hObj) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of multiedit widget.

Additional information

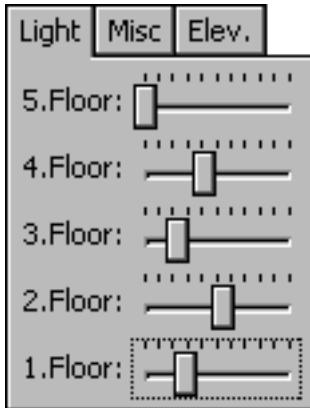
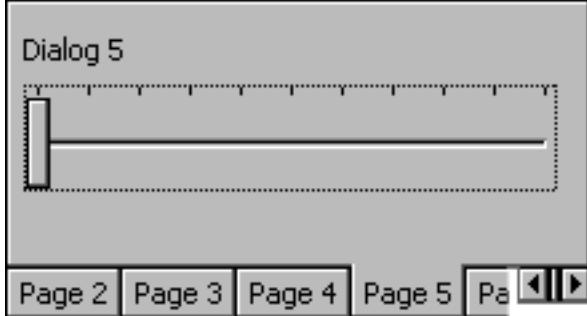
'Non wrapping' means line wrapping would be done only at new lines. If the horizontal size of the text exceeds the size of the client area the text will be scrolled.

16.16 MULTIPAGE: Multiple page widget

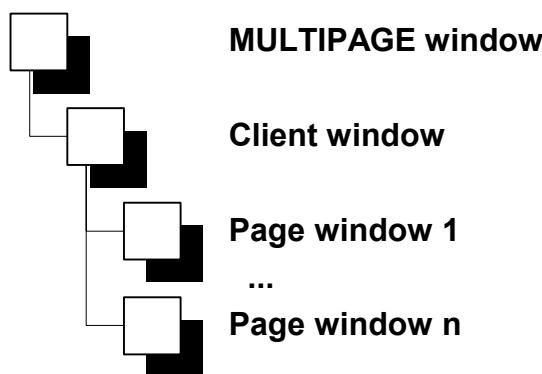
A MULTIPAGE widget is analogous to the dividers in a notebook or the labels in a file cabinet. By using a MULTIPAGE widget, an application can define multiple pages for the same area of a window or dialog box. Each page consists of a certain type of information or a group of widgets that the application displays when the user selects the corresponding page. To select a page the tab of the page has to be clicked. If not all tabs can be displayed, the MULTIPAGE widget automatically shows a small scroll-bar at the edge to scroll the pages.

The sample folder contains the file `WIDGET_Multipage.c` which shows how to create and use the MULTIPAGE widget.

The table below shows the appearance of the MULTIPAGE widget:

Explanation	MULTIPAGE widget
MULTIPAGE widget with 3 pages, alignment top/left.	
MULTIPAGE widget with 6 pages, alignment bottom/right.	

Structure of MULTIPAGE widget



A MULTIPAGE window with n pages consists of $n+2$ windows:

- 1 MULTIPAGE window
- 1 Client window
- n Page windows

The page windows will be added to the client window of the widget. The diagram at the right side shows the structure of the widget.

16.16.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	
N	MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_DEFAULT	MULTI... MUL...
N	MULTIPAGE_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT	0xD0...
N	MULTIPAGE_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT	0xC0...
S	MULTIPAGE_FONT_DEFAULT	&GUI...
N	MULTIPAGE_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT	0x80...
N	MULTIPAGE_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT	0x00...

16.16.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from the widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	Widget has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	Widget has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT	Widget has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the widget without releasing.
WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED	The text of the widget has been changed.

16.16.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

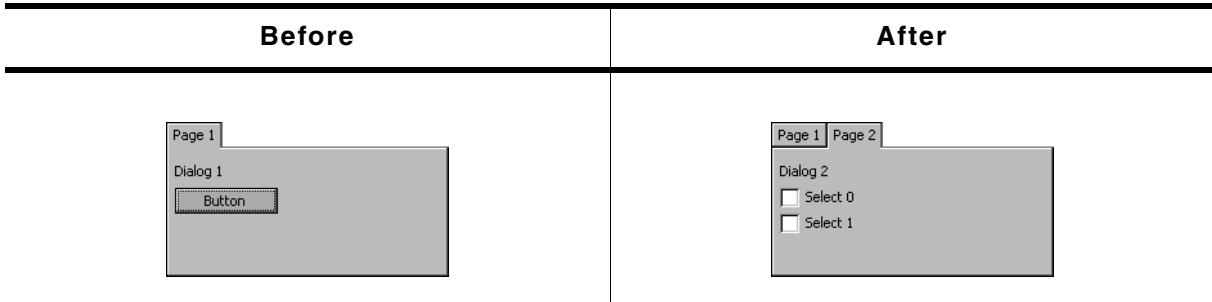
Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_PGUP	Switches to the next page.
GUI_KEY_PGDOWN	Switches to the previous page.

16.16.4 MULTIPAGE API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI MULTIPAGE-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
MULTIPAGE_AddPage()	Adds a page to a MULTIPAGE widget.
MULTIPAGE_CreateEx()	Creates a new MULTIPAGE widget.
MULTIPAGE_CreateIndirect()	Creates the MULTIPAGE widget from a resource table entry.
MULTIPAGE_DeletePage()	Deletes a page from a MULTIPAGE widget.
MULTIPAGE_DisablePage()	Disables a page from a MULTIPAGE widget.
MULTIPAGE_EnablePage()	Enables a page from a MULTIPAGE widget.
MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign()	Returns the default alignment for new MULTIPAGE widgets.
MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultBkColor()	Returns the default background color for new MULTIPAGE widgets.
MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultFont()	Returns the default font used for new MULTIPAGE widgets.
MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultTextColor()	Returns the default text color used for new MULTIPAGE widgets.
MULTIPAGE_GetSelection()	Returns the current selection.
MULTIPAGE_GetWindow()	Returns the window handle of a given page.
MULTIPAGE_IsPageEnabled()	Returns if a given page is enabled or not.
MULTIPAGE_SelectPage()	Selects the given page.
MULTIPAGE_SetAlign()	Sets the alignment for the tabs.
MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor()	Sets the background color.
MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultAlign()	Sets the default alignment for new MULTIPAGE widgets.
MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBkColor()	Sets the default background color for new MULTIPAGE widgets.
MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultFont()	Sets the default font used by new MULTIPAGE widgets.
MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultTextColor()	Sets the default text color used by new MULTIPAGE widgets.
MULTIPAGE_SetFont()	Selects the font for the widget.
MULTIPAGE_SetRotation()	Sets the rotation mode for the widget.
MULTIPAGE_SetText()	Sets the text displayed in a tab of a MULTIPAGE widget.
MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor()	Sets the text color.

MULTIPAGE_AddPage()



Description

Adds a new page to a given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_AddPage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj,
                        WM_HWIN hWin ,const char* pText);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
<code>hWin</code>	Handle of window to be shown in the given page.
<code>pText</code>	Pointer to text to be displayed in the tab of the page.

Additional information

It is recommended, that all windows added to a MULTIPAGE widget handle the complete client area of the MULTIPAGE widget when processing the WM_PAINT message.

MULTIPAGE_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a new MULTIPAGE widget of a specified size at a specified position.

Prototype

```
MULTIPAGE_Handle MULTIPAGE_CreateEx(int x0, int y0,
                                      int xsize, int ysize,
                                      WM_HWIN hParent,
                                      int WinFlags, int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	X-position of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Y-position of the widget (in parent coordinates).
<code>xsize</code>	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
<code>WinFlags</code>	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 13: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
<code>ExFlags</code>	Not used yet, reserved for future use.
<code>Id</code>	Window ID of the widget.

Return value

Handle of the new widget.

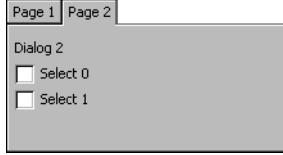
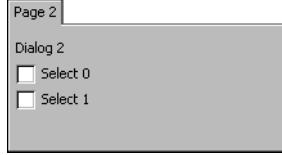
Additional information

The size of the tabs depends on the size of the font used for the MULTIPAGE widget.

MULTIPAGE_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter.

MULTIPAGE_DeletePage()

Before	After
	

Description

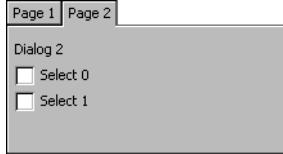
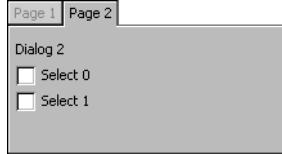
Removes a page from a MULTIPAGE widget and optional deletes the window.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_DeletePage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj,
                           unsigned Index, int Delete);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
<code>Index</code>	Zero based index of the page to be removed from the MULTIPAGE widget.
<code>Delete</code>	If >0 the window attached to the page will be deleted.

MULTIPAGE_DisablePage()

Before	After
	

Description

Disables a page from a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

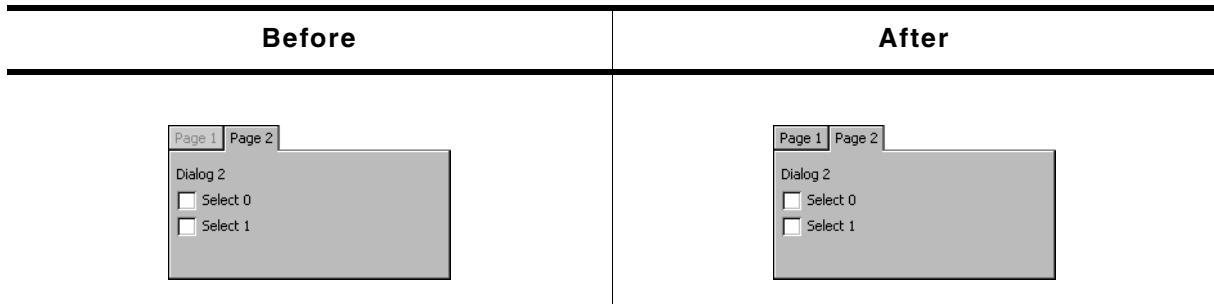
```
void MULTIPAGE_DisablePage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
Index	Zero based index of the page to be disabled.

Additional information

A disabled page of a window can not be selected by clicking the tab of the page. The default state of MULTIEDIT pages is 'enabled'.

MULTIPAGE_EnablePage()



Description

Enables a page of a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_EnablePage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.

Additional information

The default state of MULTIEDIT pages is 'enabled'.

MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign()

Description

Returns the default tab alignment for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

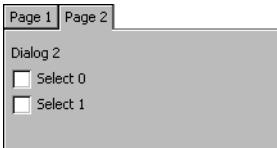
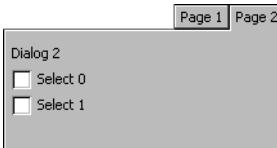
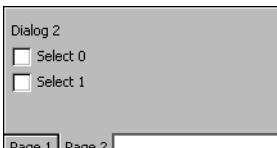
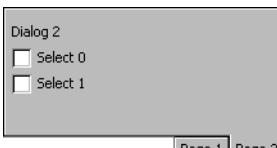
```
unsigned MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign(void);
```

Return value

Default tab alignment for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Additional information

The following table shows the alignment values returned by this function:

Alignment	Appearance of MULTIPAGE widget
MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_LEFT MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_TOP	
MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_RIGHT MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_TOP	
MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_LEFT MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_BOTTOM	
MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_RIGHT MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_BOTTOM	

MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Returns the default background color for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultBkColor(unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	See table below.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Returns the default background color for pages in disabled state.
1	Returns the default background color for pages in enabled state.

Return value

Default background color for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultFont()**Description**

Returns a pointer to the font used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the font used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Returns the default text color used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultTextColor(unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	See table below.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Returns the default text color for pages in disabled state.
1	Returns the default text color for pages in enabled state.

Return value

Default text color used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

MULTIPAGE_GetSelection()**Description**

Retruns the zero based index of the currently selected page of a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
int MULTIPAGE_GetSelection(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.

Return value

Zero based index of the currently selected page of a MULTIPAGE widget.

MULTIPAGE_GetWindow()

Description

Returns the handle of the window displayed in the given page.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN MULTIPAGE_GetWindow(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
Index	Zero based index of page.

Return value

Handle of the window displayed in the given page..

MULTIPAGE_IsPageEnabled()

Description

Returns if the given page of a MULTIEDIT widget is enabled or not.

Prototype

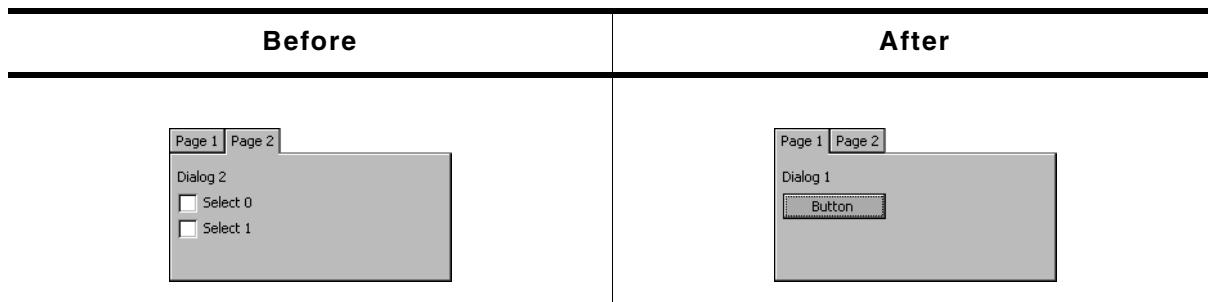
```
int MULTIPAGE_IsPageEnabled (MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
Index	Zero based index of requested page.

Return value

1 if the given page is enabled, otherwise 0.

MULTIPAGE_SelectPage()



Description

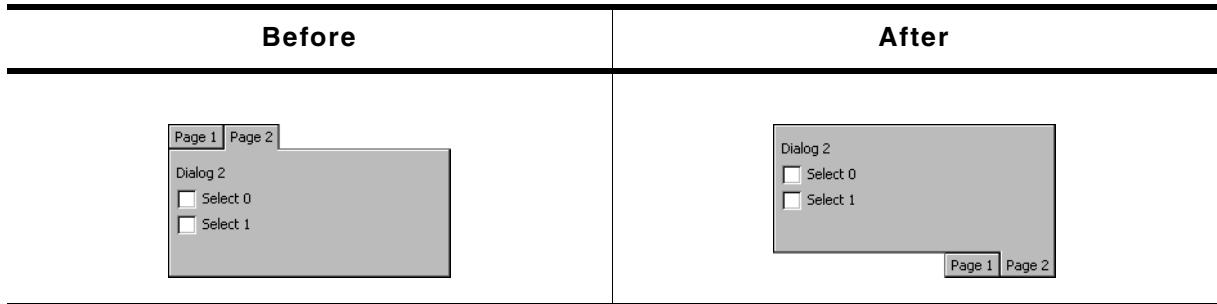
Sets the currently selected page of a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SelectPage(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
Index	Zero based index of page to be selected.

MULTIPAGE_SetAlign()



Description

Sets the tab alignment for the given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetAlign(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Align);
```

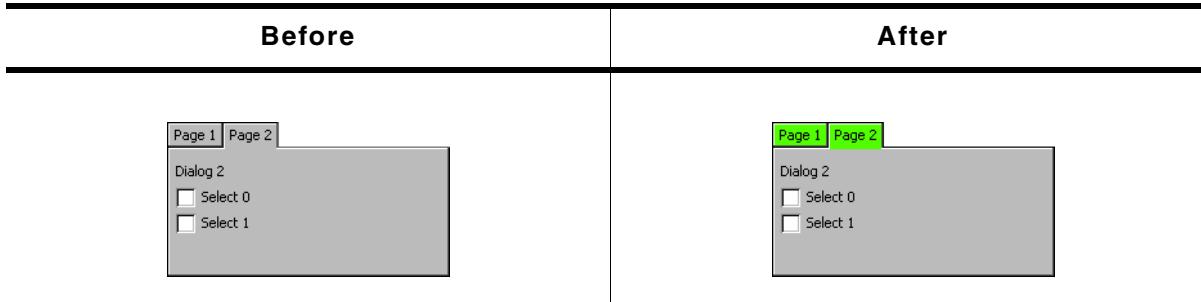
Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
Align	See table below.

Permitted values for parameter Index (horizontal and vertical flags are OR-combinable)	
MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_BOTTOM	Aligns the tabs at the right side.
MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_LEFT	Aligns the tabs at the left side.
MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_RIGHT	Aligns the tabs at the top of the widget.
MULTIPAGE_ALIGN_TOP	Aligns the tabs at the bottom of the widget..

Additional information

For more information please refer to the function `MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign()`.

MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor()



Description

Sets the background color of the given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj,
                           GUI_COLOR Color,
                           unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
Color	Color to be used.
Index	See table below.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Returns the default text color for pages in disabled state.
1	Returns the default text color for pages in enabled state.

Additional information

The function only sets the background color for the MULTIPAGE widget. The child windows added to the widget are not affected. That means if the complete client area is drawn by windows added to the widget, only the background color of the tabs changes.

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultAlign()

Description

Sets the default tab alignment for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultAlign(unsigned Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Align	Tab alignment used for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Additional information

For more informations about the tab alignment please refer to the functions [MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign\(\)](#) and [MULTIPAGE_SetAlign\(\)](#).

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used.
Index	See table below.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Sets the default background color for pages in disabled state.
1	Sets the default background color for pages in enabled state.

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultFont()

Description

Sets the default font used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to GUI_FONT structure to be used.

Additional information

The horizontal and vertical size of the tabs depends on the size of the used font.

MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used to display the text in the tabs of new MULTIPAGE widgets.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used.
Index	See table below.

MULTIPAGE_SetFont()

Before	After

Description

Sets the font used to display the text in the tabs of a given MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

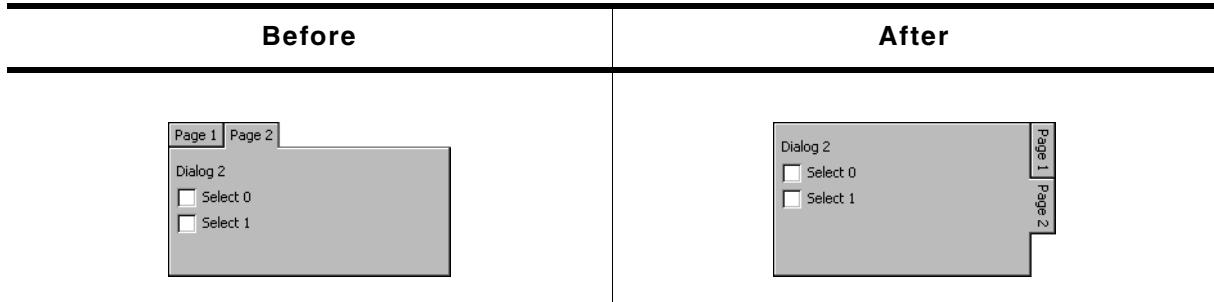
```
void MULTIPAGE_SetFont(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
pFont	Pointer to GUI_FONT structure used to display the text in the tabs.

Additional information

The vertical and horizontal size of the tabs depend on the size of the used font and the text shown in the tabs.

MULTIPAGE_SetRotation()



Description

Sets the rotation mode of the given widget.

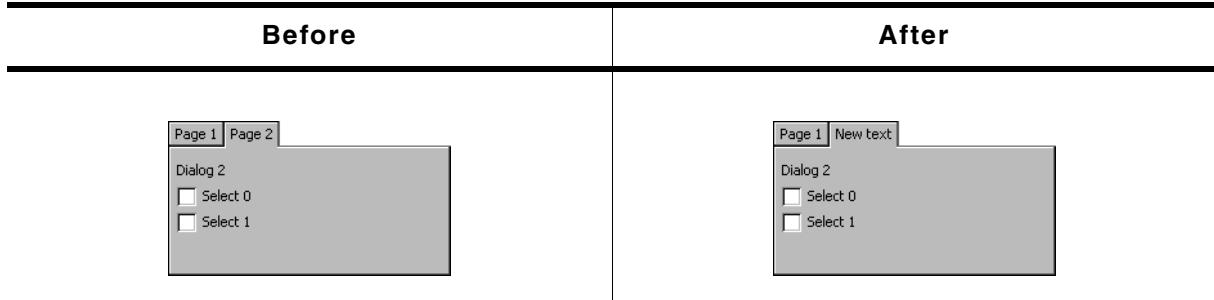
Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetRotation(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj, unsigned Rotation);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
Rotation	Rotation mode (see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Index	
MULTIPAGE_CF_ROTATE_CW	Arranges the tabs at the vertical side and rotates the tab text by 90 degrees clockwise.
0	Default horizontal mode.

MULTIPAGE_SetText()



Description

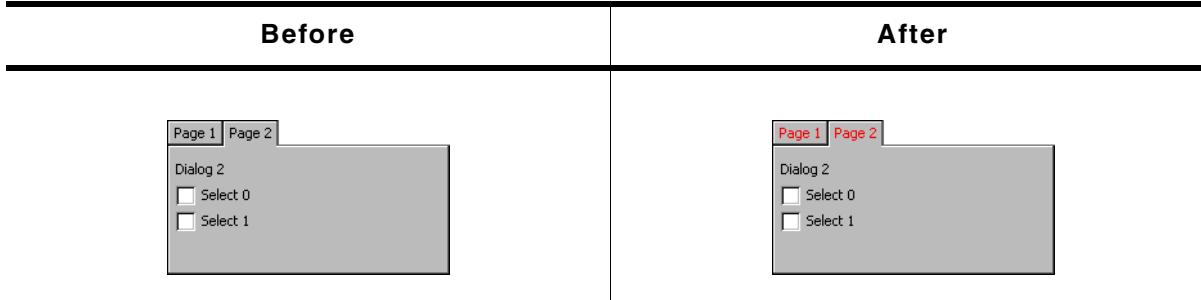
Sets the text displayed in the tab of a given page.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetText(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj,
                      const char* pText, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
pText	Pointer to the text to be displayed.
Index	Zero based index of the page.

MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor()



Description

Sets the color used to display the text in the tabs of a MULTIPAGE widget.

Prototype

```
void MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor(MULTIPAGE_Handle hObj,
                           GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of MULTIPAGE widget.
Color	Color to be used.
Index	See table below.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Sets the text color for pages in disabled state.
1	Sets the text color for pages in enabled state.

16.17 PROGBAR: Progress bar widget

Progress bars are commonly used in applications for visualization; for example, a tank fill-level indicator or an oil-pressure indicator. Sample screenshots can be found at the beginning of the chapter and at end of this section. All PROGBAR-related routines are in the file(s) PROGBAR*.c, PROGBAR.h. All identifiers are prefixed PROGBAR.

16.17.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
S	PROGBAR_DEFAULT_FONT	GUI_DEFAULT_FONT	Font used.
N	PROGBAR_DEFAULT_BARCOLOR0	0x555555 (dark gray)	Left bar color.
N	PROGBAR_DEFAULT_BARCOLOR1	0xAAAAAA (light gray)	Right bar color.
N	PROGBAR_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR0	0xFFFFFFF	Text color, left bar.
N	PROGBAR_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR1	0x000000	Text color, right bar.

16.17.2 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

16.17.3 PROGBAR API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI PROGBAR-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
PROGBAR_Create()	Create the progress bar. (Obsolete)
PROGBAR_CreateAsChild()	Create the progress bar as a child window. (Obsolete)
PROGBAR_CreateEx()	Create the progress bar.
PROGBAR_CreateIndirect()	Create the progress bar from resource table entry.
PROGBAR_SetBarColor()	Sets the color(s) for the bar.
PROGBAR_SetFont()	Select the font for the text.
PROGBAR_SetMinMax()	Set the minimum and maximum values used for the bar.
PROGBAR_SetText()	Set the (optional) text for the bar graph.
PROGBAR_SetTextAlign()	Set text alignment (default is centered).
PROGBAR_SetTextColor()	Set the color(s) for the text.
PROGBAR_SetTextPos()	Set the text position (default 0,0).
PROGBAR_SetValue()	Set the value for the bar graph (and percentage if no text has been assigned).

PROGBAR_Create()

(Obsolete, PROGBAR_CreateEx should be used instead)

Description

Creates a PROGBAR widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
PROGBAR_Handle PROGBAR_Create(int x0, int y0, int xsiz
```

```
Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the progress bar (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the progress bar (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the progress bar (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the progress bar (in pixels).
Flags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).

Return value

Handle for the created PROGBAR widget; 0 if the routine fails.

PROGBAR_CreateAsChild()

(Obsolete, PROGBAR_CreateEx should be used instead)

Description

Creates a PROGBAR widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
PROGBAR_Handle PROGBAR_CreateAsChild(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                     WM_HWIN hParent, int Id, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of the progress bar relative to the parent window.
y0	Y-position of the progress bar relative to the parent window.
xsize	Horizontal size of the progress bar (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the progress bar (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window.
Id	ID to be returned.
Flags	Window create flags (see PROGBAR_Create()).

Return value

Handle for the created PROGBAR widget; 0 if the routine fails.

PROGBAR_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a PROGBAR widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
PROGBAR_Handle PROGBAR_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                 WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
```

```
int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new PROGBAR widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	(see table below)
Id	Window ID of the widget.

Permitted values for parameter ExFlags	
PROGBAR_CF_VERTICAL	A vertical progress bar will be created.
PROGBAR_CF_HORIZONTAL	A horizontal progress bar will be created.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

PROGBAR_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The elements Flags and Para of the resource passed as parameter are not used.

PROGBAR_SetBarColor()

Description

Sets the color(s) of the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetBarColor(PROGBAR_Handle hObj,
                           unsigned int Index,
                           GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of progress bar.
Index	See table below. Other values are not permitted.
Color	Color to set (24-bit RGB value).

Permitted values for parameter Index	
0	Left portion of the progress bar.
1	Right portion of the progress bar.

PROGBAR_SetFont()

Description

Selects the font for the text display inside the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetFont(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT* pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of progress bar.
pFont	Pointer to the font.

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default font for progress bars (the GUI default font) will be used. However, the progress bar default font may be changed in the `GUIConf.h` file.

Simply `#define` the default font as follows (example):

```
#define PROGBAR_DEFAULT_FONT &GUI_Font13_ASCII
```

PROGBAR_SetMinMax()**Description**

Sets the minimum and maximum values used for the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetMinMax(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, int Min, int Max);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of progress bar.
Min	Minimum value Range: -16383 < Min <= 16383.
Max	Maximum value Range: -16383 < Max <= 16383.

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default values of `Min = 0`, `Max = 100` will be used.

PROGBAR_SetText()**Description**

Sets the text displayed inside the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetText(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, const char* s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of progress bar.
s	Text to display. A NULL pointer is permitted; in this case a percentage value will be displayed.

Additional information

If this function is not called, a percentage value will be displayed as the default. If you do not want to display any text at all, you should set an empty string.

PROGBAR_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetTextAlign(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of progress bar.
Align	Horizontal alignment attribute for the text (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Align	
GUI_TA_HCENTER	Centers the title (default).
GUI_TA_LEFT	Displays the title to the left.
GUI_TA_RIGHT	Displays the title to the right.

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default behavior is to display the text centered.

PROGBAR_SetTextPos()

Description

Sets the text position in pixels.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetTextPos(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, int XOff, int YOff);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of progress bar.
XOff	Number of pixels to move text in horizontal direction. Positive number will move text to the right.
YOff	Number of pixels to move text in vertical direction. Positive number will move text down.

Additional information

The values move the text the specified number of pixels within the widget. Normally, the default of (0,0) should be sufficient.

PROGBAR_SetValue()

Description

Sets the value of the progress bar.

Prototype

```
void PROGBAR_SetValue(PROGBAR_Handle hObj, int v);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of progress bar.
v	Value to set.

Additional information

The bar indicator will be calculated with regard to the max/min values. If a percentage is automatically displayed, the percentage will also be calculated using the given min/max values as follows:

$$p = 100\% * (v-\text{Min})/(\text{Max}-\text{Min})$$

The default value after creation of the widget is 0.

16.17.4 Examples

Using the PROGBAR widget

The following simple example demonstrates the use of the PROGBAR widget. It is available in the samples as `WIDGET_SimpleProgbar.c`:

```
*****
*          Micrium Inc.
*          Empowering embedded systems
*
*          μC/GUI sample code
*
***** uC/GUI- Graphical user interface for embedded applications *****
uC/GUI is protected by international copyright laws. Knowledge of the
source code may not be used to write a similar product. This file may
only be used in accordance with a license and should not be re-
distributed in any way. We appreciate your understanding and fairness.
-----
File      : WIDGET_SimpleProgbar.c
Purpose   : Demonstrates the use of the PROGBAR widget
-----
*/
#include "GUI.h"
#include "PROGBAR.h"

*****
*
*      static code
*
*****
*/
***** _DemoProgBar
*/
static void _DemoProgBar(void) {
    PROGBAR_Handle ahProgBar;
    int i;
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
    GUI_DispStringAt("Progress bar", 100,80);
    /* Create progress bar */
    ahProgBar = PROGBAR_Create(100, 100, 100, 20, WM_CF_SHOW);
    GUI_Delay (500);
    /* Modify progress bar */
    for (i = 0; i <= 100; i++) {
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar, i);
        GUI_Delay(10);
    }
    GUI_Delay (400);
    /* Delete progress bar */
    PROGBAR_Delete(ahProgBar);
    GUI_ClearRect(0, 50, 319, 239);
    GUI_Delay(750);
}
*****
```

```

*
*      MainTask
*
*      Shows the use of progress bars
*
*****
*/

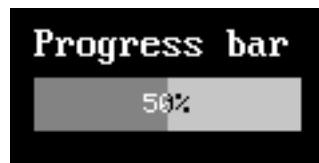
```

```

void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("WIDGET_SimpleProgbar - Sample", 160, 5);
    while(1) {
        _DemoProgBar();
    }
}

```

Screen shot of above example



Advanced use of the PROGBAR widget

This more advanced example creates a tank fill-level indicator. It is available as WIDGET_Progbar.c:

```

/*****
*          Micrium Inc.
*          Empowering embedded systems
*
*          µC/GUI sample code
*
***** uC/GUI- Graphical user interface for embedded applications *****
uC/GUI is protected by international copyright laws. Knowledge of the
source code may not be used to write a similar product. This file may
only be used in accordance with a license and should not be re-
distributed in any way. We appreciate your understanding and fairness.
-----
File       : WIDGET_Progbar.c
Purpose    : Simple demo shows the use of the PROGBAR widget
-----
*/

```

```

#include "GUI.h"
#include "PROGBAR.h"
#include <stddef.h>

/*****
*      static code
*
***** */

```

```

*      _DemoProgBar
*/
static void _DemoProgBar(void) {

```

```

int i;
PROGBAR_Handle ahProgBar[2];
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_BLACK);
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font24_ASCII);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("WIDGET_Progbar - Sample", 160, 5);
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font8x16);
GUI_DispStringAt("Progress bar", 100,80);
/* Create the progbars */
ahProgBar[0] = PROGBAR_Create(100,100,100,20, WM_CF_SHOW);
ahProgBar[1] = PROGBAR_Create( 80,150,140,10, WM_CF_SHOW);
/* Use memory device (optional, for better looks) */
PROGBAR_EnableMemdev(ahProgBar[0]);
PROGBAR_EnableMemdev(ahProgBar[1]);
PROGBAR_SetMinMax(ahProgBar[1], 0, 500);
PROGBAR_SetFont(ahProgBar[0], &GUI_Font8x16);
GUI_Delay(500);
while(1) {
    PROGBAR_SetFont(ahProgBar[0], &GUI_Font8x16);
    if (LCD_GetDevCap(LCD_DEV_CAP_BITSPERPIXEL) <= 4) {
        PROGBAR_SetBarColor(ahProgBar[0], 0, GUI_DARKGRAY);
        PROGBAR_SetBarColor(ahProgBar[0], 1, GUI_LIGHTGRAY);
    } else {
        PROGBAR_SetBarColor(ahProgBar[0], 0, GUI_GREEN);
        PROGBAR_SetBarColor(ahProgBar[0], 1, GUI_RED);
    }
    PROGBAR_SetTextAlign(ahProgBar[0], GUI_TA_HCENTER);
    PROGBAR_SetText(ahProgBar[0], NULL);
    for (i=0; i<=100; i++) {
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[0], i);
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[1], i);
        GUI_Delay(5);
    }
    PROGBAR_SetText(ahProgBar[0], "Tank empty");
    for (; i>=0; i--) {
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[0], i);
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[1], 200-i);
        GUI_Delay(5);
    }
    PROGBAR_SetText(ahProgBar[0], "Any text... ");
    PROGBAR_SetTextAlign(ahProgBar[0], GUI_TA_LEFT);
    for (; i<=100; i++) {
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[0], i);
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[1], 200+i);
        GUI_Delay(5);
    }
    PROGBAR_SetTextAlign(ahProgBar[0], GUI_TA_RIGHT);
    for (; i>=0; i--) {
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[0], i);
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[1], 400-i);
        GUI_Delay(5);
    }
    PROGBAR_SetFont(ahProgBar[0], &GUI_FontComic18B_1);
    PROGBAR_SetText(ahProgBar[0], "Any font... ");
    for (; i<=100; i++) {
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[0], i);
        PROGBAR_SetValue(ahProgBar[1], 400+i);
        GUI_Delay(5);
    }
    GUI_Delay(500);
}
*****  

*      MainTask  

*      Demonstrates the use of the PROGBAR widget  

*****  

*/

```

```
void MainTask(void) {  
    GUI_Init();  
    while (1) {  
        _DemoProgBar();  
    }  
}
```

Screen shot of above example



16.18 RADIO: Radio button widget

Radio buttons, like check boxes, are used for selecting choices. A dot appears when a radio button is turned on or selected. The difference from check boxes is that the user can only select one radio button at a time. When a button is selected, the other buttons in the widget are turned off, as shown to the right. One radio button widget may contain any number of buttons, which are always arranged vertically.



All RADIO-related routines are located in the file(s) `RADIO*.c`, `RADIO.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `RADIO`. The table below shows the default appearances of a RADIO button:

	Selected	Unselected
Enabled		
Disabled		

16.18.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
S	<code>RADIO_IMAGE0_DEFAULT</code>	(see table above)	Default outer image used to show a disabled radio button.
S	<code>RADIO_IMAGE1_DEFAULT</code>	(see table above)	Default outer image used to show an enabled radio button.
S	<code>RADIO_IMAGE_CHECK_DEFAULT</code>	(see table above)	Default inner image used to mark the selected item.
N	<code>RADIO_FONT_DEFAULT</code>	<code>&GUI_Font13_1</code>	Default font used to render the radio button text.
N	<code>RADIO_DEFAULT_TEXT_COLOR</code>	<code>GUI_BLACK</code>	Default text color of radio button text.
N	<code>RADIO_DEFAULT_BKCOLOR</code>	<code>0xC0C0C0</code>	Default background color of radio buttons if no transparency is used.
N	<code>RADIO_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT</code>	<code>GUI_BLACK</code>	Default color for rendering the focus rectangle.

16.18.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a radio button widget to its parent window as part of a `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message:

Message	Explanation
<code>WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED</code>	Radio button has been clicked.
<code>WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED</code>	Radio button has been released.
<code>WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT</code>	Radio button has been clicked and pointer has been moved out off of the button without releasing.
<code>WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED</code>	Value (selection) of the radio button widget has changed.

16.18.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_RIGHT	Increments the selection by 1.
GUI_KEY_DOWN	Increments the selection by 1.
GUI_KEY_LEFT	Decrements the selection by 1.
GUI_KEY_UP	Decrements the selection by 1.

16.18.4 RADIO API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI RADIO-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>RADIO_Create()</code>	Create a group of radio buttons. (Obsolete)
<code>RADIO_CreateEx()</code>	Create a group of radio buttons.
<code>RADIO_CreateIndirect()</code>	Create a group of radio buttons from resource table entry.
<code>RADIO_Dec()</code>	Decrement the button selection by a value of 1.
<code>RADIO_GetDefaultFont()</code>	Returns the default font used to show the text of new radio buttons.
<code>RADIO_GetDefaultTextColor()</code>	Returns the default text color used to show the text of new radio buttons.
<code>RADIO_GetText()</code>	Returns the text of a radio button item.
<code>RADIO_GetValue()</code>	Return the current button selection.
<code>RADIO_Inc()</code>	Increment the button selection by a value of 1.
<code>RADIO_SetBkColor()</code>	Sets the background color of the radio button.
<code>RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor()</code>	Sets the default focus rectangle color for new radio buttons.
<code>RADIO_SetDefaultFont()</code>	Sets the default font used to show the text of new radio buttons.
<code>RADIO_SetDefaultImage()</code>	Sets the images to be used for new radio buttons.
<code>RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor()</code>	Sets the default text color used to show the text of new radio buttons.
<code>RADIO_SetFocusColor()</code>	Sets the color of the focus rectangle.
<code>RADIO_SetFont()</code>	Sets the font used to show the text of the radio button.
<code>RADIO_SetGroupId()</code>	Sets the group Id of the given radio widget.
<code>RADIO_SetImage()</code>	Sets the images used to display the radio button.
<code>RADIO_SetText()</code>	Sets the text
<code>RADIO_SetTextColor()</code>	Sets the text color used to show the text of radio button.
<code>RADIO_SetValue()</code>	Set the button selection.

RADIO_Create()

(Obsolete, `RADIO_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a RADIO widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
RADIO_Handle RADIO_Create(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize, WM_HWIN
```

```
hParent, int Id, int Flags, unsigned Para);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the radio button widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the radio button widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the radio button widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the radio button widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window.
Id	ID to be returned.
Flags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
Para	Number of buttons in the group.

Return value

Handle for the created RADIO widget; 0 if the routine fails.

RADIO_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a RADIO widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
RADIO_Handle RADIO_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                           WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                           int ExFlags, int Id,
                           int NumItems, int Spacing);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new RADIO widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	Not used, reserved for future use.
Id	Window ID of the widget.
NumItems	Number of items of the radio widget. (default is 2)
Spacing	Number of vertical pixels used for each item of the radio widget.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

Additional information

If creating a radio widget make sure, that the given ysize is enough to show all items. The value should be at least NumItems * Spacing. If the given value of NumItems is <= 0 a default value of 2 is used.

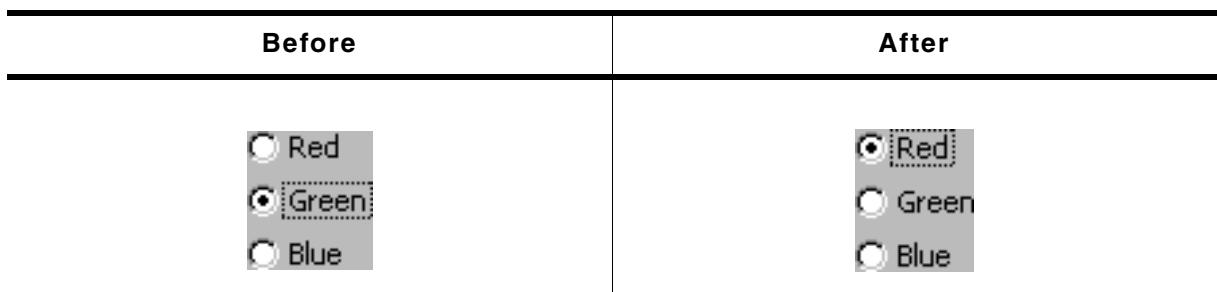
RADIO_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The element `Flags` of the resource passed as parameter is not used.

The following table shows the use of the resource element `Para`:

Bits	Meaning
0 – 7	Number of items of the radio widget. If 0, a default value of 2 items is used.
8 – 15	Number of vertical pixels used for each item. If 0 the height of the default image is used.
16 – 23	Not used, reserved for future use.
24 – 31	Not used, reserved for future use.

RADIO_Dec()



Description

Decrements the selection by a value of 1.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_Dec(RADIO_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of radio button widget.

Additional information

Please note that the numbering of the buttons always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore decrementing the selection will actually move the selection one button up.

RADIO_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT * RADIO_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Default font used to display the optional text next to the radio buttons.

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget please refer to the function `RADIO_SetText()`.

RADIO_GetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Returns the default text color used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR RADIO_GetDefaultTextColor (void);
```

Return value

Default text color used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget please refer to the function `RADIO_SetText()`.

RADIO_GetText()

Description

Returns the optional text of the given radio button.

Prototype

```
int RADIO_GetText(RADIO_Handle hObj, unsigned Index,
                  char * pBuffer, int MaxLen);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>Index</code>	Index of the desired item.
<code>pBuffer</code>	Pointer to buffer to which the text will be copied.
<code>MaxLen</code>	Buffer size in bytes.

Return value

Length of the text copied into the buffer.

Additional information

If the desired item of the radio button contains no text the function returns 0 and the buffer remains unchanged.

RADIO_GetValue()

Description

Returns the current button selection.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_GetValue(RADIO_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of radio button widget.

Return value

The value of the currently selected button. If no button is selected (in case of using a radio button group) the return value is -1.

Additional information

For information about how to use groups of radio buttons please refer to the function `RADIO_SetGroupID()`.

RADIO_Inc()

Before	After

Description

Increments the selection by a value of 1.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_Inc(RADIO_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of radio button widget.

Additional information

Please note that the numbering of the buttons always starts from the top with a value of 0; therefore incrementing the selection will actually move the selection one button down.

RADIO_SetBkColor()

Before	After

Description

Sets the background color of the radio widget.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetBkColor(RADIO_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of radio button widget.
Color	Color to be used for the background. (range 0x000000 and 0xFFFF or a valid color define) GUI_INVALID_COLOR to make background transparent

Additional information

The background of this widget can either be filled with any available color or transparent. If a valid RGB color is specified, the background is filled with the color, otherwise the background (typically the contents of the parent window) is visible. If the background is transparent, the widget is treated as transparent window, otherwise as non-transparent window. Note that using a background color allows more efficient (faster) rendering.

RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor()**Description**

Sets the default focus rectangle color for new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Default color to be used for new radio buttons.

Return value

Previous default focus rectangle color.

Additional information

For more information please refer to the function `RADIO_SetFocusColor()`.

RADIO_SetDefaultFont()**Description**

Sets the default font used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to GUI_FONT structure used to show the text of new radio widgets.

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget please refer to the function `RADIO_SetText()`.

RADIO_SetDefaultImage()

Description

Sets the images used to draw new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetDefaultImage(const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap, unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap.
Index	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter Index	
RADIO_BI_INACTIV	Outer image used to show a disabled radio button.
RADIO_BI_ACTIV	Outer image used to show a enabled radio button.
RADIO_BI_CHECK	Inner image used to mark the selected item.

Additional information

Two images are used to display a radio button. One image is used to draw the outer frame used to display a unselected radio button. In dependence of the current state it will be the bitmap referenced by RADIO_BI_ACTIV (default) or by RADIO_BI_INACTIV. The second image (referenced by RADIO_BI_CHECK) is used to mark the currently selected button.

RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor()

Description

Sets the default text color used to display the optional text next to new radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor (GUI_COLOR TextColor);
```

Parameter	Meaning
TextColor	New color to be used.

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget please refer to the function RADIO_SetText().

RADIO_SetFocusColor()

Before	After

Description

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle of the radio button.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR RADIO_SetFocusColor(RADIO_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of widget.
<code>Color</code>	Color to be used for the focus rectangle.

Return value

Previous color of the focus rectangle.

Additional information

The focus rectangle is only visible if the widget has the input focus.

RADIO_SetFont()

Before	After

Description

Sets the font used to display the optional text next to the radio button.

Prototype

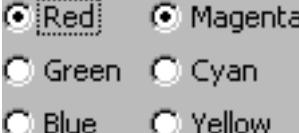
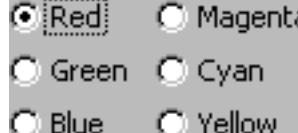
```
void RADIO_SetFont(RADIO_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT * pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of radio button widget.
<code>pFont</code>	Pointer to <code>GUI_FONT</code> structure to be used to display the text.

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget please refer to the function `RADIO_SetText()`.

`RADIO_SetGroupID()`

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the group ID of the radio widget.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetGroupID(RADIO_Handle hObj, U8 GroupID);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of radio button widget.
<code>GroupID</code>	ID of the radio button group. Must be between 1 and 255. If the value is 0 the radio widget is not assigned to a radio button group.

Additional information

This command can be used to create groups of radio buttons. The behavior of one group is the same as the behavior of one radio button. This makes it possible to create for example 2 RADIO widgets side by side with 3 buttons each and build one group of them.

Example

The following sample shows how to create a group of 2 RADIO widgets as shown in the screenshot at the beginning of the function description:

```
hRadio_0 = RADIO_CreateEx(10, 10, 60, 0, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW, 0, 1234, 3, 20);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Red", 0);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Green", 1);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Blue", 2);
hRadio_1 = RADIO_CreateEx(65, 10, 60, 0, WM_HBKWIN, WM_CF_SHOW, 0, 1234, 3, 20);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_1, "Magenta", 0);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_1, "Cyan", 1);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_1, "Yellow", 2);
RADIO_SetGroupID(hRadio_0, 1);
RADIO_SetGroupID(hRadio_1, 1);
```

`RADIO_SetImage()`

Description

Sets the images used to draw the radio button.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetImage(RADIO_Handle hObj,
```

```
const GUI_BITMAP * pBitmap,
unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of radio button widget.
pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap.
Index	(see table shown under RADIO_SetDefaultImage)

Additional information

(see [RADIO_SetDefaultImage](#)).

RADIO_SetText()

Before	After

Description

Sets the optional text shown next to the radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetText(RADIO_Handle hObj, const char * pText, unsigned Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of radio button widget.
pText	Pointer to the text to be shown next to the specified radio button.
Index	Zero based index of the radio button.

Additional information

If using a RADIO widget without text (old style) the focus rectangle is drawn around the buttons of the widget. If using radio button text the focus rectangle is shown around the text of the currently selected radio button of the widget.

Example

The following sample shows how to add the text shown in the screenshot above:

```
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Red", 0);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Green", 1);
RADIO_SetText(hRadio_0, "Blue", 2);
```

RADIO_SetTextColor()

Before	After
	

Description

Sets the text color used to show the optional text beside the radio buttons.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetTextColor(RADIO_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of radio button widget.
Color	Color used to show the text.

Additional information

For information about how to add text to a radio widget please refer to the function `RADIO_SetText()`.

RADIO_SetValue()

Description

Sets the current button selection.

Prototype

```
void RADIO_SetValue(RADIO_Handle hObj, int v);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of radio button widget.
v	Value to be set.

Additional information

The topmost radio button in a RADIO widget always has the 0 value, the next button down is always 1, the next is 2, etc.

16.19 SCROLLBAR: Scroll bar widget

Scroll bars are used for scrolling through list boxes or any other type of window. They may be created horizontally, as shown below, or vertically.



A scroll bar is typically attached to an existing window, for example the list box shown below:



All SCROLLBAR-related routines are located in the file(s) SCROLLBAR*.c, SCROLLBAR.h. All identifiers are prefixed SCROLLBAR.

16.19.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	SCROLLBAR_COLOR_SHAFT_DEFAULT	0x808080	Color of the shaft.
N	SCROLLBAR_COLOR_ARROW_DEFAULT	GUI_BLACK	Color of the arrows.
N	SCROLLBAR_COLOR_THUMB_DEFAULT	0xc0c0c0	Color of the thumb area.
N	SCROLLBAR_THUMB_SIZE_MIN_DEFAULT	4	Minimum thumb size.

16.19.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a scroll bar widget to its parent window as part of a WM_NOTIFY_PARENT message:

Message	Explanation
WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED	Scrollbar has been clicked.
WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED	Scrollbar has been released.
WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLLBAR_ADDED	Scroll bar has just been added (attached) to an existing window. The window needs to be informed so that it can initialize the scroll bar.
WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED	Value of scroll bar has changed, either by moving the thumb or by pressing the arrow buttons.

16.19.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
GUI_KEY_RIGHT	Increments the current value of the scroll bar by a value of 1.
GUI_KEY_DOWN	Increments the current value of the scroll bar by a value of 1.
GUI_KEY_LEFT	Decrements the current value of the scroll bar by a value of 1.
GUI_KEY_UP	Decrements the current value of the scroll bar by a value of 1.

16.19.4 SCROLLBAR API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI SCROLLBAR-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>SCROLLBAR_AddValue()</code>	Increment or decrement the value of the scroll bar by a specified value.
<code>SCROLLBAR_Create()</code>	Create the scroll bar. (Obsolete)
<code>SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached()</code>	Create a scroll bar attached to a window.
<code>SCROLLBAR_CreateEx()</code>	Create the scroll bar.
<code>SCROLLBAR_CreateIndirect()</code>	Creates the scroll bar from resource table entry.
<code>SCROLLBAR_Dec()</code>	Decrements the value of the scroll bar by a value of 1.
<code>SCROLLBAR_GetDefaultWidth()</code>	Returns the default width of a scroll bar.
<code>SCROLLBAR_GetValue()</code>	Returns the current item value.
<code>SCROLLBAR_Inc()</code>	Increments the value of the scroll bar by a value of 1.
<code>SCROLLBAR_SetColor()</code>	Sets the color of a scroll bar.
<code>SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor()</code>	Sets the default colors for new scroll bars.
<code>SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultWidth()</code>	Sets the default width of a scroll bar.
<code>SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems()</code>	Sets the number of items for scrolling.
<code>SCROLLBAR_SetPageSize()</code>	Sets the page size (in number of items).
<code>SCROLLBAR_SetState()</code>	Sets the state of a scroll bar.
<code>SCROLLBAR_SetValue()</code>	Sets the current value of the scroll bar.
<code>SCROLLBAR_SetWidth()</code>	Sets the width of the scroll bar.

SCROLLBAR_AddValue()

Definition

Increments or decrements the value of the scroll bar by a specified value.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_AddValue(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int Add);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>hObj</code>	Handle of scroll bar.
<code>Add</code>	Number of items to increment or decrement at one time.

Additional information

The scroll bar cannot exceed the value set in `SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems()`. For example, if a window contains 200 items and the scroll bar is currently at value 195, incrementing the bar by 3 items will move it to value 198. However, incrementing by 10 items will only move the bar as far as value 200, which is the maximum value for this particular window.

SCROLLBAR_Create()

(Obsolete, `SCROLLBAR_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a SCROLLBAR widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
SCROLLBAR_Handle SCROLLBAR_Create(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize
                                  WM_HWIN hParent, int Id, int WinFlags,
                                  int SpecialFlags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the scroll bar (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the scroll bar (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the scroll bar (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the scroll bar (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window.
Id	ID to be returned.
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
SpecialFlags	Special creation flags (see indirect creation flags under SCROLLBAR_CreateIndirect()).

Return value

Handle for the created SCROLLBAR widget; 0 if the routine fails.

SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached()**Description**

Creates a scroll bar which is attached to an existing window.

Prototype

```
SCROLLBAR_Handle SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached(WM_HWIN hParent,
                                         int SpecialFlags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hParent	Handle of parent window.
SpecialFlags	Special creation flags (see indirect creation flags under SCROLLBAR_CreateIndirect()).

Return value

Handle for the created scrollbar; 0 if the routine fails.

Additional information

An attached scroll bar is essentially a child window which will position itself on the parent window and operate accordingly.

Vertical attached scrollbars will be automatically placed on the right side of the parent window; horizontal scrollbars on the bottom. Since no more than one horizontal and one vertical scroll bar can be attached to a parent window, no ID needs to be passed as parameter. The following fixed ID's will automatically be assigned when an attached scroll bar is created:

GUI_ID_HSCROLL for a horizontal scroll bar, and

GUI_ID_VSCROLL for a vertical scroll bar.

Example

Creates a list box with an attached scrollbar:

```
LISTBOX_Handle hListBox;
hListBox = LISTBOX_Create(ListBox, 50, 50, 100, 100, WM_CF_SHOW);
SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached(hListBox, SCROLLBAR_CF_VERTICAL);
```

Screen shots of above example

The picture on the left shows the list box as it appears after creation. On the right it is shown with the attached vertical scrollbar:



SCROLLBAR_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a SCROLLBAR widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
SCROLLBAR_Handle SCROLLBAR_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                                     WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                                     int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new SCROLLBAR widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	Special creation flags (see indirect creation flags under SCROLLBAR_CreateIndirect()).
Id	Window ID of the widget.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

SCROLLBAR_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The following flags may be used as the Flags element of the resource passed as parameter:

Permitted indirect creation flags ("OR" combinable)	
SCROLLBAR_CF_VERTICAL	Creates a vertical scroll bar (default is horizontal).
SCROLLBAR_CF_FOCUSSABLE	Gives scroll bar the input focus.

The Para element is not used in the resource table.

SCROLLBAR_Dec()

Description

Decrements the current value of the scroll bar by a value of 1.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_Dec(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar.

Additional information

The definition of an "item" is application-specific, although in most cases it is equal to one line. Items are numbered top to bottom or left to right, beginning with a value of 0.

SCROLLBAR_GetDefaultWidth()

Description

Returns the default width used to create a scrollbar.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_GetDefaultWidth(void);
```

Return value

Default width used to create a scrollbar.

SCROLLBAR_GetValue()

Description

Return the value of the current item.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_GetValue(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar.

Return value

The value of the current item.

SCROLLBAR_Inc()

Description

Increments the current value of the scroll bar by a value of 1.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_Inc(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar.

Additional information

The definition of an "item" is application-specific, although in most cases it is equal to one line. Items are numbered top to bottom or left to right, beginning with a value of 0.

SCROLLBAR_SetColor()



Description

Sets the given color attribute of the scroll bar.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SCROLLBAR_SetColor(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj,
                             int Index, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar.
Index	(see table below)
Color	Color to be used.

Permitted values for parameter Index	
SCROLLBAR_CI_THUMB	Color of thumb area.
SCROLLBAR_CI_SHAFT	Color of shaft.
SCROLLBAR_CI_ARROW	Color of arrows.

Return value

Previous color used for the given index.

SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor()

Description

Sets the default color attributes for new scroll bars.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor(GUI_COLOR Color, unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color used as default for new scroll bars.
Index	(see table under SCROLLBAR_SetColor())

Return value

Previous default color.

SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultWidth()

Description

Sets the default width used to create a scrollbar.

Prototype

```
int SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultWidth(int DefaultWidth);
```

Parameter	Meaning

Return value

Previous default width.

SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems()

Description

Sets the number of items for scrolling.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int NumItems);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar.
NumItems	Number of items to be set.

Additional information

The definition of an "item" is application-specific, although in most cases it is equal to one line.

The number of items specified is the maximum value; the scroll bar cannot go beyond this value.

SCROLLBAR_SetPageSize()

Description

Sets the page size.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetPageSize(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int PageSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar.
PageSize	Page size (in number of items).

Additional information

Page size is specified as the number of items to one page. If the user pages up or down, either with the keyboard or by mouse-clicking in the scroll bar area, the window will be scrolled up or down by the number of items specified to be one page.

SCROLLBAR_SetState()

Description

Sets the state of a scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetState(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, const WM_SCROLL_STATE*
                        pState);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar.
pState	Pointer to a data structure of type WM_SCROLL_STATE.

Additional information

The data structure is defined as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    int NumItems;
    int v;
    int PageSize;
} WM_SCROLL_STATE;
```

SCROLLBAR_SetValue()

Description

Sets the current value of a scroll bar.

Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetValue(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int v);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar.
v	Value to be set.

SCROLLBAR_SetWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the scroll bar.

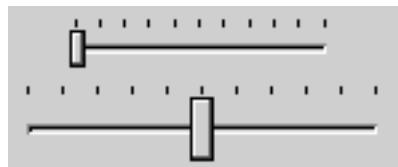
Prototype

```
void SCROLLBAR_SetWidth(SCROLLBAR_Handle hObj, int Width);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of scroll bar.
Width	Width to be set.

16.20 SLIDER: Slider widget

Slider widgets are commonly used for modifying values through the use of a slider bar. The widget consists of a slider bar and tick marks beside the bar. These tick marks can be used to snap the slider bar while dragging it. For details about how to use the tick marks for snapping refer to the function `SLIDER_SetRange()`.



All SLIDER-related routines are located in the file(s) `SLIDER*.c`, `SLIDER.h`. All identifiers are prefixed `SLIDER`.

16.20.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	<code>SLIDER_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT</code>	0xc0c0c0	Background color.
N	<code>SLIDER_COLOR0_DEFAULT</code>	0xc0c0c0	Slider (thumb) color.
N	<code>SLIDER_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT</code>	<code>GUI_BLACK</code>	Default color for rendering the focus rectangle.

16.20.2 Notification codes

The following events are sent from a slider widget to its parent window as part of a `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message:

Message	Explanation
<code>WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED</code>	Slider widget has been clicked.
<code>WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED</code>	Slider widget has been released.
<code>WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED</code>	Value of the slider widget has changed by moving the thumb.

16.20.3 Keyboard reaction

The widget reacts to the following keys if it has the input focus:

Key	Reaction
<code>GUI_KEY_RIGHT</code>	Increments the current value of the slider bar by one item.
<code>GUI_KEY_LEFT</code>	Decrements the current value of the slider bar by one item.

16.20.4 SLIDER API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI SLIDER-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>SLIDER_Create()</code>	Create the slider. (Obsolete)
<code>SLIDER_CreateEx()</code>	Create the slider.
<code>SLIDER_CreateIndirect()</code>	Create the slider from resource table entry.
<code>SLIDER_Dec()</code>	Decrement the value of the slider bar.

Routine	Explanation
<code>SLIDER_GetValue()</code>	Return the current value of the slider bar.
<code>SLIDER_Inc()</code>	Increment the value of the slider bar.
<code>SLIDER_SetBkColor()</code>	Sets the background color of the slider bar.
<code>SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor()</code>	Sets the default focus rectangle color for new slider bars.
<code>SLIDER_SetFocusColor()</code>	Sets the color of the focus rectangle.
<code>SLIDER_SetNumTicks()</code>	Sets the number of tick marks of the slider bar.
<code>SLIDER_SetRange()</code>	Set the range of the slider value.
<code>SLIDER_SetValue()</code>	Set the current value of the slider bar.
<code>SLIDER_SetWidth()</code>	Set the width of the slider bar.

SLIDER_Create()

(Obsolete, `SLIDER_CreateEx` should be used instead)

Description

Creates a SLIDER widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
SLIDER_Handle SLIDER_Create(int x0, int y0,
                           int xszie, int ysize,
                           WM_HWIN hParent, int Id, int WinFlags,
                           int SpecialFlags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x0</code>	Leftmost pixel of the slider (in parent coordinates).
<code>y0</code>	Topmost pixel of the slider (in parent coordinates).
<code>xszie</code>	Horizontal size of the slider (in pixels).
<code>ysize</code>	Vertical size of the slider (in pixels).
<code>hParent</code>	Handle of the parent window.
<code>Id</code>	Id to be returned
<code>WinFlags</code>	Window create flags. Typically <code>WM_CF_SHOW</code> in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to <code>WM_CreateWindow()</code> in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
<code>SpecialFlags</code>	Special creation flag (see indirect creation flag under <code>SLIDER_CreateIndirect()</code>).

Return value

Handle for the created SLIDER widget; 0 if the routine fails.

SLIDER_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a SLIDER widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
SLIDER_Handle SLIDER_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xszie, int ysize,
                           WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
```

```
int ExFlags, int Id);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new SLIDER widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	Special creation flags (see indirect creation flags under SLIDER_CreateIndirect()).
Id	Window ID of the widget.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

SLIDER_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The following flag may be used as the Flags element of the resource passed as parameter:

Permitted indirect creation flag	
SLIDER_CF_VERTICAL	Create a vertical slider (default is horizontal).

The Para element is not used in the resource table.

SLIDER_Dec()

Description

Decrements the current value of the slider bar by one item.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_Dec(SLIDER_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of slider widget.

SLIDER_GetValue()

Description

Returns the current value of the slider bar.

Prototype

```
int SLIDER_GetValue(SLIDER_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of slider widget.

Return value

The current value of the slider.

SLIDER_Inc()**Description**

Increments the current value of the slider bar by one item.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_Inc(SLIDER_Handle hObj);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of slider widget.

SLIDER_SetBkColor()**Description**

Sets the background color of the slider.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetBkColor(SLIDER_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of slider widget.
Color	Color to be used for the background. (range 0x000000 and 0xFFFF or a valid color define) GUI_INVALID_COLOR to make background transparent

Additional information

The background of this widget can either be filled with any available color or transparent. If a valid RGB color is specified, the background is filled with the color, otherwise the background (typically the contents of the parent window) is visible. If the background is transparent, the widget is treated as transparent window, otherwise as non-transparent window. Note that using a background color allows more efficient (faster) rendering.

This widget is per default a transparent window. The appearance of a transparent windows background depends on the appearance of the parent window. When a transparent window needs to be redrawn first the background will be drawn by sending a WM_PAINT message to the parent window.

If using this function with a valid color the status of the window will be changed from transparent to non transparent and if the window needs to be redrawn the background will be filled with the given color.

If GUI_INVALID_COLOR is passed to the function the status will be changed from non transparent to transparent.

SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor()**Description**

Sets the default focus rectangle color for new slider bars.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

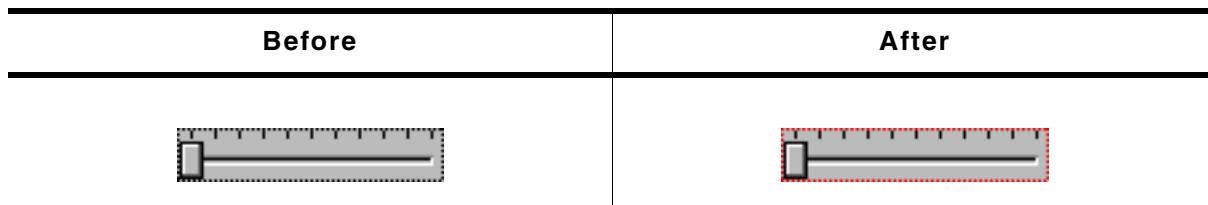
Parameter	Meaning
Color	Default color to be used for new slider bars.

Return value

Previous default focus rectangle color.

Additional information

For more information please refer to the function `SLIDER_SetFocusColor()`.

SLIDER_SetFocusColor()**Description**

Sets the color used to render the focus rectangle of the slider bar.

Prototype

```
GUI_COLOR SLIDER_SetFocusColor(SLIDER_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

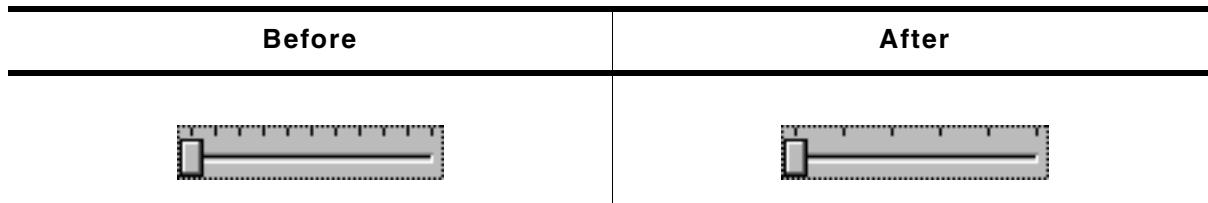
Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of widget.
Color	Color to be used for the focus rectangle.

Return value

Previous color of the focus rectangle.

Additional information

The focus rectangle is only visible if the widget has the input focus.

SLIDER_SetNumTicks()**Description**

Sets the number of tick marks of the slider bar.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetNumTicks(SLIDER_Handle hObj, int NumTicks);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of slider widget.
NumTicks	Number of tick marks drawn.

Additional information

After creating a slider widget the default number of tick marks is 10. The tick marks have no effect to snap the slider bar while dragging it.

SLIDER_SetRange()

Description

Sets the range of the slider.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetRange(SLIDER_Handle hObj, int Min, int Max);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of slider widget.
Min	Minimum value.
Max	Maximum value.

Additional information

After creating a slider widget the default range is set to 0 - 100.

Examples

If a value should be modified in the range of 0 - 2499 set the range as follows:
`SLIDER_SetRange(hSlider, 0, 2499);`

If a value should be modified in the range of 100 - 499 set the range as follows:
`SLIDER_SetRange(hSlider, 100, 499);`

If a value should be modified in the range of 0 to 5000 and the slider bar should change the value in steps of 250 set the range and the tick marks as follows. The result returned by `SLIDER_GetValue()` should be multiplied with 250:

```
SLIDER_SetRange(hSlider, 0, 20);
SLIDER_SetNumTicks(hSlider, 21);
```

SLIDER_SetValue()

Description

Sets the current value of the slider bar.

Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetValue(SLIDER_Handle hObj, int v);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of slider widget.
v	Value to be set.

SLIDER_SetWidth()

Description

Sets the width of the slider bar.

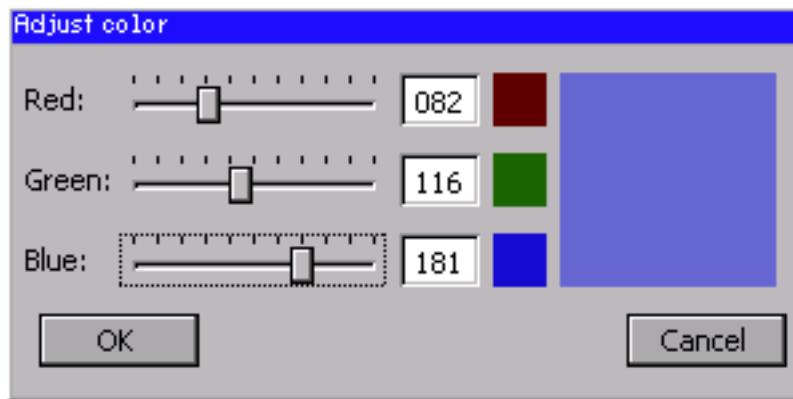
Prototype

```
void SLIDER_SetWidth(SLIDER_Handle hObj, int Width);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of slider widget.
Width	Width to be set.

16.20.5 Example

The source of the following sample is available as `DIALOG_SliderColor.c` in the samples shipped with μC/GUI:

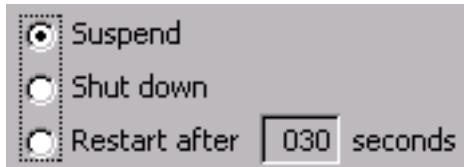


16.21 TEXT: Text widget

Text widgets are typically used in order to display fields of text in dialog boxes, as shown in the message box below:



Of course, text fields may also be used for labeling other widgets, as follows:



All TEXT-related routines are located in the file(s) TEXT*.c, TEXT.h. All identifiers are prefixed TEXT.

16.21.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
S	TEXT_FONT_DEFAULT	&GUI_Font13_1	Font used.

16.21.2 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

16.21.3 TEXT API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI TEXT-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
TEXT_Create()	Creates the text widget. (Obsolete)
TEXT_CreateAsChild()	Creates the text widget as a child window. (Obsolete)
TEXT_CreateEx()	Creates the text widget.
TEXT_CreateIndirect()	Creates the text widget from resource table entry.
TEXT_GetDefaultFont()	Returns the default font used for text.
TEXT_SetBkColor()	Sets the background color for the text.
TEXT_SetDefaultFont()	Sets the default font used for text.
TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor()	Sets the default text color used for text.
TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode()	Sets the default wrap mode for new text widgets.
TEXT_SetFont()	Sets the font used for a specified text widget.
TEXT_SetText()	Sets the text for a specified text widget.
TEXT_SetTextAlign()	Sets the text alignment of a specified text widget.
TEXT_SetTextColor()	Sets the text color of the given widget.
TEXT_SetWrapMode()	Sets the wrap mode of a specified text widget.

TEXT_Create()

(Obsolete, TEXT_CreateEx should be used instead)

Description

Creates a TEXT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
TEXT_Handle TEXT_Create(int x0, int y0,
                      int xsize, int ysize,
                      int Id, int Flags,
                      const char* s, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the text widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the text widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the text widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the text widget (in pixels).
Id	ID to be returned.
Flags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
s	Pointer to the text to be displayed.
Align	Alignment attribute for the text (see indirect creation flags under TEXT_CreateIndirect()).

Return value

Handle for the created TEXT widget; 0 if the routine fails.

TEXT_CreateAsChild()

(Obsolete, TEXT_CreateEx should be used instead)

Description

Creates a TEXT widget as a child window.

Prototype

```
TEXT_Handle TEXT_CreateAsChild(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                           WM_HWIN hParent, int Id, int Flags,
                           const char* s, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of the progress bar relative to the parent window.
y0	Y-position of the progress bar relative to the parent window.
xsize	Horizontal size of the text widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the text widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window.
Id	ID to be returned.
Flags	Window create flags (see TEXT_Create()).
s	Pointer to the text to be displayed.
Align	Alignment attribute for the text (see indirect creation flags under TEXT_CreateIndirect()).

Return value

Handle for the created TEXT widget; 0 if the routine fails.

TEXT_CreateEx()

Description

Creates a TEXT widget of a specified size at a specified location.

Prototype

```
TEXT_Handle TEXT_CreateEx(int x0, int y0, int xsize, int ysize,
                           WM_HWIN hParent, int WinFlags,
                           int ExFlags, int Id,
                           const char* pText);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
y0	Topmost pixel of the widget (in parent coordinates).
xsize	Horizontal size of the widget (in pixels).
ysize	Vertical size of the widget (in pixels).
hParent	Handle of parent window. If 0, the new TEXT widget will be a child of the desktop (top-level window).
WinFlags	Window create flags. Typically WM_CF_SHOW in order to make the widget visible immediately (please refer to WM_CreateWindow() in Chapter 15: "The Window Manager" for a list of available parameter values).
ExFlags	Alignment attribute for the text (see indirect creation flags under TEXT_CreateIndirect()).
Id	Window ID of the widget.
pText	Pointer to the text to be displayed.

Return value

Handle for the created widget; 0 if the routine fails.

TEXT_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The following flags may be used as the Flags element of the resource passed as parameter:

Permitted indirect creation flags ("OR" combinable)	
TEXT_CF_LEFT	Horizontal alignment: left
TEXT_CF_RIGHT	Horizontal alignment: right
TEXT_CF_HCENTER	Horizontal alignment: center
TEXT_CF_TOP	Vertical alignment: top
TEXT_CF_BOTTOM	Vertical alignment: bottom
TEXT_CF_VCENTER	Vertical alignment: center

The Para element is not used in the resource table.

TEXT_GetDefaultFont()

Description

Returns the default font used for text widgets.

Prototype

```
const GUI_FONT* TEXT_GetDefaultFont(void);
```

Return value

Pointer to the default font used for text widgets.

TEXT_SetBkColor()**Description**

Sets the background color of the text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetBkColor(TEXT_Handle hObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of text widget.
Color	Color to be used for the background. (range 0x000000 and 0xFFFFF or a valid color define) GUI_INVALID_COLOR to make background transparent

Additional information

The background of this widget can either be filled with any available color or transparent. If a valid RGB color is specified, the background is filled with the color, otherwise the background (typically the contents of the parent window) is visible. If the background is transparent, the widget is treated as transparent window, otherwise as non-transparent window. Note that using a background color allows more efficient (faster) rendering.

TEXT_SetDefaultFont()**Description**

Sets the default font used for text widgets.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetDefaultFont(const GUI_FONT* pFont);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pFont	Pointer to the font to be set as default.

TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor()**Description**

Sets the default text color used for text widgets.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used.

TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode()

Description

Sets the default text wrapping mode used for new text widgets.

Prototype

```
GUI_WRAPMODE TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode (GUI_WRAPMODE WrapMode) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
WrapMode	Default text wrapping mode used for new text widgets.

Return value

Previous default text wrapping mode.

Additional information

For details about text wrapping within the text widget please refer to the function TEXT_SetWrapMode().

TEXT_SetFont()

Description

Sets the font to be used for a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetFont (TEXT_Handle hObj, const GUI_FONT* pFont) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of text widget.
pFont	Pointer to the font to be used.

TEXT_SetText()

Description

Sets the text to be used for a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetText (TEXT_Handle hObj, const char* s) ;
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of text widget.
s	Text to be displayed.

TEXT_SetTextAlign()

Description

Sets the text alignment of a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetTextAlign(TEXT_Handle hObj, int Align);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of text widget.
Align	Text alignment (see TEXT_Create()).

TEXT_SetTextColor()**Description**

Sets the text color of a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetTextColor(TEXT_Handle pObj, GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of text widget.
Color	New text color.

TEXT_SetWrapMode()**Description**

Sets the wrapping mode of a specified text widget.

Prototype

```
void TEXT_SetWrapMode(TEXT_Handle hObj, GUI_WRAPMODE WrapMode);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hObj	Handle of text widget.
WrapMode	(see table below)

Permitted values for parameter pLCD_Api	
GUI_WRAPMODE_NONE	No wrapping will be performed.
GUI_WRAPMODE_WORD	Text is wrapped word wise.
GUI_WRAPMODE_CHAR	Text is wrapped char wise.

Additional information

For more details about text wrapping please refer to the function GUI_DispatchStringInRectWrap().

16.22 WINDOW: Window widget

The WINDOW widget is used to create a dialog window from a resource table. It should be used if the dialog should not look like a frame window. The window widget acts as background and as a container for child windows: It can contain child windows and fills the background, typically with gray.

It behaves much like a frame-window without frame and title bar and is used for dialogs.

16.22.1 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
S	WINDOW_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT	0xC0C0C0	Default background color for new WINDOW widgets

16.22.2 Keyboard reaction

The widget can not gain the input focus and does not react on keyboard input.

16.22.3 WINDOW API

The table below lists the available µC/GUI WINDOW-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
WINDOW_CreateIndirect()	Creates the window widget from a resource table entry.
WINDOW_SetDefaultBkColor()	Sets the default background color for new WINDOW widgets.

WINDOW_CreateIndirect()

Prototype explained at the beginning of the chapter. The sample folder contains the file `WIDGET_Window.c` which shows how to use the WINDOW widget in a dialog resource.

WINDOW_SetDefaultBkColor()

Description

Sets the default background color used for WINDOW widgets.

Prototype

```
void WINDOW_SetDefaultBkColor(GUI_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Color	Color to be used.

Chapter 17

Dialogs

Widgets may be created and used on their own, as they are by nature windows themselves. However, it is often desirable to use dialog boxes, which are windows that contain one or more widgets.

A dialog box (or dialog) is normally a window that appears in order to request input from the user. It may contain multiple widgets, requesting information from the user through various selections, or it may take the form of a message box which simply provides information (such as a note or warning to the user) and an "OK" button.

17.1 Dialog basics

Input focus

The window manager remembers the window or window object that was last selected by the user with the touch-screen, mouse, keyboard, or other means. This window receives keyboard input messages and is said to have the input focus.

The primary reason for keeping track of input focus is to determine where to send keyboard commands. The window which has input focus will receive events generated by the keyboard.

To move the input focus within a dialog to the next focussable dialog item the key `GUI_KEY_TAB` can be used. To move backwards `GUI_KEY_BACKTAB` can be used.

Blocking vs. non-blocking dialogs

Dialog windows can be blocking or non-blocking.

A blocking dialog blocks the thread of execution. It has input focus by default and must be closed by the user before the thread can continue. A blocking dialog does not disable other dialogs shown at the same time. With other words a blocking dialog is not a modal dialog. Blocking means, the used functions (`GUI_ExecDialogBox()` or `GUI_ExecCreatedDialog()`) does not return until the dialog is closed.

A non-blocking dialog, on the other hand, does not block the calling thread -- it allows the task to continue while it is visible. The function returns immediately after creating the dialog.

Dialog messages

A dialog box is a window, and it receives messages just like all other windows in the system do. Most messages are handled by the dialog box automatically; the others are passed to the callback routine specified upon creation of the dialog box (also known as the dialog procedure).

There are two types of additional messages which are sent to the dialog window procedure: `WM_INIT_DIALOG` and `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT`. The `WM_INIT_DIALOG` message is sent to the dialog box procedure immediately before a dialog box is displayed. Dialog procedures typically use this message to initialize widgets and carry out any other initialization tasks that affect the appearance of the dialog box. The `WM_NOTIFY_PARENT` message is sent to the dialog box by its child windows in order to notify the parent of any events in order to ensure synchronization. The events sent by a child depend on its type and are documented separately for every type of widget.

17.2 Creating a dialog

Two basic things are required to create a dialog box: a resource table that defines the widgets to be included, and a dialog procedure which defines the initial values for the widgets as well as their behavior. Once both items exist, you need only a single function call (`GUI_CreateDialogBox()` or `GUI_ExecDialogBox()`) to actually create the dialog.

Resource table

Dialog boxes may be created in a blocking manner (using `GUI_ExecDialogBox()`) or as non-blocking (using `GUI_CreateDialogBox()`). A resource table must first be defined which specifies all widgets to be included in the dialog. The example shown below creates a resource table. This particular sample was created manually, although it could also be done by a GUI-builder:

```
static const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO aDialogCreate[] = {
    { FRAMEWIN_CreateIndirect, "Dialog", 0, 10, 10, 180, 230, 0, 0 },
    { BUTTON_CreateIndirect, "OK", GUI_ID_OK, 100, 5, 60, 20, 0, 0 },
    { BUTTON_CreateIndirect, "Cancel", GUI_ID_CANCEL, 100, 30, 60, 20, 0, 0 },
    { TEXT_CreateIndirect, "LText", 0, 10, 55, 48, 15, 0, GUI_TA_LEFT },
    { TEXT_CreateIndirect, "RText", 0, 10, 80, 48, 15, 0, GUI_TA_RIGHT },
    { EDIT_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_EDIT0, 60, 55, 100, 15, 0, 50 },
    { EDIT_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_EDIT1, 60, 80, 100, 15, 0, 50 },
    { TEXT_CreateIndirect, "Hex", 0, 10, 100, 48, 15, 0, GUI_TA_RIGHT },
    { EDIT_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_EDIT2, 60, 100, 100, 15, 0, 6 },
    { TEXT_CreateIndirect, "Bin", 0, 10, 120, 48, 15, 0, GUI_TA_RIGHT },
    { EDIT_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_EDIT3, 60, 120, 100, 15, 0, 0 },
    { LISTBOX_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_LISTBOX0, 10, 20, 48, 40, 0, 0 },
    { CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_CHECK0, 10, 5, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_CHECK1, 30, 5, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    { SLIDER_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_SLIDER0, 60, 140, 100, 20, 0, 0 },
    { SLIDER_CreateIndirect, NULL, GUI_ID_SLIDER1, 10, 170, 150, 30, 0, 0 }
};
```

Dialog procedure

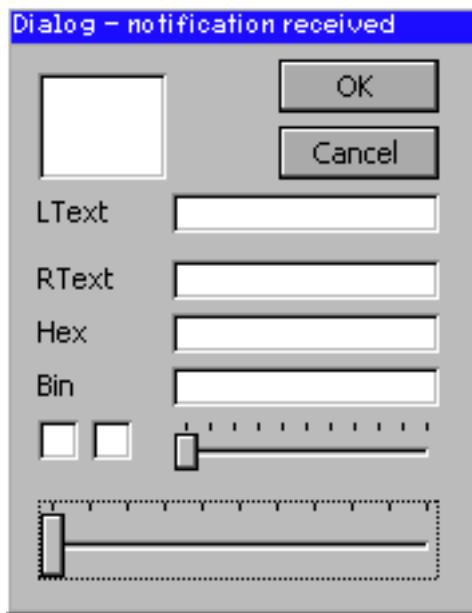
The sample above has been created using the blank dialog procedure shown below. This is the basic template which should be used as a starting point when creating any dialog procedure:

```
*****
*
*      Dialog procedure
*/
static void _cbCallback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        default:
            WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}
```

For this sample, the dialog box is displayed with the following line of code:

```
GUI_ExecDialogBox(_aDialogCreate, GUI_COUNTOF(_aDialogCreate), &_cbCallback, 0, 0, 0);
```

The resulting dialog box looks as follows, or similar (the actual appearance will depend on your configuration and default settings):



After creation of the dialog box, all widgets included in the resource table will be visible, although as can be seen in the previous screen shot, they will appear "empty". This is because the dialog procedure does not yet contain code that initializes the individual elements. The initial values of the widgets, the actions caused by them, and the interactions between them need to be defined in the dialog procedure.

Initializing the dialog

The typical next step is to initialize the widgets with their respective initial values. This is normally done in the dialog procedure as a reaction to the `WM_INIT_DIALOG` message. The program excerpt below illustrates things:

```
*****
*
*      Dialog procedure
*/
static void _cbCallback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    int NCode, Id;
    WM_HWIN hEdit0, hEdit1, hEdit2, hEdit3, hListBox;
    WM_HWIN hWin = pMsg->hWin;
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_INIT_DIALOG:
            /* Get window handles for all widgets */
            hEdit0 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT0);
            hEdit1 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT1);
            hEdit2 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT2);
            hEdit3 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT3);
            hListBox = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_LISTBOX0);
            /* Initialize all widgets */
            EDIT_SetText(hEdit0, "EDIT widget 0");
            EDIT_SetText(hEdit1, "EDIT widget 1");
            EDIT_SetTextAlign(hEdit1, GUI_TA_LEFT);
            EDIT_SetHexMode(hEdit2, 0x1234, 0, 0xffff);
            EDIT_SetBinMode(hEdit3, 0x1234, 0, 0xffff);
            LISTBOX_SetText(hListBox, _apListBox);
            WM_DisableWindow (WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK1));
            CHECKBOX_Check( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK0));
            CHECKBOX_Check( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK1));
            SLIDER_SetWidth( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER0), 5);
            SLIDER_SetValue( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER1), 50);
            break;
    }
}
```

```

    default:
        WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
    }
}

```

The initialized dialog box now appears as follows, with all widgets containing their initial values:



Defining dialog behavior

Once the dialog has been initialized, all that remains is to add code to the dialog procedure which will define the behavior of the widgets, making them fully operable. Continuing with the same example, the final dialog procedure is shown below:

```

*****
*
*      Dialog procedure
*/
static void _cbCallback(WM_MESSAGE * pMsg) {
    int NCode, _Id;
    WM_HWIN hEdit0, hEdit1, hEdit2, hEdit3, hListBox;
    WM_HWIN hWin = pMsg->hWin;
    switch (pMsg->MsgId) {
        case WM_INIT_DIALOG:
            /* Get window handles for all widgets */
            hEdit0 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT0);
            hEdit1 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT1);
            hEdit2 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT2);
            hEdit3 = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_EDIT3);
            hListBox = WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_LISTBOX0);
            /* Initialize all widgets */
            EDIT_SetText(hEdit0, "EDIT widget 0");
            EDIT_SetText(hEdit1, "EDIT widget 1");
            EDIT_SetTextAlign(hEdit1, GUI_TA_LEFT);
            EDIT_SetHexMode(hEdit2, 0x1234, 0, 0xffff);
            EDIT_SetBinMode(hEdit3, 0x1234, 0, 0xffff);
            LISTBOX_SetText(hListBox, _apListBox);
            WM_DisableWindow (WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK1));
            CHECKBOX_Check( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK0));
            CHECKBOX_Check( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_CHECK1));
            SLIDER_SetWidth( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER0), 5);
            SLIDER_SetValue( WM_GetDialogItem(hWin, GUI_ID_SLIDER1), 50);
            break;
        case WM_KEY:
            switch (((WM_KEY_INFO*) (pMsg->Data.p))->Key) {

```

```

    case GUI_ID_ESCAPE:
        GUI_EndDialog(hWin, 1);
        break;
    case GUI_ID_ENTER:
        GUI_EndDialog(hWin, 0);
        break;
    }
    break;
case WM_NOTIFY_PARENT:
    Id = WM_GetId(pMsg->hWinSrc); /* Id of widget */
    NCode = pMsg->Data.v;          /* Notification code */
    switch (NCode) {
        case WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED: /* React only if released */
            if (Id == GUI_ID_OK) {   /* OK Button */
                GUI_EndDialog(hWin, 0);
            }
            if (Id == GUI_ID_CANCEL) { /* Cancel Button */
                GUI_EndDialog(hWin, 1);
            }
            break;
        case WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED: /* Selection changed */
            FRAMEWIN_SetText(hWin, "Dialog - sel changed");
            break;
        default:
            FRAMEWIN_SetText(hWin, "Dialog - notification received");
    }
    break;
default:
    WM_DefaultProc(pMsg);
}
}

```

For further details, this entire example is available as `Dialog.c` in the samples shipped with μC/GUI.

17.3 API reference: dialogs

The table below lists the available dialog-related routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow:

Routine	Explanation
Dialog boxes	
GUI_CreateDialogBox	Create a non-blocking dialog.
GUI_ExecDialogBox	Create a blocking dialog.
GUI_EndDialog	End a dialog box.
Message boxes	
GUI_MessageBox	Create a message box.

17.4 Dialog boxes

GUI_CreateDialogBox

Description

Creates a non-blocking dialog box.

Prototype

```
WM_HWIN GUI_CreateDialogBox(const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO* paWidget,
                            int NumWidgets, WM_CALLBACK* cb,
                            WM_HWIN hParent, int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
paWidget	Pointer to resource table defining the widgets to be included in the dialog.
NumWidgets	Total number of widgets included in the dialog.
cb	Pointer to an application-specific callback function (dialog procedure).
hParent	Handle of parent window (0 = no parent window).
x0	X-position of the dialog relative to parent window.
y0	Y-position of the dialog relative to parent window.

GUI_ExecDialogBox

Description

Creates a blocking dialog box.

Prototype

```
int GUI_ExecDialogBox(const GUI_WIDGET_CREATE_INFO* paWidget,
                      int NumWidgets, WM_CALLBACK* cb,
                      WM_HWIN hParent, int x0, int y0);
```

Parameter	Meaning
paWidget	Pointer to a resource table defining the widgets to be included in the dialog.
NumWidgets	Total number of widgets included in the dialog.
cb	Pointer to an application-specific callback function (dialog procedure).
hParent	Handle of parent window (0 = no parent window).
x0	X-position of the dialog relative to parent window.
y0	Y-position of the dialog relative to parent window.

GUI_EndDialog

Description

Ends (closes) a dialog box.

Prototype

```
void GUI_EndDialog(WM_HWIN hDialog, int r);
```

Parameter	Meaning
hDialog	Handle to dialog box.
r	Value to be returned by GUI_ExecDialogBox.

Return value

Specifies the value to be returned to the calling thread from the function that created the dialog box (typically only relevant with GUI_ExecDialogBox).

With non-blocking dialogs, there is no application thread waiting and the return value is ignored.

17.5 Message boxes

A message box is actually a type of dialog which, once its default properties are specified, requires only one line of code to create. A message is displayed in a frame window with a title bar, as well as an "OK" button which must be pressed in order to close the window.

GUI_MessageBox

Description

Creates and displays a message box.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MessageBox(const char* sMessage, const char* sCaption, int Flags);
```

Parameter	Meaning
sMessage	Message to display.
sCaption	Caption for the title bar of the frame window.
Flags	Reserved for future extensions, value does not matter.

Additional information

The default properties of a message box can be changed by modifying them in the `GUIConf.h` file. The following table lists all available configuration macros:

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	MESSAGEBOX_BORDER	4	Distance between the elements of a message box and the elements of the client window frame.
N	MESSAGEBOX_XSIZEOK	50	X-size of the "OK" button.
N	MESSAGEBOX_YSIZEOK	20	Y-size of the "OK" button.
S	MESSAGEBOX_BKCOLOR	GUI_WHITE	Color of the client window background.

It is possible to display messages with more than one row. The example below shows how to do this.

Example

The following example demonstrates the use of a simple message box:

```
*****
*                               Micrium Inc.
*                               Empowering embedded systems
*
*                               µC/GUI sample code
*
*****
```

```
-----
File      : DIALOG_MessageBox.c
Purpose   : Example demonstrating GUI_MessageBox
-----
```

```
/*
#include "GUI.h"
*/
*****
```

```
*          main
*
***** ****
*/
void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    WM_SetBkWindowColor(GUI_RED);
    /* Create message box and wait until it is closed */
    GUI_MessageBox("This text is shown\nin a message box",
                   "Caption/Title", GUI_MESSAGEBOX_CF_MOVEABLE);
    GUI_Delay(500);                                /* Wait for a short moment ... */
    GUI_MessageBox("New message !",
                   "Caption/Title", GUI_MESSAGEBOX_CF_MOVEABLE);
}
```

Screen shot of above example



Chapter 18

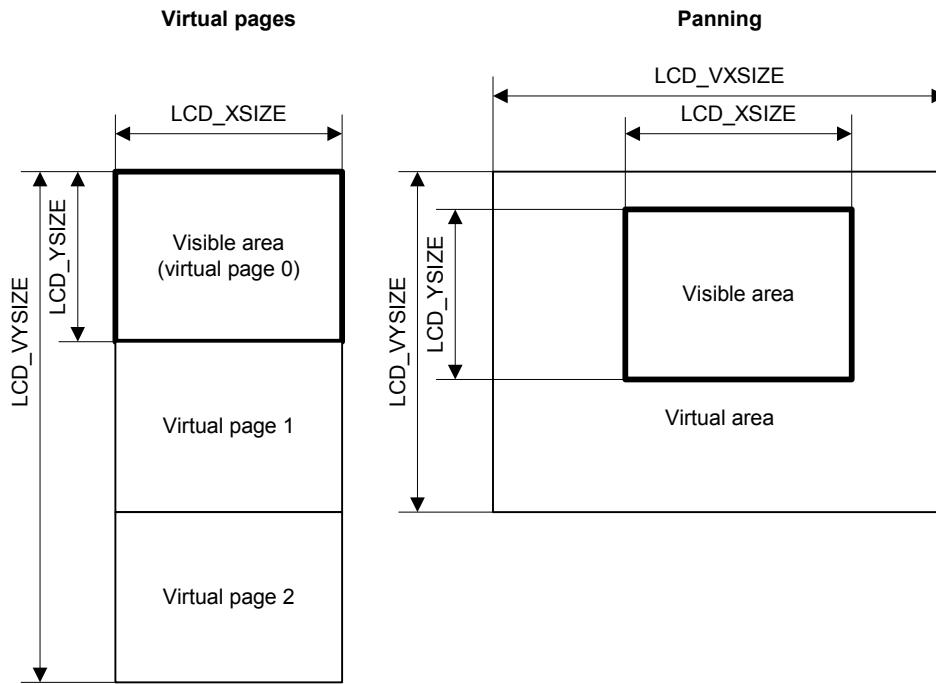
Virtual screen / Virtual pages

A virtual screen means a display area greater than the physical size of the display. It requires additional video memory and allows instantaneous switching between different screens even on slow CPUs. The following chapter shows

- the requirements for using virtual screens,
- how to configure µC/GUI
- and how to take advantage of virtual screens.

If a virtual display area is configured, the visible part of the display can be changed by setting the origin.

18.1 Introduction



The virtual screen support of μ C/GUI can be used for panning or for switching between different video pages.

Panning

If the application uses one screen which is larger than the display, the virtual screen API functions can be used to make the desired area visible.

Virtual pages

Virtual pages are a way to use the display RAM as multiple pages. If an application for example needs 3 different screens, each screen can use its own page in the display RAM. In this case, the application can draw the second and the third page before they are used. After that the application can switch very fast between the different pages using the virtual screen API functions of μ C/GUI. The only thing the functions have to do is setting the right display start address for showing the desired screen. In this case the virtual Y-size typically is a multiple of the display size in Y.

18.2 Requirements

The virtual screen feature requires hardware with more display RAM than required for a single screen and the ability of the hardware to change the start position of the display output.

Video RAM

The used display controller should support video RAM for the virtual area. For example if the display has a resolution of 320x240 and a color depth of 16 bits per pixel and 2 screens should be supported, the required size of the video RAM can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size} = \text{LCD_XSIZE} * \text{LCD_YSIZE} * \text{LCD_BITSPERPIXEL} / 8 * \text{NUM_SCREENS}$$

Size = 320 x 240 x 16 / 8 x 2
 Size = 307200 Bytes

Configurable display start position

The used display controller needs a configurable display start position. This means the display driver even has a register for setting the display start address or it has a command to set the upper left display start position.

18.3 Configuration

The virtual screen support configuration should be done in the file `LCDConf.h`. The table below shows all available configuration macros:

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
F	LCD_SET_ORG	---	Macro used to set the display start position of the upper left corner.
N	LCD_VXSIZE	LCD_XSIZE	Horizontal resolution of virtual display.
N	LCD_VYSIZE	LCD_YSIZE	Vertical resolution of virtual display.

LCD_SET_ORG

Description

This macro is used by the display driver to set the display start position of the upper left corner of the display.

Type

Function replacement.

Prototype

```
#define LCD_SET_ORG(x, y)
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X position of the visible area.
y	Y position of the visible area.

Example

```
#define LCD_SET_ORG(x, y) SetDisplayOrigin(x, y) /* Function call for setting the display start position */
```

LCD_VXSIZE, LCD_VYSIZE

Description

The virtual screen size is configured by the macros `LCD_VXSIZE` and `LCD_VYSIZE`. `LCD_VXSIZE` always should be > `LCD_XSIZE` and `LCD_VYSIZE` should be > `LCD_YSIZE`. If a virtual area is configured the clipping area of `μC/GUI` depends on the virtual screen and not on the display size. Drawing operations outside of `LCD_XSIZE` and `LCD_YSIZE` but inside the virtual screen are performed.

Type

Numerical values.

18.3.1 Sample configuration

The following excerpt of the file `LCDConf.h` shows how to configure µC/GUI for using a virtual area of 640x480 pixels on a QVGA display with 320x240 pixels:

```
#define LCD_SET_ORG(x, y) SetDisplayOrigin(x, y) /* Function call for setting the
                                                 display start position */
#define LCD_XSIZE          320 /* X-resolution of LCD */
#define LCD_YSIZE          240 /* Y-resolution of LCD */
#define LCD_VXSIZE         640 /* Virtual X-resolution */
#define LCD_VYSIZE         480 /* Virtual Y-resolution */
```

18.4 Samples

In the following a few samples are shown to make clear how to use virtual screens with µC/GUI.

18.4.1 Basic sample

The following sample shows how to use a virtual screen of 128x192 and a display of 128x64 for instantaneous switching between 3 different screens.

Configuration

```
#define LCD_XSIZE 128
#define LCD_YSIZE 64
#define LCD_VYSIZE 192
```

Application

```
GUI_SetColor(GUI_RED);
GUI_FillRect(0, 0, 127, 63);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_GREEN);
GUI_FillRect(0, 64, 127, 127);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
GUI_FillRect(0, 127, 127, 191);
GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
GUI_DispStringAt("Screen 0", 0, 0);
GUI_DispStringAt("Screen 1", 0, 64);
GUI_DispStringAt("Screen 2", 0, 128);
GUI_SetOrg(0, 64); /* Set origin to screen 1 */
GUI_SetOrg(0, 128); /* Set origin to screen 2 */
```

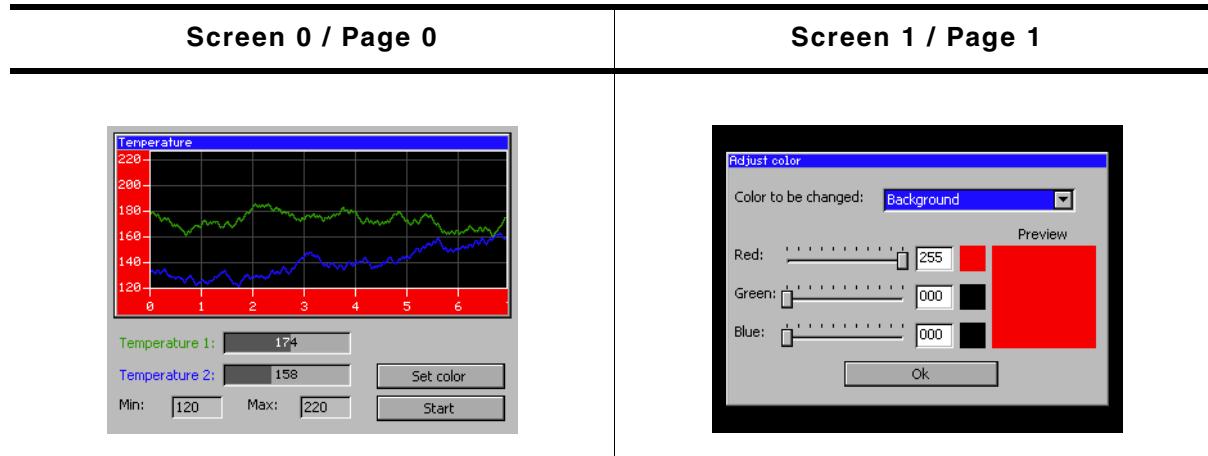
Output

The table below shows the output of the display:

Explanation	Display output	Contents of virtual area
Before executing <code>GUI_SetOrg(0, 240)</code>	 Screen 0	 Screen 0
After executing <code>GUI_SetOrg(0, 240)</code>	 Screen 1	 Screen 0 Screen 1 Screen 2
After executing <code>GUI_SetOrg(0, 480)</code>	 Screen 2	 Screen 0 Screen 1 Screen 2

18.4.2 Real time sample using the window manager

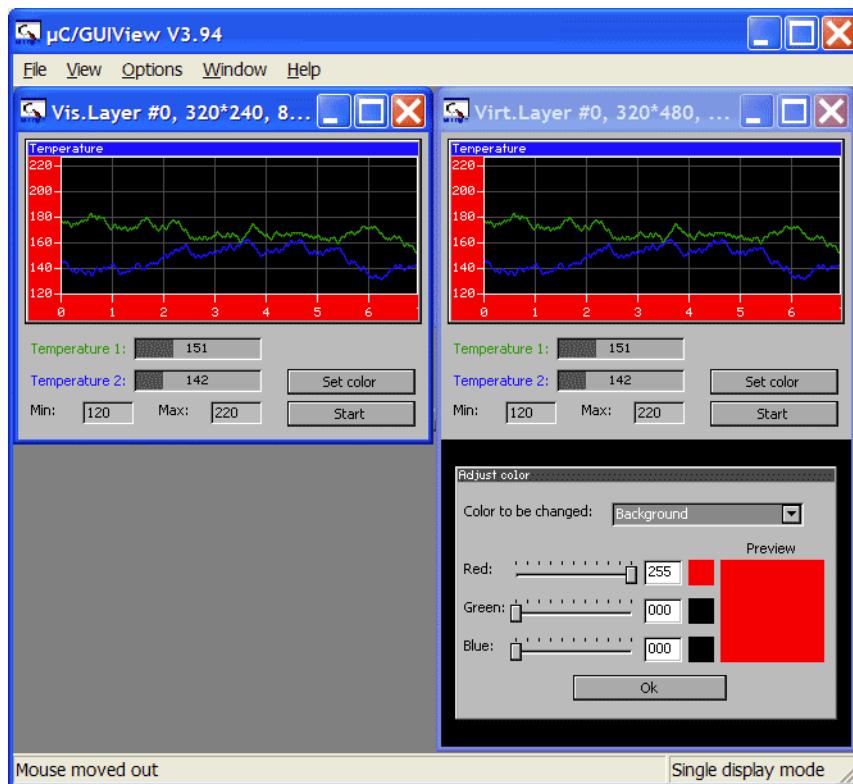
The shipment of µC/GUI contains a sample which shows how to use virtual screens in a real time application. It can be found under Sample\GUI\VSCREEN_RealTime.c:



After showing a short introduction the sample creates 2 screens on 2 separate pages as shown above. The first screen shows a dialog which includes a graphical representation of 2 temperature curves. When pressing the 'Set color' button, the application switches instantaneously to the second screen, even on slow CPUs. After pressing the 'OK' button of the 'Adjust color' dialog, the application switches back to the first screen.

For more details, please take a look at the source code of the sample.

Viewer Screenshot of the above sample



Make sure to modify LCDConf.h to include `#define LCD_VYSIZE 480`. When using the viewer both screens can be shown at the same time. The screenshot above shows the visible display at the left side and the contents of the whole configured virtual display RAM at the right side.

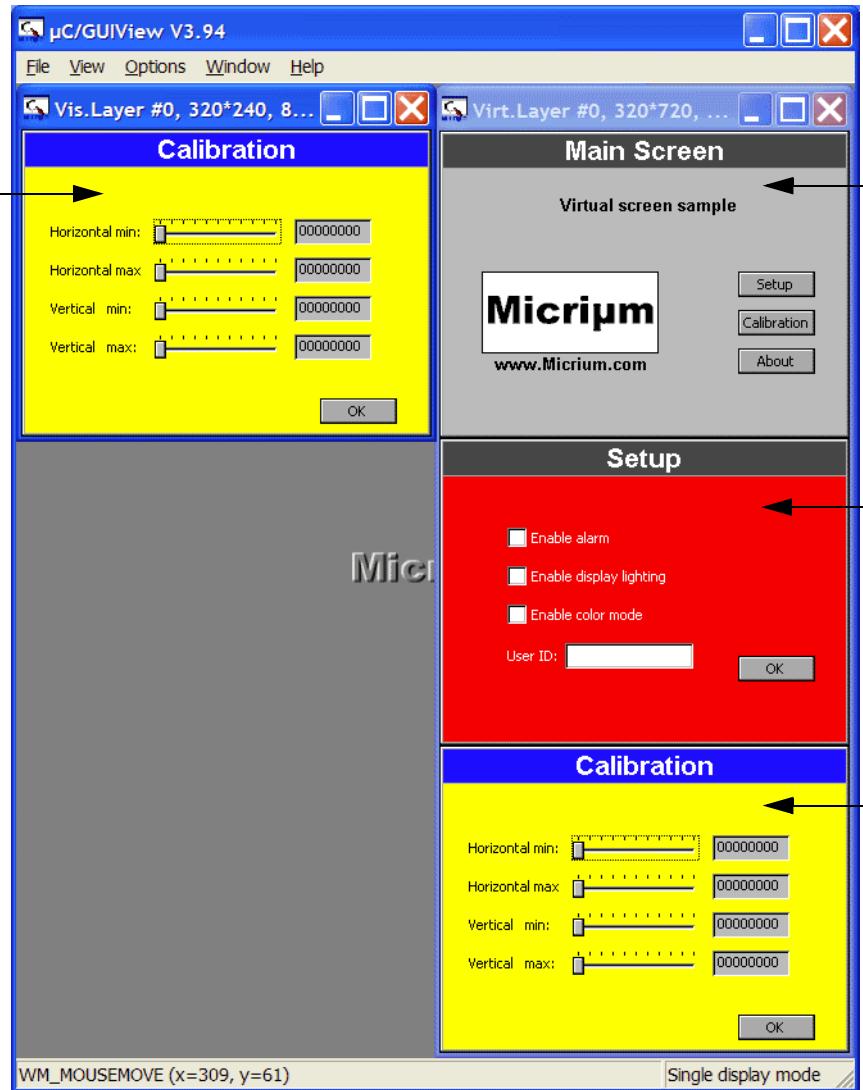
18.4.3 Dialog sample using the window manager

The second advanced sample is available in the folder Sample\GUI\VSCREEN_MultiPage. It uses the virtual screen to show 4 screens on 3 different video pages. The application consists of the following screens:

Main screen / Page 0	Setup screen / Page 1
Calibration screen / Page 2	About screen / Page 2

After a short intro screen the 'Main Screen' is shown on the display using page 0. After the 'Setup' button is pressed, the 'Setup' screen is created on page 1. After the screen has been created, the application makes the screen visible by switching to page 1. The 'Calibration' and the 'About' screen both use page 2. If the user presses one of the buttons 'Calibration' or 'About' the application switches to page 2 and shows the dialog.

Viewer Screenshot of the above sample



The viewer can show all pages at the same time. The screenshot above shows the visible display at the left side and the contents of the whole layer (virtual display RAM) with the pages 0 - 2 at the right side.

18.5 Virtual screen API

The following table lists the available routines of the virtual screen support.

Routine	Explanation
GUI_GetOrg()	Returns the display start position.
GUI_SetOrg()	Sets the display start position.

GUI_GetOrg()

Description

Returns the display start position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_GetOrg(int * px, int * py);
```

Parameter	Meaning
px	Pointer to variable of type int to store the X position of the display start position.
py	Pointer to variable of type int to store the Y position of the display start position.

Additional information

The function stores the current display start position into the variables pointed by the given pointers.

GUI_SetOrg()

Description

Sets the display start position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetOrg(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	New X position of the display start position.
y	New Y position of the display start position.

Chapter 19

Multi layer / multi display support

If you need to access more than 1 display or your LCD-controller supports more than 1 layer (and you want to use more than one layer) you need the multi layer support of μ C/GUI. This feature is a separate (optional) software item and is not included in the μ C/GUI basic package. The software for the multi layer support is located in the subdirectory GUI\MultiLayer.

Multi layer support and multi display support work the same way. In the configuration file you can define up to 6 displays/layers with their own settings. That means each display can be accessed with its own color settings, its own size and its own LCD-driver. In order to activate this feature, you simply need to use an appropriate LCD-configuration file LCDConf.h and you have to define the number of layers in GUIConf.h.

19.1 Introduction

Windows can be placed in any layer or display, drawing operations can be used on any layer or display. Since there are really only smaller differences from this point of view, multiple layers and multiple displays are handled the same way (Using the same API routines) and are simply referred to as multiple layers, even if the particular embedded system uses multiple displays. The µC/GUI viewer allows you to look at every individual layer (display), but in the case of multiple layer systems also to look at the actual output (the composite view). Currently systems with multiple displays and multiple layers can be used, but not simulated.

19.1.1 Limitations

Currently systems with a total of max 6 displays / layers are supported.

19.1.2 Selecting a layer for drawing operations

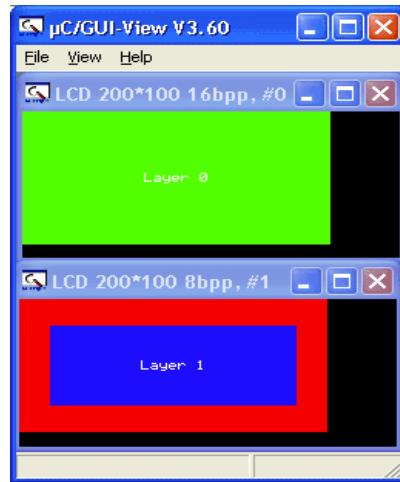
When drawing directly, per default layer 0 is used. An other layer can be selected by using GUI_SelLayer().

Sample

The following sample shows how to select a layer for drawing operations:

```
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    /* Draw something on default layer 0 */
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_GREEN);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Layer 0", 100, 46);
    /* Draw something on layer 1 */
    GUI_SelLayer(1); /* Select layer 1 */
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_RED);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLUE);
    GUI_FillRect(20, 20, 179, 79);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TM_TRANS);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Layer 1", 100, 46);
    while(1) {
        GUI_Delay(100);
    }
}
```

Screenshot of above sample



19.1.3 Selecting a layer for a window

The window manager automatically keeps track of which window is located in which layer. This is done in a fairly easy way:

If the window manager is used, every layer has a top level (desktop) window.

Any other window in this layer is visible only if it is a descendent (a child or grandchild or ...) of one of these desktop windows. Which layer a window is in depends solely on which desktop window it is a descendent of.

Sample

The following sample shows how to create 3 windows on 2 different desktop windows:

```
/* Create 1 child window on desktop 0 */
hWin0 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild( 10, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(0), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin0, 0 );
/* Create 2 child windows on desktop 1 */
hWin1 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild( 10, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(1), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin1, 0 );
hWin2 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(110, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(1), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin2, 0 );
```

The following table shows the screenshot and the window hierarchy of the above sample:

Screenshot	Window hierarchy
	<pre> graph TD Desktop0[Desktop 0] --- Window0[Window 0] Desktop1[Desktop 1] --- Window1[Window 1] Desktop1 --- Window2[Window 2] </pre>

19.1.3.1 Moving a window from one layer to another

This can sometimes be very desirable and can easily be accomplished: If a window is detached from its parent (The desktop window of one layer or any descendent of this desktop window) and attached to a window which lies in an other layer, this window actually moves from one layer to another.

Sample

The following sample shows how to attach a window to a new parent window:

```

/* Create 1 child window on desktop 0 */
hWin0 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild( 10, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(0), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin0, 0 );
/* Create 2 child windows on desktop 1 */
hWin1 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild( 10, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(1), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin1, 0 );
hWin2 = WM_CreateWindowAsChild(110, 20, 80, 70,
                               WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(1), WM_CF_SHOW, _cbWin2, 0 );
GUI_Delay(1000);
/* Detach window 2 from desktop 1 and attach it to desktop 0 */
WM_AttachWindow(hWin2, WM_GetDesktopWindowEx(0));

```

The following table shows the screenshot and the window hierarchy of the above sample before attaching the window to the new parent:

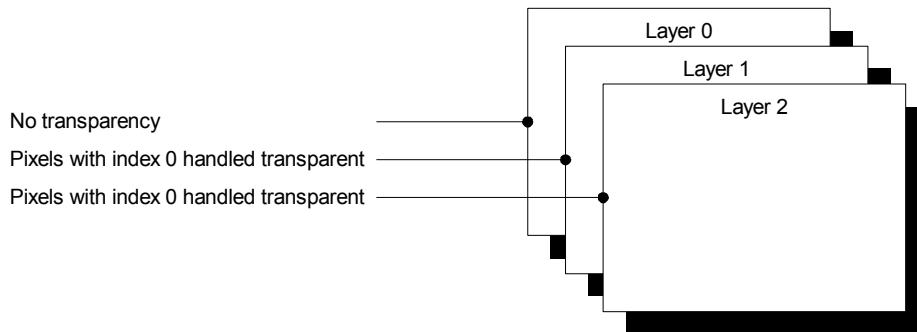
Screenshot	Window hierarchy
	<p>Layer 0</p> <pre> graph TD Desktop0[Desktop 0] --- Window0[Window 0] </pre> <p>Layer 1</p> <pre> graph TD Desktop1[Desktop 1] --- Window1[Window 1] Desktop0[Desktop 0] --- Window2[Window 2] </pre>

The next table shows the screenshot and the window hierarchy of the above sample after attaching the window to the new parent:

Screenshot	Window hierarchy
	<p>Layer 0</p> <pre> graph TD Desktop0[Desktop 0] --- Window0[Window 0] Desktop0 --- Window2[Window 2] </pre> <p>Layer 1</p> <pre> graph TD Desktop1[Desktop 1] --- Window1[Window 1] </pre>

19.2 Using multi layer support

μ C/GUI does not distinguish between multiple layers or multiple displays. When using multiple layers normally the size and the driver for each layer is the same. The viewer shows each layer in a separate window. The composite window of the viewer shows the layers one above the other:



19.2.1 Using the viewer with multiple layers

The μ C/GUI viewer treats pixels with index 0 in a layer above layer 0 as transparent. This means in the composite view the pixels of the layers below are visible.

19.2.2 Using transparency

The following sample shows how to draw transparent and non transparent:

```
GUI_SelLayer(1);
GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);           /* Select white for the background */
GUI_Clear();
GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLACK);            /* Select black for the text */
GUI_SetFont(&GUI_FontComic24B_ASCII);
GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Layer#:1",
                        XSize / 2, 5);
GUI_SetColorIndex(0);                /* Select transparency */
GUI_FillCircle(LCD_GetXSize() / 2,
               YSize / 2 + 15,
               YSize / 2 - 20);          /* A transparent circle will be drawn */
```

19.2.3 Multi layer sample

Chapter 3 "Simulator and viewer" contains a multi layer sample. For details please take a look to this chapter.

19.2.4 Pitfalls

Since for all but layer 0 Index 0 means transparency, Index 0 can not be used to display colors. This also means that the color conversion should never yield 0 as best match for a color, since this would result in a transparent pixel. This means that only some fixed palette modes should be used and that you need to be careful when defining your own palette. You need to make sure that the color conversion (24 bit RGB -> Index) never yields 0 as result.

Fixed palette modes

8666_1 is currently the only available mode. For details please take a look at chapter colors.

Custom palette mode

If a custom palette should be used in a layer > 0, the first color should not be used from the color conversion routines. The following shows a sample definition for a custom palette with 15 gray scales:

```
#define LCD_FIXEDPALETTE_1 0
#define LCD_PHYSCOLORS_1 0x000000,           /* Transparency, not black */ \
    0x000000, 0x222222, 0x333333, \
    0x444444, 0x555555, 0x666666, 0x777777, \
    0x888888, 0x999999, 0xAAAAAA, 0xBBBBBB, \
    0xCCCCCC, 0xDDDDDD, 0xEEEEEE, 0xFFFFFFFF
```

If you need to draw some black items with this palette you can not use `GUI_SetColor(0x000000)`. The result from the color conversion routines would be index 0 (transparent). You should use `GUI_SetColorIndex(1)`.

19.3 Using multi display support

Each display can be accessed with its own driver and with its own settings. You can define up to 5 different displays.

19.3.1 Enabling multi display support

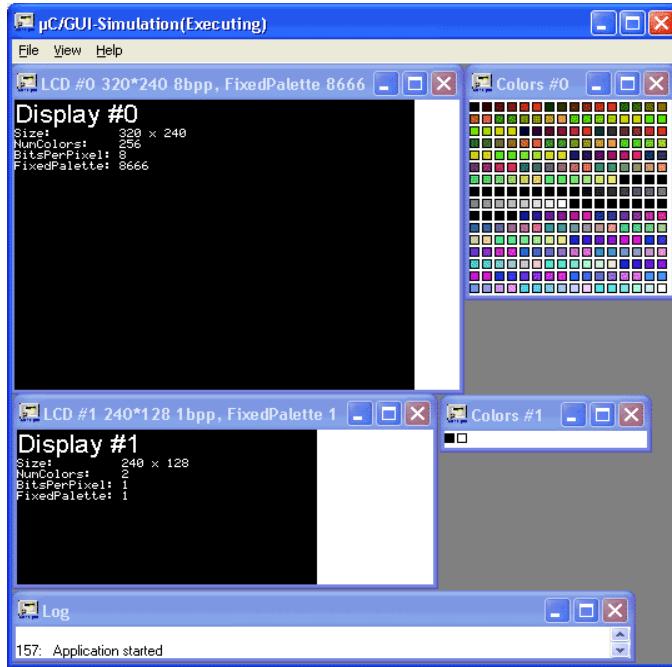
To enable the multi display support you have to define the number of layers in `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define GUI_NUM_LAYERS 2 /* Enables support for 2 displays/layers */
```

Further you have to modify your `LCDConf.h` as described later in this chapter.

19.3.2 Multi display sample

The sample below shows a screenshot of the simulation with 2 displays. The first display is a 8bpp color display with a size of 320 x 240 pixel. The driver is LCD13XX.c configured for an Epson S1D13705 LCD-controller. The second display is a 1bpp bw-display with a size of 240 x 128 pixels. The driver is LCD8L.c configured for a Toshiba T6963 LCD-controller:



19.4 Configuring multi layer support

Configuration of the above multi layer sample

```
#ifndef LCDCONF_H
#define LCDCONF_H

/********************* General configuration of LCD *****/
*
*           General configuration of LCD
*
***** Configuration of Layer 0
*/
#define LCD_NUM_DISPLAYS      2

/********************* Configuration of Layer 0 *****/
*
*           Configuration of Layer 0
*
***** Configuration of LCD Controller 0
*/
#define LCD_CONTROLLER_0      3916
#define LCD_XSIZE_0           400      /* X-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_YSIZE_0           234      /* Y-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL_0    16
#define LCD_FIXEDPALETTE_0    655
#define LCD_SWAP_BYTE_ORDER_0 1
#define LCD_SWAP_RB_0          1
#define LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER_0()
#define LCD_READ_MEM_0(Off)    *((U16 *) (0xc00000 + (((U32)(Off)) << 1)))
#define LCD_WRITE_MEM_0(Off,data) *((U16 *) (0xc00000 + (((U32)(Off)) << 1))) = data
```

```

*****
*
*      Configuration of Layer 1
*
*****
*/
#define LCD_CONTROLLER_1      3916
#define LCD_XSIZE_1           400      /* X-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_YSIZE_1            234      /* Y-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL_1     8
#define LCD_FIXEDPALETTE_1    86661
#define LCD_SWAP_BYTE_ORDER_1  1
#define LCD_SWAP_RB_1          1
#define LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER_1()
#define LCD_READ_MEM_1(Off)    *((U16 *) (0xd00000 + (((U32)(Off)) << 1)))
#define LCD_WRITE_MEM_1(Off,data) *((U16 *) (0xd00000 + (((U32)(Off)) << 1))) = data
#endif /* LCDCONF_H */

```

19.5 Configuring multi display support

Configuration of the above multi display sample

```

#ifndef LCDCONF_H
#define LCDCONF_H

*****
*
*      General configuration of LCD
*
*****
*/
#define LCD_NUM_DISPLAYS        2

*****
*
*      Configuration of Display 0
*
*****
*/
#define LCD_CONTROLLER_0         1375
#define LCD_XSIZE_0              320      /* X-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_YSIZE_0              240      /* Y-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_VXSIZE_0             320      /* X-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_VYSIZE_0             240      /* Y-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_SWAP_XY_0             0       /* If active: X <-> Y */
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL_0        8

*****
*
*      Full bus configuration
*/
#define LCD_READ_MEM_0(Off)      *((U16 *) (0xc00000 + (((U32)(Off)) << 1)))
#define LCD_WRITE_MEM_0(Off,data) *((U16 *) (0xc00000 + (((U32)(Off)) << 1))) = data
#define LCD_READ_REG_0(Off)       *((volatile U16 *) (0xc1ffe0 + (((U16)(Off)) << 1)))
#define LCD_WRITE_REG_0(Off,data) *((volatile U16 *) (0xc1ffe0 + (((U16)(Off)) << 1))) = data

*****
*
*      Define contents of registers
*/
#define LCD_REG0_0      (0)
#define LCD_REG1_0      (0x23) \
                           |(1<<2)
#define LCD_REG2_0      ((3<<6) \

```

```

        | (1<<5) \
        | (1<<4) \
        | (0<<3) \
        | (0<<2) \
        | (0<<1) \
        | (0<<0))
#define LCD_REG3_0      \
        | \
        | ((0<<7) \
        | (0<<3) \
        | (0<<2) \
        | (3<<0))

#define LCD_REG4_0 (LCD_XSIZE_0 / 8 - 1)
#define LCD_REG5_0 (((LCD_YSIZE_0 - 1) & 255)
#define LCD_REG6_0 (((LCD_YSIZE_0 - 1) >> 8)
#define LCD_REG7_0 (0)
#define LCD_REG8_0 (31)
#define LCD_REG9_0 (0)
#define LCD_REGA_0 (0)
#define LCD_REGB_0 (0)
#define LCD_REGC_0 (0)
#define LCD_REGD_0 (0)
#define LCD_REG12_0 (LCD_BITSPERPIXEL_0 * (LCD_VXSIZE_0 - LCD_XSIZE_0) / 16)
#define LCD_REG13_0 LCD_REG5_0
#define LCD_REG14_0 LCD_REG6_0
#define LCD_REG1B_0 (0)
#define LCD_REG1C_0 (0x78)

/*********************  

*  

*      Init sequence for 16 bit access  

*/  

#if !LCD_SWAP_BYTE_ORDER_0
#define LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(Adr, d0, d1) LCD_WRITE_REG(Adr, ((d0)<<8) | (d1))
#else
#define LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(Adr, d0, d1) LCD_WRITE_REG(Adr, ((d1)<<8) | (d0))
#endif

#define LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER_0()  

    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x00 >> 1, LCD_REG0_0, LCD_REG1_0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x02 >> 1, LCD_REG2_0, LCD_REG3_0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x04 >> 1, LCD_REG4_0, LCD_REG5_0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x06 >> 1, LCD_REG6_0, LCD_REG7_0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x08 >> 1, LCD_REG8_0, LCD_REG9_0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x0a >> 1, LCD_REGA_0, LCD_REGB_0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x0c >> 1, LCD_REGC_0, LCD_REGD_0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REG(0x0e >> 1, 0x00); \
    LCD_WRITE_REG(0x10 >> 1, 0x00); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x12 >> 1, LCD_REG12_0, LCD_REG13_0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x14 >> 1, LCD_REG14_0, 0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x1a >> 1, 0, LCD_REG1B_0); \
    LCD_WRITE_REGLH_0(0x1c >> 1, LCD_REG1C_0, 0)

/*********************  

*  

*      Configuration of Display 1  

*/  

*****  

*/  

#define LCD_CONTROLLER_1      6963
#define LCD_XSIZE_1           240      /* X-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_YSIZE_1           128      /* Y-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL_1     1

/*********************  

*  

*      Simple bus configuration  

*/
void LCD_X_Write00(char c);
void LCD_X_Write01(char c);
char LCD_X_Read00(void);
char LCD_X_Read01(void);
#define LCD_WRITE_A1_1(Byte) LCD_X_Write01(Byte)

```

```
#define LCD_WRITE_A0_1(Byte) LCD_X_Write00(Byte)
#define LCD_READ_A1_1() LCD_X_Read01()
#define LCD_READ_A0_1() LCD_X_Read00()

#define LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER_1() LCD_X_Init()

#endif /* LCDCONF_H */
```

19.6 Multi layer API

The table below lists the available multi layer related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow:

Routine	Explanation
GUI_SelectLayer()	Selects a layer/display for output operations
GUI_SetLUTColorEx()	Set color of a color index in the given layer.
LCD_GetNumDisplays()	Returns the number of displays.

GUI_SelectLayer()

Description

Selects a layer for drawing operations.

Prototype

```
unsigned int GUI_SetLayer(unsigned int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Layer index.

Return value

Index of previous selected layer.

GUI_SetLUTColorEx()

Description

Modifies a single entry in the color table and the LUT of the given layer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SetLUTColorEx(U8 Pos, LCD_COLOR Color, unsigned int LayerIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Pos	Position within the lookup table. Should be less than the number of colors (e.g. 0-3 for 2 bpp, 0-15 for 4 bpp, 0-255 for 8 bpp).
Color	24-bit RGB value.
Index	Layer index.

Additional Information

(see [GUI_SetLUTColor](#))

LCD_GetNumDisplays()

Description

Returns the number of displays/layers configured in your configuration.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetNumDisplays(void);
```

Return value

Number of displays/layers configured in your configuration.

Chapter 20

Pointer Input Devices

μ C/GUI provides touch-screen, mouse, and keyboard support. The basic μ C/GUI package includes a driver for analog touch-screens and a PS2 mouse driver, although other types of touch-panel and mouse devices can also be used with the appropriate drivers. Any type of keyboard driver is compatible with μ C/GUI.
The software for input devices is located in the subdirectory `GUI\Core`.

20.1 Description

Pointer input devices are devices such as mouse, touch-screen, joystick. Multiple pointer input devices can be used in a single application to enable simultaneous mouse/touch-screen/joystick use. Basically all a PID driver does is call the routine `GUI_PID_StoreState()` whenever an event (such as mouse move, or press on the touch screen) has been detected.

The window manager takes care of the appropriate reaction to PID events; If the window manager is not used, your application is responsible for reacting to PID events.

20.2 Pointer input device API

The table below lists the pointer input device routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow.

Note: This API is used by the PID-driver; if you use a PID-driver shipped with µC/GUI, your code does not need to call these routines.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_PID_GetState()</code>	Return the current state of the PID.
<code>GUI_PID_StoreState()</code>	Store the current state of the PID.

Data structure

The structure of type `GUI_PID_STATE` referenced by the parameter `pState` is filled by the routine with the current values. The structure is defined as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    int x, y;
    unsigned char Pressed;
} GUI_PID_STATE;
```

Elements of `GUI_PID_STATE`

Data type	Element	Meaning
int	x	X position of pointer input device.
int	y	Y position of pointer input device.
unsigned char	Pressed	If using a touch screen this value can be 0 (unpressed) or 1 (pressed). If using a mouse bit 0 is used for the pressed state of the left button and bit 1 for the right button. The bits are 1 if the button is pressed and 0 if not.

`GUI_PID_GetState()`

Description

Returns if the input device is currently pressed or not and fills the given `GUI_PID_STATE` structure with the current state information.

Prototype

```
void GUI_PID_GetState(const GUI_PID_STATE *pState);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pState</code>	Pointer to a structure of type <code>GUI_PID_STATE</code> .

Return value

1 if input device is currently pressed; 0 if not pressed.

`GUI_PID_StoreState()`

Description

Stores the current state of the pointer input device.

Prototype

```
int GUI_PID_StoreState(GUI_PID_STATE *pState);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pState	Pointer to a structure of type GUI_PID_STATE.

Additional information

This function can be used from an interrupt service routine.

20.3 Mouse driver

Mouse support consists of two "layers": a generic layer and a mouse driver layer. Generic routines refer to those functions which always exist, no matter what type of mouse driver you use. The available mouse driver routines, on the other hand, will call the appropriate generic routines as necessary, and may only be used with the PS2 mouse driver supplied with µC/GUI. If you write your own driver, it is responsible for calling the generic routines.

The generic mouse routines will in turn call the corresponding PID routines.

20.3.1 Generic mouse API

The table below lists the generic mouse routines in alphabetical order. These functions may be used with any type of mouse driver. Detailed descriptions follow.

Routine	Explanation
GUI_MOUSE_GetState()	Return the current state of the mouse.
GUI_MOUSE_StoreState()	Store the current state of the mouse.

GUI_MOUSE_GetState()

Description

Returns the current state of the mouse.

Prototype

```
int GUI_MOUSE_GetState(GUI_PID_STATE *pState);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pState	Pointer to a structure of type GUI_PID_STATE.

Return value

1 if mouse is currently pressed; 0 if not pressed.

Additional information

This function will call [GUI_PID_GetState\(\)](#).

GUI_MOUSE_StoreState()

Description

Stores the current state of the mouse.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MOUSE_StoreState(const GUI_PID_STATE *pState);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pState	Pointer to a structure of type GUI_PID_STATE.

Additional information

This function will call [GUI_PID_StoreState\(\)](#).

20.3.2 PS2 mouse driver

The driver supports any type of PS2 mouse.

20.3.2.1 Using the PS2 mouse driver

The driver is very easy to use. In the startup code, the init function `GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init()` should be called.

The application should somehow notice when a byte is received from the mouse. When this happens, the function `GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx()` should be called and the byte received passed as parameter. The driver in turn then calls `GUI_PID_StoreState` as required.

The reception of the byte is typically handled in an interrupt service routine.

A sample ISR could look as follows: (Note that this is of course different for different systems)

```
void interrupt OnRx(void) {
    char Data;
    Data = UART_REG;           // Read data from the hardware
    GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx(Data); // Pass it on to the driver
}
```

20.3.2.2 PS2 mouse driver API

The table below lists the available mouse driver routines in alphabetical order. These functions only apply if you are using the PS2 mouse driver included with µC/GUI.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init()</code>	Initialize the mouse driver.
<code>GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx()</code>	Called from receive interrupt routines.

`GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init()`

Description

Initializes the mouse driver.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init(void);
```

`GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx()`

Description

Must be called from receive interrupt routines.

Prototype

```
void GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx(unsigned char Data);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>Data</code>	Byte of data received by ISR.

Additional Information

The PS2 mouse driver is a serial driver, meaning it receives 1 byte at a time.

You need to ensure that this function is called from your receive interrupt routine every time a byte (1 character) is received.

20.4 Touch-screen drivers

A touch screen driver will typically simply call `GUI_PID_StoreState()` as described earlier. Any type of touch screen can be supported this way. You are responsible for writing the driver code (which is usually fairly simple).

The most common way of interfacing a touch screen is the 4-pin analog interface, for which a driver is supplied.

20.4.1 Generic touch-screen API

The generic touch screen API is used with any type of driver (analog, digital, etc.). A driver calls the appropriate routines as necessary. If you write your own driver, it has to call the generic routines.

The table below lists the generic touch-screen routines in alphabetical order. These functions may be used with any type of touch-screen driver. Detailed descriptions follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_TOUCH_GetState()</code>	Return the current state of the touch-screen.
<code>GUI_TOUCH_StoreState()</code>	Store the current state of the touch-screen using X- and Y-coordinates.
<code>GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx()</code>	Store the current state of the touch-screen.

GUI_TOUCH_GetState()

Description

Returns the current state of the touch-screen.

Prototype

```
int GUI_TOUCH_GetState(GUI_PID_STATE *pState);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pState</code>	Pointer to a structure of type <code>GUI_PID_STATE</code> .

Return value

1 if touch-screen is currently pressed; 0 if not pressed.

GUI_TOUCH_StoreState()

Description

Stores the current state of the touch-screen using X- and Y-coordinates as parameters.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TOUCH_StoreState(int x int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>x</code>	X-position.
<code>y</code>	Y-position.

Additional Information

If one of the given values is negative, the GUI assumes that the touch panel is not pressed.

GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx()

Description

Stores the current state of the touch-screen.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx(const GUI_PID_STATE *pState);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>pState</code>	Pointer to a structure of type <code>GUI_PID_STATE</code> .

Additional information

This function will call `GUI_PID_StoreState()`.

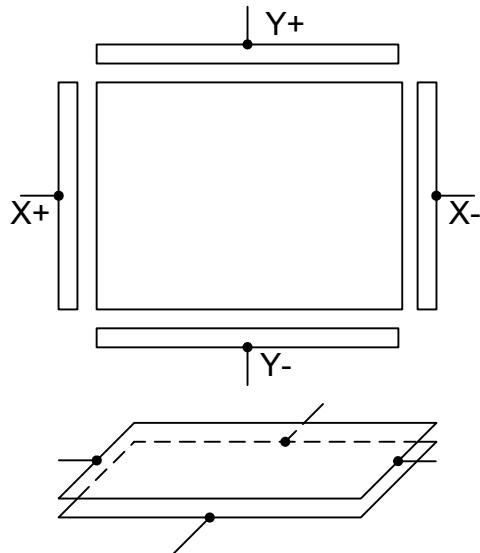
20.4.2 The analog touch screen driver

The µC/GUI touch-screen driver handles analog input (from an 8-bit or better A/D converter), debouncing and calibration of the touch-screen.

The touch-screen driver continuously monitors and updates the touch-panel through the use of the function `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()`, which calls the appropriate generic touch-screen API routines when it recognizes that an action has been performed or something has changed.

How a analog touch screen works

The touch panel consists of 2 thin conducting layers of glass, normally insulated from each other. If the user presses the touch panel, the two layers are connected at that point. If a voltage is applied to the Y-layer, when pressed, a voltage can be measured at the X+/X- terminals. This voltage depends on the touch position. The same thing holds true the other way round. If a voltage is applied to the X-layer, when pressed, a voltage can be measured at the Y+/Y- terminals.



20.4.2.1 Setting up the analog touch screen

Putting a touch panel into operation should be done in the following steps:

- Implementing the hardware routines
- Implementing regular calls to `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()`
- Verifying proper operation with the oscilloscope
- Getting the A/D values for the configuration file
- Modifying `GUITouchConf.h`

The following shows a detailed description of each step.

Implementing the hardware routines

The first step of implementing a touch screen should be filling the hardware routines with code. These routines are:

```
GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX(), GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY()
GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX(), GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY()
```

A modul `GUI_TOUCH_X.c` containing the empty routines is located in the folder `Sample\GUI_X`. You can use this module as a starting point.

The activate routines should prepare the measurement by switching on the measurement voltage. `GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX()` for example should prepare the measurement in Y by switching on the measurement voltage in X. Further it should switch off the voltage in Y and disable the measurement in X.

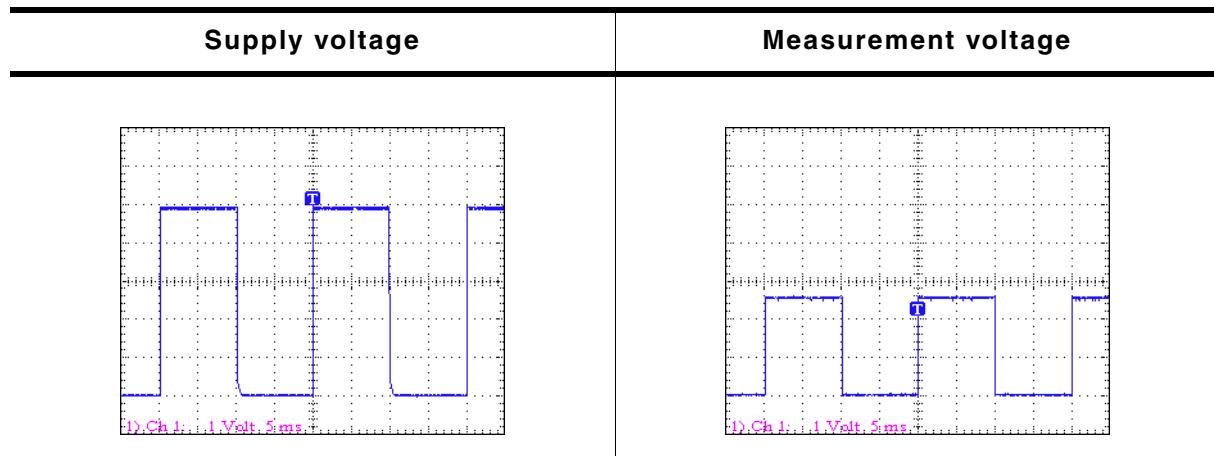
The measurement routines should return the measurement result of a A/D converter. Later in this chapter you will find a sample implementation of the hardware routines.

Implementing regular calls to `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()`

The second step of implementing a touch screen is to make sure, that the function `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` will be called in regular intervals. Your application should call it about 100 times/second. If you are using a real-time operating system, the easiest way to make sure this function is called is to create a separate task. When not using a multitasking system, you can use an interrupt service routine to do the job.

Verifying proper operation with the oscilloscope

After implementing the call of `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` make sure the hardware works. The easiest way to do this is to measure the supply and measurement voltages of the touch panel with a oscilloscope. The following table shows a typical result. The first column shows the supply voltage of an axis, the second column shows the result of measuring the measurement voltage when pressing in the middle of the touch panel.



Getting the A/D values for the configuration file

The third step is to get the minimum and maximum values of the A/D converter. μ C/GUI needs this values to convert the measurement result to the touch position in pixels. These 4 values are:

```
GUI_TOUCH_AD_TOP
GUI_TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM
GUI_TOUCH_AD_LEFT
GUI_TOUCH_AD_RIGHT
```

The µC/GUI sample folder contains a small program which can be used to get these values from your touch panel. It is located in the folder Sample\GUI and its name is TOUCH_Sample.c. Run this sample on your hardware. The output should be similar to the screenshot at the right side. The following table shows how to get the values:

Measurement of
A/D converter values
Analog input:
x:0423, y:0386
Position:
x:0093, y:0043



Value	How to get
GUI_TOUCH_AD_TOP	Press the touch at the top and write down the analog input value in Y.
GUI_TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM	Press the touch at the bottom and write down the analog input value in Y.
GUI_TOUCH_AD_LEFT	Press the touch at the left and write down the analog input value in X.
GUI_TOUCH_AD_RIGHT	Press the touch at the right and write down the analog input value in X.

Modifying GUITouchConf.h

The last step is to modify the touch configuration file GUITouchConf.h. Insert the values into the file like the following sample:

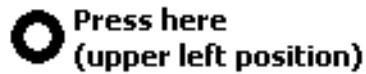
```
*****
*                               Micrium Inc. *
*           Empowering embedded systems   *
*****
-----
File      : GUITouch Conf.h
Purpose   : Configures µC/GUI touch screen module
-----
*/
#ifndef GUITOUCH_CONF_H
#define GUITOUCH_CONF_H

#define GUI_TOUCH_AD_TOP      877
#define GUI_TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM   273
#define GUI_TOUCH_AD_LEFT     232
#define GUI_TOUCH_AD_RIGHT    918

#endif /* GUITOUCH_CONF_H */
```

20.4.2.2 Runtime calibration

In practice the exact values for the configuration file can be determined only for one touch panel. Because there are small differences between the parts of a series it could be very needfull to calibrate each device at runtime. This can be done by using the function GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate(). The sample folder contains the sample TOUCH_Calibrate.c which shows, how a touch screen can be calibrated at run time:



**Runtime calibration,
please touch the screen
at the center of the ring.**

20.4.2.3 Hardware routines

The following four hardware-dependent functions need to be added to your project if you use the driver supplied with µC/GUI, as they are called by `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` when polling the touch-panel. A suggested place is in the file `GUI_X.c`. These functions are as follows:

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX()</code>	Prepares measurement for Y-axis.
<code>GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY()</code>	Prepares measurement for X-axis.
<code>GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX()</code>	Returns the X-result of the A/D converter.
<code>GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY()</code>	Returns the Y-result of the A/D converter.

GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX(), GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY()

Description

These routines are called from `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` to activate the measurement of the X- and the Y-axes. `GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX()` switches on the measurement voltage to the X-axis; `GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY()` switches on the voltage to the Y-axis. Switching on the voltage in X means the value for the Y-axis can be measured and vice versa.

Prototypes

```
void GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX(void);
void GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY(void);
```

GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX(), GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY()

Description

These routines are called from `GUI_TOUCH_Exec()` to return the measurement values from the A/D converter for the X- and the Y-axes.

Prototypes

```
int GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX(void);
int GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY(void);
```

Sample implementation

The following shows a sample implementation of the touch hardware routines for a Mitsubishi M16C/80 controller:

```
void GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX(void) {
    U8 Data;
    asm("fclr i"); /* Disable interrupts */
    Data = P10; /* Read port data */
    Data |= (1 << 2) | (1 << 3); /* Switch on power in X
                                     and enable measurement in Y */
    Data &= ~((1 << 4) | (1 << 5)); /* Switch off power in Y
                                         and disable measurement in X */
    P10 = Data; /* Write port data */
    asm("fset i"); /* Enable interrupts */
}

void GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY(void) {
    U8 Data;
    asm("fclr i"); /* Disable interrupts */
    Data = P10; /* Read port data */
    Data |= (1 << 5) | (1 << 4); /* Switch on power in Y
                                     and enable measurement in X */
    Data &= ~((1 << 3) | (1 << 2)); /* Switch off power in X
                                         and disable measurement in Y */
    P10 = Data; /* Write port data */
    asm("fset i"); /* Enable interrupts */
}

static void ReadADCx(int channel) {
    ADCON0 = channel /* Select channel 0-7 */
    | (0 << 3) /* One shot mode */
    | (0 << 6) /* A-D conversion start (0=stop) */
    | (0 << 7); /* FAD/4 select */
    ADCON1 = (0 << 0) /* A-D sweep select (XX) */
    | (0 << 2) /* No sweep mode */
    | (0 << 3) /* 8 bit mode */
    | (0 << 4) /* FAD4 select */
    | (1 << 5) /* VRef connected */
    | (0 << 6); /* Anex0/1 not used */
    ADCON2 = (1 << 0); /* Use sample and hold */
    ADIC = 0; /* Reset IR flag */
    ADCON0 |= (1 << 6); /* Start conversion */
    while ((ADIC & (1 << 3)) == 0); /* Wait for end of conversion */
    ADCON0 &= ~(6 << 0); /* Start conversion = 0 */
}

int GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureX(void) {
    ReadADCx(0);
    return AD0;
}

int GUI_TOUCH_X_MeasureY(void) {
    ReadADCx(1);
    return AD1;
}
```

20.4.2.4 Driver API for analog touch-screens

The table below lists the available analog touch-screen driver routines in alphabetical order. These functions only apply if you are using the driver included with µC/GUI..

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate()</code>	Changes the calibration.
<code>GUI_TOUCH_Exec()</code>	Activates the measurement of the X- and Y-axes; needs to be called about 100 times/second.
<code>GUI_TOUCH_SetDefaultCalibration()</code>	Restores the default calibration.

GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate()

Description

Changes the calibration at run-time.

Prototype

```
int GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate(int Coord, int Log0, int Log1, int Phys0, int Phys1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>Coord</code>	0 for X-axis, 1 for Y-axis.
<code>Log0</code>	Logical value 0 in pixels.
<code>Log1</code>	Logical value 1 in pixels.
<code>Phys0</code>	A/D converter value for Log0.
<code>Phys1</code>	A/D converter value for Log1.

Additional information

The function takes as parameters the axis to be calibrated, two logical values in pixels for this axis and two corresponding physical values of the A/D converter.

GUI_TOUCH_Exec()

Description

Polls the touch-screen by calling the `TOUCH_X` routines to activate the measurement of the X- and Y-axes. You must ensure that this function is called for about 100 times per second.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TOUCH_Exec(void);
```

Additional information

If you are using a real-time operating system, the easiest way to make sure this function is called is to create a separate task. When not using a multitask system, you can use an interrupt service routine to do the job.

GUI_TOUCH_SetDefaultCalibration()

Description

Resets the calibration to the values set as default in the configuration file.

Prototype

```
void GUI_TOUCH_SetDefaultCalibration(void);
```

Additional information

If no values are set in the configuration file, the calibration will be restored to the original default values.

20.4.2.5 Configuring the analog touch-screen driver

There needs to exist a separate configuration file in your config folder named GUITouchConf.h. The following table shows all available config macros for the analog touch-screen driver included with µC/GUI:

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
B	GUI_TOUCH_SWAP_XY	0	Set to 1 to swap the X- and the Y-axes.
B	GUI_TOUCH_MIRROR_X	0	Mirrors the X-axis.
B	GUI_TOUCH_MIRROR_Y	0	Mirrors the Y-axis.
N	GUI_TOUCH_AD_LEFT	30	Minimum value returned by the A/D converter.
N	GUI_TOUCH_AD_RIGHT	220	Maximum value returned by the A/D converter.
N	GUI_TOUCH_AD_TOP	30	Minimum value returned by the A/D converter.
N	GUI_TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM	220	Maximum value returned by the A/D converter.
N	GUI_TOUCH_XSIZE	LCD_XSIZE	Horizontal area covered by touch-screen.
N	GUI_TOUCH_YSIZE	LCD_YSIZE	Vertical area covered by touch-screen.

20.5 Joystick input sample

The following sample shows how to use the pointer input device API to process the input from a joystick:

```
*****
*
*           _JoystickTask
*
* Purpose:
*   Periodically read the Joystick and inform µC/GUI using
*   GUI_PID_StoreState.
*   It supports dynamic acceleration of the pointer.
*   The Joystick is a simple, standard 5 switch (digital) type.
*/
static void _JoystickTask(void) {
    int Stat;
    int StatPrev = 0;
    int TimeAcc = 0;      // Dynamic acceleration value
    while (1) {
        Stat = HW_ReadJoystick();
        //
        // Handle dynamic pointer acceleration
        //
        if (Stat == StatPrev) {
            if (TimeAcc < 10) {
                TimeAcc++;
            }
        } else {
            TimeAcc = 1;
        }
        if (Stat || (Stat != StatPrev)) {
            GUI_PID_STATE State;
            int Max;
            //
            // Compute the new coordinates
            //
            GUI_PID_GetState(&State);
            if (Stat & JOYSTICK_LEFT) {
                State.x -= TimeAcc;
            }
            if (Stat & JOYSTICK_RIGHT) {
                State.x += TimeAcc;
            }
            if (Stat & JOYSTICK_UP) {
                State.y -= TimeAcc;
            }
            if (Stat & JOYSTICK_DOWN) {
                State.y += TimeAcc;
            }
            //
            // Make sure coordinates are still in bounds
            //
            if (State.x < 0) {
                State.x = 0;
            }
            if (State.y < 0) {
                State.y = 0;
            }
            Max = LCD_GetXSize() - 1;
            if (State.x >= Max) {
                State.x = Max;
            }
            Max = LCD_GetYSize() - 1;
            if (State.y > Max) {
                State.y = Max;
            }
            //
            // Inform µC/GUI
            //
            State.Pressed = (Stat & JOYSTICK_ENTER) ? 1: 0;
        }
    }
}
```

```
    GUI_PID_StoreState(&State);
    StatPrev = Stat;
}
OS_Delay(40);
}
```

Chapter 21

Keyboard Input

μ C/GUI provides support for any kind of keyboards. Any type of keyboard driver is compatible with μ C/GUI.

The software for keyboard input is located in the subdirectory `GUI\Core` and part of the basic package.

21.1 Description

A keyboard input device uses ASCII character coding in order to be able to distinguish between characters. For example, there is only one "A" key on the keyboard, but an uppercase "A" and a lowercase "a" have different ASCII codes (0x41 and 0x61, respectively).

μC/GUI predefined character codes

μC/GUI also defines character codes for other "virtual" keyboard operations. These codes are listed in the table below, and defined in an identifier table in `GUI.h`. A character code in μC/GUI can therefore be any extended ASCII character value or any of the following predefined μC/GUI values.

Predefined virtual key code	Description
<code>GUI_KEY_BACKSPACE</code>	Backspace key.
<code>GUI_KEY_TAB</code>	Tab key.
<code>GUI_KEY_ENTER</code>	Enter/return key.
<code>GUI_KEY_LEFT</code>	Left arrow key.
<code>GUI_KEY_UP</code>	Up arrow key.
<code>GUI_KEY_RIGHT</code>	Right arrow key.
<code>GUI_KEY_DOWN</code>	Down arrow key.
<code>GUI_KEY_HOME</code>	Home key (move to beginning of current line).
<code>GUI_KEY_END</code>	End key (move to end of current line).
<code>GUI_KEY_SHIFT</code>	Shift key.
<code>GUI_KEY_CONTROL</code>	Control key.
<code>GUI_KEY_ESCAPE</code>	Escape key.
<code>GUI_KEY_INSERT</code>	Insert key.
<code>GUI_KEY_DELETE</code>	Delete key.

21.1.1 Driver layer API

The keyboard driver layer handles keyboard messaging functions. These routines notify the window manager when specific keys (or combinations of keys) have been pressed or released.

The table below lists the driver-layer keyboard routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_StoreKeyMsg()</code>	Store a message in a specified key.
<code>GUI_SendKeyMsg()</code>	Send a message to a specified key.

GUI_StoreKeyMsg()

Description

Stores a status message in a specified key.

Prototype

```
void GUI_StoreKeyMsg(int Key, int Pressed);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Key	May be any extended ASCII character (between 0x20 and 0xFF) or any predefined µC/GUI character code.
Pressed	Key state (see table below).

Permitted values for parameter Pressed	
1	Pressed state.
0	Released (unpressed) state.

GUI_SendKeyMsg()

Description

Sends the keyboard data to the window with the input focus. If no window has the input focus, the function `GUI_StoreKeyMsg()` is called to store the data to the input buffer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_SendKeyMsg(int Key, int Pressed);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Key	May be any extended ASCII character (between 0x20 and 0xFF) or any predefined µC/GUI character code.
Pressed	Key state (see <code>GUI_StoreKeyMsg()</code>).

Additional infoemation

This function should not be called from an interrupt service routine.

21.1.2 Application layer API

The table below lists the application-layer keyboard routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_ClearKeyBuffer()</code>	Clear the key buffer.
<code>GUI_GetKey()</code>	Return the contents of the key buffer.
<code>GUI_StoreKey()</code>	Store a key in the buffer.
<code>GUI_WaitKey()</code>	Wait for a key to be pressed.

GUI_ClearKeyBuffer()

Description

Clears the key buffer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_ClearKeyBuffer(void);
```

GUI_GetKey()**Description**

Returns the current contents of the key buffer.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetKey(void);
```

Return value

Codes of characters in key buffer; 0 if no keys in buffer.

GUI_StoreKey()**Description**

Stores a key in the buffer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_StoreKey(int Key);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Key	May be any extended ASCII character (between 0x20 and 0xFF) or any predefined µC/GUI character code.

Additional Information

This function is typically called by the driver and not by the application itself.

GUI_WaitKey()**Description**

Waits for a key to be pressed.

Prototype

```
int GUI_WaitKey(void);
```

Additional Information

The application is "blocked", meaning it will not return until a key is pressed.

Chapter 22

Cursors

Window manager support includes a system-wide cursor which may be changed to other, predefined styles. Although the cursor always exists, it is hidden by default like a window. It will not be visible until a call is made to show it, and may be hidden again at any point.

22.1 Available cursors

The following cursor styles are currently available. If a call to `GUI_CURSOR_Show()` is made and no style is specified with `GUI_CURSOR_Select()`, the default cursor will be a medium arrow.

Arrow cursors		Cross cursors	
GUI_CursorArrowS Small arrow		GUI_CursorCrossS Small cross	
GUI_CursorArrowM Medium arrow (default cursor)		GUI_CursorCrossM Medium cross	
GUI_CursorArrowL Large arrow		GUI_CursorCrossL Large cross	
Inverted arrow cursors		Inverted cross cursors	
GUI_CursorArrowSI Small inverted arrow		GUI_CursorCrossSI Small inverted cross	
GUI_CursorArrowMI Medium inverted arrow		GUI_CursorCrossMI Medium inverted cross	
GUI_CursorArrowLI Large inverted arrow		GUI_CursorCrossLI Large inverted cross	

22.2 Cursor API

The table below lists the available cursor-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions follow:

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_CURSOR_GetState()</code>	Returns if the cursor is visible or not.
<code>GUI_CURSOR_Hide()</code>	Hide the cursor.
<code>GUI_CURSOR_Select()</code>	Set a specified cursor.
<code>GUI_CURSOR_SetPosition()</code>	Set the cursor position.
<code>GUI_CURSOR_Show()</code>	Show the cursor.

GUI_CURSOR_GetState()

Description

Returns if the cursor is currently visible or not.

Prototype

```
int GUI_CURSOR_GetState(void);
```

Return value

1 if the cursor is visible and 0 if not.

GUI_CURSOR_Hide()

Description

Hides the cursor.

Prototype

```
void GUI_CURSOR_Hide(void);
```

Additional information

This is the default cursor setting. If you want the cursor to be visible, you must call `GUI_CURSOR_Show()`.

GUI_CURSOR_Select()

Description

Sets a specified cursor style.

Prototype

```
void GUI_CURSOR_Select(const GUI_CURSOR *pCursor);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pCursor	Pointer to the cursor to be selected.

Permitted values for parameter pCursor	
GUI_CursorArrowS	Small arrow.
GUI_CursorArrowM	Medium arrow.
GUI_CursorArrowL	Large arrow.
GUI_CursorArrowSI	Small inverted arrow.
GUI_CursorArrowMI	Medium inverted arrow.
GUI_CursorArrowLI	Large inverted arrow.
GUI_CursorCrossS	Small cross.
GUI_CursorCrossM	Medium cross.
GUI_CursorCrossL	Large cross.
GUI_CursorCrossSI	Small inverted cross.
GUI_CursorCrossMI	Medium inverted cross.
GUI_CursorCrossLI	Large inverted cross.

Additional information

If this function is not called, the default cursor is a medium arrow.

GUI_CURSOR_SetPosition()

Description

Sets the cursor position.

Prototype

```
void GUI_CURSOR_SetPosition(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position of the cursor.
y	Y-position of the cursor.

Additional information

Normally this function is called internally by the window manager and does not need to be called from the application.

GUI_CURSOR_Show()

Description

Shows the cursor.

Prototype

```
void GUI_CURSOR_Show(void);
```

Additional information

The default setting for the cursor is hidden; therefore this function must be called if you want the cursor to be visible.

Chapter 23

Antialiasing

Lines are approximated by a series of pixels that must lie at display coordinates. They can therefore appear jagged, particularly lines which are nearly horizontal or nearly vertical. This jaggedness is called aliasing.

Antialiasing is the smoothing of lines and curves. It reduces the jagged, stair-step appearance of any line that is not exactly horizontal or vertical. μ C/GUI supports different antialiasing qualities, antialiased fonts and high-resolution coordinates.

Support for antialiasing is a separate software item and is not included in the μ C/GUI basic package. The software for antialiasing is located in the subdirectory `GUI\Anti-Alias`.

23.1 Introduction

Antialiasing smoothes curves and diagonal lines by "blending" the background color with that of the foreground. The higher the number of shades used between background and foreground colors, the better the antialiasing result (and the longer the computation time).

Quality of antialiasing

The quality of antialiasing is set by the routine `GUI_AA_SetFactor`, explained later in the chapter. For an idea of the relationship between the antialiasing factor and the corresponding result, take a look at the image pictured.

The first line is drawn without antialiasing (factor 1). The second line is drawn antialiased using factor 2. This means that the number of shades from foreground to background is $2 \times 2 = 4$. The next line is drawn with an antialiasing factor of 3, so there are $3 \times 3 = 9$ shades, and so on. Factor 4 should be sufficient for most applications. Increasing the anti-aliasing factor further does not improve the result dramatically, but increases the calculation time.

1 2 3 4 5 6



Antialiased Fonts

Two types of antialiased fonts, low-quality (2bpp) and high-quality (4bpp), are supported. The routines needed to display these fonts are automatically linked when using them. The following table shows the effect on drawing the character "C" without antialiasing and with both types of antialiased fonts:

Font type	Black on white	White on black
Standard (no antialiasing) 1 bpp 2 shades	A highly pixelated, low-quality letter 'C' with visible vertical banding and jagged edges.	A highly pixelated, low-quality letter 'C' with visible vertical banding and jagged edges.
Low-quality (antialiased) 2 bpp 4 shades	A low-quality antialiased letter 'C' showing some improvement over standard mode, with smoother edges.	A low-quality antialiased letter 'C' showing some improvement over standard mode, with smoother edges.
High-quality (antialiased) 4 bpp 16 shades	A high-quality antialiased letter 'C' with very smooth, rounded edges and a natural appearance.	A high-quality antialiased letter 'C' with very smooth, rounded edges and a natural appearance.

Antialiased fonts can be created with the µC/GUI font converter. The general purpose of using antialiased fonts is to improve the appearance of text. While the effect of using high-quality antialiasing will be more visually pleasing than low-quality, computation time and memory consumption will increase proportionally. Low-quality (2bpp) fonts require twice the memory of non-antialiased (1bpp) fonts; high-quality (4bpp) fonts require four times the memory.

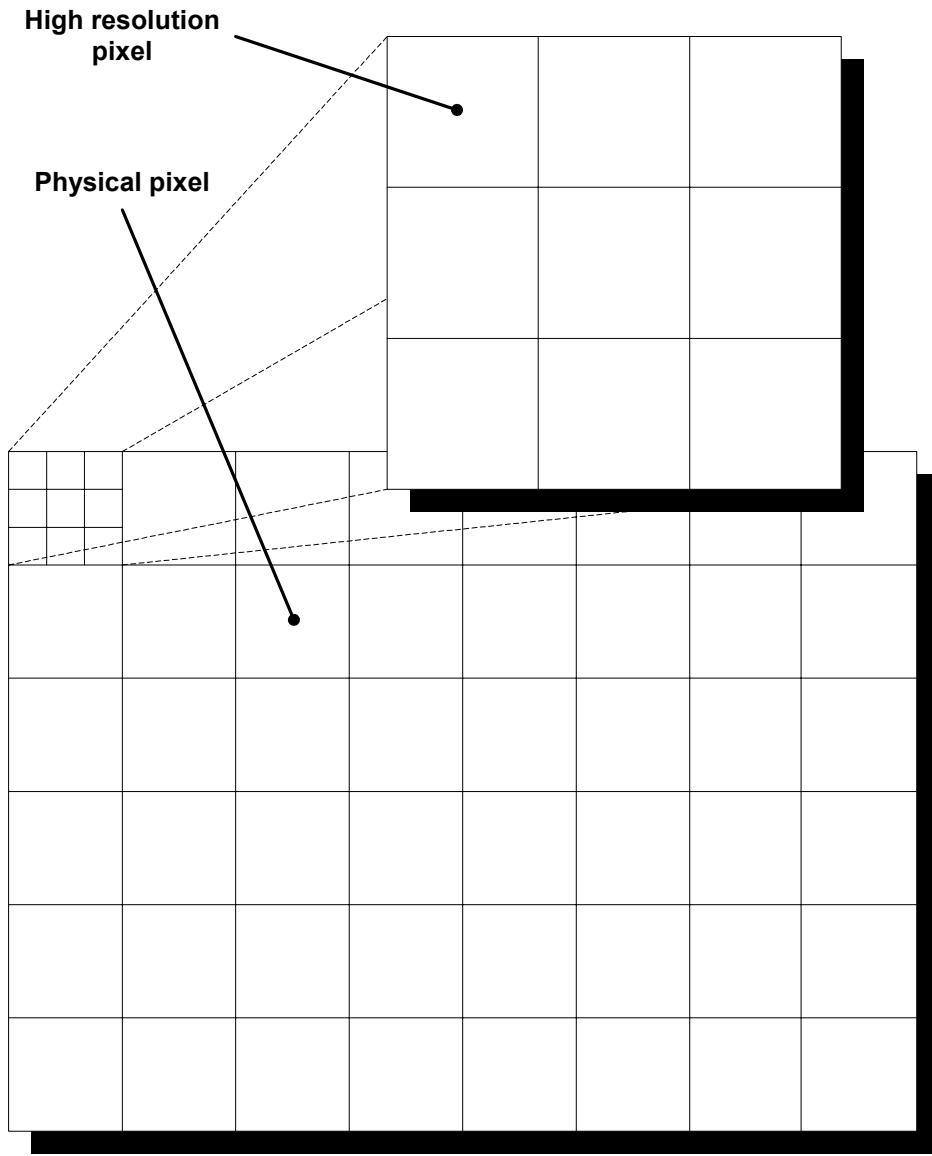
High-resolution coordinates

When drawing items using antialiasing, the same coordinates are used as for regular (non-antialiasing) drawing routines. This is the default mode. You do not need to consider the antialiasing factor in the function arguments. For example, to draw an antialiased line from (50, 100) to (100, 50) you would write:

```
GUI_AA_DrawLine(50, 100, 100, 50);
```

The high-resolution feature of µC/GUI lets you use the virtual space determined by the antialiasing factor and your display size. High-resolution coordinates must be enabled with the routine `GUI_AA_EnableHiRes`, and may be disabled with `GUI_AA_DisableHiRes`. Both functions are explained later in the chapter. The advan-

tage of using high-resolution coordinates is that items can be placed not only at physical positions of your display but also "between" them. The virtual space of a high-resolution pixel is illustrated below based on an antialiasing factor of 3:



To draw a line from pixel (50, 100) to (100, 50) in high-resolution mode with anti-aliasing factor 3, you would write:

```
GUI_AA_DrawLine(150, 300, 300, 150);
```

For sample programs using the high-resolution feature, see the examples at the end of this chapter.

23.2 Antialiasing API

The table below lists the available routines in the antialiasing package, in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
Control functions	
<code>GUI_AA_DisableHiRes()</code>	Disable high-resolution coordinates.
<code>GUI_AA_EnableHiRes()</code>	Enable high-resolution coordinates.
<code>GUI_AA_GetFactor()</code>	Return the current antialiasing factor.
<code>GUI_AA_SetFactor()</code>	Set the current antialiasing factor.
Drawing functions	
<code>GUI_AA_DrawArc()</code>	Draw an antialiased arc.
<code>GUI_AA_DrawLine()</code>	Draw an antialiased line.
<code>GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline()</code>	Draw the outline of an antialiased polygon.
<code>GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx()</code>	Draw the outline of an antialiased polygon.
<code>GUI_AA_FillCircle()</code>	Draw an antialiased circle.
<code>GUI_AA_FillPolygon()</code>	Draw a filled and antialiased polygon.

23.3 Control functions

`GUI_AA_DisableHiRes()`

Description

Disables high-resolution coordinates.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DisableHiRes(void);
```

Additional Information

High-resolution coordinates are disabled by default.

`GUI_AA_EnableHiRes()`

Description

Enables high-resolution coordinates.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_EnableHiRes(void);
```

`GUI_AA_GetFactor()`

Description

Returns the current antialiasing quality factor.

Prototype

```
int GUI_AA_GetFactor(void);
```

Return value

The current antialiasing factor.

GUI_AA_SetFactor()**Description**

Sets the antialiasing quality factor.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_SetFactor(int Factor);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Factor	The new antialiasing factor. Minimum: 1 (will result in no antialiasing) Maximum: 6

Additional Information

Setting the parameter `Factor` to 1, though permitted, will effectively disable anti-aliasing and result in a standard font.

We recommend an antialiasing quality factor of 2-4. The default factor is 3.

23.4 Drawing functions

GUI_AA_DrawArc()**Description**

Displays an antialiased arc at a specified position in the current window, using the current pen size and the current pen shape.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawArc(int x0, int y0, int rx, int ry, int a0, int a1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Horizontal position of the center.
y0	Vertical position of the center.
rx	Horizontal radius.
ry	Vertical radius.
a0	Starting angle (degrees).
a1	Ending angle (degrees).

Limitations

Currently the `ry` parameter is not available. The `rx` parameter is used instead.

Additional Information

If working in high-resolution mode, position and radius must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

GUI_AA_DrawLine()

Description

Displays an antialiased line at a specified position in the current window, using the current pen size and the current pen shape.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawLine(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-starting position.
y0	Y-starting position.
x1	X-end position.
y1	Y-end position.

Additional Information

If working in high-resolution mode, the coordinates must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline()

Description

Displays the outline of an antialiased polygon defined by a list of points, at a specified position in the current window and with a specified thickness.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline(const GUI_POINT* pPoint,
                            int NumPoints,
                            int Thickness,
                            int x,
                            int y)
```

Parameter	Meaning
pPoint	Pointer to the polygon to display.
NumPoints	Number of points specified in the list of points.
Thickness	Thickness of the outline.
x	X-position of origin.
y	Y-position of origin .

Additional Information

The polyline drawn is automatically closed by connecting the endpoint to the starting point. The starting point must not be specified a second time as an endpoint.

If working in high-resolution mode, the coordinates must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

Per default the number of points processed by this function is limited to 10. If the polygon consists of more than 10 points the function `GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx()` should be used.

Example

```
#define countof(Array) (sizeof(Array) / sizeof(Array[0]))

static GUI_POINT aPoints[] = {
    { 0, 0 },
    { 15, 30 },
    { 0, 20 },
    {-15, 30 }
};

void Sample(void) {
    GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline(aPoints, countof(aPoints), 3, 150, 40);
}
```

Screen shot for preceding example



GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx()

Description

Displays the outline of an antialiased polygon defined by a list of points, at a specified position in the current window and with a specified thickness.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx(const GUI_POINT* pPoint,
                               int NumPoints,
                               int Thickness,
                               int x,
                               int y,
                               GUI_POINT * pBuffer);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pPoint	Pointer to the polygon to display.
NumPoints	Number of points specified in the list of points.
Thickness	Thickness of the outline.
x	X-position of origin.
y	Y-position of origin.
pBuffer	Pointer to a buffer of GUI_POINT elements.

Additional information

The number of polygon points is not limited by this function. Internally the function needs a buffer of GUI_POINT elements for calculation purpose. The number of points of the buffer needs to be \geq the number of points of the polygon.

For more details please refer to `GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline()`.

GUI_AA_FillCircle()

Description

Displays a filled, antialiased circle at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_FillCircle(int x0, int y0, int r);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	X-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
y0	Y-position of the center of the circle in pixels of the client window.
r	Radius of the circle (half of the diameter). Minimum: 0 (will result in a point). Maximum: 180.

Additional Information

If working in high-resolution mode, the coordinates must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

GUI_AA_FillPolygon()

Description

Fills an antialiased polygon defined by a list of points, at a specified position in the current window.

Prototype

```
void GUI_AA_FillPolygon(const GUI_POINT* pPoint,
                        int NumPoints,
                        int x,
                        int y)
```

Parameter	Meaning
pPoint	Pointer to the polygon to display.
NumPoints	Number of points specified in the list of points.
x	X-position of origin.
y	Y-position of origin.

Additional Information

The polyline drawn is automatically closed by connecting the endpoint to the starting point. The starting point must not be specified a second time as an endpoint.

If working in high-resolution mode, the coordinates must be in high-resolution coordinates. Otherwise they must be specified in pixels.

23.5 Examples

Different antialiasing factors

The following example creates diagonal lines with and without antialiasing. The source code can be found under Sample\Misc\AntialiasedLines.c.

```
*****
*          Micrium Inc.
*          Empowering embedded systems
*
*          µC/GUI sample code
*
*****
```

```
-----  
File      : AntialiasedLines.c  
Purpose   : Shows lines with different antialiasing qualities  
-----  
*/
```

```
#include "GUI.H"

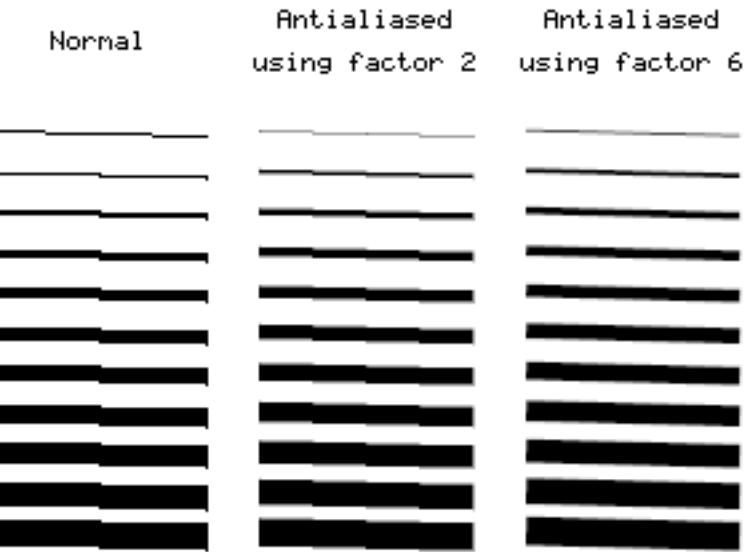
*****
*          Show lines with different antialiasing qualities
*****
*/
```

```
static void DemoAntialiasing(void) {
    int i, x1, x2;
    int y = 2;
    /* Set drawing attributes */
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetPenShape(GUI_PS_FLAT);
    GUI_Clear();
    x1 = 10; x2 = 90;
    /* Draw lines without antialiasing */
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("\nNormal", (x1 + x2) / 2, 10);
    for(i = 1; i < 12; i++) {
        GUI_SetPenSize(i);
        GUI_DrawLine(x1, 40 + i * 15, x2, 40 + i * 15 + y);
    }
    x1 = 110; x2 = 190;
    /* Draw lines with antialiasing quality faktor 2 */
    GUI_AA_SetFactor(2);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Antialiased\nusing factor 2", (x1 + x2) / 2, 10);
    for(i = 1; i < 12; i++) {
        GUI_SetPenSize(i);
        GUI_AA_DrawLine(x1, 40 + i * 15, x2, 40 + i * 15 + y);
    }
    x1 = 210; x2 = 290;
    /* Draw lines with antialiasing quality faktor 6 */
    GUI_AA_SetFactor(6);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Antialiased\nusing factor 6", (x1 + x2) / 2, 10);
    for(i = 1; i < 12; i++) {
        GUI_SetPenSize(i);
        GUI_AA_DrawLine(x1, 40 + i * 15, x2, 40 + i * 15 + y);
    }
}

*****
*          main
*****
*/
```

```
void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    DemoAntialiasing();
    while(1)
        GUI_Delay(100);
}
```

Screen shot for preceding example



Lines placed on high-resolution coordinates

This example shows antialiased lines placed on high-resolution coordinates. It can be found under Sample\Misc\HiResPixel.c.

```
/*
 *          Micrium Inc.
 *          Empowering embedded systems
 *
 *          μC/GUI sample code
 *
 ****
-
File      : HiResPixel.c
Purpose   : Demonstrates high resolution pixels
-
*/
#include "GUI.H"

/*
 *          Show lines placed on high resolution pixels
 *
 ****
void ShowHiResPixel(void) {
    int i, Factor = 5;
    GUI_SetBkColor(GUI_WHITE);
    GUI_SetColor(GUI_BLACK);
    GUI_Clear();
    GUI_SetPenSize(2);
    GUI_SetPenShape(GUI_PS_FLAT);
    GUI_AA_EnableHiRes(); /* Enable high resolution */
}
```

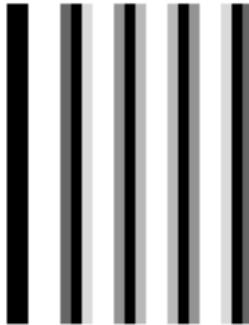
```

GUI_AA_SetFactor(Factor); /* Set quality factor */
/* Drawing lines using the virtual resolution */
for (i = 0; i < Factor; i++) {
    int x = (i + 1) * 5 * Factor + i - 1;
    GUI_AA_DrawLine(x, 50, x, 199);
}
}

*****
*
*          main
*
*****
*/
void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    ShowHiResPixel();
    while(1);
}

```

Magnified Screen shot for preceding example



Moving pointer using high-resolution antialiasing

This example illustrates the use of high-resolution antialiasing by drawing a rotating pointer that turns 0.1 degrees with each step. There is no screen shot of this example because the effects of high-resolution antialiasing are only visible in the movement of the pointers. Without high-resolution the pointer appears to make short "jumps", whereas in high-resolution mode there is no apparent jumping.

The example can be found under `Sample\Misc\HiResAntialiasing.c`.

```

*****
*          Micrium Inc.
*          Empowering embedded systems
*
*          µC/GUI sample code
*
*****
-----  

File      : HiResAntialiasing.c  

Purpose   : Demonstrates high resolution antialiasing  

-----  

*/  

#include "GUI.H"  

*****
*          Data

```

```

*
*****
*/
#define countof(Obj) (sizeof(Obj)/sizeof(Obj[0]))

static const GUI_POINT aPointer[] = {
    { 0, 3},
    { 85, 1},
    { 90, 0},
    { 85, -1},
    { 0, -3}
};

static GUI_POINT aPointerHiRes[countof(aPointer)];

typedef struct {
    GUI_AUTODEV_INFO AutoInfo;
    GUI_POINT aPoints[countof(aPointer)];
    int Factor;
} PARAM;

/*
*          Drawing routines
*
*****
*/
static void DrawHiRes(void * p) {
    PARAM * pParam = (PARAM *)p;
    if (pParam->AutoInfo.DrawFixed) {
        GUI_ClearRect(0, 0, 99, 99);
    }
    GUI_AA_FillPolygon(pParam->aPoints,
                        countof(aPointer),
                        5 * pParam->Factor,
                        95 * pParam->Factor);
}

static void Draw(void * p) {
    PARAM * pParam = (PARAM *)p;
    if (pParam->AutoInfo.DrawFixed) {
        GUI_ClearRect(100, 0, 199, 99);
    }
    GUI_AA_FillPolygon(pParam->aPoints, countof(aPointer), 105, 95);
}

/*
*      Demonstrate high resolution by drawing rotating pointers
*
*****
*/
static void ShowHiresAntialiasing(void) {
    int i;
    GUI_AUTODEV aAuto[2];
    PARAM Param;
    Param.Factor = 3;
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Using\nnhigh\nnresolution\nemode", 50, 120);
    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("Not using\nnhigh\nnresolution\nemode", 150, 120);
    /* Create GUI_AUTODEV objects */
    for (i = 0; i < countof(aAuto); i++) {
        GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto(&aAuto[i]);
    }
    /* Calculate pointer for high resolution */
    for (i = 0; i < countof(aPointer); i++) {
        aPointerHiRes[i].x = aPointer[i].x * Param.Factor;
        aPointerHiRes[i].y = aPointer[i].y * Param.Factor;
    }
    GUI_AA_SetFactor(Param.Factor); /* Set antialiasing factor */
    while(1) {

```

```
for (i = 0; i < 1800; i++) {
    float Angle = (i >= 900) ? 1800 - i : i;
    Angle *= 3.1415926f / 1800;
    /* Draw pointer with high resolution */
    GUI_AA_EnableHiRes();
    GUI_RotatePolygon(Param.aPoints, aPointerHiRes, countof(aPointer), Angle);
    GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto(&aAuto[0], &Param.AutoInfo, DrawHiRes, &Param);
    /* Draw pointer without high resolution */
    GUI_AA_DisableHiRes();
    GUI_RotatePolygon(Param.aPoints, aPointer, countof(aPointer), Angle);
    GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto(&aAuto[1], &Param.AutoInfo, Draw, &Param);
#ifndef WIN32
    GUI_Delay(2);
#endif
}
}

/*****************
*          main
*
*/
void main(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    ShowHiresAntialiasing();
}
```

Chapter 24

Foreign Language Support

Text written in a foreign language like Arabic or Chinese contains characters, which are normally not part of the fonts shipped with µC/GUI.

This chapter explains the basics like the Unicode standard, which defines all available characters worldwide and the UTF-8 encoding scheme, which is used by µC/GUI to decode text with Unicode characters.

It also explains how to enable Arabic language support and how to render text with Shift-JIS (Japanese Industry Standard) encoding.

24.1 Unicode

The Unicode standard is a 16-bit character encoding scheme. All of the characters available worldwide are in a single 16-bit character set (which works globally). The Unicode standard is defined by the Unicode consortium.

μ C/GUI can display individual characters or strings in Unicode, although it is most common to simply use mixed strings, which can have any number of Unicode sequences within one ASCII string.

24.1.1 UTF-8 encoding

ISO/IEC 10646-1 defines a multi-octet character set called the Universal Character Set (UCS) which encompasses most of the world's writing systems. Multi-octet characters, however, are not compatible with many current applications and protocols, and this has led to the development of a few UCS transformation formats (UTF), each with different characteristics.

UTF-8 has the characteristic of preserving the full ASCII range, providing compatibility with file systems, parsers and other software that rely on ASCII values but are transparent to other values.

In μ C/GUI, UTF-8 characters are encoded using sequences of 1 to 3 octets. If the high-order bit is set to 0, the remaining 7 bits being used to encode the character value. In a sequence of n octets, $n > 1$, the initial octet has the n higher-order bits set to 1, followed by a bit set to 0. The remaining bit(s) of that octet contain bits from the value of the character to be encoded. The following octet(s) all have the higher-order bit set to 1 and the following bit set to 0, leaving 6 bits in each to contain bits from the character to be encoded.

The following table shows the encoding ranges:

Character range	UTF-8 Octet sequence
0000 – 007F	0xxxxxxx
0080 – 07FF	110xxxxx 10xxxxxx
0800 – FFFF	1110xxxx 10xxxxxx 10xxxxxx

Encoding example

The text "Halöle" contains ASCII characters and European extensions. The following hexdump shows this text as UTF-8 encoded text:

```
48 61 6C C3 B6 6C 65
```

Programming examples

If we want to display a text containing non-ASCII characters, we can do this by manually computing the UTF-8 codes for the non-ASCII characters in the string.

However, if your compiler supports UTF-8 encoding (Sometimes called multi-byte encoding), even non-ASCII characters can be used directly in strings.

```
/*
// Example using ASCII encoding:
// GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8();      /* required only once to activate UTF-8*/
GUI_DispString("Hal\xc3\xb6le");

/*
// Example using UTF-8 encoding:
// GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8();      /* required only once to activate UTF-8*/
GUI_DispString("Halöle");
```

24.1.2 Unicode characters

The character output routine used by µC/GUI (`GUI_DispChar()`) does always take an unsigned 16-bit value (U16) and has the basic ability to display a character defined by Unicode. It simply requires a font which contains the character you want to display.

24.1.3 UTF-8 strings

This is the most recommended way to display Unicode. You do not have to use special functions to do so. If UTF-8-encoding is enabled each function of µC/GUI which handles with strings decodes the given text as UTF-8 text.

24.1.3.1 Using U2C.exe to convert UTF-8 text into "C"-code

The Tool subdirectory of µC/GUI contains the tool `U2C.exe` to convert UTF-8 text to "C"-code. It reads an UTF-8 text file and creates a "C"-file with "C"-strings. The following steps show how to convert a text file into "C"-strings and how to display them with µC/GUI:

Step 1: Creating a UTF-8 text file

Save the text to be converted in UTF-8 format. You can use `Notepad.exe` to do this. Load the text under `Notepad.exe`:

```
Japanese:
1 - エンコーディング
2 - テキスト
3 - サポート
English:
1 - encoding
2 - text
3 - support
```

Choose "File/Save As...". The file dialog should contain a combo box to set the encoding format. Choose "UTF-8" and save the text file.

Step 2: Converting the text file into a "C"-code file

Start `U2C.exe`. After starting the program you need to select the text file to be converted. After selecting the text file the name of the "C"-file should be selected. Output of `U2C.exe`:

```
"Japanese:"
"1 - \xe3\x82\x8a\xe3\x83\xb3\xe3\x82\xb3\xe3\x83\xbc
  "\xe3\x83\x87\xe3\x82\x8a\xe3\x83\xb3\xe3\x82\xb0"
"2 - \xe3\x83\x86\xe3\x82\xad\xe3\x82\xb9\xe3\x83\x88"
"3 - \xe3\x82\xb5\xe3\x83\x9d\xe3\x83\xbc\xe3\x83\x88"
"English:"
"1 - encoding"
"2 - text"
"3 - support"
```

Step 3: Using the output in the application code

The following sample shows how to display the UTF-8 text with µC/GUI:

```
#include "GUI.h"

static const char * _apStrings[] = {
    "Japanese:",
    "1 - \xe3\x82\x8a\xe3\x83\xb3\xe3\x82\xb3\xe3\x83\xbc",
    "  "\xe3\x83\x87\xe3\x82\x8a\xe3\x83\xb3\xe3\x82\xb0",
    "2 - \xe3\x83\x86\xe3\x82\xad\xe3\x82\xb9\xe3\x83\x88",
    "3 - \xe3\x82\xb5\xe3\x83\x9d\xe3\x83\xbc\xe3\x83\x88",
    "English:",
    "1 - encoding",
    "2 - text",
```

```

    "3 - support"
};

void MainTask(void) {
    int i;
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font16_1HK);
    GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8();
    for (i = 0; i < GUI_COUNTOF(_apStrings); i++) {
        GUI_DispString(_apStrings[i]);
        GUI_DispNextLine();
    }
    while(1) {
        GUI_Delay(500);
    }
}

```

24.1.4 Unicode API

The table below lists the available routines in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
UTF-8 functions	
GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8()	Converts a Unicode string into UTF-8 format.
GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC()	Converts a UTF-8 string into Unicode format.
GUI_UC_Encode()	Encodes the given character with the current encoding.
GUI_UC_GetCharCode()	Returns the decoded character.
GUI_UC_GetCharSize()	Returns the number of bytes used to encode the given character.
GUI_UC_SetEncodeNone()	Disables encoding.
GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8()	Enables UTF-8 encoding.
Double byte functions	
GUI_UC_DispString()	Displays a double byte string.

24.1.4.1 UTF-8 functions

GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8()

Description

Converts the given double byte Unicode string into UTF-8 format.

Prototype

```
int GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8(const U16 GUI_UNI_PTR * s, int Len,
                           char * pBuffer, int BufferSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	Pointer to Unicode string to be converted.
Len	Number of Unicode characters to be converted.
pBuffer	Pointer to a buffer to write in the result.
BufferSize	Buffer size in bytes.

Return value

The function returns the number of bytes written to the buffer.

Additional Information

UTF-8 encoded characters can use up to 3 bytes. To be on the save side the recommended buffer size is: Number of Unicode characters * 3.
If the buffer is not big enough for the whole result, the function returns when the buffer is full.

GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC()

Description

Converts the given UTF-8 string into Unicode format.

Prototype

```
int GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC(const char GUI_UNI_PTR * s, int Len,
                           U16 * pBuffer, int BufferSize);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	Pointer to UFT-8 string to be converted.
Len	Number of UTF-8 characters to be converted.
pBuffer	Pointer to a buffer to write in the result.
BufferSize	Buffer size in words.

Return value

The function returns the number of Unicode characters written to the buffer.

Additional Information

If the buffer is not big enough for the whole result, the function returns when the buffer is full.

GUI_UC_Encode()

Description

This function encodes a given character with the current encoding settings.

Prototype

```
int GUI_UC_Encode(char* s, U16 Char);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	Pointer to a buffer to store the encoded character.
Char	Character to be encoded.

Return value

The number of bytes stored to the buffer.

Additional Information

The function assumes that the buffer has at least 3 bytes for the result.

GUI_UC_GetCharCode()

Description

This function decodes a character from a given text.

Prototype

```
U16 GUI_UC_GetCharCode(const char* s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	Pointer to the text to be encoded.

Return value

The encoded character.

Related topics

[GUI_UC_GetCharSize\(\)](#)

GUI_UC_GetCharSize()

Description

This function returns the number of bytes used to encode the given character.

Prototype

```
int GUI_UC_GetCharSize(const char* s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	Pointer to the text to be encoded.

Return value

Number of bytes used to encode the given character

Additional information

This function is used to determine how much bytes a pointer has to be incremented to point to the next character. The following example shows how to use the function:

```
static void _Display2Characters(const char * pText) {
    int Size;
    U16 Character;
    Size = GUI_UC_GetCharSize(pText); /* Size to increment pointer */
    Character = GUI_UC_GetCharCode(pText); /* Get first character code */
    GUI_DispChar(Character); /* Display first character */
    pText += Size; /* Increment pointer */
    Character = GUI_UC_GetCharCode(pText); /* Get next character code */
    GUI_DispChar(Character); /* Display second character */
}
```

GUI_UC_SetEncodeNone()

Description

Disables character encoding.

Prototype

```
void GUI_UC_SetEncodeNone(void);
```

Additional information

After calling this function each byte of a text will be handled as one character. This is the default behaviour of μC/GUI.

GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8()

Description

Enables UTF-8 encoding.

Prototype

```
void GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8(void);
```

Additional information

After calling `GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8` each string related routine of μ C/GUI encodes a given sting in accordance to the UTF-8 transformation.

24.1.4.2 Double byte functions

GUI_UC_DisppString()

Description

This function displays the given double byte string.

Prototype

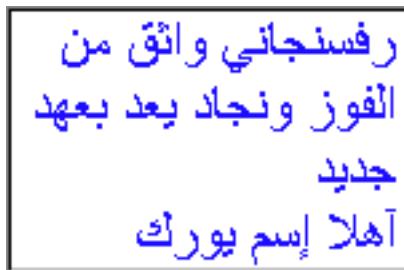
```
void GUI_UC_DisppString(const U16 GUI_FAR *s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	Pointer to double byte string.

Additional Information

If you need to display double byte strings you should use this function. Each character has to be defined by a 16 bit value.

24.2 Arabic language support



The basic difference between western languages and Arabic is, that Arabic is written from the right to the left and that it does not know uppercase and lowercase characters. Further the character codes of the text are not identical with the character index in the font file used to render the character, because the notation forms of the characters depend on the positions in the text.

24.2.1 Notation forms

The Arabic character set is defined in the Unicode standard within the range from 0x0600 to 0x06FF. Text written in Arabic language normally contains only letters of this character set. Unfortunately these character codes can not directly be used to get the character of the font for drawing it, because the notation form depends on the position in the text. One character can have up to 4 different notation forms:

- One, if it is at the beginning of a word
- One, if it is at the end of a word
- One, if it is in the middle of a word
- One, if the character stands alone

But not each character is allowed to be joined to the left and to the right (double-joined). The character 'Hamza' for example always needs to be separated and 'Alef' is only allowed at the end or separated. Character combinations of the letters 'Lam' and 'Alef' should be transformed to a 'Ligature'. This means one character substitutionally for the combination of 'Lam' and 'Alef'.

The above explanation shows, that the notation form is normally not identically with the character code of the text. The following table shows how µC/GUI transforms the characters to the notation form in dependence of the text position:

Base	Isolated	Final	Initial	Medial	Character
0x0621	0xFE80	-	-	-	Hamza
0x0622	0xFE81	0xFE82	-	-	Alef with Madda above
0x0623	0xFE83	0xFE84	-	-	Alef with Hamza above
0x0624	0xFE85	0xFE86	-	-	Waw with Hamza above
0x0625	0xFE87	0xFE88	-	-	Alef with Hamza below
0x0626	0xFE89	0xFE8A	0xFE8B	0xFE8C	Yeh with Hamza above
0x0627	0xFE8D	0xFE8E	-	-	Alef
0x0628	0xFE8F	0xFE90	0xFE91	0xFE92	Beh
0x0629	0xFE93	0xFE94	-	-	Teh Marbuta
0x062A	0xFE95	0xFE96	0xFE97	0xFE98	Teh
0x062B	0xFE99	0xFE9A	0xFE9B	0xFE9C	Theh

Base	Isolated	Final	Initial	Medial	Character
0x062C	0xFE9D	0xFE9E	0xFE9F	0xFEAO	Jeem
0x062D	0xFEAO	0xFEAO	0xFEAO	0xFEAO	Hah
0x062E	0xFEAO	0xFEAO	0xFEAO	0xFEAO	Khah
0x062F	0xFEAO	0xFEAA	-	-	Dal
0x0630	0xFEAB	0xFEAC	-	-	Thal
0x0631	0xFEAD	0xFEAE	-	-	Reh
0x0632	0xFEAF	0xFEB0	-	-	Zain
0x0633	0xFEB1	0xFEB2	0xFEB3	0xFEB4	Seen
0x0634	0xFEB5	0xFEB6	0xFEB7	0xFEB8	Sheen
0x0635	0xFEB9	0xFEBA	0xFEBB	0xFEBC	Sad
0x0636	0xFEBD	0xFEBE	0xFEBF	0xFEC0	Dad
0x0637	0xFEC1	0xFEC2	0xFEC3	0xFEC4	Tah
0x0638	0xFEC5	0xFEC6	0xFEC7	0xFEC8	Zah
0x0639	0xFEC9	0xFECA	0xFECC	0xFECC	Ain
0x063A	0xFECD	0xFECE	0xFECE	0xFED0	Ghain
0x0641	0xFED1	0xFED2	0xFED3	0xFED4	Feh
0x0642	0xFED5	0xFED6	0xFED7	0xFED8	Qaf
0x0643	0xFED9	0xFEDA	0xFEDB	0xFEDC	Kaf
0x0644	0xFEDD	0xFEDE	0xFEDE	0xFEE0	Lam
0x0645	0xFEE1	0xFEE2	0xFEE3	0xFEE4	Meem
0x0646	0xFEE5	0xFEE6	0xFEE7	0xFEE8	Noon
0x0647	0xFEE9	0xFEEA	0xFEEB	0xFEEC	Heh
0x0648	0xFEED	0xFEEE	-	-	Waw
0x0649	0xFEFF	0xFEFO	-	-	Alef Maksura
0x064A	0xFEF1	0xFEF2	0xFEF3	0xFEF4	Yeh
0x067E	0xFB56	0xFB57	0xFB58	0xFB59	Peh
0x0686	0xFB7A	0xFB7B	0xFB7C	0xFB7D	Tcheh
0x0698	0xFB8A	0xFB8B	-	-	Jeh
0x06A9	0xFB8E	0xFB8F	0xFB90	0xFB91	Keheh
0x06AF	0xFB92	0xFB93	0xFB94	0xFB95	Gaf
0x06CC	0xFBFC	0xFBFD	-	-	Farsi Yeh

24.2.2 Ligatures

Character combinations of 'Lam' and 'Alef' needs to be transformed to ligatures. The following table shows how µC/GUI transforms these combinations into ligatures, if the first letter is a 'Lam' (code 0x0644):

Second letter	Ligature (final)	Ligatur (elsewhere)
0x622, Alef with Madda above	0xFEF6	0xFEF5
0x623, Alef with Hamza above	0xFEF8	0xFEF7
0x625, Alef with Hamza below	0xFEFA	0xFEF9
0x627, Alef	0xFEFC	0xFEFB

24.2.3 Bidirectional text alignment

As mentioned above Arabic is written from the right to the left. But if for example the Arabic text contains numbers build of more than one digit these numbers should be written from left to right. And if Arabic text is mixed with European text a couple of further rules need to be followed to get the right visual alignment of the text.

The Unicode consortium has defined these rules in the Unicode standard. If bidirectional text support is enabled, µC/GUI follows these rules to get the right visual order before drawing the text.

The following sample shows how bidirectional text is rendered by µC/GUI:

UTF-8 text	Rendering
" \xd8\xb9\xd9\x84\xd8\xaa ١ , ٢ , ٣٤٥ \xd8\xba\xd9\x86\xd9\x8a XYZ \xd8\xaa\xd9\x86\xd8\xaa " علٰٰ XYZ غني ٣٤٥ ,٢ ,١ "	

24.2.4 Requirements

Arabic language support is part of the basic package. Please note, that the standard fonts of µC/GUI does not contain font files with Arabic characters. To create a Arabic font file the font converter is required

Memory

The bidirectional text alignment and Arabic character transformation uses app. 60 KB of ROM and app. 800 bytes of additional stack.

24.2.5 How to enable Arabic support

Per default µC/GUI writes text always from the left to the right and there will be no Arabic character transformation as described above. To enable the Arabic support please add the following line to the file `GUIConf.h`:

```
#define GUI_SUPPORT_ARABIC 1
```

If enabled, µC/GUI automatically writes Arabic text from the right to the left and transforms the characters as described above and carries on writing non Arabic text from the left to the right.

24.2.6 Sample

The sample folder contains the sample `FONT_Arabic`, which shows how to draw Arabic text. It contains an µC/GUI font with Arabic characters and some small Arabic text samples.

24.2.7 Font files used with Arabic text

Font files used to render Arabic languages need to include at least all characters defined in the 'Arabic' range 0x600-0x6FF and the notation forms and ligatures listed in the tables of this chapter.

24.3 Thai language support

Nice to meet you.

ยินดีที่ได้รู้จักคุณ

The Thai alphabet uses 44 consonants and 15 basic vowel characters. These are horizontally placed, left to right, with no intervening space, to form syllables, words, and sentences. Vowels are written above, below, before, or after the consonant they modify, although the consonant always sounds first when the syllable is spoken. The vowel characters (and a few consonants) can be combined in various ways to produce numerous compound vowels (diphthongs and triphthongs).

24.3.1 Requirements

As explained above the Thai language makes an extensive usage of compound characters. To be able to draw compound characters in µC/GUI, a new font type is needed, which contains all required character information like the image size, image position and cursor incrementation value. From version 4.00, µC/GUI supports a new font type with this information. This also means that older font types can not be used to draw Thai text.

Please note, that the standard fonts of µC/GUI does not contain font files with Thai characters. To create a Thai font file the font converter of version 3.04 or newer is required.

Memory

The Thai language support needs no additional ROM or RAM.

24.3.2 How to enable Thai support

Thai support needs not explicitly enabled by a configuration switch. The only thing required to draw Thai text is a font file of type 'Extended' created with the font converter from version 3.04 or newer.

24.3.3 Sample

The sample folder contains the sample `FONT_ThaiText.c`, which shows how to draw Thai text. It contains an µC/GUI font with Thai characters and some small Thai text samples.

24.3.4 Font files used with Thai text

Font files used to render Thai text need to include at least all characters defined in the 'Thai' range 0xE00-0xE7F.

24.4 Shift JIS support

Shift JIS (Japanese Industry Standard) is a character encoding method for the Japanese language. It is the most common Japanese encoding method. Shift JIS encoding makes generous use of 8-bit characters, and the value of the first byte is used to distinguish single- and multiple-byte characters.

The Shift JIS support of µC/GUI is only needed if text with Shift JIS encoding needs to be rendered.

You need no special function calls to draw a Shift JIS string. The main requirement is a font file which contains the Shift JIS characters.

24.4.1 Creating Shift JIS fonts

The FontConverter can generate a Shift JIS font for µC/GUI from any Windows font. When using a Shift JIS font, the functions used to display Shift JIS characters are linked automatically with the library.

For detailed information on how to create Shift-JIS fonts, please contact Micrium (sales@micrium.com). A separate FontConverter documentation describes all you need for an efficient way of implementing Shift JIS in your µC/GUI-projects.

24.4.2 Example

The following example defines a small font containing 6 characters: "A", "B", "C" and the Shift JIS characters 0x8350 (KATAKANA LETTER KE), 0x8351 (KATAKANA LETTER GE) and 0x8352 (KATAKANA LETTER KO). A mixed string is then drawn onto the display. The example is available as `FONT_ShiftJIS.c`.

```
*****
*           Micrium Inc.          *
*           Empowering embedded systems   *
*           µC/GUI sample code        *
*                                     *
*****
```

```
-----  
File      : ShiftJIS.c  
Purpose   : Example demonstrating ShiftJIS capabilities of µC/GUI  
-----  
*/
```

```
#include "gui.h"

*****
*           Definition of ShiftJIS font
*                                     *
*****
```

```
/* LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A */  
static const unsigned char acFontSJIS13_0041[ 13 ] = { /* code 0041 */  
    _____,  
    ____X,  
    ___XX,  
    __XXX,  
    _XXXX,  
    X__X,  
    X_X,  
    XXX_X,  
    _____};
```

```

/* LATIN CAPITAL LETTER B */
static const unsigned char acFontSJIS13_0042[ 13] = { /* code 0042 */
    _____,
    _____,
    XXXXX__,
    X__X__,
    X_X__,
    X_X__,
    XXXX__,
    X_X__,
    X_X__,
    X_X__,
    XXXX__,
    _____};

/* LATIN CAPITAL LETTER C */
static const unsigned char acFontSJIS13_0043[ 13] = { /* code 0043 */
    _____,
    _____,
    XX_X__,
    X_XX__,
    X_X__,
    X__,
    X__,
    X__,
    X__,
    X__,
    X_X__,
    XXX__,
    _____};

/* KATAKANA LETTER KE */
static const unsigned char acFontSJIS13_8350[ 26] = { /* code 8350 */
    XX_____, _____,
    X_____, _____,
    X_____, _____,
    XXXXX, XXXX__,
    X_X, _____,
    XX_____, _____,
    _____, _____};

/* KATAKANA LETTER GE */
static const unsigned char acFontSJIS13_8351[ 26] = { /* code 8351 */
    XX_____, X_X__,
    X_____, _X_X__,
    X_____, _____,
    XXXXXX, XXX__,
    X_X, _____,
    XX_____, _____,
    _____, _____};

/* KATAKANA LETTER KO */
static const unsigned char acFontSJIS13_8352[ 26] = { /* code 8352 */
    _____, _____,
    _____, _____,
    XXXXXX, XX_____,
    _____, _X_____,
    _____, _X_____,
    _____, _X_____,
```

```

_____,_____,X_____,  

_____,_____,X_____,  

_____,_____,  

_XXXXXXX,XXXX_____,  

_____,_____,  

_____,_____,  

_____,_____,};

static const GUI_CHARINFO GUI_FontSJIS13_CharInfo[6] = {  

    { 7, 7, 1, (void *)&acFontSJIS13_0041 } /* code 0041 */  

, { 7, 7, 1, (void *)&acFontSJIS13_0042 } /* code 0042 */  

, { 7, 7, 1, (void *)&acFontSJIS13_0043 } /* code 0043 */  

, { 14, 14, 2, (void *)&acFontSJIS13_8350 } /* code 8350 */  

, { 14, 14, 2, (void *)&acFontSJIS13_8351 } /* code 8351 */  

, { 14, 14, 2, (void *)&acFontSJIS13_8352 } /* code 8352 */  

};

static const GUI_FONT_PROP GUI_FontSJIS13_Prop2 = {  

    0x8350 /* first character */  

, 0x8352 /* last character */  

, &GUI_FontSJIS13_CharInfo[ 3 ] /* address of first character */  

, (void*)0 /* pointer to next GUI_FONT_PROP */  

};

static const GUI_FONT_PROP GUI_FontSJIS13_Prop1 = {  

    0x0041 /* first character */  

, 0x0043 /* last character */  

, &GUI_FontSJIS13_CharInfo[ 0 ] /* address of first character */  

, (void *)&GUI_FontSJIS13_Prop2 /* pointer to next GUI_FONT_PROP */  

};

static const GUI_FONT GUI_FontSJIS13 = {  

    GUI_FONNTTYPE_PROP_SJIS /* type of font */  

, 13 /* height of font */  

, 13 /* space of font y */  

, 1 /* magnification x */  

, 1 /* magnification y */  

, (void *)&GUI_FontSJIS13_Prop1  

};

/*********************************************************************  

*  

*   Definition of string containing ASCII and ShiftJIS characters  

*  

*****  

*/  

static const char aSJIS[] = {  

    "ABC\x83\x50\x83\x51\x83\x52\x0"  

};

/*********************************************************************  

*  

*   Demonstrates output of ShiftJIS characters  

*  

*****  

*/  

void DemoShiftJIS(void) {  

    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_Font13HB_1);  

    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt("μC/GUI-sample: ShiftJIS characters", 160, 0);  

    /* Set ShiftJIS font */  

    GUI_SetFont(&GUI_FontSJIS13);  

    /* Display string */  

    GUI_DispStringHCenterAt(aSJIS, 160, 40);  

}

/*********************************************************************  

*  

*   main  

*  

*****  

*/

```

```
void main(void) {  
    GUI_Init();  
    DemoShiftJIS();  
    while(1)  
        GUI_Delay(100);  
}
```

Screen shot of above example



Chapter 25

Display drivers

A display driver supports a particular family of display controllers (typically LCD controllers) and all displays which are connected to one or more of these controllers. The driver is essentially generic, meaning it can be configured by modifying the configuration file `LCDConf.h`. The driver itself does not need to be modified. This file contains all configurable options for the driver including how the hardware is accessed and how the controller(s) are connected to the display.

This chapter provides an overview of the display drivers available for μ C/GUI. It explains the following in terms of each driver:

- Which LCD controllers can be accessed, as well as supported color depths and types of interfaces.
- Additional RAM requirements.
- Additional functions.
- How to access the hardware.
- Special configuration switches.
- Special requirements for particular LCD controllers.

25.1 Available drivers and supported display controllers

The following table lists the available drivers and which display controllers are supported by each:

Driver	Value for macro LCD_CONTROLLER	Display Controller	Supported bits/pixel
LCDColorOnMono	444	Passive color display connected to an display controller with linear memory operating in monochrome mode. Example: Cirrus Logic EP7312	12
LCDFujitsu	8720 8721	Fujitsu MB87J2020 (Jasmine) Fujitsu MB87J2120 (Lavender)	1, 2, 4, 8, 16
LCDLin	1300	Any display controller with linear video memory in 1, 2, 4, 8 and 16 bits/pixel mode, built- in LCD controllers such as Sharp 79531. Epson S1D13700 (direct interface) Solomon SSD1905 Fujitsu MB86290A (Crescent) Fujitsu MB86291 (Scarlet) Fujitsu MB86292 (Orchid) Fujitsu MB86293 (Coral Q) Fujitsu MB86294 (Coral B) Fujitsu MB86295 (Coral P) Toshiba Capricorn 2	1, 2, 4, 8, 16
	1301	Epson S1D13A03, S1D13A04, S1D13A05	
	1304	Epson SED1352, S1D13502	
	1352	Epson SED1353, S1D13503	
	1353	Epson SED1354, S1D13504	
	1354	Epson SED1356, S1D13506	
	1356	Epson SED1374, S1D13704	
	1374	Epson SED1375, S1D13705	
	1375	Epson SED1376, S1D13706	
	1376	Epson SED1386, S1D13806	
	3200	Any display controller with linear video memory in 4, 8 or 16 bits/pixel mode (ARM or MIPS CPUs such as Sharp LH754xx, LH79520, Motorola Dragonball or NEC VR4181A) which should be accessed only in 32 bit mode.	
LCDMem	0	No controller, writes into main memory Requires ISR or special hardware to refresh LCD (monochrome displays)	1, 2
LCDMemC	0	No controller, writes into main memory Requires ISR or special hardware to refresh LCD (color displays)	3, 6
LCDNoritake	9000	Noritake display GU256X128C-3900	1

Driver	Value for macro LCD_CONTROLLER	Display Controller	Supported bits/pixel
LCDPage1bpp	1501 1501 1501 1502 1503 1504 1505 1506 1507 1508 1520 1560 1565 1565 1565 1565 1565 1565 1566 1567 1568 1569 1575	Samsung KS0713, Samsung S6B0713 Samsung KS0724, Samsung S6B0724 UltraChip UC1601, UC1606 Samsung KS0108B, Samsung S6B0108B Hitachi HD61202 Philips PCF8810, PCF8811 Philips PCF8535 New Japan Radio Company NJU6679 Philips PCD8544 Epson S1D15710 Epson SED1520 Epson SED1560 Epson SED1565 Novatek NT7502 Samsung S6B1713 Solomon SSD1815 Sitronix ST7565 Epson SED1566 Epson SED1567 Epson SED1568 Epson SED1569 Epson SED1575	1
LCDPage4bpp	7528	Sitronix ST7528	4
LCDSLin	6901 6901 6901 6901 6902 6963	Epson SED1330 Epson SED1335 Epson S1D13700 (indirect interface) RAIO 8835 RAIO 8822/8803 Toshiba T6963	1
LCDVesa	8600	Any VESA compatible hardware	8, 16
LCDXylon	9100	FPGA based display controller from Xylon	8
LCD0323	323	Solomon SSD0323 OLED controller	4
LCD07X1	701 702 711 741	Solomon SSD1854 STMicroelectronics STE2010 Samsung KS0711, Samsung S6B0711 Samsung KS0741, Samsung S6B0741 Sitronix ST7541	2
LCD1200	1200 1201	Toppoly C0C0 Toppoly C0E0	16
LCD13700	13700	Epson S1D13700	2
LCD13701	13701	Epson S1D13701 OLED controller	9, 12
LCD159A	1601	Epson SED159A	8
LCD15E05	1701	Epson S1D15E05	2
LCD1611	1800	UltraChip UC1611	4
LCD161620	180	NEC µPD161620	12
LCD1781	1781	Solomon SSD1781	16
LCD501	501	Leadis LDS501	8
LCD6331	6331	Samsung S6B33B0X, Samsung S6B33B1X, Samsung S6B33B2X	16
LCD6642X	66420 66421	Hitachi HD66420 Hitachi HD66421	2
LCD667XX	66700 66766 66766 66772 66772 66772 66789	Sharp LR38825 Hitachi HD66766 Samsung S6D0110A Hitachi HD66772 Samsung S6D0117 Sitronix ST7712 Himax HX8301 Hitachi HD66789	16

Driver	Value for macro LCD_CONTROLLER	Display Controller	Supported bits/pixel
LCD66750	66750	Hitachi HD66750	2
LCD7529	7529	Sitronix ST7529	5
LCD7920	7920	Sitronix ST7920	1
LCD8822	8822	Raio RA8822	2

The basic package contains 2 drivers which don't support a specific LCD controller. They can be used as template for a new driver or for measurement purpose:

Driver	Value for macro LCD_CONTROLLER	LCD Controller	Supported bits/pixel
LCDTemplate	-1	Driver template. Can be used as a starting point for writing a new driver. Part of the basic package	-
LCDNull	-2	Empty driver. (Performs no output) Can be used for measurement purpose. Part of the basic package.	-

Selecting a driver

As described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration", the macro LCD_CONTROLLER defines the LCD controller used. A controller is specified by its appropriate value, listed in the table above.

The following sections discuss each of the available drivers individually.

25.2 CPU / Display controller interface

Different display controllers have different CPU interfaces. The most common ones are the following:

- Full bus interface
- Simple bus interface
- 4 pin SPI interface
- 3 pin SPI interface
- I2C bus interface

Below we explain these interfaces and how to configure them. Note that not all config macros are always required. For details about which macros are required please take a look to the driver documentation later in this chapter. The Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration", explains the macros itself.

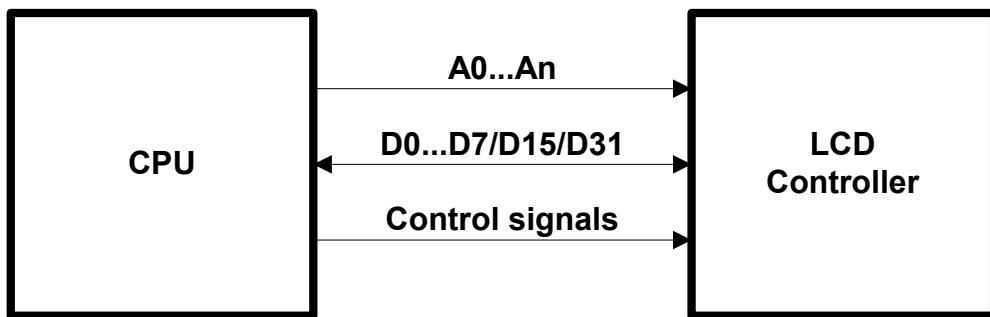
25.2.1 Full bus interface

Some LCD controllers (especially those for displays with higher resolution) require a full-address bus, which means they are connected to at least 14 address bits. In a full bus interface configuration, video memory is directly accessible by the CPU; the full-address bus is connected to the LCD controller.

The only knowledge required when configuring a full bus interface is information about the address range (which will generate a CHIP-SELECT signal for the LCD controller) and whether 8- or 16-bit accesses should be used (bus-width to the LCD controller). In other words, you need to know the following:

- Base address for video memory access
- Base address for register access
- Distance between adjacent video memory locations (usually 1/2/4-byte)
- Distance between adjacent register locations (usually 1/2/4-byte)
- Type of access (8/16/32-bit) for video memory
- Type of access (8/16/32-bit) for registers

Typical block diagram for LCD controllers with full bus interface



Macros used by a full bus interface

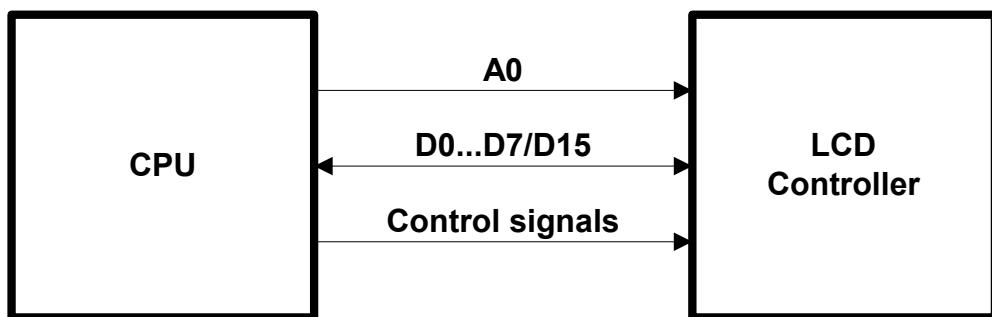
The following table shows the used hardware access macros:

Type	Macro	Explanation
F	LCD_READ_MEM	Reads the video memory of the LCD controller.
F	LCD_WRITE_MEM	Writes data to the video memory of the LCD controller.
F	LCD_READ_REG	Reads the register of the LCD controller.
F	LCD_WRITE_REG	Writes data to a specified register of the LCD controller.

25.2.2 Simple bus interface

Most LCD controllers for smaller displays (usually up to 240*128 or 320*240) use a simple bus interface to connect to the CPU. With a simple bus, only one address bit (usually A0) is connected to the LCD controller. Some of these controllers are very slow, so that the hardware designer may decide to connect it to input/output (I/O) pins instead of the address bus.

Typical block diagram for LCD controllers with simple bus interface



8 (16) data bits, one address bit and 2 or 3 control lines are used to connect the CPU and one LCD controller. Four macros inform the LCD driver how to access each controller used. If the LCD controller(s) is connected directly to the address bus of the CPU, configuration is simple and usually consists of no more than one line per macro. If the LCD controller(s) is connected to I/O pins, the bus interface must be simulated, which takes about 5-10 lines of program per macro (or a function call to a routine which simulates the bus interface). The signal **A0** is also called **C/D** (Command/Data), **D/I** (Data/Instruction) or **RS** (Register select), depending on the display controller.

Macros used by a simple bus interface

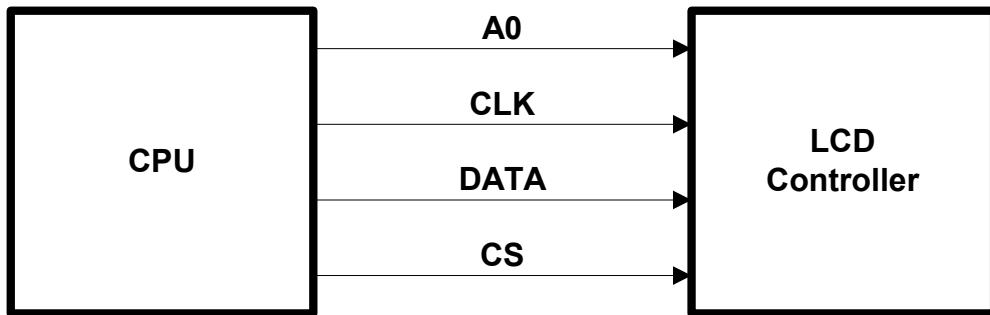
The following table shows the used hardware access macros:

Type	Macro	Explanation
F	LCD_READ_A0	Reads a byte from LCD controller with A0 - line low.
F	LCD_READ_A1	Reads a byte from LCD controller with A0 - line high.
F	LCD_WRITE_A0	Writes a byte to LCD controller with A0 - line low.
F	LCD_WRITE_A1	Writes a byte to LCD controller with A0 - line high.
F	LCD_WRITEM_A1	Writes several bytes to the LCD controller with A0 - line high.

25.2.3 4 pin SPI interface

Using a 4 pin SPI interface is very similar to a simple bus interface. To connect a LCD display using 4 pin SPI interface the lines A0, CLK, DATA, and CS must be connected to the CPU.

Typical block diagram for LCD controllers with 4 pin SPI interface



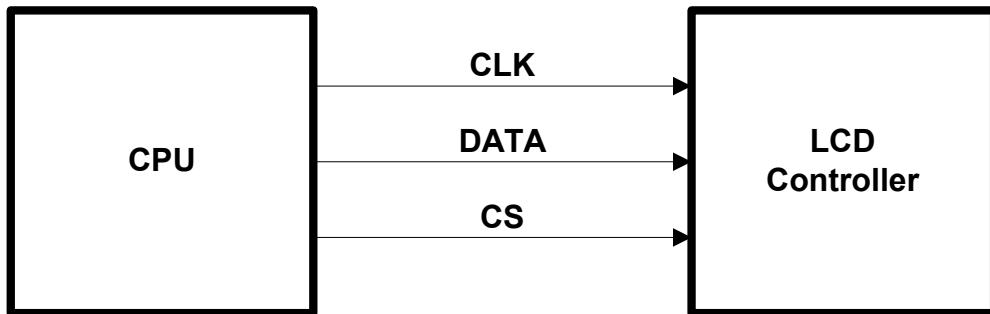
Macros used by a 4 pin SPI interface

The following table shows the used hardware access macros:

Type	Macro	Explanation
F	LCD_WRITE_A0	Writes a byte to LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line low.
F	LCD_WRITE_A1	Writes a byte to LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line high.
F	LCD_WRITEM_A1	Writes several bytes to the LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line high.

25.2.4 3 pin SPI interface

Typical block diagram for LCD controllers with 3 pin SPI interface



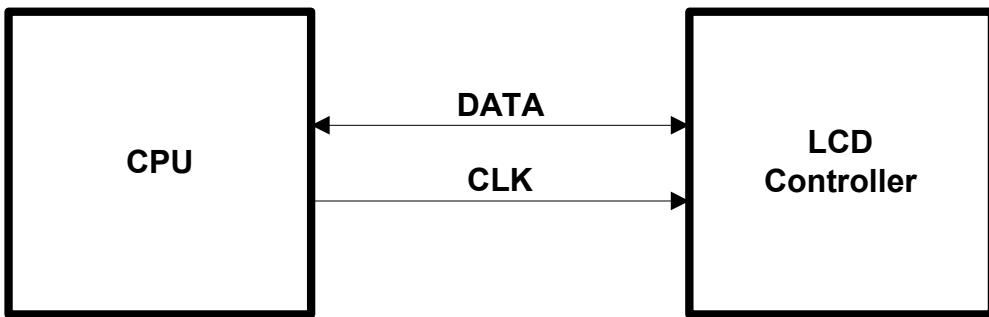
Macros used by a 3 pin SPI interface

The following table shows the used hardware access macros:

Type	Macro	Explanation
F	LCD_WRITE	Writes a byte to LCD controller.
F	LCD_WRITEM	Writes several bytes to the LCD controller.

25.2.5 I2C bus interface

Typical block diagram for LCD controllers with I2C bus interface



Macros used by a 3 pin SPI interface

The following table shows the used hardware access macros:

Type	Macro	Explanation
F	LCD_READ_A0	Reads a status byte from LCD controller.
F	LCD_READ_A1	Reads a data byte from LCD controller.
F	LCD_WRITE_A0	Writes a instruction byte to LCD controller.
F	LCD_WRITE_A1	Writes a data byte to LCD controller.
F	LCD_WRITEITEM_A1	Writes several data bytes to the LCD controller.

25.3 Detailed display driver descriptions

25.3.1 LCDColorOnMono driver

This driver supports systems with passive color displays connected to an LCD controller in monochrome mode. The LCD controller is assumed to have a linear video memory organization and to work in a 16 gray-scale mode, yielding 16 levels of intensity for every sub-pixel and therefore $16 \times 16 \times 16 = 4096$ colors on the display. If the LCD controller supports colors, it is usually better to use it in color mode (with the LCDLin driver), as this more efficient. An example of where this driver is used is the LCD controller built-into the Cirrus Logic EP7312.

Supported hardware

Controllers

#	LCD controller	Additional info
444	Any Passive color display connected to an LCD controller with linear memory operating in monochrome mode.	-

Bits per pixel

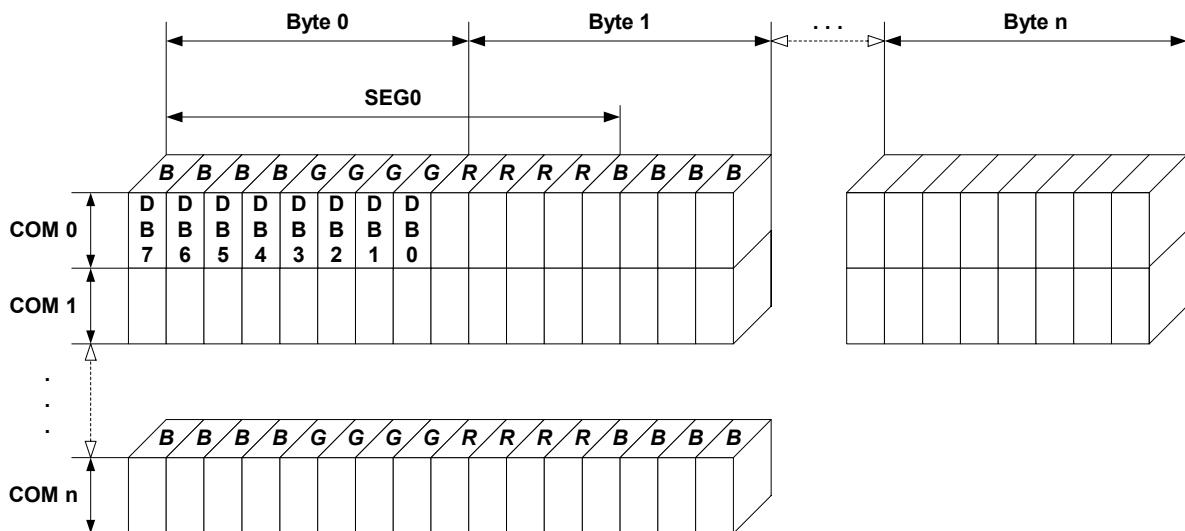
Supported color depth is 12 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports a 16 bit full bus interface from the CPU to the LCD controller.

Display data RAM organization

12 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 444



This driver supports a 12 bpp memory area for color displays. The pictures above show the dependence between the memory area handled by the driver and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

RAM requirements of the driver

None.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver requires a full bus interface for hardware access as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
LCD_READ_MEM	Read the contents of video memory of controller.
LCD_WRITE_MEM	Write to video memory (display data RAM) of controller.

Example:

A QVGA color display needs the following defines in LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_XSIZE 320
#define LCD_YSIZE 240
```

The LCD controller needs to be initialized to control a monochrome display of 960x240 resolution.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_ON	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD on.
LCD_OFF	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD off.

Special requirements

The driver needs to work in one of the following fixed palette modes:

- 44412 (default if working in 12bpp mode)
- 444121
- 44416

The driver does not work with other palettes.

25.3.2 LCDFujitsu driver

This driver supports the Fujitsu Graphic display controllers. It has been tested with "Jasmine", but it should also work with "Lavender", since all relevant registers are compatible.

Supported hardware

Controllers

#	LCD controller	Additional info
8720	Jasmin	Fully optimized, LUT is initialized
8721	Lavender	Fully optimized, LUT is initialized

Bits per pixel

Supported color depths are 1, 2, 4, 8 and 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver has been tested with a 32 bit interface to the CPU. If a 16 bit interface is used, the 32-bit accesses can be replaced by 2 16-bit accesses.

Display data RAM organization

The display controller uses DRAM in an optimized, non-linear way (described in the Fujitsu documentation). Direct memory access is not used by the driver.

RAM requirements of the driver

About 16 bytes for some static variables.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver requires a full bus interface for hardware access as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_READ_REG</code>	Read a register of the display controller. (as 32 bit value) (optional)
<code>LCD_WRITE_REG</code>	Write a register of the display controller. (as 32 bit value) (optional)

The driver contains a default for hardware access macros, which configures 32 bit access on the Fujitsu demonstration platform (Using an MB91361 or MB91362 and a Jasmine chip at address 0x30000000); if the target hardware is compatible with these settings, then `LCD_READ_REG()`, `LCD_WRITE_REG()` do not need to be defined.

Color format (R/B swap)

It seems that on some target systems, Red and blue are swapped. This can be changed via software if the Config switch `LCD_SWAP_RB` is toggled in the configuration file.

Hardware initialization

The display controller requires a complicated initialization. Example code is available from Fujitsu in the GDC module. This code is not part of the driver, since it depends on the actual chip used, on the clock settings, the display and a lot of other things. We recommend using the original Fujitsu code, since the documentation of the chips is not sufficient to write this code. Before calling `GUI_Init()`, the GDC should be initialized using this code (typically called as `GDC_Init(0xff)`).

Example:

`LCDConf.h` for VGA display, 8bpp, Jasmin

```
#define LCD_XSIZE      640 /* X-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_YSIZE      480 /* Y-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL 8
#define LCD_CONTROLLER 8720 /* Jasmine */
```

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration macros available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_ON</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the display on.
<code>LCD_OFF</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the display off.

Special requirements

None

25.3.3 LCDLin driver (8 and 16 bit access)

Generally display controller with linear video memory can be accessed with the LCDLin driver for 8 and 16 bit access and with the LCDLin driver for 32 bit access. If 32 bit access is possible, it is recommended to use the 32 bit driver with the better performance.

This driver can be used with any LCD Controller with linear memory organization (as described below) and full bus interface (8 or 16 bit data bus). Most controllers for bigger displays and higher color depth (typically starting at quarter VGA) comply with this requirement and can therefore be controlled by this driver.

Supported hardware

Controllers

The following table list the supported controllers and their assigned numbers for LCD_CONTROLLER, as well as the level of support:

#	LCD controller	Additional info
1300	Any LCD controller with linear memory and full bus interface, such as: Epson SED1352, S1D13502 Epson SED1353, S1D13503 Epson S1D13700 (direct interface) Solomon SSD1905 Fujitsu MB86290A (Crescent) Fujitsu MB86291 (Scarlet) Fujitsu MB86292 (Orchid) Fujitsu MB86293 (Coral Q) Fujitsu MB86294 (Coral B) Fujitsu MB86295 (Coral P) Microcontrollers with built-in LCD controllers such as Sharp LH79531	The LUT (color look up table) is not handled by the driver. If a LUT mode is used (typically 16 or 256 colors), the application program is responsible for initialization of the LUT.
1301	Toshiba Capricorn 2	LUT is handled by driver if required All layers can be supported
1304	Epson S1D13A03, S1D13A04, S1D13A05	LUT is handled by driver if required 2 D Engine supported (BitBLT)
1354	Epson SED1354, S1D13504	LUT is handled by driver if required
1356	Epson SED1356, S1D13506	LUT is handled by driver if required. 2 D Engine supported (BitBLT)
1374	Epson SED1374, S1D13704	LUT is handled by driver if required
1375	Epson SED1375, S1D13705	LUT is handled by driver if required
1376	Epson SED1376, S1D13706	LUT is handled by driver if required
1386	Epson SED1386, S1D13806	LUT is handled by driver if required 2 D Engine supported (BitBLT)

Bits per pixel

Supported color depths are 1, 2, 4, 8 and 16 bpp.

Interfaces

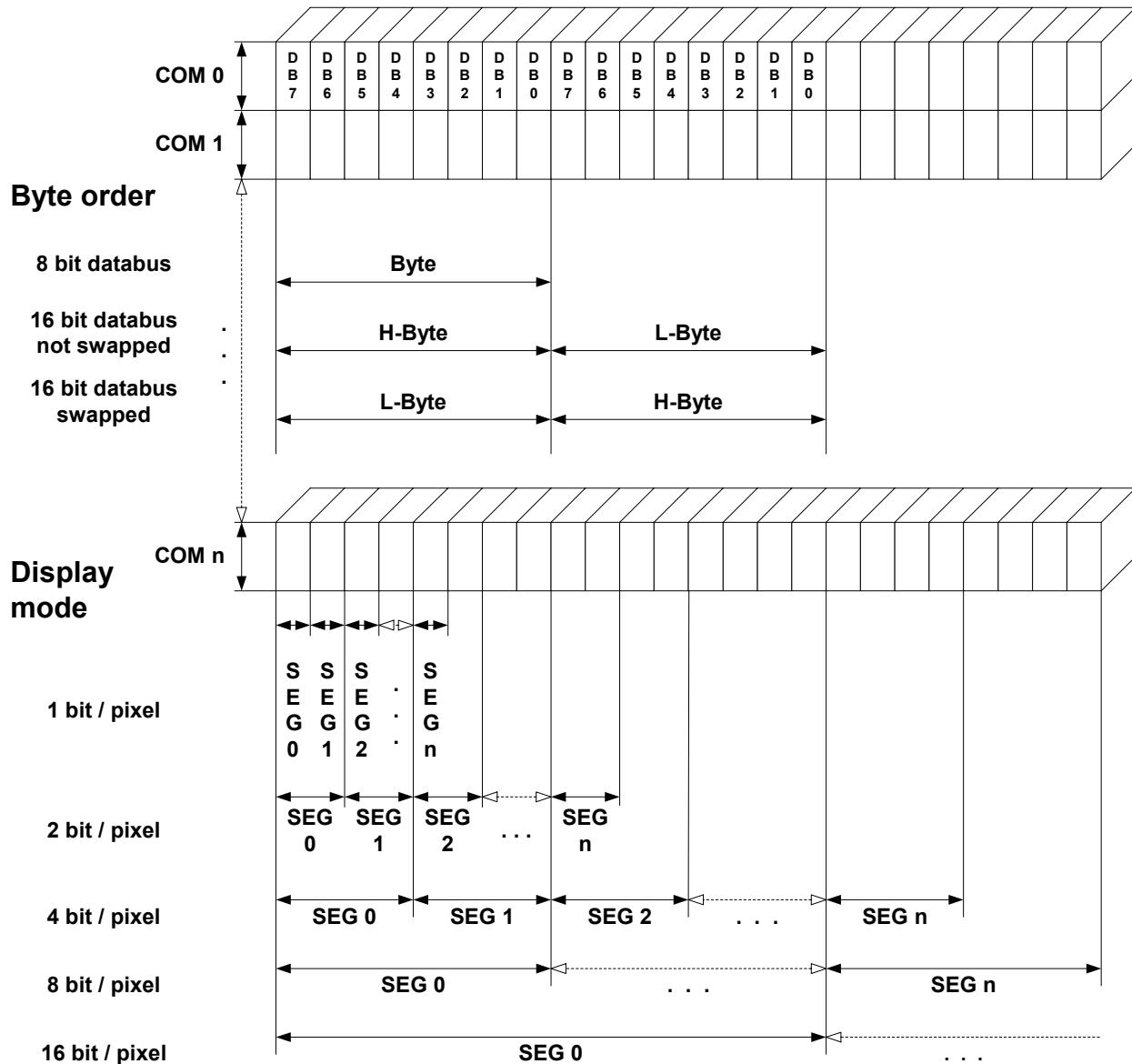
The chips supported by this driver can be interfaced in 8/16-bit parallel (full bus) modes.

The driver supports both interfaces. Please refer to the respective LCD controller manual in order to determine if your chip can be interfaced in 8-bit mode.

Built-in LCD controllers

This driver can also be used with built-in LCD controllers. In this case, either 8 or 16 bit access can be selected. It is typically best to use 8 bit access if the built-in LCD controller operates in an 8-bpp mode and likewise to use 16 bit access if the built-in LCD-controller operates in a 16-bpp mode.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD in terms of the color depth.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

None.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver requires a full bus interface for hardware access as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_READ_MEM</code>	Read the contents of video memory of controller.
<code>LCD_READ_REG</code>	Read the contents of a configuration register of controller.
<code>LCD_WRITE_MEM</code>	Write to video memory (display data RAM) of controller.
<code>LCD_WRITE_REG</code>	Write to a configuration register of controller.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_BUSWIDTH</code>	Select bus-width (8/16) of LCD controller/CPU interface. Default is 16.
<code>LCD_CNF4</code>	Endian mode selection for S1D13A03-A05 controllers. Default is 0.
<code>LCD_ENABLE_MEM_ACCESS</code>	Switch the M/R signal to memory access. Only used for S1D13506 and S1D13806 LCD controllers.
<code>LCD_ENABLE_REG_ACCESS</code>	Switch the M/R signal to register access. Only used for S1D13506 and S1D13806 LCD controllers.
<code>LCD_ON</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD on
<code>LCD_OFF</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD off
<code>LCD_SET_LUT_ENTRY</code>	Function replacement macro used to set a single lookup table or palette RAM entry.
<code>LCD_SWAP_BYTE_ORDER</code>	Inverts the endian mode (swaps the high and low bytes) between CPU and LCD controller when using a 16-bit bus interface.
<code>LCD_USE_BITBLT</code>	If set to 0, it disables the BitBLT engine. If set to 1 (the default value), the driver will use all available hardware acceleration.

Additional info for S1D13A03, S1D13A04 and S1D13A05

`LCD_CNF4`

The configuration switch `LCD_CNF4` configures the endian mode selection. If the CNF4 pin of the controller is configured as high the macro should be 1, if the pin is low it should be 0 (default). To set the endian mode to big endian the following line should be added to `LCDConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_CNF4 (1) /* Selects the big endian mode */
```

Additional info for S1D13806, S1D13A03, S1D13A04 and S1D13A05

`LCD_SWAP_RB`

The configuration switch `LCD_SWAP_RB` (swaps the red and blue components) must be activated (set to 1) by inserting the following line into `LCDConf.h`:

```
#define LCD_SWAP_RB (1) /* Has to be set */
```

`LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER`

When writing or modifying the initialization macro, consider the following:

- To initialize the embedded SDRAM, bit 7 of register 20 (SDRAM initialization bit) must be set to 1 (a minimum of 200 μ s after reset).
- When the SDRAM initialization bit is set, the actual initialization sequence occurs at the first SDRAM refresh cycle. The initialization sequence requires approximately 16 MCLKs to complete, and memory accesses cannot be made while the initialization is in progress.

For more information, please see the LCD controller documentation.

LCD_READ_REG, LCD_WRITE_REG

In order for the BitBLT engine to work, the data type of the offset must be unsigned long. This is set with the configuration macros `LCD_READ_REG` and `LCD_WRITE_REG` as follows:

```
#define LCD_READ_REG(Off)      *((volatile U16*)(0x800000+(((u32)(Off))<<1)))  
#define LCD_WRITE_REG(Off,Data) *((volatile U16*)(0x800000+(((u32)(Off))<<1)))=Data
```

25.3.4 LCDLin driver (32 bit access)

Generally display controller with linear video memory can be accessed with the LCDLin driver for 8 and 16 bit access and with the LCDLin driver for 32 bit access. If 32 bit access is possible, it is recommended to use the 32 bit driver with the better performance.

This driver can be used with any display controller with linear memory organization (as described below) and full bus interface (32 bit data bus). Most controllers for bigger displays and higher color depth (typically starting at quarter VGA) comply with this requirement and can therefore be controlled by this driver.

Supported hardware

Controllers

The following table list the supported controllers and their assigned numbers for LCD_CONTROLLER, as well as the level of support:

#	LCD controller	Additional info
3200	Any display controller with linear video memory in 4, 8 or 16 bits/pixel mode such as the build in display controller of Sharp LH754XX, ARM or MIPS CPU's.	The LUT (color look up table or palette RAM) is not handled by the driver. If a LUT mode is used, the application program is responsible for initialization of the LUT. LUT support can be added by using the macro LCD_SET_LUT_ENTRY.

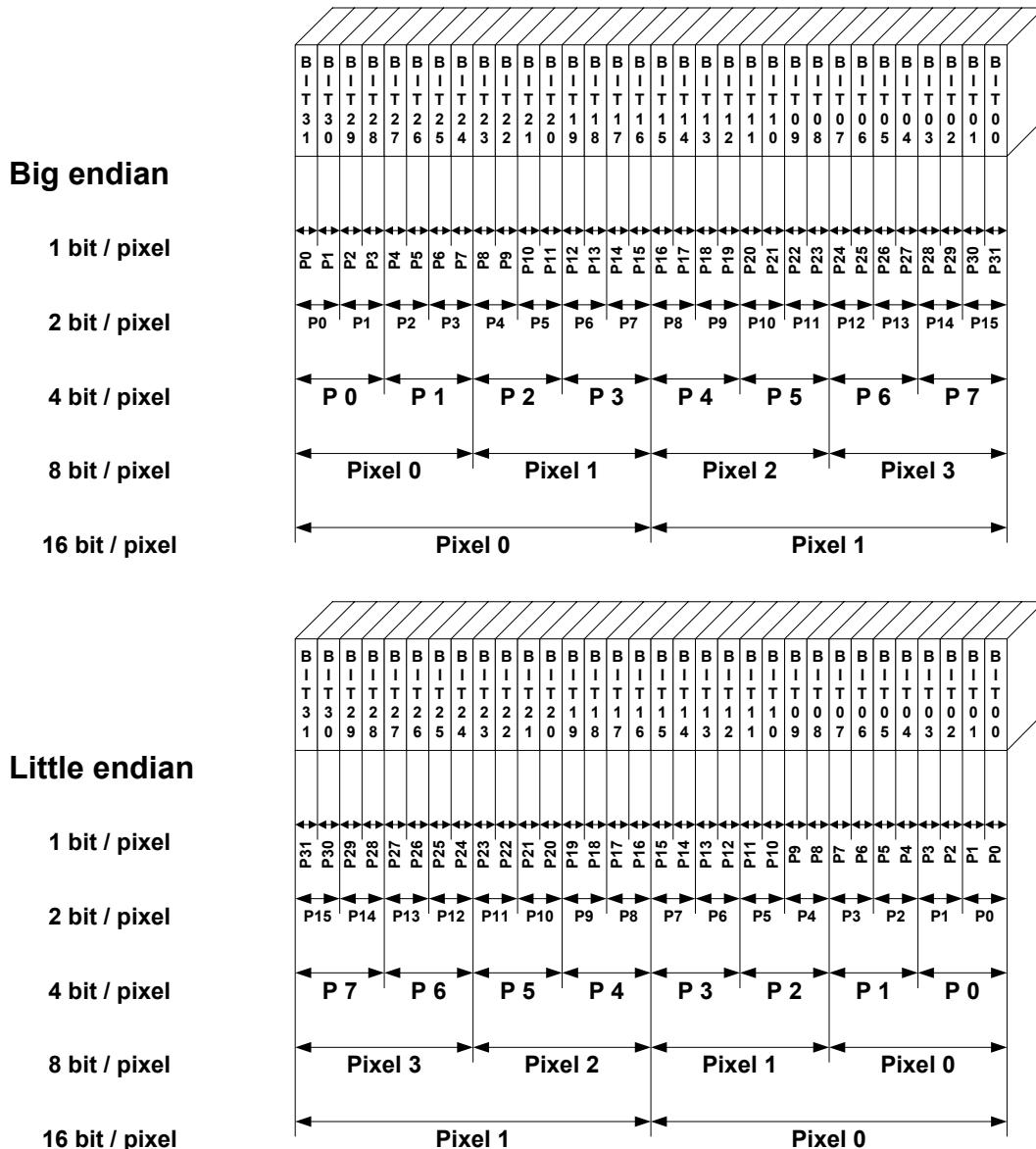
Bits per pixel

Supported color depths are 1, 2, 4, 8 and 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports any 32 bit full bus interface.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the pixels of the LCD in terms of the color depth and the endian mode.

Little endian video mode

Least significant bits are used and output first. The least significant bits are for the first (left-most) pixel.

Big endian video mode

Most significant bits are used and output first. The most significant bits are for the first (left-most) pixel.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

None.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver requires a full bus interface for hardware access as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_ENDIAN_BIG</code>	Should be set to 1 for big endian mode, 0 for little endian mode.
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_VRAM_ADR</code>	Defines the start address of the video memory.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_FILL_RECT</code>	Function replacement macro which can be used to draw a rectangle.
<code>LCD_LIN_SWAP</code>	Swaps pixels within a byte.
<code>LCD_OFF</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD off.
<code>LCD_ON</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD on.
<code>LCD_SET_LUT_ENTRY</code>	Used to set a single lookup table or palette RAM entry.

`LCD_LIN_SWAP()`

Description

This macro enables swapping of pixels within one byte.

Type

Numeric.

Prototype

```
#define LCD_LIN_SWAP
```

Additional information

Sometimes a display driver like the embedded display driver of the Motorola MX1 has a different pixel assignment as the default assignment shown under 'Display data RAM organization'. In this case the macro `LCD_LIN_SWAP` can be used to swap the pixels within one byte after reading from and before writing to the video RAM.

If the value of the macro is > 0, pixel swapping is activated. The value of LCD_LIN_SWAP defines the swapping mode. The following table shows the supported swapping modes in dependence of the defined value:

Value	Default	After swapping																
1	<table border="1"><tr><td>P7</td><td>P6</td><td>P5</td><td>P4</td><td>P3</td><td>P2</td><td>P1</td><td>P0</td></tr></table>	P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0	<table border="1"><tr><td>P0</td><td>P1</td><td>P2</td><td>P3</td><td>P4</td><td>P5</td><td>P6</td><td>P7</td></tr></table>	P0	P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	P7
P7	P6	P5	P4	P3	P2	P1	P0											
P0	P1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6	P7											
2	<table border="1"><tr><td>P3</td><td>P2</td><td>P1</td><td>P0</td></tr></table>	P3	P2	P1	P0	<table border="1"><tr><td>P0</td><td>P1</td><td>P2</td><td>P3</td></tr></table>	P0	P1	P2	P3								
P3	P2	P1	P0															
P0	P1	P2	P3															
4	<table border="1"><tr><td>P1</td><td>P0</td></tr></table>	P1	P0	<table border="1"><tr><td>P0</td><td>P1</td></tr></table>	P0	P1												
P1	P0																	
P0	P1																	

Example

```
#define LCD_LIN_SWAP 1
```

LCD_FILL_RECT()

Description

This macro can be used for calling a user defined routine by the driver for filling.

Type

Function replacement.

Prototype

```
#define LCD_FILL_RECT(x0, y0, x1, y1, Index)
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Leftmost X-position of the rectangle to be filled.
y0	Topmost Y-position of the rectangle to be filled.
x1	Rightmost X-position of the rectangle to be filled.
y1	Bottommost Y-position of the rectangle to be filled.
Index	Color index to be used for filling.

Additional information

If this macro is defined, the driver calls the function defined by this macro instead of using its own filling routine. Using this macro can make sense if for example a BitBLT engine should be used for filling instead of the driver internal filling function. Index values are in the range of 0 - ((1 << LCD_BITS_PER_PIXEL) - 1).

Example

```
void CustomFillRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1, int Index);
#define LCD_FILL_RECT(x0, y0, x1, y1, Index) CustomFillRect(x0, y0, x1, y1, Index)
```

How to migrate from LCDLin to LCDLin32

The driver for 8 and 16 bit access needs the definition of 2 memory access macros, LCD_READ_MEM and LCD_WRITE_MEM. The driver for 32 bit access needs the definition of the display RAM memory address. The following sample shows how to define the memory access.

Example

Configuration for 16 bit access:

```
#define LCD_CONTROLLER 1300
#define LCD_READ_MEM(Off)      * ((U16*) (0xc00000 + ((U32)(Off)) << 1)))
#define LCD_WRITE_MEM(Off,Data) * ((U16*) (0xc00000 + ((U32)(Off)) << 1))) = Data
```

Configuration for 32 bit access:

```
#define LCD_CONTROLLER 3200
#define LCD_VRAM_ADR    0xc00000
```

25.3.5 LCDMem driver

Using the CPU as LCD controller

In systems with relatively fast CPUs and small (quarter VGA or less) LCDs, there is no need for an LCD controller. The microcontroller (CPU) can do the job of the LCD controller on the side, refreshing the display in an interrupt service routine. The CPU's memory is used as video memory.

Advantages of this approach include the following:

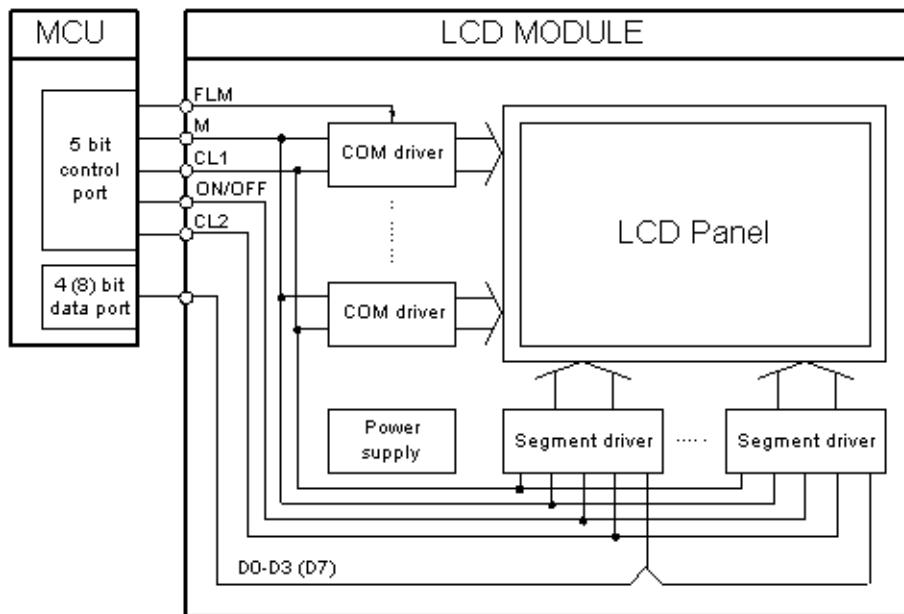
- Very fast update of display possible.
- Eliminating the LCD controller (and its external RAM) reduces hardware costs.
- Simplified hardware design.
- 4 levels of gray can be displayed.

The disadvantage is that much of the available computation time is used up. Depending on the CPU, this can be anything between 20 and almost 100 percent; with slower CPUs, it is really not possible at all.

This type of interface does not require a specific LCD driver because µC/GUI simply places all the display data into the LCD cache. You yourself must write the hardware-dependent portion that periodically transfers the data in the cache memory to your LCD. Sample code for transferring the video image into the display is available in both "C" and optimized assembler for M16C and M16C/80. The assembler files can be found in the folder `LCDDriver` of µC/GUI. The output routine in 'C' can be found under `Sample\LCDConf\LCDMem\LCD_ISR.c`.

How to connect the CPU to the row/column drivers

It is quite easy to connect the microcontroller to the row/column drivers. Five control lines are needed, as well as either 4 or 8 data lines (depending on whether the column drivers are able to operate in 8-bit mode). 8-bit mode is recommended as it is more efficient, saving calculation time of the CPU. All data lines should be on a single port, using port bits 0..3 or 0..7 in order to guarantee efficient access. This setup is illustrated below:



CPU load

The CPU load depends on the hardware and controller used, as well as on the size of the display. For example:

Mitsubishi M16C62 Controller, 16MHz, 160*100 display, 8-bit interface, 80 Hz update
= app. 12% CPU load.

Mitsubishi M16C62 Controller, 16MHz, 240*128 display, 8-bit interface, 80 Hz update
= app. 22% CPU load.

Supported hardware

Controllers

None.

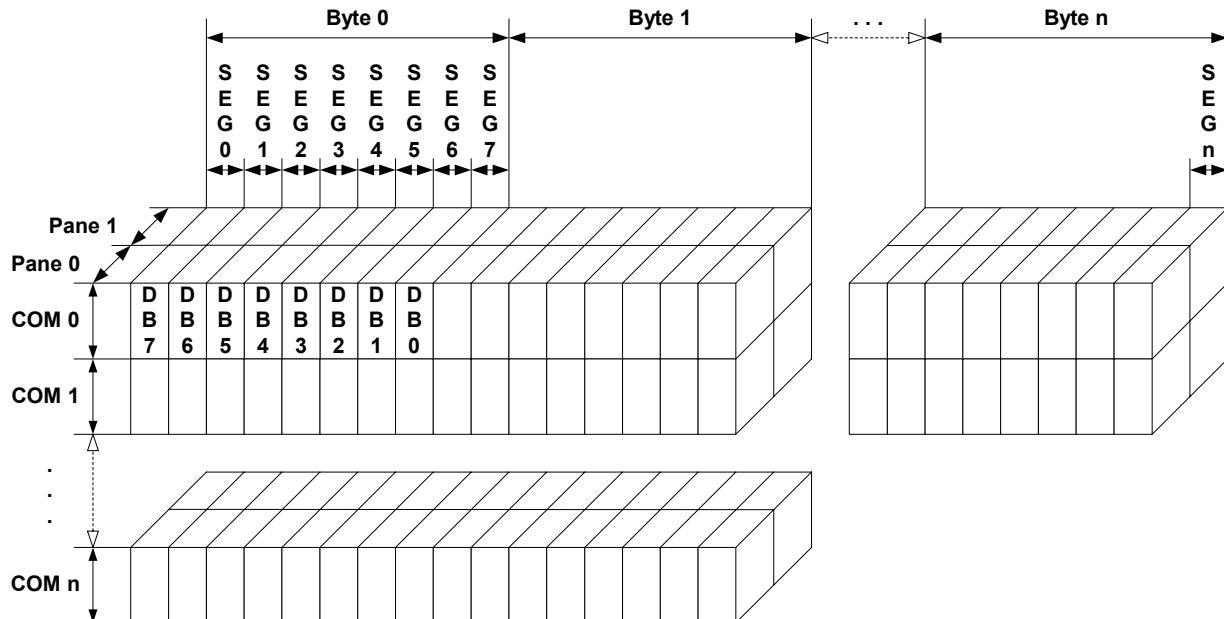
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 1 and 2 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 1/4/8-bit interfaces from the CPU to the LCD.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD. The display memory is divided into two panes for each pixel. The lower bit of one pixel is stored in pane 0 and the higher bit is stored in pane 1. The advantage of this method is that the output of the display data can be executed very quickly. If working in 1 bpp mode only one pane will be used.

RAM requirements of the driver

The driver only handles a memory area containing the display data. The required size of the display memory area may be calculated as follows:

1 bit per pixel

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_YSIZE}$$

2 bit per pixel

Size of RAM (in bytes) = $(LCD_XSIZE + 7) / 8 * LCD_YSIZE * 2$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

Normally, the hardware interface is an interrupt service routine (ISR) which updates the LCD. An output routine written in "C" code is shipped with μ C/GUI. This routine should serve only as an example. To optimize the execution speed, it must be adapted in assembler code.

For detailed information on how to write the output routine, please take a look at the sample supplied with the driver or contact us.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_TIMERINIT0</code>	Timing value used by ISR for displaying pane 0.
<code>LCD_TIMERINIT1</code>	Timing value used by ISR for displaying pane 1.
<code>LCD_ON</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD on.
<code>LCD_OFF</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD off.

25.3.6 LCDMemC driver

This driver, like LCDMem, is designed for a system without an LCD controller. The difference is that LCDMemC supports color displays. For more information on using the CPU instead of an LCD controller, please see the previous section on the LCDMem driver.

Supported hardware

Controllers

None.

Bits per pixel

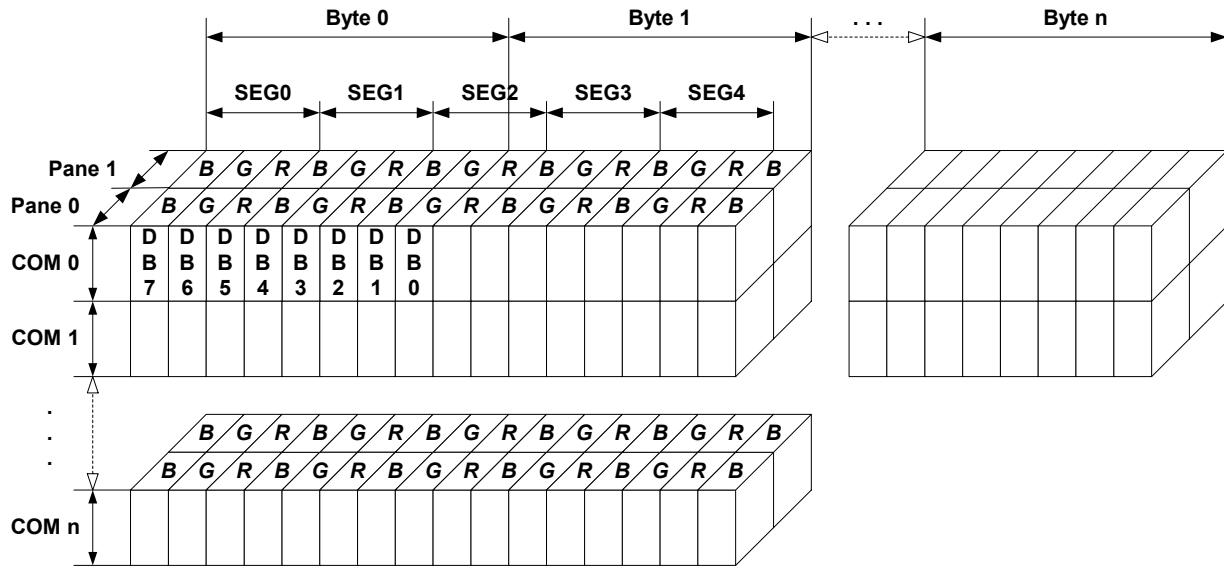
Supported color depths are 3 and 6 bpp.

Interfaces

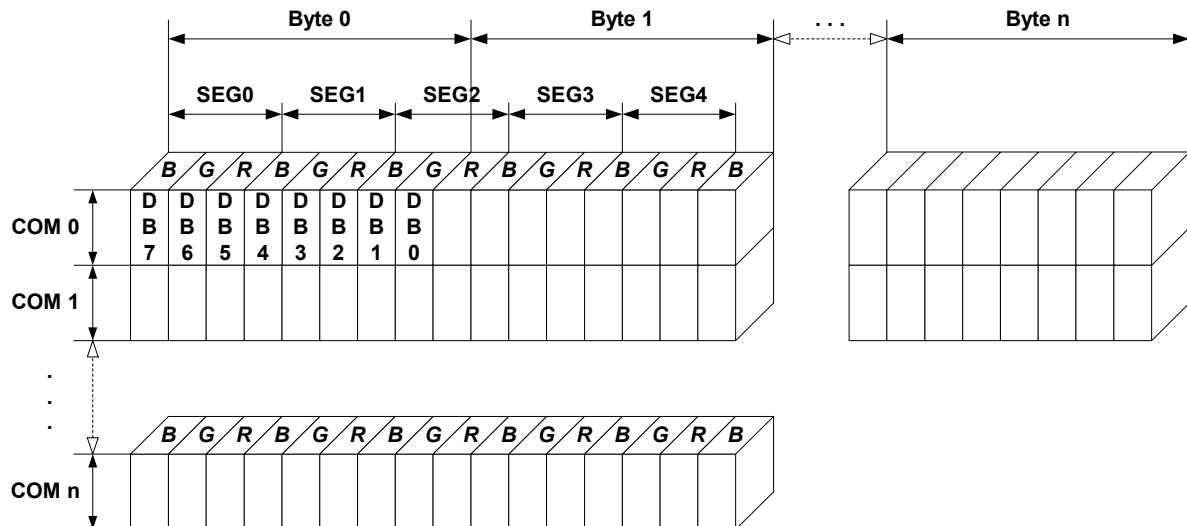
The driver supports 1/4/8-bit interfaces from the CPU to the LCD.

Display data RAM organization

6 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 222



3 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 111



This driver supports a 3 or 6 bpp memory area for color displays. The pictures above show the dependence between the memory area handled by the driver and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

6 bits per pixel, fixed palette mode 222

When using the 6 bpp mode, the display memory is divided into 2 panes for each pixel. The lower bit of each pixel is stored in pane 0 and the higher bit is stored in pane 1. The advantage of this method is that the output of the display data can be executed very quickly.

3 bits per pixel, fixed palette mode 111

When using this mode, only one pane exists for each pixel.

RAM requirements of the driver

The driver only handles a memory area containing the display data. The required size of the display memory area may be calculated as follows:

6 bits per pixel, fixed palette mode 222

Size of RAM (in bytes) = $(LCD_XSIZE + 7) / 8 * 3 * 2$

3 bits per pixel, fixed palette mode 111

Size of RAM (in bytes) = $(LCD_XSIZE + 7) / 8 * 3$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

Normally, the hardware interface is an interrupt service routine (ISR) which updates the LCD. An output routine written in "C" code is shipped with µC/GUI. This routine should serve only as an example. To optimize the execution speed, it must be adapted in assembler code.

For detailed information on how to write the output routine, please take a look at the sample supplied with the driver or contact us.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_TIMERINIT0</code>	Timing value used by ISR for displaying pane 0.
<code>LCD_TIMERINIT1</code>	Timing value used by ISR for displaying pane 1 (only used by 6 bpp mode).
<code>LCD_ON</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD on.
<code>LCD_OFF</code>	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD off.

25.3.7 LCDNoritake display driver

Supported hardware

Displays

The driver has been tested with the following display:

- Noritake GU256X128C_3900 configured for the 'Graphic DMA Mode'

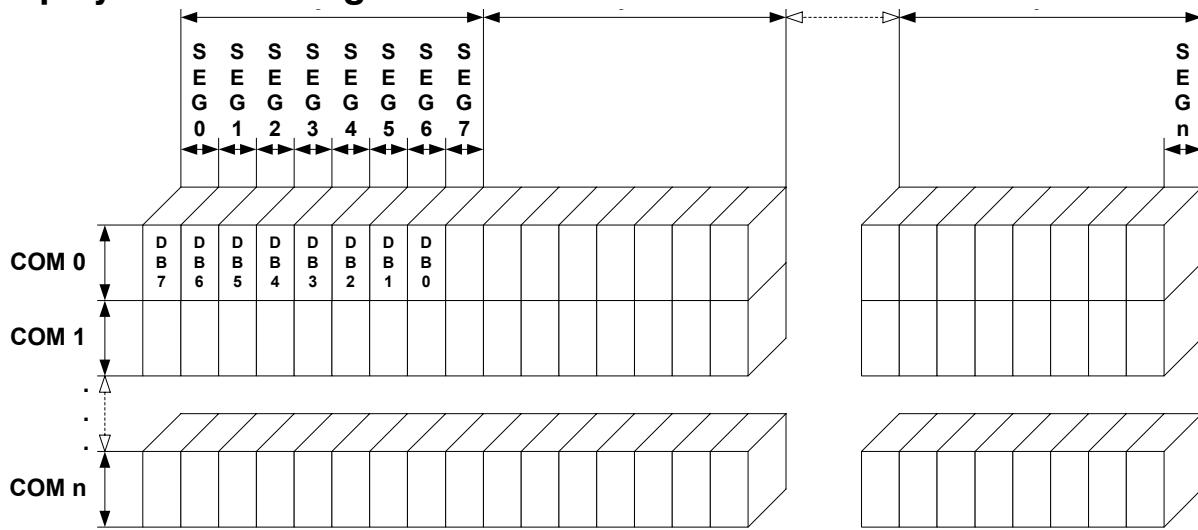
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 1 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interface.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM-requirement

This driver requires a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the display data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_YSIZE}$$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which should be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_DAD	Display address used for the communication protocol. Default value is display address 0.
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the display.
LCD_WRITE_A1	Write a byte to the display.
LCD_WITEM_A1	Write multiple bytes to the display.

25.3.8 LCDPage1bpp driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following LCD controllers:

- Epson SED1520, SED1560, SED1565, SED1566, SED1567, SED1568, SED1569, SED1575, S1D15710, S1D10605, S1D15705
- Hitachi HD61202
- New Japan Radio Company NJU6679
- Novatec NT7502
- Philips PCF8810, PCF8811, PCF8535, PCD8544
- Samsung KS0713, KS0724, KS0108B, S6B1713, S6B0724, S6B0108B, S6B1713
- Sitronix ST7565
- Solomon SSD1815
- Sunplus SPLC501C
- UltraChip UC1601, UC1606

It should be assumed that it will also work with any controller of similar organization.

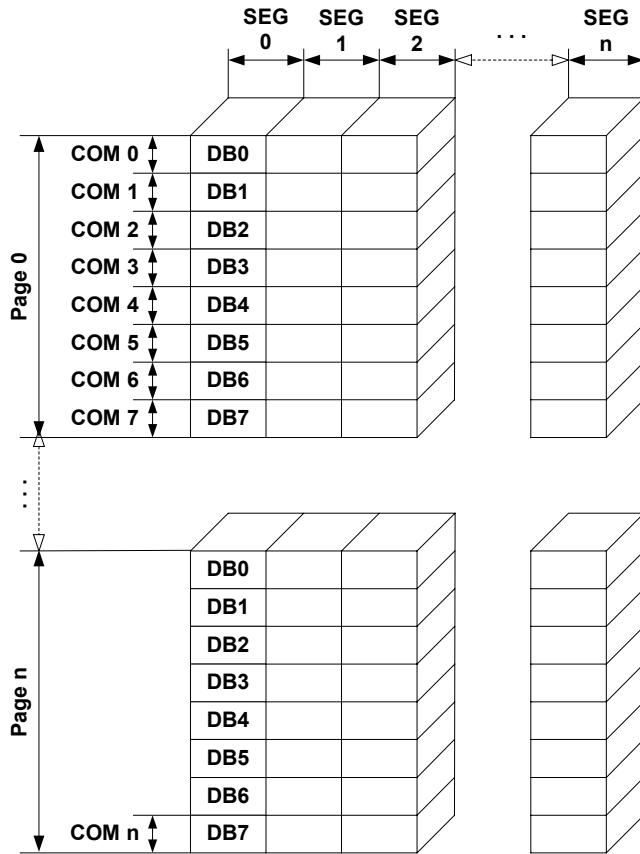
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 1bpp.

Interfaces

8-bit parallel (simple bus), serial (SPI4) and I2C bus interfaces are supported.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This LCD driver can be used with or without a display data cache in the most cases. If one display contains more than 1 LCD controller you can not disable the cache. The data cache contains a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_YSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_XSIZE}$$

Additional driver functions

LCD_L0_ControlCache

For information about this function, please refer to Chapter 28: "LCD Driver API".

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
LCD_READ_A0	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low.
LCD_READ_A1	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITE_A0	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
LCD_WRITE_A1	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITE_M_A1	Write multiple bytes to LCD controller with A-line high.

Display orientation

Some of the supported display controllers supports hardware mirroring of x/y axis. It is recommended to use these functions instead of the display orientation macros of µC/GUI.

If mirroring of the X axis is needed, the command 0xA1 (ADC select reverse) should be used in the initialization macro. This causes the display controller to reverse the assignment of column address to segment output. If the display size in X is smaller than the number of segment outputs of the display controller, the macro LCD_FIRSTSEG0 can be used to add an offset to the column address to make sure, the right RAM address of the LCD controller is accessed.

If mirroring of the Y axis is needed the command 0xC8 (SHL select revers) should be used in the initialization macro and the macro LCD_FIRSTCOM0 should be used to define the offset needed to access the right RAM address of the display controller.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_CACHE	When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated).
LCD_FIRSTCOM0	This macro can be used to define the first common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation.
LCD_FIRSTSEG0	This macro can be used to define the first segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation.
LCD_SUPPORT_CACHECONTROL	When set to 0, the cache control functions of LCD_L0_ControlCache() driver API are disabled.

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.9 LCDPage4bpp driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following LCD controllers:

- Sitronix ST7528

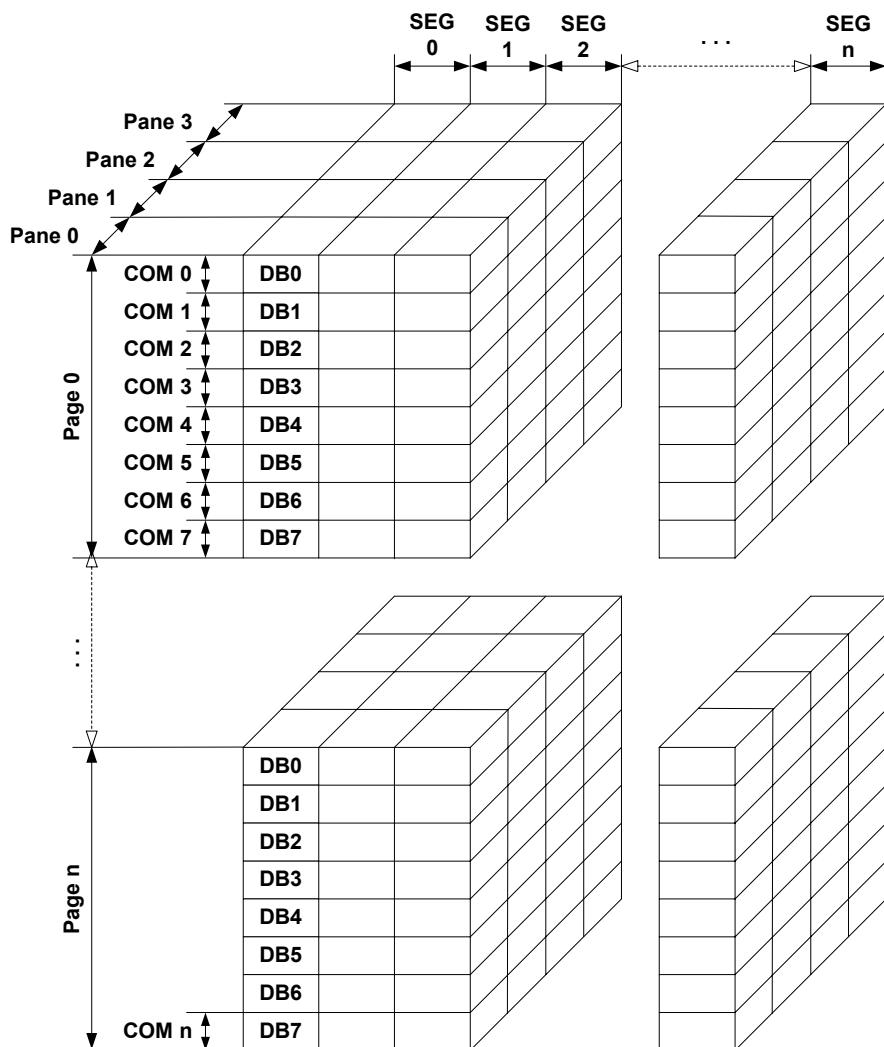
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 4 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) and 4 pin SPI interface.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD. The display memory is divided into four panes for each pixel. The least significant bit (LSB) of each pixel is stored in pane 0 and the MSB is stored in pane 3.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache. If the cache is used it holds a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_YSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_XSIZE} * 4$$

A cache is required in SPI mode, because SPI does not allow reading of display contents.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface, a 4 pin SPI interface or a I2C bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high. (Used only if working without cache)
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITEITEM_A1</code>	Write multiple bytes to LCD controller with A-line high.

Display orientation

A Sitronix ST7528 display controller supports hardware mirroring of x/y axis. It is recommended to use these functions instead of the display orientation macros of µC/GUI.

If mirroring of the X axis is needed, the command 0xA1 (ADC select reverse) should be used in the initialization macro. This causes the display controller to reverse the assignment of column address to segment output. If the display size in X is smaller than the number of segment outputs of the display controller, the macro `LCD_FIRSTSEG0` can be used to add an offset to the column address to make sure, the right RAM address of the LCD controller is accessed.

If mirroring of the Y axis is needed the command 0xC8 (SHL select revers) should be used in the initialization macro and the macro `LCD_FIRSTCOM0` should be used to define the offset needed to access the right RAM address of the display controller.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_FIRSTCOM0</code>	This macro can be used to define the first common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation.
<code>LCD_FIRSTSEG0</code>	This macro can be used to define the first segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation.
<code>LCD_NUM_COM0</code>	A Sitronix ST7528 controller can operate in 2 modes. Mode 0 with 132 segment and 128 common outputs and mode 1 with 160 segment and 100 common outputs. which mode is used depends on hardware, the mode can not be changed via command. Defines the number of available common outputs of the display controller. Possible values for Sitronix ST7528 are: 128 (default, mode 0) 100 (mode 1)
<code>LCD_NUM_SEG0</code>	Defines the number of available segment outputs of the display controller. Possible values for Sitronix ST7528 are: 132 (default, mode 0) 160 (mode 1)

25.3.10 LCDSLin driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

The following table lists the supported controllers and their assigned numbers for LCD_CONTROLLER, as well as the level of support:

#	LCD controller	Additional info
6963	Toshiba T6963	1 BPP LCD controller with external memory. Graphic mode, fully supported
6901	Epson SED1330, SED1335, S1D13700 RAIO 8835	1 BPP LCD controller with external memory. Graphic mode, fully supported Access to the controller is slow, please refer to section "Add info about certain display controllers" for details.
6902	RAIO 8822, 8803	LCD controller with external memory. Graphic mode, fully supported

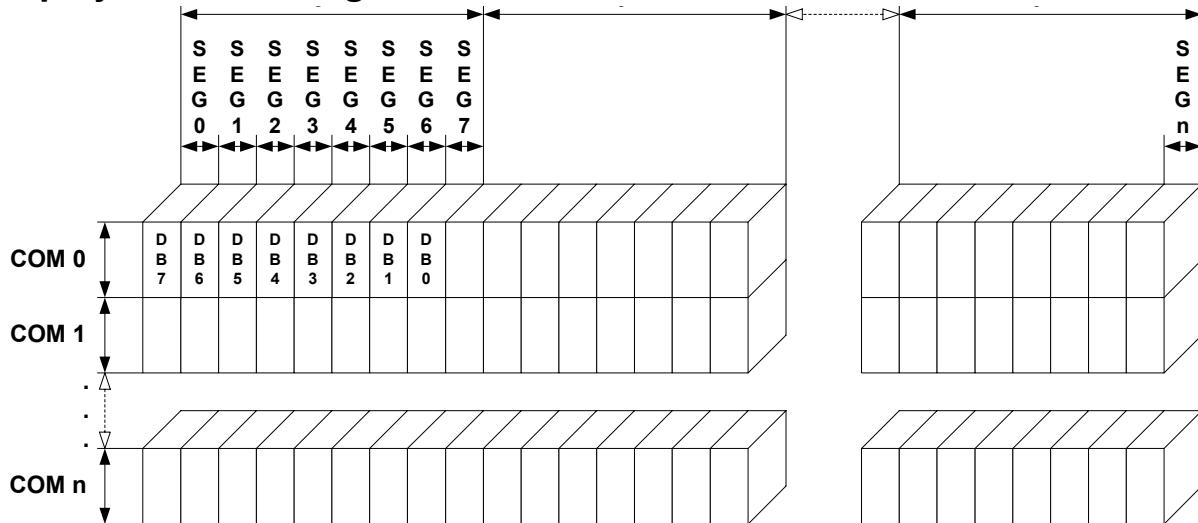
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 1 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interface.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM-requirement

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:
 Size of RAM (in bytes) = (LCD_XSIZE + 7) / 8 * LCD_YSIZE

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
LCD_READ_A0	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low.
LCD_READ_A1	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITE_A0	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
LCD_WRITE_A1	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches for SED 1330, SED 1335

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_EXTENDED_WAIT	If set to 1 (default value) the driver ensures that no distortion will be shown when the driver writes to the LCD controller.

LCD_EXTENDED_WAIT

There is only a short time window to write to the LCD controller if you want to make sure, no distortion is visible on the LCD display when the driver writes to the LCD controller. If the configuration macro is set to 1 (default value) it makes sure that no distortion will be visible.

If you disable this behavior the driver performance will be accelerated. But when writing to the display small distortions will be visible. To disable the LCD_EXTENDED_WAIT macro add the following line to your LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_EXTENDED_WAIT 0
```

Additional info for SED 1330, SED 1335

These controllers are based on an old design. This design allows writing into display memory only in the horizontal & vertical non-display periods; otherwise the display will be momentarily distorted. Unfortunately, in order to make sure the driver only writes during the non-display periods, it has to wait for the beginning of the non display period and can then only write one byte. This slows the process of writing into display memory down considerably, even on very fast CPUs. This is not a limitation of µC/GUI or the driver, but a limitation of the controller. If you need higher speed, you can use the LCD_EXTENDED_WAIT macro described above (and live with the distortions) or select a different LCD controller (Which we recommend if you are in an early stage of your design).

25.3.11 LCDVesa driver

This driver supports any PC-compatible hardware compatible with the VESA BIOS Extension standard (VBE) V1.2. It uses the INT 10h ROM BIOS functions to provide the VBE services. The driver has been written and tested with the Open Watcom compiler V1.0 but it should also work with other compilers.

Supported hardware

Any PC-compatible hardware as described above.

Supported resolutions

The following resolutions are supported by the driver:

- 320 x 200
- 640 x 480
- 800 x 600

Bits per pixel

Supported color depths are 8 and 16 bpp.

Display data RAM organization

Display data is organized in banks of up to 64Kb as described by the VESA standard.

RAM requirements of the driver

About 50 bytes for some static variables.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver uses the INT 10h ROM BIOS functions to provide the VBE services. Therefore this driver does not need any additional hardware configuration.

Color format (R/B swap)

Red and blue needs to be swapped in the low level configuration. This can be done by setting the config switch `LCD_SWAP_RB` to 1 in the configuration file.

Example:

`LCDConf.h` for a VGA display 640x480, 16bpp:

```
#define LCD_XSIZE          640    /* X-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_YSIZE          480    /* Y-resolution of LCD, Logical coor. */
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL    16
#define LCD_CONTROLLER      8600
#define LCD_SWAP_RB         1
```

Additional configuration switches

None.

Special requirements

None

25.3.12 LCDXylon driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

The display driver has been written to support a FPGA-based display controller from Xylon.

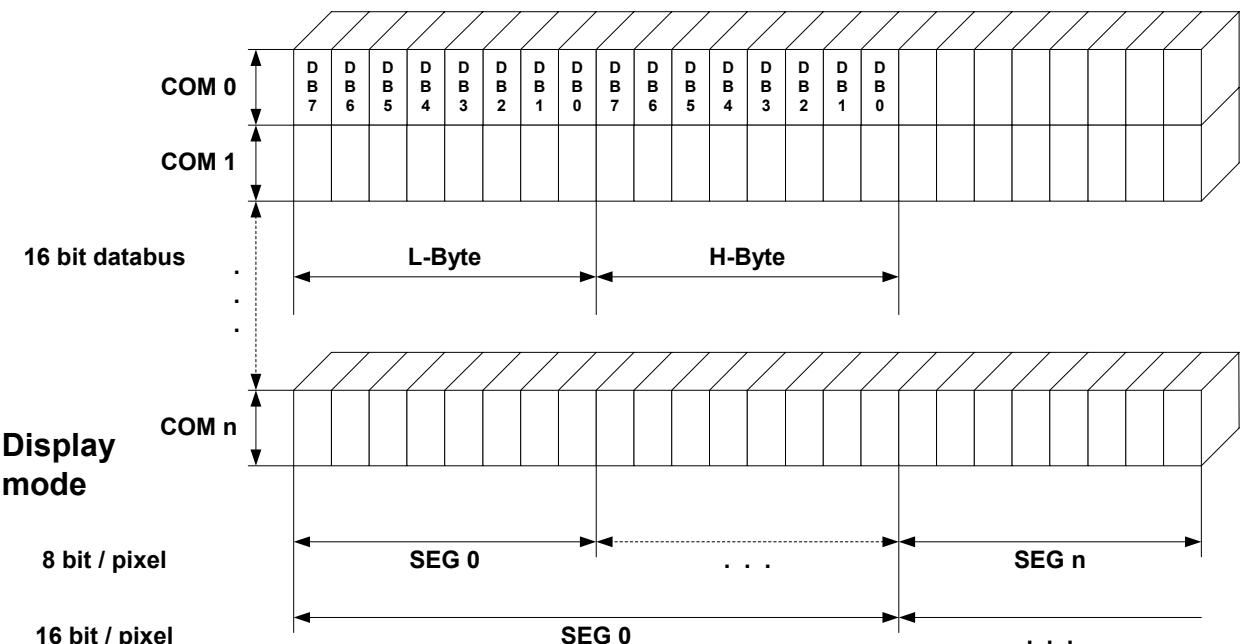
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 8 and 16 bpp.

Interfaces

16-bit parallel (full bus) mode.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD in terms of the color depth.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

None.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver requires a full bus interface for hardware access as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
LCD_READ_MEM	Read the contents of video memory of controller.
LCD_READ_REG	Read the contents of a configuration register of controller.
LCD_WRITE_MEM	Write to video memory (display data RAM) of controller.
LCD_WRITE_REG	Write to a configuration register of controller.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_USE_BITBLT	If set to 0, it disables the BitBLT engine. If set to 1 (the default value), the driver will use all available hardware acceleration.
LCD_USE_BITBLT_1BPP	If set to 0, it disables the BitBLT engine for rendering 1bpp bitmaps. If set to 1 (the default value), the driver will use the hardware acceleration.
LCD_USE_BITBLT_FILL	If set to 0, it disables the BitBLT engine for filling rectangles. If set to 1 (the default value), the driver will use the hardware acceleration.

25.3.13 LCD0323 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controller:

- Solomon SSD0323 OLED controller

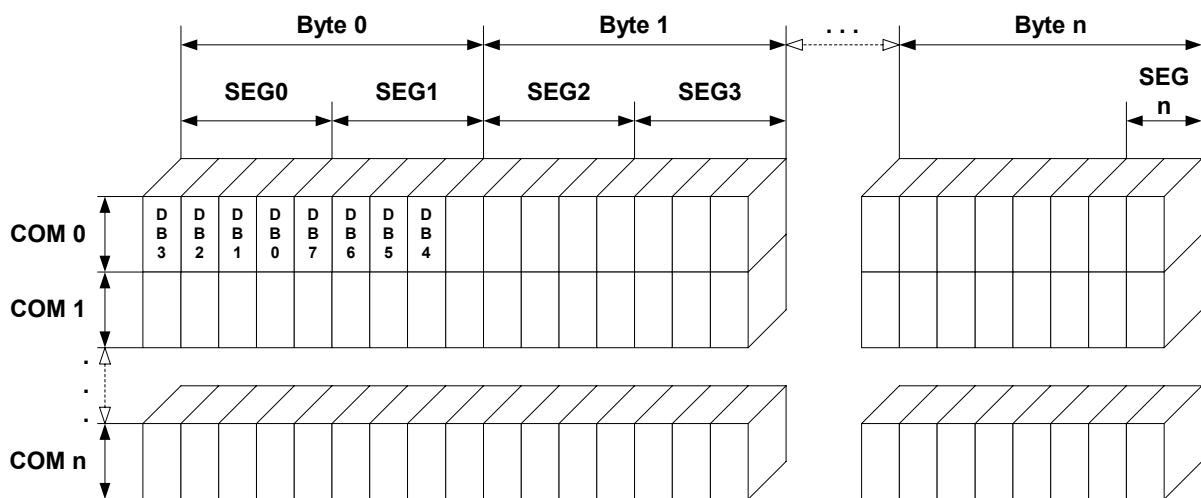
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 4bpp.

Interfaces

8-bit parallel (simple bus) and serial (SPI4) bus interfaces are supported.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the display.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This driver can be used with or without a display data cache. The data cache contains a complete copy of the contents of the display data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster display RAM access. Not using a cache degrades the performance of this driver. The amount of memory used by the cache is 4096 bytes.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
LCD_READ_A1	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITE_A0	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
LCD_WRITE_A1	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITEITEM_A1	Write multiple bytes to LCD controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_CACHE	When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated).

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.14 LCD07X1 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following LCD controllers:

- Samsung KS0711
- Samsung KS0741
- Solomon SSD1854

Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 2 bpp.

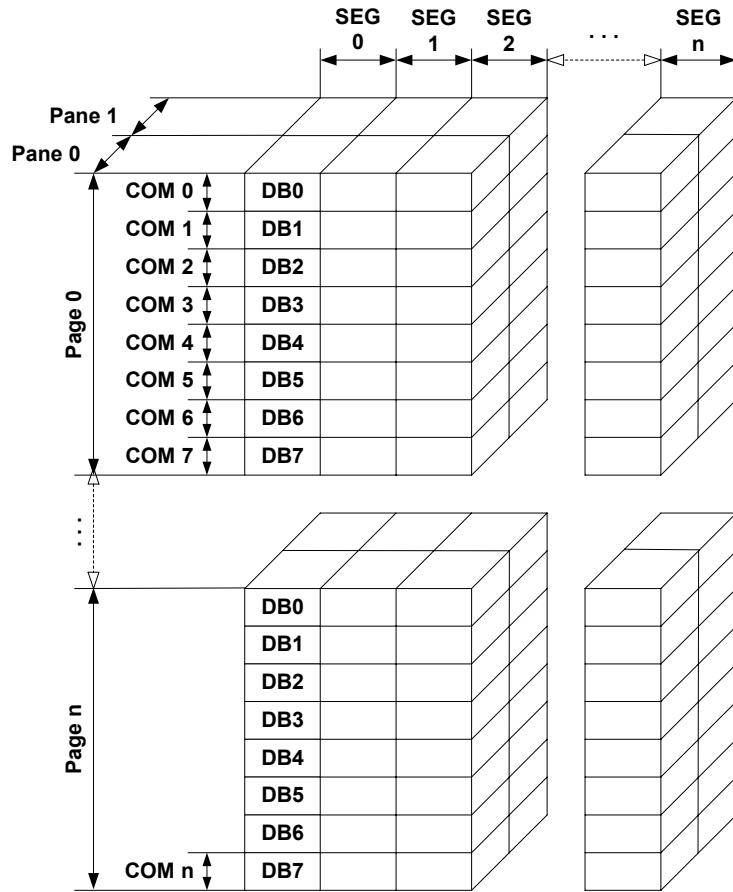
Interfaces

The chip supports three types of interfaces:

- 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interface
- 4-pin serial peripheral interface, or SPI.
- 3-pin SPI.

The current version of the driver supports the 8-bit parallel (simple bus) or 4-pin SPI interface.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD. The display memory is divided into two panes for each pixel. The lower bit of each pixel is stored in pane 0 and the higher bit is stored in pane 1.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_YSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_XSIZE} * 2$$

Additional driver functions

LCD_L0_ControlCache

For information about this function, please refer to Chapter 28: "LCD Driver API".

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_READ_A0</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low. (Used only if working without cache)
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high. (Used only if working without cache)
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITEITEM_A1</code>	Write multiple bytes to LCD controller with A-line high.

Display orientation

The supported display controllers supports hardware mirroring of x/y axis. It is recommended to use these functions instead of the display orientation macros of µC/GUI.

If mirroring of the X axis is needed, the command 0xA1 (ADC select reverse) should be used in the initialization macro. This causes the display controller to reverse the assignment of column address to segment output. If the display size in X is smaller than the number of segment outputs of the display controller, the macro `LCD_FIRSTSEG0` can be used to add an offset to the column address to make sure, the right RAM address of the LCD controller is accessed.

If mirroring of the Y axis is needed the command 0xC8 (SHL select revers) should be used in the initialization macro and the macro `LCD_FIRSTCOM0` should be used to define the offset needed to access the right RAM address of the display controller.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_FIRSTCOM0</code>	This macro can be used to define the first common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation.
<code>LCD_FIRSTSEG0</code>	This macro can be used to define the first segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation.

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.15 LCD1200 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controllers:

- Toppoly C0C0
- Toppoly C0E0

Bits per pixel

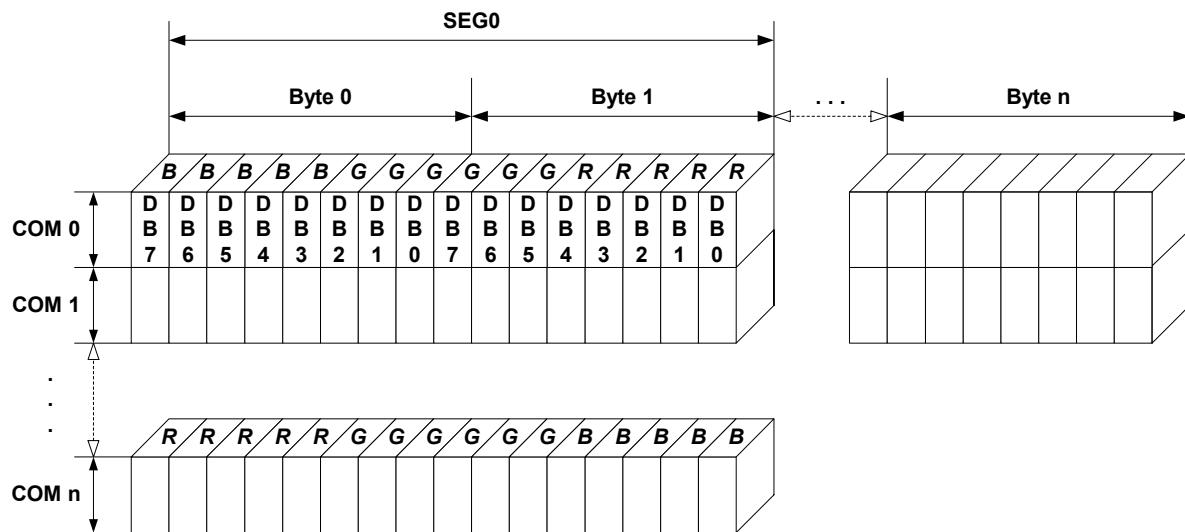
Supported color depth is 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 16-bit parallel (simple bus) interface.

Display data RAM organization

16 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 565



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements

The driver can be used with a write buffer used for drawing multiple pixels of the same color. If multiple pixels of the same color should be drawn the driver first fills the buffer and then executes only one time the macro `LCD_WRITEM_A1` to transfer the data to the display controller. The default buffer size is 500 words.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface or with a 3 pin SPI interface. The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the display controller.
<code>LCD_WRITE_BUFFER_SIZE</code>	Using a write buffer increases the performance of the driver. If multiple pixels should be written with the same color the driver first fills the buffer and then writes the contents of the buffer with one execution of the macro <code>LCD_WITEM_A1</code> instead of multiple executions. The default buffer size is 500 words.
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Reads a word from display controller with RS-line high.
<code>LCD_WITEM_A1</code>	Writes multiple words to display controller with RS-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Writes multiple words to display controller with RS-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Writes multiple words to display controller with RS-line high.

Additional configuration switches

None.

Special requirements

The driver needs to work in the fixed palette mode 565, which is the default value for 16 bit per pixel configurations. The driver does not work with other palettes. Further the driver needs to swap the red and the blue part of the color index. You should use the following macro definitions in the file LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_SWAP_RB           1
```

25.3.16 LCD13700 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controller:

- Epson S1D13700 controller

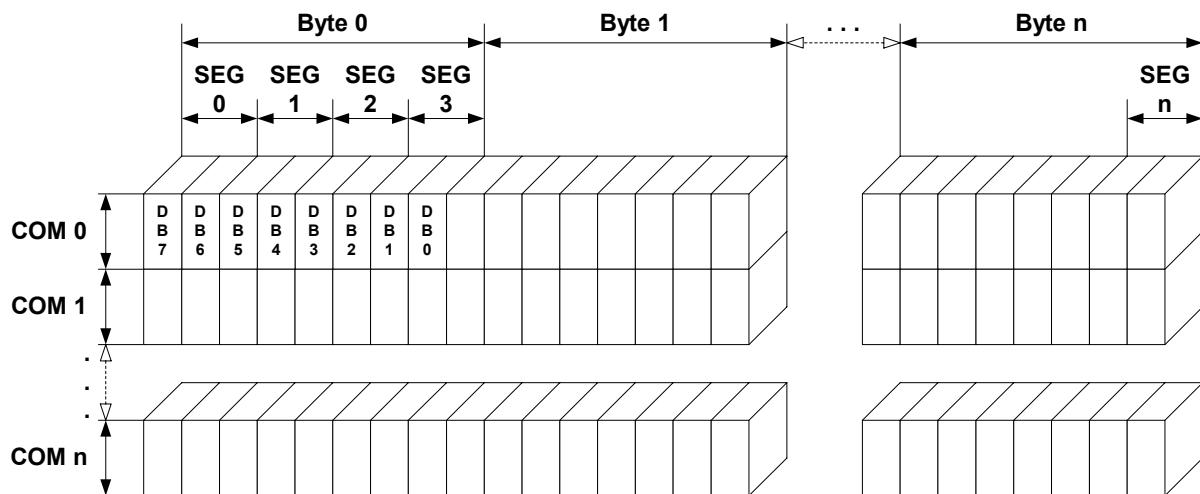
Bits per pixel

Currently supported color depth is 2 bpp.

Interface

8-bit parallel (simple bus) bus interface is supported, which is labeled 'Generic Bus Indirect' in the Epson documentation.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the display.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This driver can be used with or without a display data cache. The data cache contains a complete copy of the contents of the display data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster display RAM access. Not using a cache degrades the performance of this driver. The amount of memory used by the cache can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = ((\text{LCD_XSIZE} * \text{LCD_BITSPERPIXEL} + 7) / 8) * \text{LCD_YSIZE}$$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 27: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the display controller.
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Read a word from display controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a word to display controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a word to display controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WITEM_A1</code>	Write multiple words to display controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_CACHE</code>	When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated).

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.17 LCD13701 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controller:

- Epson S1D13701 OLED controller

Bits per pixel

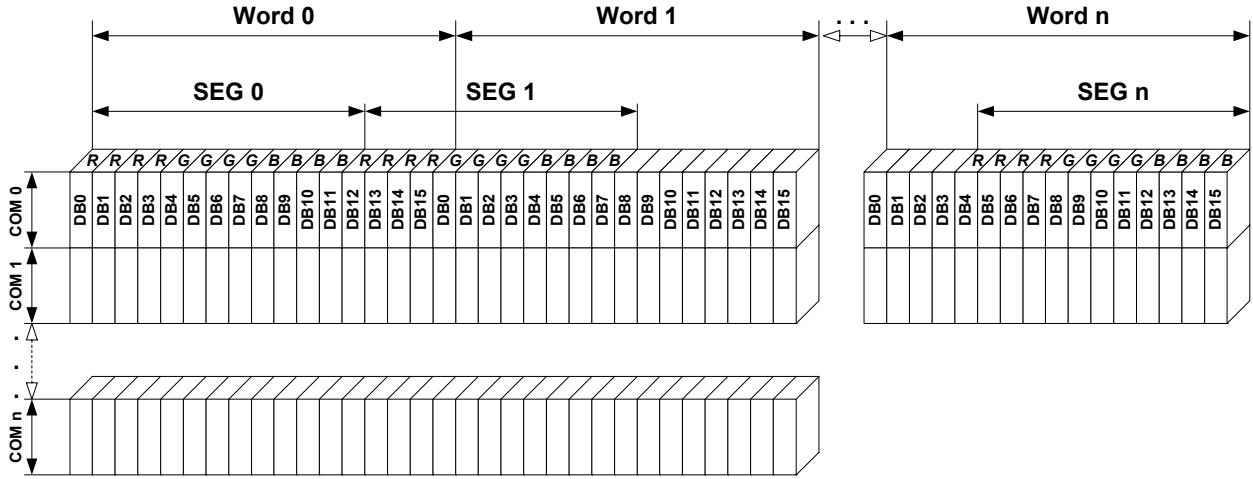
Supported color depth is 9 and 12 bpp.

Interfaces

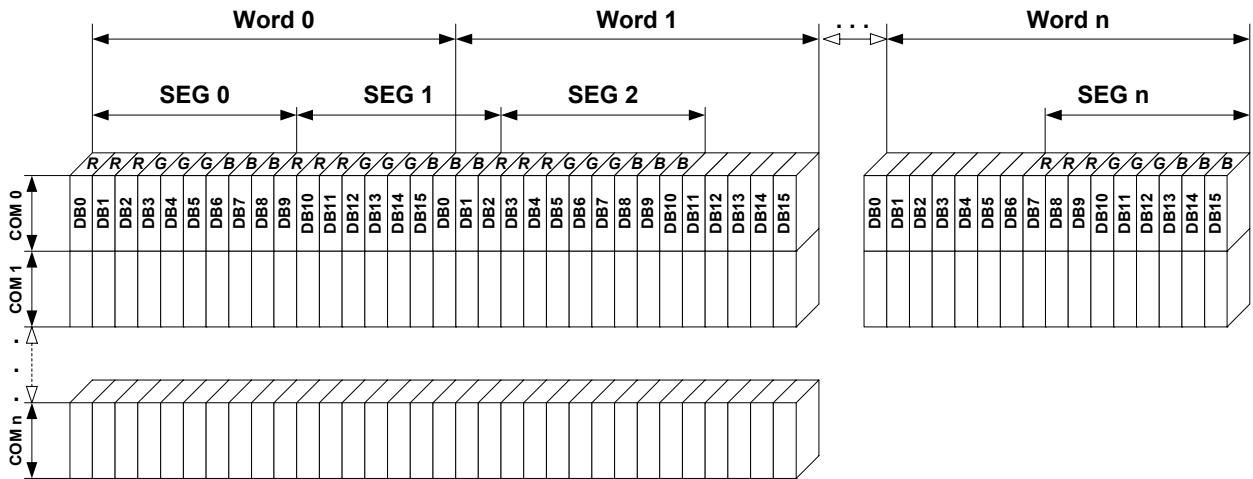
16-bit parallel (simple bus) bus interfaces is supported.

Display data RAM organization

12 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 444



9 bits per pixel, fixed palette = -1



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the display.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This driver can be used with or without a display data cache. The data cache contains a complete copy of the contents of the display data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster display RAM access. Not using a cache degrades the performance of this driver. The amount of memory used by the cache can be calculated as follows:

Size of RAM (in bytes) = (LCD_XSIZE * LCD_BITSPERPIXEL / 16) * LCD_YSIZE * 2

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the display controller.
LCD_READ_A1	Read a word from display controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITE_A0	Write a word to display controller with A-line low.
LCD_WRITE_A1	Write a word to display controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITEM_A1	Write multiple words to display controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_CACHE	When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated).

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.18 LCD159A driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controllers:

- Epson SED159A

It should be assumed that it will also work with any controller of similar organization.

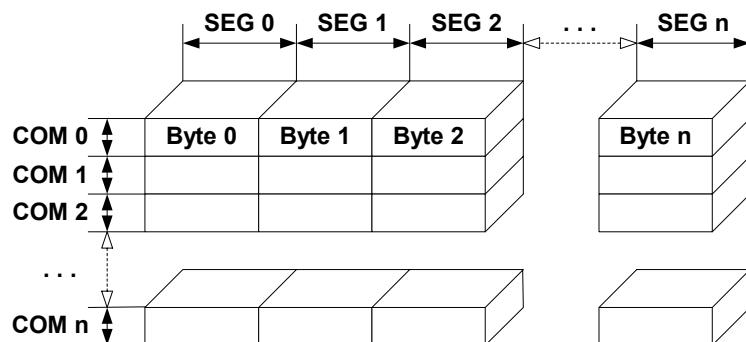
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 8 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interface.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements

None.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_READ_A0</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

None.

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.19 LCD15E05 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controllers:

- Epson S1D15E05

It should be assumed that it will also work with any controller of similar organization.

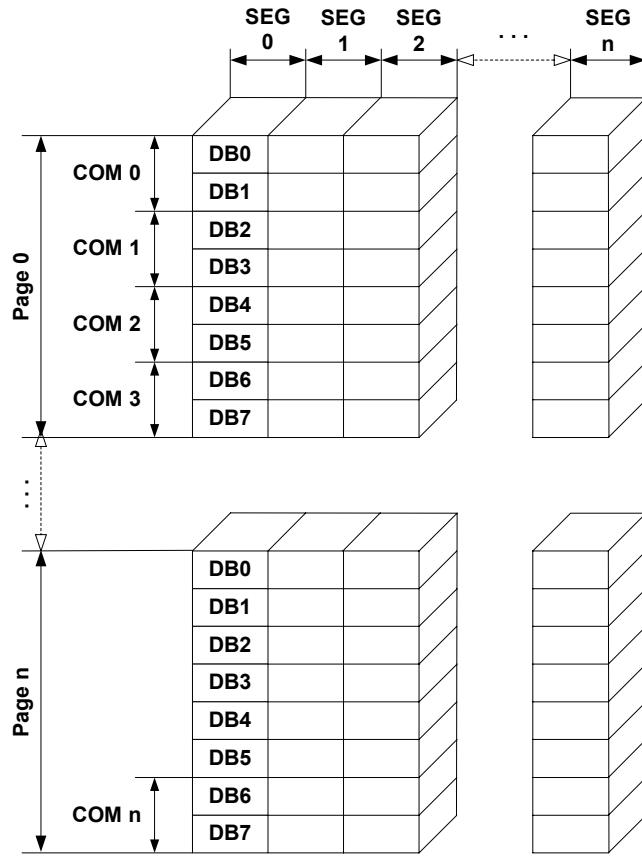
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 2 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports the 8-bit parallel (simple bus) and 4 pin SPI interfaces.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_YSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_XSIZE}$$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_READ_A0</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_CACHE</code>	When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated).

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.20 LCD1611 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controller:

- UltraChip UC1611

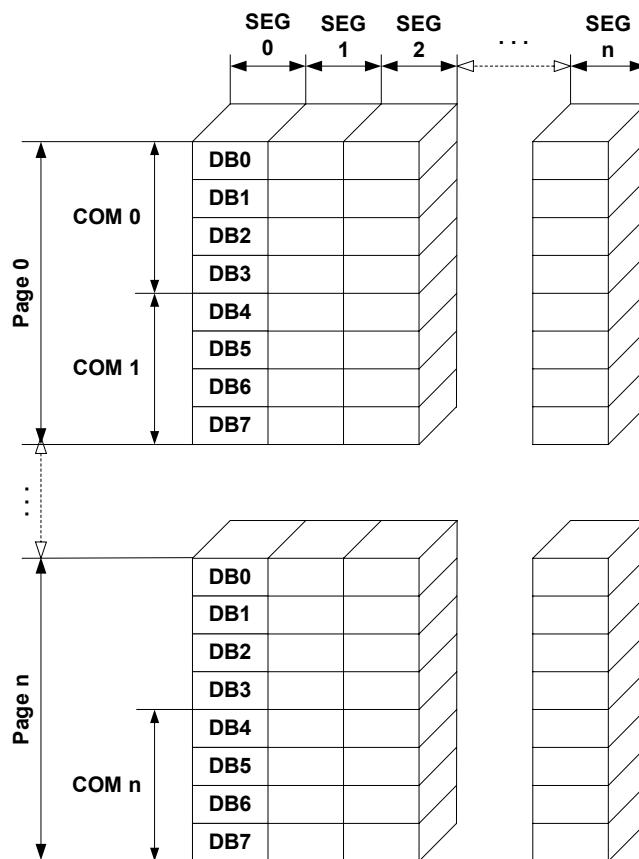
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 4bpp.

Interfaces

8-bit parallel (simple bus), serial (SPI4) and I2C bus interfaces are supported.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This LCD driver can be used with or without a display data cache. The data cache contains a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is highly recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. Not using a cache degrades the performance of this driver seriously. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

Size of RAM (in bytes) = (LCD_YSIZE + 1) / 2 * LCD_XSIZE

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
LCD_READ_A0	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low.
LCD_READ_A1	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITE_A0	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
LCD_WRITE_A1	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITEM_A1	Write multiple bytes to LCD controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_CACHE	When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated).

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.21 LCD161620 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controller:

- NEC µPD161620

Bits per pixel

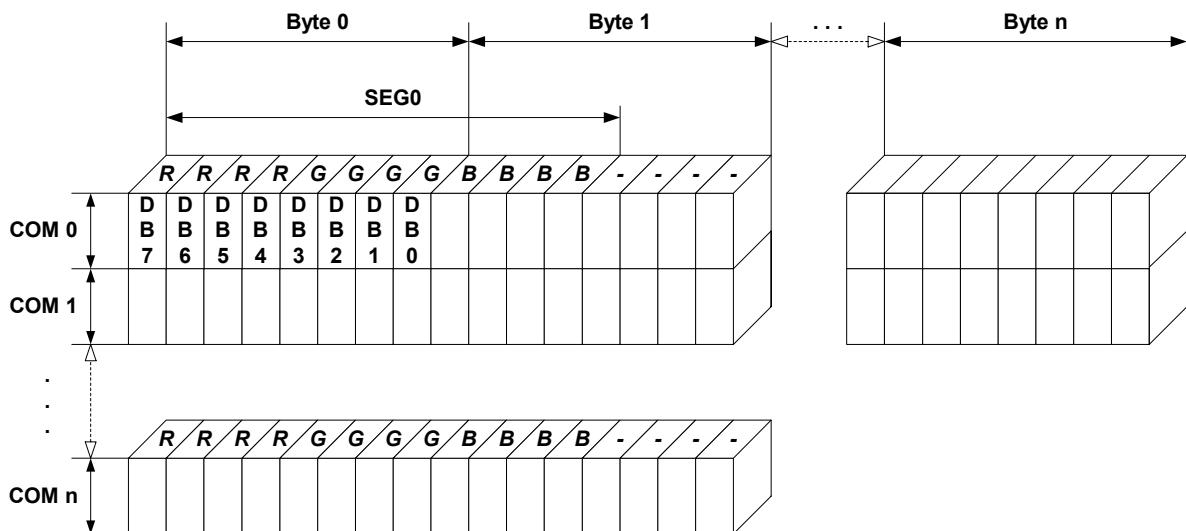
Supported color depth is 12 bpp.

Interfaces

The chip supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interface.

Display data RAM organization

12 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 444121



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD. The driver works in '1-pixel/2-byte'-mode.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

None.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following tables lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the display controller.
LCD_READ_A0	Read a byte from display controller with A-line low.
LCD_READ_A1	Read a byte from display controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITE_A0	Write a byte to display controller with A-line low.
LCD_WRITE_A1	Write a byte to display controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

None.

Special requirements

The driver needs to work in the fixed palette mode 444121. The driver does not work with other palettes.

You should use the following macro definition in the file LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_FIXEDPALETTE 444121
```

25.3.22 LCD1781 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controller:

- Solomon SSD1781

Bits per pixel

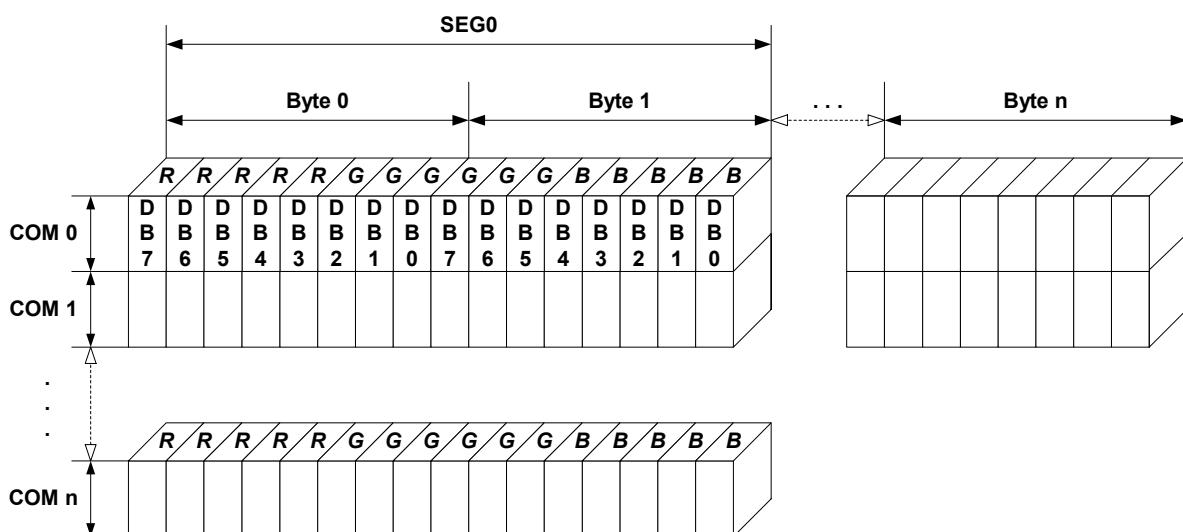
Supported color depth is 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) or 4 pin SPI interface.

Display data RAM organization

16 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 565



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

The amount of memory used by the cache is: $\text{LCD_XSIZE} \times \text{LCD_YSIZE} \times 2$ bytes.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface or a 4 pin SPI interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the display controller.
LCD_READ_A1	Read a byte from display controller with A-line high. (Used only if working without cache)
LCD_WRITE_A0	Write a byte to display controller with A-line low.
LCD_WRITE_A1	Write a byte to display controller with A-line high.
LCD_WRITE_M_A1	Write multiple bytes to display controller with A-line high.

Display orientation

The controller SSD1781 supports rotating and mirroring. So it is recommended to use the hardware functions of the controller if rotating and/or mirroring is needed instead of the display orientation macros LCD_MIRROR_... and LCD_SWAP_XY of µC/GUI. The configuration sample folder contains a sample which uses the hardware to rotate the output 180 degrees. The command 0xBC of the controller can be used to mirror and/or rotate the display output. For more details about how to change the display orientation via the hardware functions please refer to the manual of the SSD1781.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_FIRSTCOM0	This macro can be used to define the first common address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation.
LCD_FIRSTSEG0	This macro can be used to define the first segment address to be used in the data RAM of the display controller. The value can be determined experimentally or taken from the display documentation.
LCD_GET_BUSY	The SSD1781 controller has a separate pin which should be used to query the busy state. This macro should return 1 if the busy line of the SSD1781 is high and 0 if the line is low. If the macro is defined it is used at the beginning of each low level driver function to wait until the driver is not busy. Example: <code>#define LCD_GET_BUSY() (P6 & 0x80)</code>
LCD_WAIT	If the busy line is not available the macro LCD_WAIT can be used to call a function which waits a while in dependence of the number of drawn pixels. If defined the LCD_WAIT macro is executed after each high level drawing function call of the SSD1781. Example: <code>#define LCD_WAIT(NumPixels) OS_Delay((NumPixels + 900) / 1000)</code>

Special requirements

The driver needs to work in the fixed palette mode 565, which is the default value for 16 bit per pixel configurations. The driver does not work with other palettes. Further the driver needs to swap the red and the blue part of the color index. You should use the following macro definitions in the file LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_SWAP_RB           1
```


25.3.23 LCD501 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following OLED controller:

- Leadis LDS501

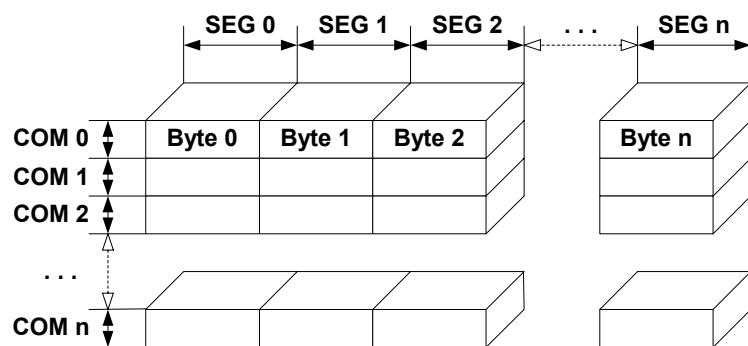
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 8 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interfaces.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements

This LCD driver can only be used with a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache is: $96 \times 64 = 6144$ bytes. The driver can not be used without data cache.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the display controller.
LCD_WRITE_A0	Write a byte to display controller with A-line low.
LCD_WRITE_A1	Write a byte to display controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

None.

Special requirements

The driver needs to work in the fixed palette mode 233. The driver does not work with other palettes. Further the driver needs to swap the red and the blue part of the color index. You should use the following macro definitions in the file LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_FIXEDPALETTE 233  
#define LCD_SWAP_RB 1
```

25.3.24 LCD6331 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controller:

- Samsung S6B33B1X

Bits per pixel

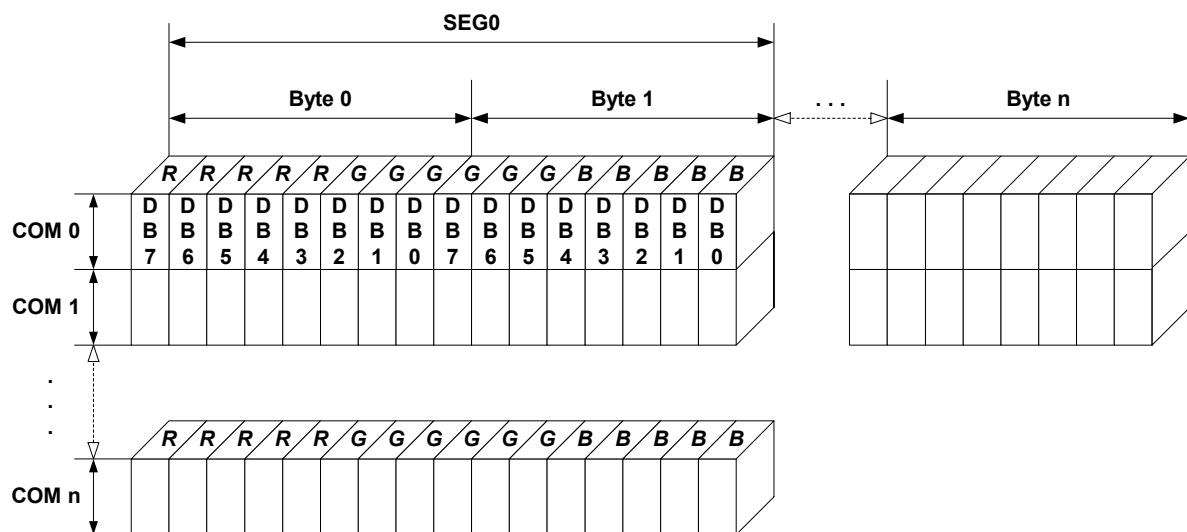
Supported color depth is 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) and 4 pin SPI interface.

Display data RAM organization

16 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 565



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements

This LCD driver can only be used with a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache is: $\text{LCD_XSIZE} \times \text{LCD_YSIZE} \times 2$ bytes. The driver can not be used without data cache.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface or with a 4 pin SPI interface. The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the display controller.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to display controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to display controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITEM_A1</code>	Write multiple bytes to display controller with A-line high.

The driver initializes the 'Driver Output Mode' and 'Entry Mode' itself. The user does not need to initialize this registers in the `LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER` macro.

Additional configuration switches

None.

Special requirements

The driver needs to work in the fixed palette mode 565. The driver does not work with other palettes. Further the driver needs to swap the red and the blue part of the color index. You should use the following macro definitions in the file LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_FIXEDPALETTE 565
#define LCD_SWAP_RB 1
```

25.3.25 LCD6642X driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following display controllers:

- Hitachi HD66420
- Hitachi HD66421

It should be assumed that it will also work with any controller of similar organization.

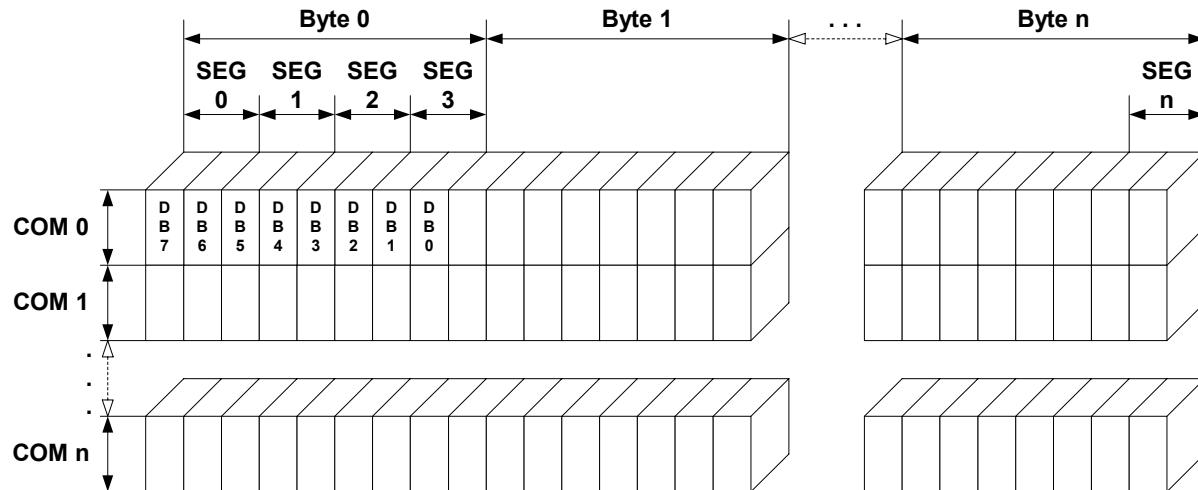
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 2 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interfaces.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is optional (but recommended) to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_YSIZE} * 2$$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the display controller.
<code>LCD_READ_A0</code>	Read a byte from display controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Read a byte from display controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to display controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to display controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_CACHE</code>	When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated).

Special requirements

None.

25.3.26 LCD667XX driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following LCD controllers:

- Hitachi HD66766, HD66772, HD66789
- Samsung S6D0110A, S6D0117
- Sharp LR38825
- Sitronix ST7712

Bits per pixel

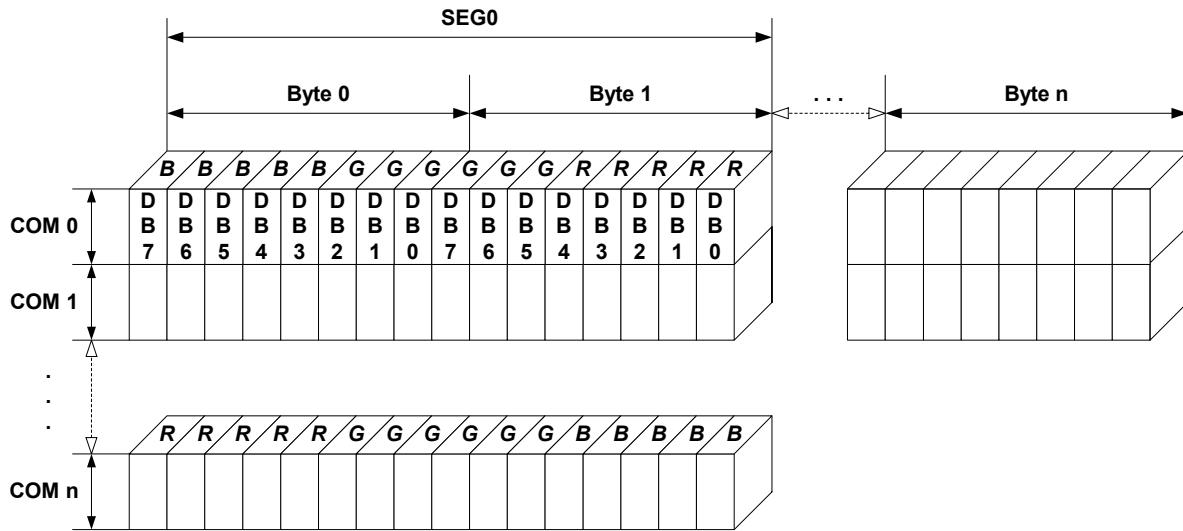
Supported color depth is 16 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) and 3 pin SPI interface.

Display data RAM organization

16 bits per pixel, fixed palette = 565



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements

This LCD driver can be used with and without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache is: $\text{LCD_XSIZE} \times \text{LCD_YSIZE} \times 2$ bytes. Using a cache is only recommended if a lot of drawing operations uses the XOR drawing mode. A cache would avoid reading the display data in this case. Normally the use of a cache is not recommended.

The driver can be used with a write buffer used for drawing multiple pixels of the same color. If multiple pixels of the same color should be drawn the driver first fills the buffer and then executes only one time the macro `LCD_WRITEM_A1` to transfer the data to the display controller. The default buffer size is 500 bytes.

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface or with a 3 pin SPI interface. The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER	Initialization sequence for the display controller.
LCD_NUM_DUMMY_READS	Number of required dummy reads if a read operation should be executed. The default value is 2. If using a serial interface the display controllers HD66766 and HD66772 need 5 dummy reads.
LCD_SERIAL_ID	If using the serial interface this macro defines the ID signal of the device ID code. It should be 0 (default) or 1.
LCD_USE_SERIAL_3PIN	Should be set to 1 if the serial interface is used. Default is 0.
LCD_WRITE_BUFFER_SIZE	Using a write buffer increases the performance of the driver. If multiple pixels should be written with the same color the driver first fills the buffer and then writes the contents of the buffer with one execution of the macro LCD_WRITEITEM_A1 instead of multiple executions. The default buffer size is 500 bytes.
LCD_READM_A1	Read multiple bytes from display controller with RS-line high.
LCD_WRITEITEM_A1	Write multiple bytes to display controller with RS-line high.
LCD_WRITEITEM_A0	Write multiple bytes to display controller with RS-line low.

The driver initializes the 'Driver Output Mode' and 'Entry Mode' register itself. The user does not need to initialize these registers in the LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER macro.

Additional configuration switches

None.

Special requirements

The driver needs to work in the fixed palette mode -1. The driver does not work with other configurations. You should use the following macro definition in the file LCD-Conf.h:

```
#define LCD_FIXEDPALETTE -1
```

25.3.27 LCD66750 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following LCD controllers:

- Hitachi HD66750
- Hitachi HD66753

It should be assumed that it will also work with any controller of similar organization.

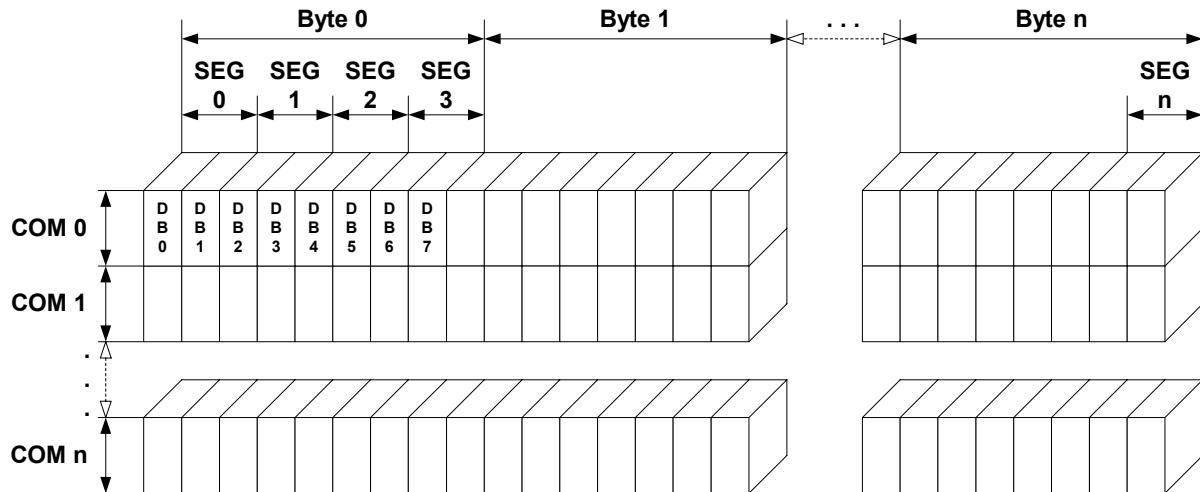
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 2 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interfaces.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is optional (but recommended) to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_YSIZE} * 2$$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 28: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_READ_A0</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_CACHE</code>	When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated).

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.28 LCD7529 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following LCD controllers:

- Sitronix ST7529

Bits per pixel

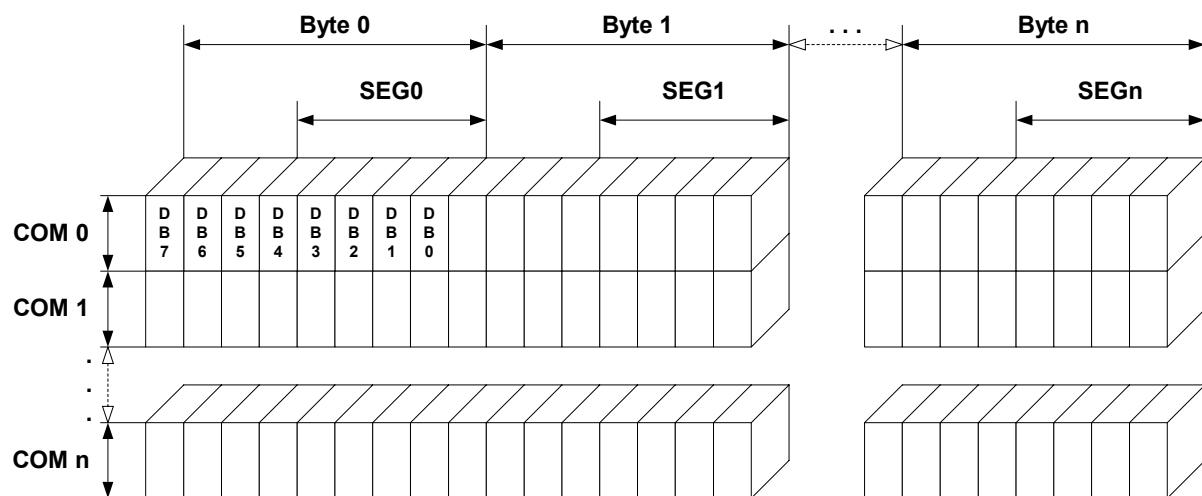
Supported color depth is 5 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interface, 3 line SPI or 4 line SPI.

Display data RAM organization

5 bits per pixel, fixed palette = -1



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This driver requires a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the display data RAM. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 2) / 3 * 3 * \text{LCD_YSIZE}$$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 27: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITEM_A1</code>	Write multiple bytes to display controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

None.

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.29 LCD7920 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following LCD controllers:

- Sitronix ST7920

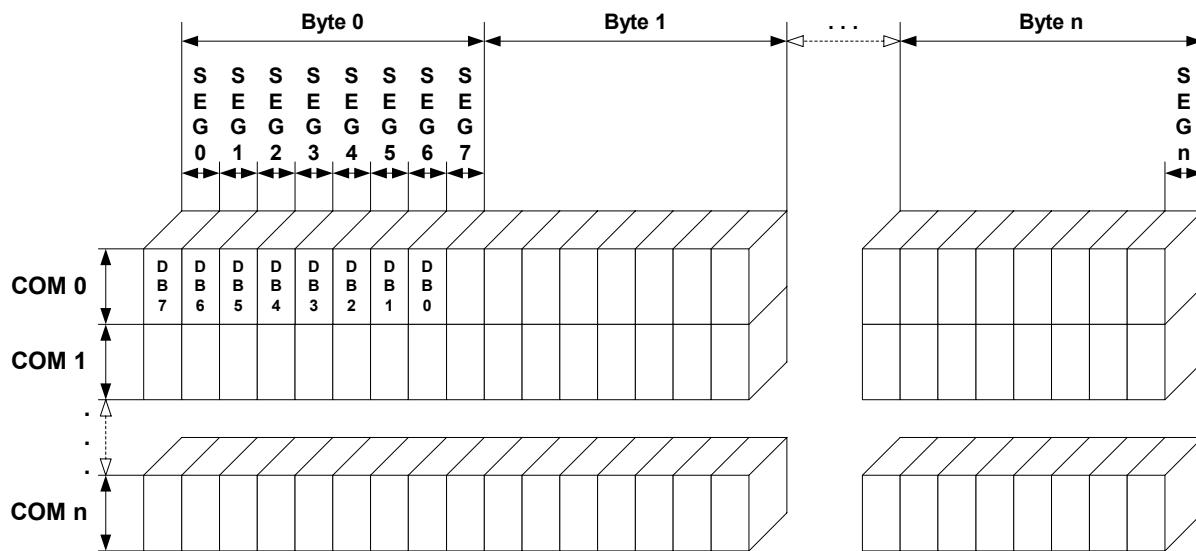
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 1 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interface, or 3 line SPI.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_YSIZE}$$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 27: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_READ_A0</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITEITEM_A1</code>	Write multiple bytes to display controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

None.

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.30 LCD8822 driver

Supported hardware

Controllers

This driver has been tested with the following LCD controllers:

- Raio RA8822

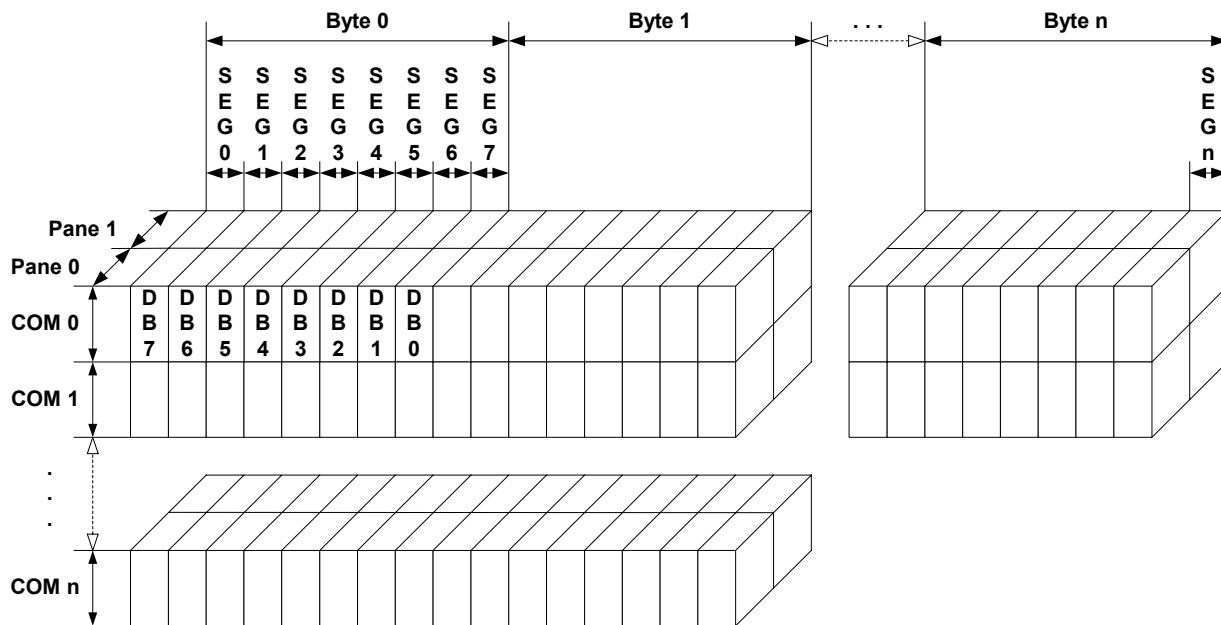
Bits per pixel

Supported color depth is 2 bpp.

Interfaces

The driver supports 8-bit parallel (simple bus) interface.

Display data RAM organization



The picture above shows the relation between the display memory and the SEG and COM lines of the LCD.

Additional RAM requirements of the driver

This LCD driver may be used with or without a display data cache, containing a complete copy of the contents of the LCD data RAM. If a cache is not used, there are no additional RAM requirements.

It is recommended to use this driver with a data cache for faster LCD-access. The amount of memory used by the cache may be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Size of RAM (in bytes)} = (\text{LCD_XSIZE} + 7) / 8 * \text{LCD_YSIZE} * 2$$

Additional driver functions

None.

Hardware configuration

This driver accesses the hardware with a simple bus interface as described in Chapter 27: "Low-Level Configuration". The following table lists the macros which must be defined for hardware access:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER</code>	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller.
<code>LCD_READ_A1</code>	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A0</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
<code>LCD_WRITE_A1</code>	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.
<code>LCD_WITEM_A1</code>	Write multiple bytes to display controller with A-line high.

Additional configuration switches

The following table shows optional configuration switches available for this driver:

Macro	Explanation
<code>LCD_CACHE</code>	When set to 0, no display data cache is used, which slows down the speed of the driver. Default is 1 (cache activated).

Special requirements for certain LCD controllers

None.

25.3.31 LCDTemplate driver

This driver is part of the basic package and can be easily adapted to each LCD controller. It contains the complete functionality needed for a LCD driver.

Adapting the dummy driver

To adapt the driver to a currently not supported LCD controller you only have to adapt the routines LCD_L0_SetPixelIndex and LCD_L0_GetPixelIndex. The upper layers calling this routines makes sure that the given coordinates are in range, so that no check on the parameters needs to be performed.

In a second step, a new driver should be modified to use its own number for activation (LCD_CONTROLLER), and optionally be optimized to improve drawing speed.

25.3.32 LCDNull driver

This driver is part of the basic package and can be used for measurement purpose. It contains all API functions of a LCD driver without any function.

Using this driver

Since the driver contains only 'empty' API functions it makes it possible to measure the time difference used for some GUI-operations between using the real hardware driver and this empty driver. The time difference is the time used for the LCD display operation.

25.4 LCD layer and display driver API

μ C/GUI requires a driver for the hardware. This chapter explains what an LCD driver for μ C/GUI does and what routines it supplies to μ C/GUI (the application program interface, or API).

Under most circumstances, you probably do not need to read this chapter, as most calls to the LCD layer of μ C/GUI will be done through the GUI layer. In fact, we recommend that you only call LCD functions if there is no GUI equivalent (for example, if you wish to modify the lookup table of the LCD controller directly). The reason for this is that LCD driver functions are not thread-safe, unlike their GUI equivalents. They should therefore not be called directly in multitask environments.

25.4.1 Display driver API

The table below lists the available μ C/GUI LCD-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

LCD_L0: Driver routines

Routine	Explanation
Init & display control group	
LCD_L0_Init()	Initialize the display.
LCD_L0_ReInit()	Reinitialize LCD without erasing the contents.
LCD_L0_Off()	Switch LCD off.
LCD_L0_On()	Switch LCD on.
Drawing group	
LCD_L0_DrawBitmap()	Universal draw bitmap routine.
LCD_L0_DrawHLine()	Draw a horizontal line.
LCD_L0_DrawPixel()	Draw a pixel in the current foreground color.
LCD_L0_DrawVLine()	Draw a vertical line.
LCD_L0_FillRect()	Fill a rectangular area.
LCD_L0_SetPixelIndex()	Draw a pixel in a specified color.
LCD_L0_XorPixel()	Invert a pixel.
"Get" group	
LCD_L0_GetPixelIndex()	Returs the index of the color of a specific pixel.
"Set" group	
LCD_L0_SetOrg()	Not yet used, reserved for future use (must exist in driver).
Lookup table group	
LCD_L0_SetLUTEntry()	Modifiy a single entry of LUT.
Misc. group (optional)	
LCD_L0_ControlCache()	Lock/unlock/flush LCD cache.

LCD: LCD layer routines

Routine	Explanation
LCD_GetBitsPerPixel()	Return the number of bits per pixel.
LCD_GetBitsPerPixelEx()	Returns the number of bits per pixel of given layer/display.
LCD_GetFixedPalette()	Return the fixed palette mode.
LCD_GetFixedPaletteEx()	Returns the fixed palette mode of given layer/display.
LCD_GetNumColors()	Return the number of available colors.
LCD_GetNumColorsEx()	Returns the number of available colors of given layer/display.
LCD_GetVXSize()	Return virtual X-size of LCD in pixels.
LCD_GetVXSizeEx()	Returns virtual X-size of given layer/display in pixels.
LCD_GetVYSize()	Return virtual Y-size of LCD in pixels.
LCD_GetVYSizeEx()	Returns virtual Y-size of given layer/display in pixels.
LCD_GetXMag()	Returns the magnification factor in x.
LCD_GetXMagEx()	Returns the magnification factor of given layer/display in x.
LCDGetXSize()	Return physical X-size of LCD in pixels.
LCDGetXSizeEx()	Returns physical X-size of given layer/display in pixels.
LCD_GetYMag()	Returns the magnification factor in y.
LCD_GetYMagEx()	Returns the magnification factor of given layer/display in y.
LCD_GetYSize()	Return physical Y-size of LCD in pixels.
LCD_GetYSizeEx()	Returns physical Y-size of given layer/display in pixels.

25.4.2 Init & display control group

LCD_L0_Init()

Description

Initializes the LCD using the configuration settings in `LCDConf.h`. This routine is called automatically by `GUI_Init()` if the upper GUI layer is used and therefore should not need to be called manually.

Prototype

```
void LCD_L0_Init (void);
```

LCD_L0_ReInit()

Description

Reinitializes the LCD using the configuration settings, without erasing the display contents.

Prototype

```
void LCD_L0_ReInit (LCD_INITINFO* pInitInfo);
```

LCD_L0_Off(), LCD_L0_On()

Description

Switch the display off or on, respectively.

Prototypes

```
void LCD_L0_Off(void);
void LCD_L0_On(void);
```

Additional information

Use of these routines does not affect the contents of the video memory or other settings. You may therefore safely switch off the display and switch it back on without having to refresh the contents.

25.4.3 Drawing group

LCD_L0_DrawBitmap()

Description

Draws a pre-converted bitmap.

Prototype

```
LCD_L0_DrawBitMap(int x0, int y0,
                   int Xsize, int Ysize,
                   int BitsPerPixel,
                   int BytesPerLine,
                   const U8* pData, int Diff,
```

```
const LCD_PIXELINDEX* pTrans);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Upper left X-position of bitmap to draw.
y0	Upper left Y-position of bitmap to draw.
Xsize	Number of pixels in horizontal direction.
Ysize	Number of pixels in vertical direction.
BitsPerPixel	Number of bits per pixel.
BytesPerLine	Number of bytes per line of the image.
pData	Pointer to the actual image, the data that defines what the bitmap looks like.
Diff	Number of pixels to skip from the left side.

LCD_L0_DrawHLine()

Description

Draws a horizontal line one pixel thick, at a specified position using the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
void LCD_L0_DrawHLine(int x0, int y, int x1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Start position of line.
y	Y-position of line to draw.
x1	End position of line.

Additional information

With most LCD controllers, this routine executes very quickly because multiple pixels can be set at once and no calculations are needed. If it is clear that horizontal lines are to be drawn, this routine executes faster than the `DrawLine` routine.

LCD_L0_DrawPixel()

Description

Draws one pixel at a specified position using the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
void LCD_L0_DrawPixel(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position of pixel to draw.
y	Y-position of pixel to draw.

LCD_L0_DrawVLine()

Description

Draws a vertical line one pixel thick, at a specified position using the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
void LCD_L0_DrawVLine(int x , int y0, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position of line to draw.
y0	Start position of line.
y1	End position of line.

Additional information

With most LCD-controllers, this routine executes very quickly because multiple pixels can be set at once and no calculations are needed. If it is clear that horizontal lines are to be drawn, this routine executes faster than the `DrawLine` routine.

LCD_L0_FillRect()**Description**

Draws a filled rectangle at a specified position using the current foreground color.

Prototype

```
void LCD_L0_FillRect(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x0	Upper left X-position.
y0	Upper left Y-position.
x1	Lower right X-position.
y1	Lower right Y-position.

LCD_L0_SetPixelIndex()**Description**

Draws one pixel using a specified color

Prototype

```
void LCD_L0_SetPixelIndex(int x, int y, int ColorIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position of pixel to draw.
y	Y-position of pixel to draw.
ColorIndex	Color to be used.

LCD_L0_XorPixel()**Description**

Inverts one pixel.

Prototype

```
void LCD_L0_XorPixel(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position of pixel to invert.
y	Y-position of pixel to invert.

25.4.4 "Get" group

LCD_L0_GetPixelIndex()

Description

Returns the RGB color index of a specified pixel.

Prototype

```
int LCD_L0_GetPixelIndex(int x, int y);
```

Parameter	Meaning
x	X-position of pixel.
y	Y-position of pixel.

Return value

The index of the pixel.

Additional information

For further information see Chapter 12: "Colors".

25.4.5 Lookup table (LUT) group

LCD_L0_SetLUTEntry()

Description

Modifies a single entry to the LUT of the LCD controller(s).

Prototype

```
void LCD_L0_SetLUTEntry(U8 Pos, LCD_COLOR Color);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Pos	Position within the lookup table. Should be less than the number of colors, e.g. 0-3 for 2bpp, 0-15 for 4bpp, 0-255 for 8bpp.
Color	24-bit RGB value. The closest value possible will be used for the LUT. If a color LUT is to be initialized, all 3 components are used. In monochrome modes the green component is used, but it is still recommended (for better understanding of the program code) to set all 3 colors to the same value (such as 0x555555 or 0xa0a0a0).

25.4.6 Miscellaneous group

LCD_L0_ControlCache()

Description

Locks, unlocks or flushes the cache. This routine may be used to set the cache to a locked state, in which all drawing operations on the driver cause changes in the video memory's cache (in CPU RAM), but do not cause any visible output. Unlocking or flushing then causes those changes to be written to the display. This can help to avoid flickering of the display and also accelerate drawing. It does not matter how many different drawing operations are executed; the changes will all be written to the display at once. In order to be able to do this, `LCD_SUPPORT_CACHECONTROL` must be enabled in the configuration file.

Prototype

```
U8 LCD_ControlCache(U8 command);
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>command</code>	Specify the command to be given to the cache. Use the symbolic values in the table below.

Permitted values for parameter <code>command</code>	
<code>LCD_CC_UNLOCK</code>	Set the default mode: cache is transparent.
<code>LCD_CC_LOCK</code>	Lock the cache, no write operations will be performed until cache is unlocked or flushed.
<code>LCD_CC_FLUSH</code>	Flush the cache, writing all modified data to the video RAM.

Return value

Information on the state of the cache. Ignore.

Additional information

When the cache is locked, the driver maintains a "hitlist" -- a list of bytes which have been modified and need to be written to the display. This hitlist uses 1 bit per byte of video memory.

This is an optional feature which is not supported by all LCD drivers

Example

The code in the following example performs drawing operations on the display which overlap. In order to accelerate the update of the display and to avoid flickering, the cache is locked before and unlocked after these operations.

```
LCD_ControlCache(LCD_CC_LOCK);

GUI_FillCircle(30,30,20);
GUI_SetDrawMode(GUI_DRAWMODE_XOR);
GUI_FillCircle(50,30,10);
GUI_SetTextMode(GUI_TEXTMODE_XOR);
GUI_DispStringAt("Hello world\n",0,0);
GUI_DrawHLine(16, 5,25);
GUI_DrawHLine(18, 5,25);
GUI_DispStringAt("XOR Text",0,20);
GUI_DispStringAt("XOR Text",0,60);

LCD_ControlCache(LCD_CC_UNLOCK);
```

LCD_GetBitsPerPixel()

Description

Returns the number of bits per pixel.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetBitsPerPixel(void);
```

Return value

Number of bits per pixel.

LCD_GetBitsPerPixelEx()

Description

Returns the number of bits per pixel.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetBitsPerPixelEx(int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Layer index.

Return value

Number of bits per pixel.

LCD_GetFixedPalette()

Description

Returns the fixed palette mode.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetFixedPalette(void);
```

Return value

The fixed palette mode. See Chapter 12: "Colors" for more information on fixed palette modes.

LCD_GetFixedPaletteEx()

Description

Returns the fixed palette mode.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetFixedPaletteEx(int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Layer index.

Return value

The fixed palette mode. See Chapter 9: "Colors" for more information on fixed palette modes.

LCD_GetNumColors()

Description

Returns the number of currently available colors on the LCD.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetNumColors(void);
```

Return value

Number of available colors

LCD_GetNumColorsEx()

Description

Returns the number of currently available colors on the LCD.

Prototype

```
U32 LCD_GetNumColorsEx(int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Layer index.

Return value

Number of available colors.

LCD_GetVXSize(), LCD_GetVYSize()

Description

Returns the virtual X- or Y-size, respectively, of the LCD in pixels. In most cases, the virtual size is equal to the physical size.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetVXSize(void)
int LCD_GetVYSize(void)
```

Return value

Virtual X/Y-size of the display.

LCD_GetVXSizeEx(), LCD_GetVYSizeEx()

Description

Returns the virtual X- or Y-size, respectively, of the LCD in pixels. In most cases, the virtual size is equal to the physical size.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetVXSizeEx(int Index);
int LCD_GetVYSizeEx(int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Layer index.

Return value

Virtual X/Y-size of the display.

LCD_GetXMag(), LCD_GetYMag()**Description**

Returns the magnification factor in X- or Y-axis, respectively.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetXMag(int Index);
int LCD_GetYMag(int Index);
```

Return value

Magnification factor in X- or Y-axis.

LCD_GetXMagEx(), LCD_GetYMagEx()**Description**

Returns the magnification factor in X- or Y-axis, respectively.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetXMagEx(int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Layer index.

Return value

Magnification factor in X- or Y-axis.

LCD_GetXSize(), LCD_GetYSize()**Description**

Returns the physical X- or Y-size, respectively, of the LCD in pixels.

Prototypes

```
int LCD_GetXSize(void)
int LCD_GetYSize(void)
```

Return value

Physical X/Y-size of the display.

LCD_GetXSizeEx(), LCD_GetYSizeEx()**Description**

Returns the physical X- or Y-size, respectively, of the LCD in pixels.

Prototype

```
int LCD_GetXSizeEx(int Index);
```

```
int LCD_GetYSizeEx(int Index);
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Layer index.

Return value

Physical X/Y-size of the display.

Chapter 26

VNC support

VNC stands for 'Virtual Network Computing'. It is, in essence, a client server system based on a simple display protocol which allows the user to view a computing 'desktop' environment not only on the machine where it is running, but from anywhere on the Internet and from a wide variety of machine architectures.

Client and server communicate via TCP/IP.

μ C/GUI VNC support is available as a separate package. It is not included in the basic package.

26.1 Introduction

VNC consists of two types of components. A server, which generates a display, and a viewer, which actually draws the display on your screen. The remote machine (target or simulation) can not only be viewed, but also controlled via mouse or keyboard. The server and the viewer may be on different machines and on different architectures. The protocol which connects the server and viewer is simple, open, and platform independent. No state is stored at the viewer. Breaking the viewer's connection to the server and then reconnecting will not result in any loss of data. Because the connection can be remade from somewhere else, you have easy mobility. Using the VNC server, you may control your target from anywhere and you can make screenshots (e.g. for a manual) from a "live" system.

26.1.1 Requirements

TCP/IP stack

Since the communication between the server and the viewer is based on a TCP/IP connection, VNC requires a TCP/IP stack. In the Win32 simulation environment, TCP/IP (Winsock) is normally present. In the target, a TCP/IP stack needs to be present. The TCP/IP stack is NOT part of µC/GUI. The flexible interface ensures that any TCP/IP stack can be used.

Multi tasking

The VNC server needs to run as a separate thread. Therefore a multi tasking system is required to use the µC/GUI VNC server.

26.1.2 Notes on this implementation

Supported client to server messages

The µC/GUI VNC server supports pointer event messages and keyboard event messages.

Encoding

The server supports raw encoding and hextile encoding.

Authentication

The Server currently does not require authentication. However, this feature can be added to the server easily at request.

Performance

Most viewers support hextile encoding, which supports descent compression. A typical quarter VGA screen requires typically 20 - 50 kb of data. An implementation running on an ARM7 platform (50 MHZ, with Cache) requires app. 200 - 300 ms for an update of the entire screen.

The server handles incremental updates; in most cases the updated display area is a lot smaller than the entire display and less data needs to be transmitted. A typical ARM7 system therefore allows real time updates.

Multiple servers

The implementation is fully thread safe and reentrant; multiple VNC-servers can be started on the same CPU for different layers or displays. If your target (of course the same holds true for the simulation) has multiple displays or multiple layers, this can be a useful option. Only one VNC server may be started per layer at any given time; once the connection to a Viewer ends, an other one can connect.

26.2 The VNC viewer

Availability

The subfolder 'Tool' contains a VNC viewer from the AT&T Laboratories Cambridge. It is free software and is distributed under the terms of the GNU Public License. The current version of the VNC software can be downloaded from <http://www.uk.research.att.com/vnc>, where more information about the VNC protocol, as well as source code for servers and clients for different platforms are available.

Version

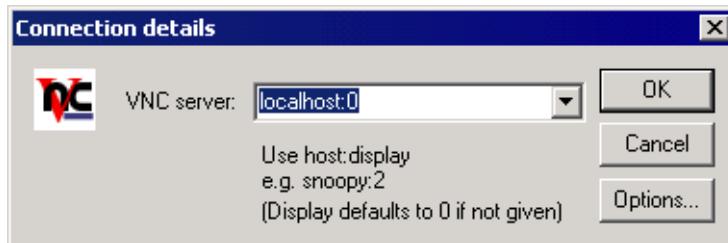
The VNC implementation of µC/GUI has been tested with version 3.3.3R2 and should work with this version or later versions.

Platforms

The viewer is available for different platforms. Please take a look to the website of AT&T Laboratories Cambridge for detailed information about the availability.

26.2.1 Starting the VNC viewer

Start the viewer by double-clicking the file Tool\VNCViewer.exe. It will prompt for the VNC server to be connected:



Connecting to a VNC server using the simulation on the same PC

When running VNCViewer and simulation on the same PC, type 'localhost:0' to connect. ':0' means server index 0. If you omit the server index the viewer assumes server 0. So in the most cases you can type 'localhost' to connect to the simulation.

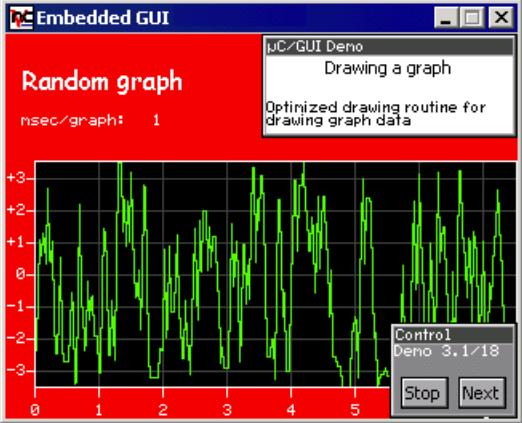
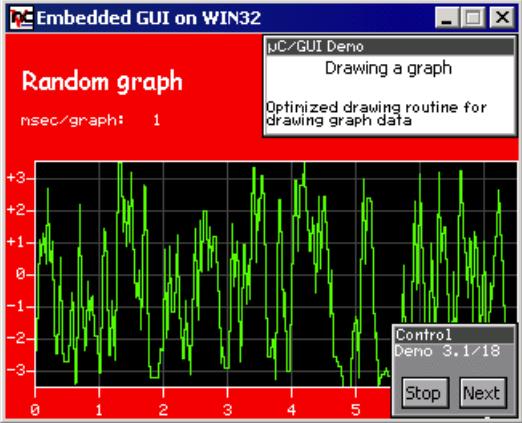
Connecting to a VNC server running on a different PC or the target

To connect to VNC server running on a different PC or on the target system, enter the name or IP address of the machine (optionally followed by a ':' and the server number). To connect to a VNC server on the computer 'Joerg', with IP address 192.168.1.2, you may enter '192.168.1.2:0', or 'Joerg:0' or 'Joerg'.

To connect to a target with IP address 192.168.1.254, enter '192.168.1.254'.

Screenshot

The following screenshots shows the viewer:

Connected to the simulation	Connected to the target
	

26.3 μC/GUI VNC server

26.3.1 Starting the μC/GUI VNC server

The one and only thing to start the VNC server is to call the function `GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()`:

```
void MainTask(void) {
    GUI_Init();
    GUI_VNC_X_StartServer(0, /* Layer index */
                          0); /* Server index */
    ...
}
```

The above function call creates a thread which listens on port 5900 for an incoming connection. After a connection has been detected `GUI_VNC_Process()` will be called.

Ports

The VNC server listens on port 590x, where x is the server index. So for most PC servers, the port will be 5900, because they use display 0 by default.

Sample

A ready to use sample (in executable form) is available on our website. The trial version also contains the VNC server; it takes no more than one line of code (using `GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()`) to activate it.

26.3.2 How the server starts ...

When using the simulation, only the function `GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()` needs to be called. It creates a thread which listens on port 590x until an incoming connection is detected and then calls `GUI_VNC_Process()`, which is the implementation of the actual server.

26.3.3 Integration of the VNC server on the target

Before the function `GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()` can be used, it has to be adapted to the used TCP/IP stack and the multi tasking system. An implementation sample is available under `Sample\GUI_X\GUI_VNC_X_VNCServer.c`, which should require only smaller modifications. The sample file does not use dynamic memory allocation to allocate memory for the `GUI_VNC_CONTEXT` structure described later. So this implementation only allows to start one server.

26.4 Required resources

ROM

About 4.9 kb on ARM7 with hextile encoding, about 3.5 kb without hextile encoding.

RAM

The VNC support does not use static data. For each instance one `GUI_VNC_CONTEXT` structure (app. 60 bytes) is used.

Others

Each instance needs one TCP/IP socket and one thread.

26.5 Configuration options

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	<code>GUI_VNC_BUFFER_SIZE</code>	1000	Frame buffer size. The buffer is located on the stack. Typically bigger sizes result in only minor accelerations. A reasonable buffer size is app. 200 bytes.
B	<code>GUI_VNC_LOCK_FRAME</code>	0	If set to 1 the GUI will be locked during a frame is send to the viewer. This option could make sense if screenshots for a documentation should be made.
S	<code>GUI_VNC_PROGNAME</code>	(see explanation)	This macro defines the name of the target shown in the title bar of the viewer. If using the viewer in the simulation the default is: "Embedded GUI on WIN32" On the target the default is: "Embedded GUI"
B	<code>GUI_VNC_SUPPORT_HEXTILE</code>	1	Enables or disables hextile encoding. Hextile encoding is a faster but needs bigger code (app. 1.4 k more).

26.6 VNC API

The following table lists the available VNC-related functions in alphabetical order. Detailed description of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_VNC_AttachToLayer()</code>	Attaches a VNC server to a layer. Without a multi display configuration the given index must be 0.
<code>GUI_VNC_Process()</code>	The actual VNC server; initialises the communication with the viewer.
<code>GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()</code>	Routine to be called to start a VNC viewer.

GUI_VNC_AttachToLayer()

Description

This function attaches the given layer to the VNC server. Normally, with single layer configurations, this parameter should be 0.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_AttachToLayer(GUI_VNC_CONTEXT * pContext, int LayerIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pContext	Pointer to a GUI_VNC_CONTEXT structure.
LayerIndex	Zero based index of layer to be handled by the server.

Return value

0 if the function succeed, != 0 if the function fails.

GUI_VNC_Process()

Description

The function sets the send and receive function used to send and receive data and starts the communication with the viewer.

Prototype

```
void GUI_VNC_Process(GUI_VNC_CONTEXT * pContext,
                      GUI_tSend pfSend,
                      GUI_tReceive pfReceive,
                      void * pConnectInfo);
```

Parameter	Meaning
pContext	Pointer to a GUI_VNC_CONTEXT structure.
pfSend	Pointer to the function to be used by the server to send data to the viewer.
pfReceive	Pointer to the function to be used by the server to read from the viewer.
pConnectInfo	Pointer to be passed to the send and receive function.

Additional information

The GUI_VNC_CONTEXT structure is used by the server to store connection state information's.

The send and receive functions should return the number of bytes successfully send/received to/from the viewer.

The pointer pConnectInfo is passed to the send and receive routines. It can be used to pass a pointer to a structure containing connection information or to pass a socket number.

The following types are used as function pointers to the routines used to send and receive bytes from/to the viewer:

```
typedef int (*GUI_tSend) (const U8 * pData, int len, void* pConnectInfo);
```

```
typedef int (*GUI_tReceive) (U8 * pData, int len, void* pConnectInfo);
```

Example:

```
static GUI_VNC_CONTEXT _Context; /* Data area for server */

static int _Send(const U8* buf, int len, void * pConnectionInfo) {
```

```

    SOCKET Socket = (SOCKET)pConnectionInfo;
    ...
}
static int _Recv(U8* buf, int len, void * pConnectionInfo) {
    SOCKET Socket = (SOCKET)pConnectionInfo;
    ...
}
static void _ServerTask(void) {
    int Socket;
    ...
    GUI_VNC_Process(&_Context, _Send, _Recv, (void*)Socket);
    ...
}

```

GUI_VNC_X_StartServer()

Description

Starts a VNC viewer with the given server index to display the given layer in the viewer.

The function has to be written by the customer because the implementation depends on the used TCP/IP stack and on the used operating system.

The μC/GUI shipment contains a sample implementation under Sample\GUI_X\GUI_VNC_X_StartServer.c. It could be used as a starting point for adapting it to other systems.

Prototype

```
int GUI_VNC_X_StartServer(int LayerIndex, int ServerIndex);
```

Parameter	Meaning
LayerIndex	Layer to be shown by the viewer.
ServerIndex	Server index.

Additional information

There is no difference to start a VNC server in the simulation or on the target. In both cases you should call this function. The simulation contains an implementation of this function, the hardware implementation has to be done by the customer.

Chapter 27

Time-Related Functions

Some widgets, as well as our demonstration code, require time-related functions. The other parts of the µC/GUI graphic library do not require a time base. The demonstration code makes heavy use of the routine `GUI_Delay()`, which delays for a given period of time. A unit of time is referred to as a tick.

Timing and execution API

The table below lists the available timing- and execution-related routines in alphabetical order. Detailed descriptions of the routines follow.

Routine	Explanation
<code>GUI_Delay()</code>	Delay for a specified period of time.
<code>GUI_Exec()</code>	Execute callback functions (all jobs).
<code>GUI_Exec1()</code>	Execute one callback function (one job only).
<code>GUI_GetTime()</code>	Return the current system time.

GUI_Delay()

Description

Delays for a specified period of time.

Prototype

```
void GUI_Delay(int Period);
```

Parameter	Explanation
<code>Period</code>	Period in ticks until function should return.

Additional information

The time unit (tick) is usually milliseconds (depending on `GUI_X_` functions).

`GUI_Delay()` only executes idle functions for the given period. If the window manager is used, the delay time is used for the updating of invalid windows (through execution of `WM_Exec()`).

This function will call `GUI_X_Delay()`.

GUI_Exec()

Description

Executes callback functions (typically redrawing of windows).

Prototype

```
int GUI_Exec(void);
```

Return value

0 if there were no jobs performed.

1 if a job was performed.

Additional information

This function will automatically call `GUI_Exec1()` repeatedly until it has completed all jobs -- essentially until a 0 value is returned.

Normally this function does not need to be called by the user application. It is called automatically by `GUI_Delay()`.

GUI_Exec1()

Description

Executes a callback function (one job only -- typically redrawing a window).

Prototype

```
int GUI_Exec1(void);
```

Return value

0 if there were no jobs performed.
1 if a job was performed.

Additional information

This routine may be called repeatedly until 0 is returned, which means all jobs have been completed.

This function is called automatically by `GUI_Exec()`.

GUI_GetTime()

Description

Returns the current system time.

Prototype

```
int GUI_GetTime(void);
```

Return value

The current system time in ticks.

Additional information

This function will call `GUI_X_GetTime()`.

Chapter 28

Low-Level Configuration (LCD-Conf.h)

Before you can use µC/GUI on your target system, you need to configure the software for your application. Configuring means modifying the configuration (header) files which usually reside in the (sub)directory `Config`. We try to keep the configuration as simple as possible, but there are some configuration macros (in the file `LCD-Conf.h`) which you must modify in order for the system to work properly. These include:

- LCD macros, defining the size of the display as well as optional features (such as mirroring, etc.)
- LCD controller macros, defining how to access the controller you are using.

28.1 Available configuration macros

The following table shows the available macros used for low-level configuration of µC/GUI:

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
General (required) configuration			
S	LCD_CONTROLLER	---	Select LCD controller.
N	LCD_BITSPERPIXEL	---	Specify bits per pixel.
S	LCD_FIXEDPALETTE	---	Specify fixed palette mode. Set to 0 for a user-defined color lookup table (then LCD_PHYSCOLORS must be defined).
N	LCD_XSIZE	---	Define horizontal resolution of LCD.
N	LCD_YSIZE	---	Define vertical resolution of LCD.
Initializing the controller			
F	LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER()	---	Initialization sequence for the LCD controller(s). Not applicable with all controllers.
Display orientation			
B	LCD_MIRROR_X	0	Activate to mirror X-axis.
B	LCD_MIRROR_Y	0	Activate to mirror Y-axis.
B	LCD_SWAP_XY	0	Activate to swap X- and Y-axes. If set to 0, SEG lines refer to columns and COM lines refer to rows.
N	LCD_VXSIZE	LCD_XSIZE	Horizontal resolution of virtual display. Not applicable with all drivers.
N	LCD_VYSIZE	LCD_YSIZE	Vertical resolution of virtual display. Not applicable with all drivers.
N	LCD_XORG<n>	0	LCD controller <n>: leftmost (lowest) X-position.
N	LCD_YORG<n>	0	LCD controller <n>: topmost (lowest) Y-position.
Color configuration			
N	LCD_MAX_LOG_COLORS	256	Maximum number of logical colors that the driver can support in a bitmap.
A	LCD_PHYSCOLORS	---	Defines the contents of the color lookup table. Only required if LCD_FIXEDPALETTE is set to 0.
B	LCD_PHYSCOLORS_IN_RAM	0	Only relevant if physical colors are defined. Puts physical colors in RAM, making them modifiable at run time
B	LCD_REVERSE	0	Activate to invert the display at compile time.
B	LCD_SWAP_RB	0	Activate to swap the red and blue components.
Magnifying the LCD			
N	LCD_XMAG<n>	1	Horizontal magnification factor of LCD.
N	LCD_YMAG<n>	1	Vertical magnification factor of LCD.
Simple bus interface configuration			
F	LCD_READ_A0(Result)	---	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line low.
F	LCD_READ_A1(Result)	---	Read a byte from LCD controller with A-line high.
F	LCD_WRITE_A0(Byte)	---	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line low.
F	LCD_WRITE_A1(Byte)	---	Write a byte to LCD controller with A-line high.
F	LCD_WRITEITEM_A1	---	Write multiple bytes to LCD controller with A-line high.

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
Full bus interface configuration			
F	LCD_READ_MEM(Index)	---	Read the contents of video memory of controller.
F	LCD_READ_REG(Index)	---	Read the contents of a configuration register of controller.
F	LCD_WRITE_MEM(Index, Data)	---	Write to video memory (display data RAM) of controller.
F	LCD_WRITE_REG(Index, Data)	---	Write to a configuration register of controller.
S	LCD_BUSWIDTH	16	Select bus-width (8/16) of LCD controller/CPU interface.
F	LCD_ENABLE_REG_ACCESS	---	Switch the M/R signal to register access. Not applicable with all controllers.
F	LCD_ENABLE_MEM_ACCESS	---	Switch the M/R signal to memory access. Not applicable with all controllers.
B	LCD_SWAP_BYTE_ORDER	0	Activate to invert the endian mode (swap the high and low bytes) between CPU and LCD controller when using a 16-bit bus interface.
LCD controller configuration: common/segment lines			
N	LCD_XORG<n>	0	LCD controller <n>: leftmost (lowest) X-position.
N	LCD_YORG<n>	0	LCD controller <n>: topmost (lowest) Y-position.
N	LCD_FIRSTSEG<n>	0	LCD controller <n>: first segment line used.
N	LCD_LASTSEG<n>	LCD_XSIZE-1	LCD controller <n>: last segment line used.
N	LCD_FIRSTCOM<n>	0	LCD controller <n>: first common line used.
N	LCD_LASTCOM<n>	LCD_YSIZE-1	LCD controller <n>: last common line used.
COM/SEG lookup tables			
A	LCD_LUT_COM	---	COM lookup table for controller.
A	LCD_LUT_SEG	---	SEG lookup table for controller.
Miscellaneous			
N	LCD_NUM_CONTROLLERS	1	Number of LCD controllers used.
B	LCD_CACHE	1	Deactivate to disable use of display data cache, which slows down the speed of the driver. Not applicable with all drivers.
B	LCD_USE_BITBLT	1	Deactivate to disable BitBLT engine. If set to 1, the driver will use all available hardware acceleration.
B	LCD_SUPPORT_CACHECONTROL	0	Activate to enable cache control functions of LCD_L0_ControlCache() driver API. Not applicable with all controllers.
N	LCD_TIMERINIT0	---	Timing value used by ISR for displaying pane 0 when using CPU as controller.
N	LCD_TIMERINIT1	---	Timing value used by ISR for displaying pane 1 when using CPU as controller.
F	LCD_ON	---	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD on.
F	LCD_OFF	---	Function replacement macro which switches the LCD off.

How to configure the LCD

We recommend the following procedure:

1. Make a copy of a configuration file of similar configuration. Several configuration samples for your particular LCD controller can be found in the folder Sam-

- ple\LCDConf\xxx, where xxx is your LCD driver.
2. Configure the bus interface by defining the appropriate simple bus or full bus macros.
 3. Define the size of your LCD (LCD_XSIZE, LCD_YSIZE).
 4. Select the controller used in your system, as well as the appropriate bpp and the palette mode (LCD_CONTROLLER, LCD_BITSPERPIXEL, LCD_FIXEDPALETTE).
 5. Configure which common/segment lines are used, if necessary.
 6. Test the system.
 7. Reverse X/Y if necessary (LCD_REVERSE); go back to step 6 in this case.
 8. Mirror X/Y if necessary (LCD_MIRROR_X, LCD_MIRROR_Y); go back to step 6 in this case.
 9. Check all the other configuration switches.
 10. Erase unused sections of the configuration.

28.2 General (required) configuration

LCD_CONTROLLER

Description

Defines the LCD controller used.

Type

Selection switch

Additional information

The LCD controller used is designated by the appropriate number. Please refer to Chapter 25: "LCD Drivers" for more information about available options.

Example

Specifies an Epson SED1565 controller:

```
#define LCD_CONTROLLER 1565 /* Selects SED 1565 LCD-controller */
```

LCD_BITSPERPIXEL

Description

Specifies the number of bits per pixel.

Type

Numerical value

LCD_FIXEDPALETTE

Description

Specifies the fixed palette mode.

Type

Selection switch

Additional information

Set the value to 0 to use a color lookup table instead of a fixed palette mode. The macro LCD_PHYSCOLORS must then be defined.

LCD_XSIZE; LCD_YSIZE

Description

Define the horizontal and vertical resolution (respectively) of the display used.

Type

Numerical values

Additional information

The values are logical sizes; X-direction specifies the direction which is used as the X-direction by all routines of the LCD driver.

Usually the X-size equals the number of segments.

28.3 Initializing the controller

LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER()

Description

Initializes the LCD controller(s).

Type

Function replacement

Additional information

This macro must be user-defined to initialize some controllers. It is executed during the `LCD_L0_Init()` and `LCD_L0_Reinit()` routines of the driver. Please consult the data sheet of your controller for information on how to initialize your hardware.

Example

The sample below has been written for and tested with an Epson SED1565 controller using an internal power regulator.

```
#define LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER() \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xe2); /* Internal reset */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xae); /* Display on/off: off */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xac); /* Power save start: static indicator off */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xa2); /* LCD bias select: 1/9 */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xa0); /* ADC select: normal */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xc0); /* Common output mode: normal */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0x27); /* V5 voltage regulator: medium */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0x81); /* Enter electronic volume mode */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0x13); /* Electronic volume: medium */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xad); /* Power save end: static indicator on */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0x03); /* static indicator register set: on (constantly on) */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0x2F); /* Power control set: booster, regulator and follower off */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0x40); /* Display Start Line */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xB0); /* Display Page Address 0 */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0x10); /* Display Column Address MSB */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0x00); /* Display Column Address LSB */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xaf); /* Display on/off: on */ \
LCD_WRITE_A0(0xe3); /* NOP */
```

28.4 Display orientation

There are 8 possible display orientations; the display can be turned 0°, 90°, 180° or 270° and can also be viewed from top or from bottom. The default orientation is 0° and top view. These $4 * 2 = 8$ different display orientations can also be expressed as a combination of 3 binary switches: X-mirror, Y-mirroring and X/Y swapping.

For this purpose, the binary configuration macros listed below can be used with each driver in any combination. If your display orientation is o.k. (Text on the display is readable; i.e. runs from left to right, is not upside-down and not mirrored), none of the configuration macros for display orientation are required. Otherwise, start by swapping X/Y if necessary and the mirror the X / Y axis as required or take a look at the table below which indicates which config switches have to be activated in which case. The orientation is handled as follows: Mirroring in X and Y first, then swapping (if selected).

Display	Orientation macros in LCDConf.h
	No orientation macro required
	Use #define LCD_MIRROR_X 1
	Use #define LCD_MIRROR_Y 1
	Use #define LCD_MIRROR_X 1 #define LCD_MIRROR_Y 1
	Use #define LCD_SWAP_XY

Display	Orientation macros in LCDConf.h
	Use <code>#define LCD_SWAP_XY</code> <code>#define LCD_MIRROR_X 1</code>
	Use <code>#define LCD_SWAP_XY</code> <code>#define LCD_MIRROR_X 1</code> <code>#define LCD_MIRROR_Y 1</code>
	Use <code>#define LCD_SWAP_XY</code> <code>define LCD_MIRROR_Y 1</code>

Driver optimizations

We can not optimize all drivers for all possible combinations of orientations and other config switches. In general, the default orientation is optimized. If you need to use a driver in an orientation which has not been optimized, please contact us.

LCD_MIRROR_X

Description

Inverts the X-direction (horizontal) of the display.

Type

Binary switch

0: inactive, X not mirrored (default)

1: active, X mirrored

Additional information

If activated: X -> LCD_XSIZE-1-X.

This macro, in combination with LCD_MIRROR_Y and LCD_SWAP_XY, can be used to support any orientation of the display. Before changing this configuration switch, make sure that LCD_SWAP_XY is set as required by your application.

LCD_MIRROR_Y

Description

Inverts the Y-direction (vertical) of the display.

Type

Binary switch

0: inactive, Y not mirrored (default)

1: active, Y mirrored

Additional information

If activated: Y -> LCD_YSIZE-1-Y.

This macro, in combination with `LCD_MIRROR_X` and `LCD_SWAP_XY`, can be used to support any orientation of the display. Before changing this configuration switch, make sure that `LCD_SWAP_XY` is set as required by your application.

LCD_SWAP_XY

Description

Swaps the horizontal and vertical directions (orientation) of the display.

Type

Binary switch

0: inactive, X-Y not swapped (default)

1: active, X-Y swapped

Additional information

If set to 0 (not swapped), SEG lines refer to columns and COM lines refer to rows.

If activated: X -> Y.

When changing this switch, you will also have to swap the X-Y settings for the resolution of the display (using `LCD_XSIZE` and `LCD_YSIZE`).

28.5 Color configuration

LCD_MAX_LOG_COLORS

Description

Defines the maximum number of colors supported by the driver in a bitmap.

Type

Numerical value (default is 256)

Additional information

If you are using a 4-grayscale LCD, it is usually sufficient to set this value to 4. However, in this case remember not to try to display bitmaps with more than 4 colors.

LCD_PHYSCOLORS

Description

Defines the contents of the color lookup table, if one is used.

Type

Alias

Additional information

This macro is only required if `LCD_FIXEDPALETTE` is set to 0. Refer to the color section for more information.

LCD_PHYSCOLORS_IN_RAM

Description

Puts the contents of the physical color table in RAM if enabled.

Type

Binary switch
0: inactive (default)
1: active

LCD_REVERSE

Description

Inverts the display at compile time.

Type

Binary switch
0: inactive, not reversed (default)
1: active, reversed

LCD_SWAP_RB

Description

Swaps the red and blue color components.

Type

Binary switch
0: inactive, not swapped (default)
1: active, swapped

28.6 Magnifying the LCD

Some hardware requires the LCD to be magnified in order to display images correctly. The software must compensate for hardware which internally needs magnification. It does so by activating a layer (above the driver layer) to automatically handle the job of magnifying the display.

LCD_XMAG

Description

Specifies the horizontal magnification factor of the LCD.

Type

Numerical value (default is 1)

Additional information

A factor of 1 results in no magnification.

LCD_YMAG

Description

Specifies the vertical magnification factor of the LCD.

Type

Numerical value (default is 1)

Additional information

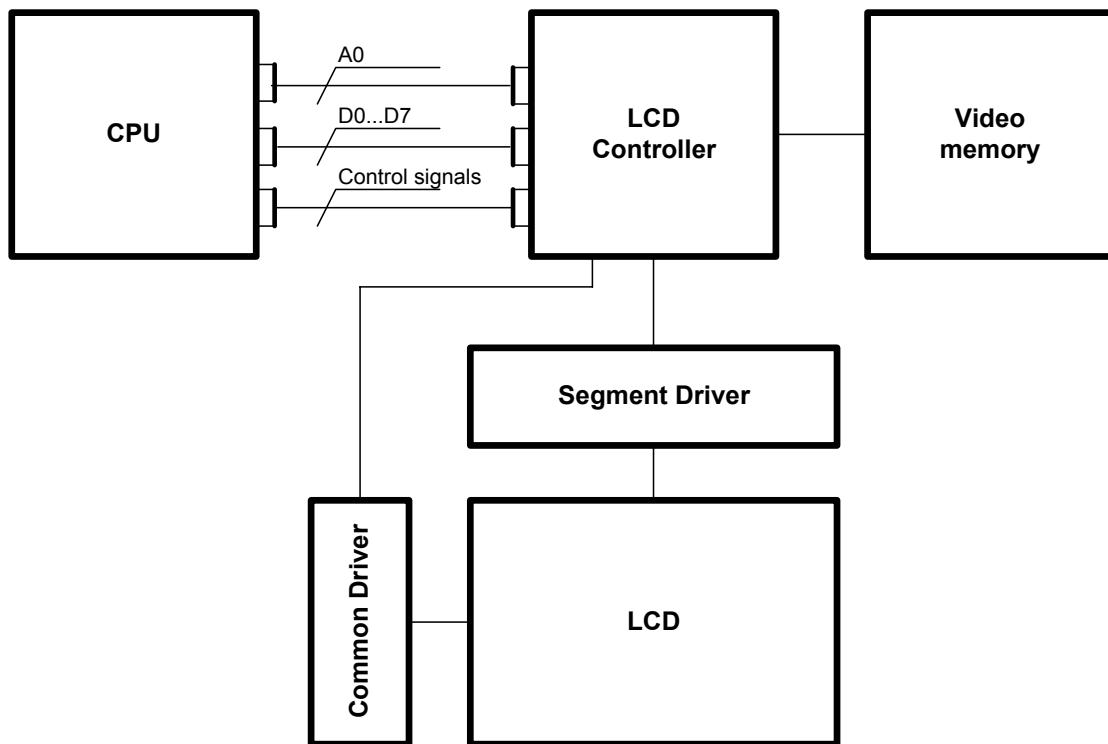
A factor of 1 results in no magnification.

28.7 Simple bus interface configuration

There are basically 2 types of bus interface for LCD controllers: full- and simple bus interfaces.

Most LCD controllers for smaller displays (usually up to 240*128 or 320*240) use a simple bus interface to connect to the CPU. With a simple bus, only one address bit (usually A0) is connected to the LCD controller. Some of these controllers are very slow, so that the hardware designer may decide to connect it to input/output (I/O) pins instead of the address bus.

Block diagram for LCD controllers with simple bus interface



Eight data bits, one address bit and 2 or 3 control lines are used to connect the CPU and one LCD controller. Four macros inform the LCD driver how to access each controller used. If the LCD controller(s) is connected directly to the address bus of the

CPU, configuration is simple and usually consists of no more than one line per macro. If the LCD controller(s) is connected to I/O pins, the bus interface must be simulated, which takes about 5-10 lines of program per macro (or a function call to a routine which simulates the bus interface).

The following macros are used only for LCD controllers with simple bus interface.

LCD_READ_A0

Description

Reads a byte from LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line low.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_READ_A0 (Result)
```

Parameter	Meaning
Result	Result read. This is not a pointer, but a placeholder for the variable in which the value will be stored.

LCD_READ_A1

Description

Reads a byte from LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line high.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_READ_A1 (Result)
```

Parameter	Meaning
Result	Result read. This is not a pointer, but a placeholder for the variable in which the value will be stored.

LCD_WRITE_A0

Description

Writes a byte to LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line low.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_WRITE_A0 (Byte)
```

Parameter	Meaning
Byte	Byte to write.

LCD_WRITE_A1

Description

Writes a byte to LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line high.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_WRITE_A1 (Byte)
```

Parameter	Meaning
Byte	Byte to write.

LCD_Writem_A1

Description

Writes several bytes to the LCD controller with A0 (C/D) - line high.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_Writem_A1 (paBytes, NumberOfBytes)
```

Parameter	Meaning
paBytes	Placeholder for the pointer to the first data byte.
NumberOfBytes	Number of data bytes to be written.

Example of memory mapped interface

The following example demonstrates how to access the LCD by a memory mapped interface:

```
void WriteM_A1(char *paBytes, int NummerOfBytes) {
    int i;
    for (i = 0; i < NummerOfBytes; i++) {
        (*(volatile char *)0xc0001) = *(paBytes + i);
    }
}

#define LCD_READ_A1(Result) Result = (*(volatile char *)0xc0000)
#define LCD_READ_A0(Result) Result = (*(volatile char *)0xc0001)
#define LCD_WRITE_A1(Byte)   (*(volatile char *)0xc0000) = Byte
#define LCD_WRITE_A0(Byte)   (*(volatile char *)0xc0001) = Byte

#define LCD_Writem_A1(paBytes, NummerOfBytes) WriteM_A1(paBytes, NummerOfBytes)
```

Sample routines for connection to I/O pins

Several examples can be found in the folder Sample\LCD_X:

- Port routines for 6800 interface
- Port routines for 8080 interface
- Simple port routines for a serial interface
- Port routines for a simple I2C bus interface

These samples can be used directly. All you need to do is to define the port access macros listed at the top of each example and to map them in your `LCDConf.h` in a similar manner to that shown below:

```
void LCD_X_Write00(char c);
void LCD_X_Write01(char c);
char LCD_X_Read00(void);
char LCD_X_Read01(void);
#define LCD_WRITE_A1(Byte) LCD_X_Write01(Byte)
#define LCD_WRITE_A0(Byte) LCD_X_Write00(Byte)
#define LCD_READ_A1(Result) Result = LCD_X_Read01()
#define LCD_READ_A0(Result) Result = LCD_X_Read00()
```

Note that not all LCD controllers handle the A0 or C/D bit in the same way. For example, a Toshiba controller requires that this bit be low when accessing data and an Epson SED1565 requires it to be high.

Hardware access for multiple LCD controllers

If more than one LCD controller is used for the LCD, you must define access macros for each of them individually, according to your hardware. Four macros are needed per LCD controller. The macros for the additional controllers are often very similar to those for the first one. With a direct bus connection, usually only the addresses are different. When I/O pins are used, the sequence for the access is the same except for the CHIP-SELECT signal.

When using more than one controller, add an underscore and the index of the controller as the postfix. For example:

Controller #0: `LCD_READ_A0_0`
 Controller #1: `LCD_READ_A0_1`
 and so on.

Note that the first controller is considered to be controller #0, so that a second controller would be defined as #1, etc. The macros for additional LCD controllers are listed as follows.

Second LCD controller

Type	Macro	Explanation
F	LCD_READ_A0_1(Result)	LCD controller 1: Read a byte with A0 = 0.
F	LCD_READ_A1_1(Result)	LCD controller 1: Read a byte with A0 = 1.
F	LCD_WRITE_A0_1(Byte)	LCD controller 1: Write a byte with A0 = 0.
F	LCD_WRITE_A1_1(Byte)	LCD controller 1: Write a byte with A0 = 1.

Third LCD controller

Type	Macro	Explanation
F	LCD_READ_A0_2(Result)	LCD controller 2: Read a byte with A0 = 0.
F	LCD_READ_A1_2(Result)	LCD controller 2: Read a byte with A0 = 1.
F	LCD_WRITE_A0_2(Byte)	LCD controller 2: Write a byte with A0 = 0.
F	LCD_WRITE_A1_2(Byte)	LCD controller 2: Write a byte with A0 = 1.

Fourth LCD controller

Type	Macro	Explanation
F	LCD_READ_A0_3(Result)	LCD controller 3: Read a byte with A0 = 0.
F	LCD_READ_A1_3(Result)	LCD controller 3: Read a byte with A0 = 1.
F	LCD_WRITE_A0_3(Byte)	LCD controller 3: Write a byte with A0 = 0.
F	LCD_WRITE_A1_3(Byte)	LCD controller 3: Write a byte with A0 = 1.

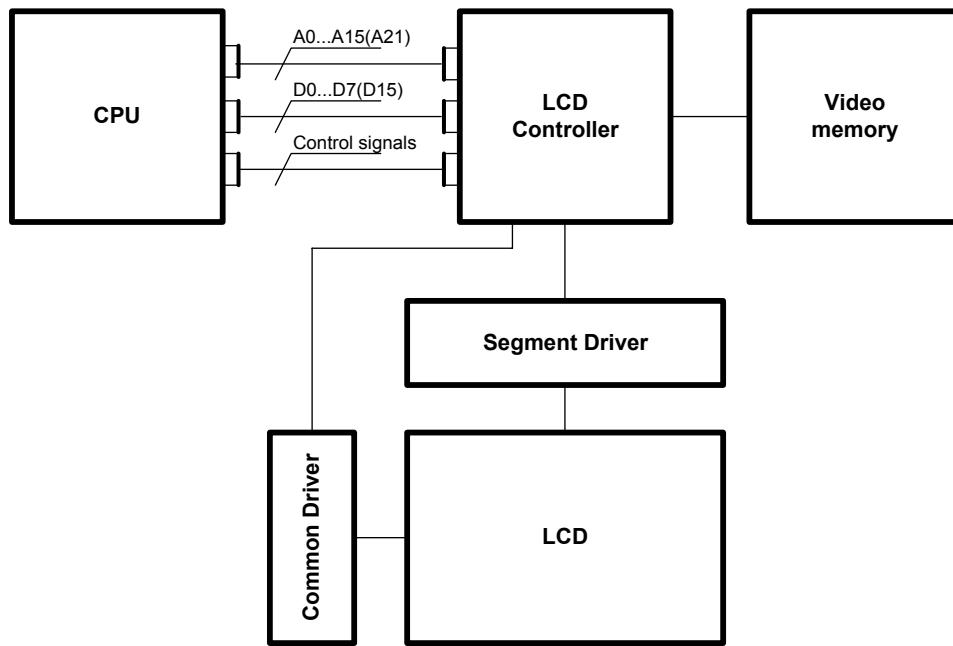
28.8 Full bus interface configuration

Some LCD controllers (especially those for displays with higher resolution) require a full-address bus, which means they are connected to at least 14 address bits. In a full bus interface configuration, video memory is directly accessible by the CPU; the full-address bus is connected to the LCD controller.

The only knowledge required when configuring a full bus interface is information about the address range (which will generate a CHIP-SELECT signal for the LCD controller) and whether 8- or 16-bit accesses should be used (bus-width to the LCD controller). In other words, you need to know the following:

- Base address for video memory access
- Base address for register access
- Distance between adjacent video memory locations (usually 1/2/4-byte)
- Distance between adjacent register locations (usually 1/2/4-byte)
- Type of access (8/16/32-bit) for video memory
- Type of access (8/16/32-bit) for registers

Typical block diagram for LCD controllers with full bus interface



Configuration example

The example assumes the following:

Base address video memory	0x80000
Base address registers	0xc0000
Access to video RAM	16-bit
Access to register	16-bit
Distance between adjacent video memory locations	2 bytes
Distance between adjacent register locations	2 bytes

```

#define LCD_READ_REG(Index)      * ((U16*) (0xc0000+(Off<<1)))
#define LCD_WRITE_REG(Index,data) * ((U16*) (0xc0000+(Off<<1)))=data
#define LCD_READ_MEM(Index)      * ((U16*) (0x80000+(Off<<1)))
#define LCD_WRITE_MEM(Index,data) * ((U16*) (0x80000+(Off<<1)))=data
  
```

The following macros are used only for LCD controllers with full bus interface.

LCD_READ_MEM

Description

Reads the video memory of the LCD controller.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_READ_MEM(Index)
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index of video memory of controller.

Additional information

This macro defines how to read the video memory of the LCD controller. In order to configure this switch correctly, you need to know the base address of the video memory, the spacing and if 8/16- or 32-bit accesses are permitted. You should also know the correct syntax for your compiler because this kind of hardware access is not defined in ANSI "C" and is therefore different for different compilers.

LCD_READ_REG

Description

Reads the register of the LCD controller.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_READ_REG(Index)
```

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index of the register to read.

Additional information

This macro defines how to read the registers of the LCD controller. Usually, the registers are memory-mapped. In this case, the macro can normally be written as a single line.

In order to configure this switch correctly, you need to know the address the registers are mapped to, the spacing and if 8/16- or 32-bit accesses are permitted. You should also know the correct syntax for your compiler because this kind of hardware access is not defined in ANSI "C" and is therefore different for different compilers. However, the syntax shown below works with the majority of them.

Example

If the registers are mapped to a memory area starting at 0xc0000, the spacing is 2 and 16-bit accesses should be used; with most compilers the define should look as follows:

```
#define LCD_READ_REG(Index) *((U16*)(0xc0000+(Off<<1)))
```

LCD_WRITE_MEM

Description

Writes data to the video memory of the LCD controller.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

LCD_WRITE_MEM(Index, Data)

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index of video memory of controller.
Data	Data to write to the register

Additional information

This macro defines how to write to the video memory of the LCD controller. In order to configure this switch correctly, you need to know the base address of the video memory, the spacing and if 8/16- or 32-bit accesses are permitted, as well as the correct syntax for your compiler.

With 8-bit accesses, a value of 1 indicates byte 1.

With 16-bit accesses, a value of 1 indicates word 1.

LCD_WRITE_REG

Description

Writes data to a specified register of the LCD controller

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

LCD_WRITE_REG(Index, Data)

Parameter	Meaning
Index	Index of the register to write to
Data	Data to write to the register

Additional information

This macro defines how to write to the registers of the LCD controller. If the registers are memory-mapped, the macro can normally be written as a single line.

In order to configure this switch correctly, you need to know the address the registers are mapped to, the spacing and if 8/16- or 32-bit accesses are permitted, as well as the correct syntax for your compiler.

With 8-bit accesses, a value of 1 indicates byte 1.

With 16-bit accesses, a value of 1 indicates word 1.

Example

If the registers are mapped to a memory area starting at 0xc0000, the spacing is 4 and 8-bit access should be used; with most compilers the define should look as follows:

```
#define LCD_WRITE_REG(Index,Data) *((U8volatile *) (0xc0000+(Off<<2)))=data
```

LCD_BUSWIDTH

Description

Defines bus-width of LCD controller/CPU interface (external display access).

Type

Selection switch

8: 8-bit wide VRAM
16: 16-bit wide VRAM (default)

Additional information

Since this completely depends on your hardware, you will have to substitute these macros. The Epson SED1352 distinguishes between memory and register access; memory is the video memory of the LCD controller and registers are the 15 configuration registers. The macros define how to access (read/write) VRAM and registers.

LCD_ENABLE_REG_ACCESS

Description

Enables register access and sets the M/R signal to high.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_ENABLE_REG_ACCESS() MR = 1
```

Additional information

Only used for Epson SED1356 and SED1386 controllers.

After using this macro, `LCD_ENABLE_MEM_ACCESS` must also be defined in order to switch back to memory access after accessing the registers.

LCD_ENABLE_MEM_ACCESS

Description

Switches the M/R signal to memory access. It is executed after register access functions and sets the M/R signal to low.

Type

Function replacement

Prototype

```
#define LCD_ENABLE_MEM_ACCESS() MR = 0
```

Additional information

Only used for Epson SED1356 and SED1386 controllers.

LCD_SWAP_BYTE_ORDER

Description

Inverts the endian mode (swaps the high and low bytes) between CPU and LCD controller when using a 16-bit bus interface.

Type

Binary switch

0: inactive, endian modes not swapped (default)
1: active, endian modes swapped

28.9 LCD controller configuration: common/segment lines

For most LCDs, the setup of common (COM) and segment (SEG) lines is straightforward and neither special settings for COM/SEG lines nor the configuration macros in this section are required.

This section explains how the LCD controller(s) is physically connected to your display. The direction does not matter; it is only assumed that continuous COM and SEG lines are used. If the direction of SEGs or COMs is reversed, use `LCD_MIRROR_X`/`LCD_MIRROR_Y` to set them in the direction required by your application. If non-continuous COM/SEG lines have been used, you have to modify the driver (putting in a translation table will do) or -- even better -- go back to the hardware (LCD module) designer and ask him/her to start over.

LCD_XORG<n>; LCD_YORG<n>

Description

Define the horizontal and vertical origin of the display (respectively) controlled by the configured driver.

Type

Numerical value

Additional information

In a single display system, both macros are usually set to 0 (the default value).

LCD_FIRSTSEG<n>

Description

Controller <n>: first segment line used.

Type

Numerical value

LCD_LASTSEG<n>

Description

Controller <n>: last segment line used.

Type

Numerical value

LCD_FIRSTCOM<n>

Description

Controller <n>: first common line used.

Type

Numerical value

LCD_LASTCOM<n>

Description

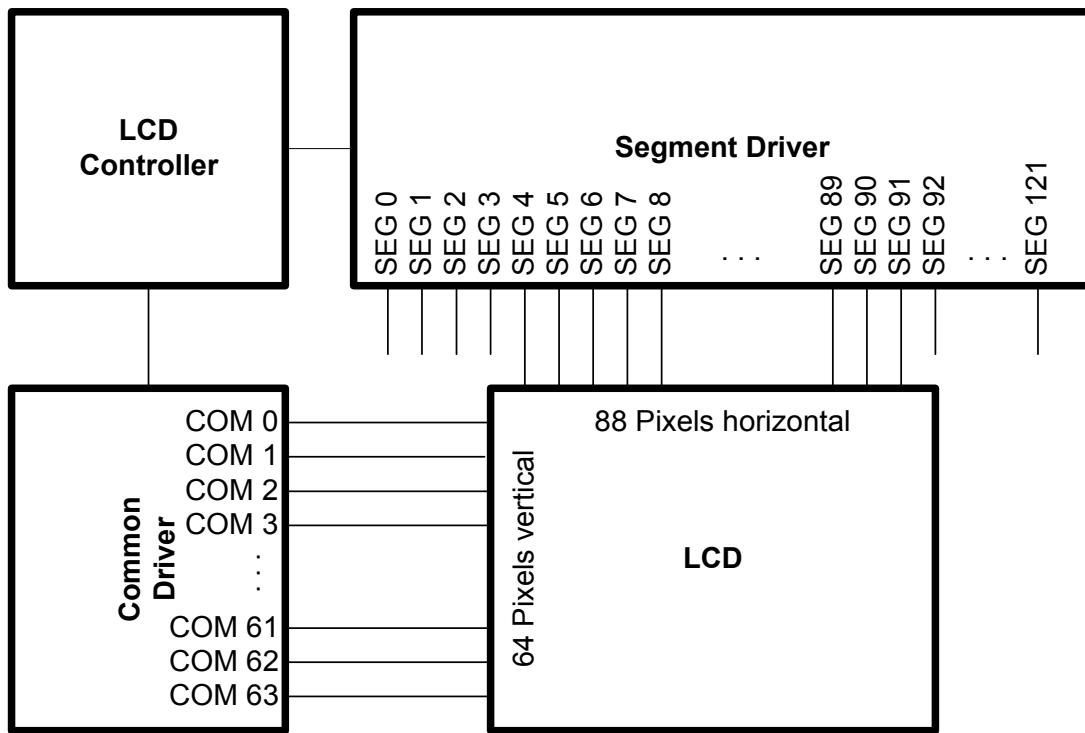
Controller <n>: last common line used.

Type

Numerical value

Single LCD controller configuration

The following block diagram shows a single LCD, controlled by a single LCD controller, using external COM and SEG drivers. All outputs of the common driver (COM0-COM63) are being used, but only some outputs of the segment driver (SEG4-SEG91). Note that for simplicity the video RAM is not shown in the diagram.



Configuration for the above example

```

#define LCD_FIRSTSEG0      (4)      /* Contr.0: first segment line used */
#define LCD_LASTSEG0       (91)     /* Contr.0: last segment line used */
#define LCD_FIRSTCOM0      (0)      /* Contr.0: first com line used */
#define LCD_LASTCOM0       (63)     /* Contr.0: last com line used */

```

Please also note that the above configuration is identical if the COM or SEG lines are mirrored and even if the LCD is built-in sideways (90° turned, X-Y swapped). The same applies if the COM/SEG drivers are integrated into the LCD controller, as is the case for some controllers designed for small LCDs. A typical example for this type of controller would be the Epson SED15XX series.

Configuring additional LCD controllers

μ C/GUI offers the possibility of using more than one (up to four) LCD controllers with one LCD. The configuration switches are identical to the switches for the first controller (controller 0), except the index is 1, 2 or 3 instead of 0.

Second LCD controller

Type	Macro	Explanation
N	LCD_FIRSTSEG1	LCD controller 1: first segment line used.
N	LCD_LASTSEG1	LCD controller 1: last segment line used.
N	LCD_FIRSTCOM1	LCD controller 1: first com line used.
N	LCD_LASTCOM1	LCD controller 1: last com line used.
N	LCD_XORG1	LCD controller 1: leftmost (lowest) X-position.
N	LCD_YORG1	LCD controller 1: topmost (lowest) Y-position.

Third LCD controller

Type	Macro	Explanation
N	LCD_FIRSTSEG2	LCD controller 2: first segment line used.
N	LCD_LASTSEG2	LCD controller 2: last segment line used.
N	LCD_FIRSTCOM2	LCD controller 2: first com line used.
N	LCD_LASTCOM2	LCD controller 2: last com line used.
N	LCD_XORG2	LCD controller 2: leftmost (lowest) X-position.
N	LCD_YORG2	LCD controller 2: topmost (lowest) Y-position.

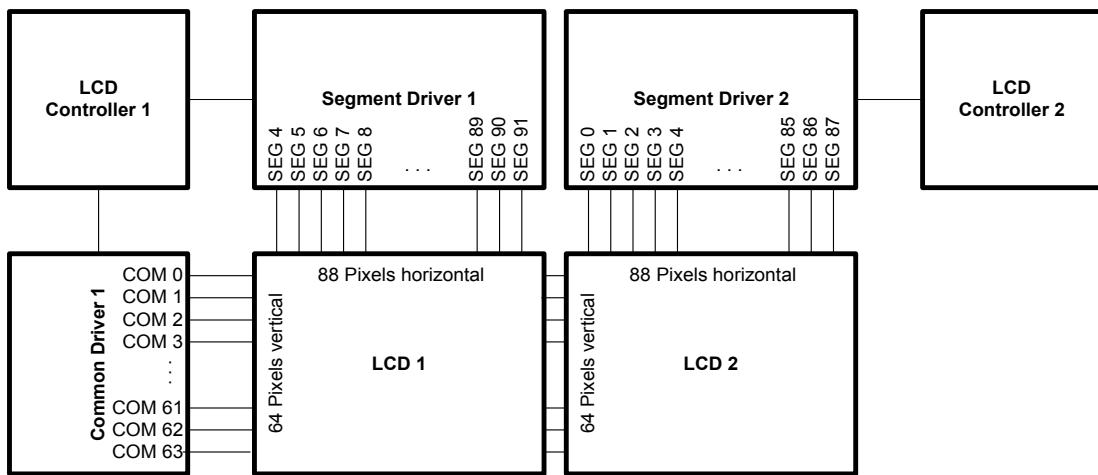
Fourth LCD controller

Type	Macro	Explanation
N	LCD_FIRSTSEG3	LCD controller 3: first segment line used.
N	LCD_LASTSEG3	LCD controller 3: last segment line used.
N	LCD_FIRSTCOM3	LCD controller 3: first com line used.
N	LCD_LASTCOM3	LCD controller 3: last com line used.
N	LCD_XORG3	LCD controller 3: leftmost (lowest) X-position.
N	LCD_YORG3	LCD controller 3: topmost (lowest) Y-position.

When using more than one LCD controller, be sure to remember to define the number of controllers used (see macro `LCD_NUM_CONTROLLERS` in the next section).

Example

The following diagram shows a hardware configuration using two LCD controllers. The COM lines are driven by the common driver connected to controller 1 and are directly connected to the second LCD. LCD 1 is connected to segment driver 1 using SEG lines 4 to 91. LCD 2 is driven by SEG 0 to SEG 87 of segment driver 2.



Configuration for the above example

```

#define LCD_FIRSTSEG0      (4)      /* Contr.0: first segment line used */
#define LCD_LASTSEG0       (91)     /* Contr.0: last segment line used */
#define LCD_FIRSTCOM0      (0)      /* Contr.0: first com line used */
#define LCD_LASTCOM0       (63)     /* Contr.0: last com line used */
#define LCD_XORG0          (0)      /* Contr.0: leftmost (lowest) x-Pos */
#define LCD_YORG0          (0)      /* Contr.0: topmost (lowest) y-Pos */
#define LCD_FIRSTSEG1      (0)      /* Contr.1: first segment line used */
#define LCD_LASTSEG1        (87)     /* Contr.1: last segment line used */
#define LCD_FIRSTCOM1      (0)      /* Contr.1: first com line used */
#define LCD_LASTCOM1        (63)     /* Contr.1: last com line used */
#define LCD_XORG1          (88)     /* Contr.1: leftmost (lowest) x-Pos */
#define LCD_YORG1          (0)      /* Contr.1: topmost (lowest) y-Pos */
  
```

28.10 COM/SEG lookup tables

When using "chip on glass" technology, it is sometimes very difficult to ensure that the COM and SEG outputs of the controller(s) are connected to the display in a linear fashion. In this case a COM/SEG lookup table may be required in order to inform the driver as to how the COM/SEG lines are connected.

LCD_LUT_COM

Description

Defines a COM lookup table for the controller.

Type

Alias

Example

Let us assume your display contains only 10 COM lines and their connecting order is 0, 1, 2, 6, 5, 4, 3, 7, 8, 9. To configure the LCD driver so that the COM lines are accessed in the correct order, the following macro should be added to your LCD-Conf.h:

```
#define LCD_LUT_COM 0, 1, 2, 6, 5, 4, 3, 7, 8, 9
```

If you need to modify the segment order, you should use the macro LCD_LUT_SEG in the same manner.

LCD_LUT_SEG

Description

Defines a SEG lookup table for the controller.

Type

Alias

28.11 Miscellaneous

LCD_NUM_CONTROLLERS

Description

Defines the number of LCD controllers used.

Type

Numerical value (default is 1)

LCD_CACHE

Description

Controls caching of video memory in CPU memory.

Type

Binary switch

0: disabled, no display data cache used

1: enabled, display data cache used (default)

Additional information

This switch is not supported by all LCD drivers.

Using a display data cache (which speeds up access) is recommended if access to the video memory is slow, which is usually the case with larger displays and simple bus interfaces (particularly if port-access or serial interfaces are used). Disabling the cache will slow down the speed of the driver.

LCD_USE_BITBLT

Description

Controls usage of hardware acceleration.

Type

Binary switch

0: disabled, BitBLT engine is not used

1: enabled, BitBLT engine is used (default)

Additional information

Disabling the BitBLT engine will instruct the driver not to use the available hardware acceleration.

LCD_SUPPORT_CACHECONTROL

Description

Switch support for the `LCD_L0_ControlCache()` function of the driver.

Type

Binary switch

0: disabled, `LCD_L0_ControlCache()` may not be used (default)

1: enabled, `LCD_L0_ControlCache()` may be used

Additional information

The API function `LCD_L0_ControlCache()` permits locking, unlocking, or flushing of the cache. For more information, refer to Chapter 28: "LCD Driver API".

Please note that this feature is intended only for some LCD controllers with simple bus interface, for which it is important to access the controller as little as possible in order to maximize speed. For other controllers, this switch has no effect.

LCD_TIMERINIT0

Description

Timing value used by an interrupt service routine for displaying pane 0 of a pixel.

Type

Numerical value

Additional information

This macro is only relevant when no LCD controller is used, since it is then the job of the CPU to update the display in an interrupt service routine.

LCD_TIMERINIT1

Description

Timing value used by an interrupt service routine for displaying pane 1 of a pixel.

Type

Numerical value

Additional information

This macro is only relevant when no LCD controller is used, since it is then the job of the CPU to update the display in an interrupt service routine.

LCD_ON

Description

Switches the LCD on.

Type

Function replacement

LCD_OFF

Description

Switches the LCD off.

Type

Function replacement
μC/GUI

Chapter 29

High-Level Configuration (GUIConf.h)

High-level configuration is relatively simple. In the beginning, you can normally use the existing configuration files (for example, those used in the simulation). Only if there is a need to fine-tune the system, or to minimize memory consumption, does the high-level configuration file `GUIConf.h` need to be changed. This file is usually located in the `Config` subdirectory of your project's root directory. Use the file `GUIConf.h` for any high-level configuration.

The second thing to do when using uC/GUI on your hardware is to change the hardware-dependent functions, located in the file `Sample\GUI_X\GUI_X.c`.

29.1 General notes

The configuration options explained in this chapter are the available options for the general library. Furthermore exist configuration options for the optional window manager and the widget library. For details please refer to the chapters 'The Window Manager' and 'Window Objects'.

29.2 How to configure the GUI

We recommend the following procedure:

1. Make a copy of the original configuration file.
2. Review all configuration switches.
3. Erase unused sections of the configuration.

29.2.1 Sample configuration

The following is a short sample GUI configuration file (ConfigSample\GUIConf.h):

```
#define GUI_WINSUPPORT          (1) /* Use window manager if true (1) */
#define GUI_SUPPORT_TOUCH        (1) /* Support a touch screen */
#define GUI_ALLOC_SIZE            5000 /* Size of dynamic memory */
#define GUI_DEFAULT_FONT          &GUI_Font6x8 /* This font is used as default */
```

29.3 Available GUI configuration macros

The following table shows the available macros used for high-level configuration of uC/GUI

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	GUI_ALLOC_SIZE	---	Defines the size (number of bytes available) for optional dynamic memory. Dynamic memory is required only for windows and memory devices. This memory will only be used if the GUIAlloc module is linked, which should happen only if dynamic memory is required.
S	GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL	1 (target) 4 (simulation)	Defines the debug level, which determines how many checks (assertions) are performed by uC/GUI and if debug errors, warnings and messages are output. Higher debug levels generate bigger code.
N	GUI_DEFAULT_BKCOLOR	GUI_BLACK	Define the default background color.
N	GUI_DEFAULT_COLOR	GUI_WHITE	Define the default foreground color.
S	GUI_DEFAULT_FONT	&GUI_Font6x8	Define which font is used as default after GUI_Init(). If you do not use the default font, it makes sense to change to a different default, as the default font is referenced by the code and will therefore always be linked.
N	GUI_MAXBLOCKS	---	Defines the number of available memory blocks for the memory management of uC/GUI. The maximum number of blocks depends per default on GUI_ALLOC_SIZE.

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
N	GUI_MAXTASK	4	Define the maximum number of tasks from which uC/GUI is called to access the display when multitasking support is enabled (see Chapter 14: "Execution Model: Single Task/Multitask"). This macro allows replacement of the memset function of the GUI. On a lot of systems, memset takes up a considerable amount of time because it is not optimized by the compiler manufacturer. We have tried to address this by using our own memset() Routine GUI_memset. However, this is still a generic "C"-routine, which in a lot of systems can be replaced by faster code, typically using either a different "C" routine, which is better optimized for the particular CPU, by writing a routine in Assembly language or using the DMA. If you want to use your own memset replacement routine, add the define to the GUIConf.h file.
F	GUI_MEMSET	---	
B	GUI_OS	0	Activate to enable multitasking support with multiple tasks calling uC/GUI (see Chapter 14: "Execution Model: Single Task/Multitask").
B	GUI_SUPPORT_LARGE_BITMAPS	0	If a system with a 16 bit CPU (sizeof(int) == 2) should display bitmaps >64Kb this configuration macro should be set to 1.
B	GUI_SUPPORT_MEMDEV	1	Enables optional memory device support. Not using memory devices will save about 40 bytes of RAM for function pointers and will slightly accelerate execution.
B	GUI_SUPPORT_MOUSE	0	Enables the optional mouse support.
B	GUI_SUPPORT_ROTATION		Enables text rotation support (default if compiler supports unlimited function pointer calls).
B	GUI_SUPPORT_TOUCH	0	Enables optional touch-screen support.
B	GUI_SUPPORT_UNICODE	1	Enables support for Unicode characters embedded in 8-bit strings. Please note: Unicode characters may always be displayed, as character codes are always treated as 16-bit.
B	GUI_TRIAL_VERSION	0	Marks the compiler output as evaluation version.
B	GUI_WINSUPPORT	0	Enables optional window manager support.

29.3.1 GUI_ALLOC_SIZE

The dynamic memory is used by the window manager/widget library (optional) and the memory devices (optional). The following gives you an overview of the memory requirements of these modules.

Memory requirement of the window manager

If the window manager is used, approximately 50 bytes are used per application defined window and approximately 100 bytes per widget. Typical applications using the window manager/widgets requires app. 2500 bytes.

Memory requirement of the memory devices

Depending on the color depth used one pixel of a memory device requires 1 or 2 bytes of RAM. Configurations with a color depth between 1 and 8bpp (LCD_BITSPERPIXEL between 1 and 8) uses 1 byte of RAM. A color depth >8 and <=16bpp uses 2 bytes of RAM. If using the memory device module to prevent the display from flickering when using drawing operations for overlapping items a minimum of 4000 bytes is recommended. If enough RAM is available the allocated size should be sufficient to store the pixels of the largest window plus the memory requirement of the window manager.

Examples

- If the current configuration is 16bpp and the largest window is 320x240 pixels $320 \times 240 \times 2 = 153600$ bytes are useful for the memory device module.
- If the current configuration is 16bpp and the largest window is 320x240 pixels $320 \times 240 = 76800$ bytes are useful for the memory device module.

29.3.2 GUI_MAXBLOCKS

Defines the maximum number of available memory blocks for the memory management system. Per default it depends on `GUI_ALLOC_SIZE` and is calculated as follows:

```
GUI_MAXBLOCKS = (2 + GUI_ALLOC_SIZE / 32)
```

For the most applications the default is a good value. If an application requires more or less memory blocks it can be configured using the following define (where `xxx` is the maximum number of blocks):

```
#define GUI_MAXBLOCKS xxx
```

29.3.3 GUI_TRIAL_VERSION

This macro can be used to mark the compiler output as an evaluation build. It should be defined if the software is given to a third party for evaluation purpose (typically with evaluation boards).

Note that a special license is required to do this; the most common licenses do not permit redistribution of µC/GUI in source or object code (relinkable) form. Please contact sales@micrium.com if you would like to do this.

If `GUI_TRIAL_VERSION` is defined, the following message is shown when calling `GUI_Init()`:

```
This software
contains an eval-
build of uc/GUI.

A license is
required to use
it in a product.

www.micrium.com
```

This message is always shown in the upper left corner of the display and is normally visible for 1 second. The timing is implemented by a call `GUI_X_Delay(1000)`. The functionality of µC/GUI is in no way limited if this switch is active.

Sample

```
#define GUI_TRIAL_VERSION 1
```

29.4 GUI_X routine reference

When using uC/GUI with your hardware, there are several hardware-dependent functions which must exist in your project. When using the simulation, the library already contains them. A sample file can be found under Sample\GUI_X\GUI_X.c. The following table lists the available hardware-dependent functions in alphabetical order within their respective categories. Detailed description of the routines can be found in the sections that follow.

Routine	Explanation
Init routine	
<code>GUI_X_Init()</code>	Called from <code>GUI_Init()</code> ; can be used to initialize hardware.
Timing routines	
<code>GUI_X_Delay()</code>	Return after a given period.
<code>GUI_X_ExecIdle()</code>	Called only from non-blocking functions of window manager.
<code>GUI_X_GetTime()</code>	Return the system time in milliseconds.
Kernel interface routines	
<code>GUI_X_InitOS()</code>	Initialize the kernel interface module (create a resource semaphore/mutex).
<code>GUI_X_GetTaskID()</code>	Return a unique, 32-bit identifier for the current task/thread.
<code>GUI_X_Lock()</code>	Lock the GUI (block resource semaphore/mutex).
<code>GUI_X_Unlock()</code>	Unlock the GUI (unblock resource semaphore/mutex).
Debugging	
<code>GUI_X_Log()</code>	Return debug information; required if logging is enabled.

29.5 Init routine

`GUI_X_Init()`

Description

Called from `GUI_Init()`; can be used to initialize hardware.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_Init(void);
```

29.6 Timing routines

`GUI_X_Delay()`

Description

Returns after a specified time period in milliseconds.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_Delay(int Period)
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>Period</code>	Period in milliseconds.

GUI_X_ExecIdle()

Description

Called only from non-blocking functions of the window manager.

Prototype

```
void GUI_X_ExecIdle(void);
```

Additional information

Called when there are no longer any messages which require processing. In this case the GUI is up to date.

GUI_X_GetTime()

Description

Used by GUI_GetTime to return the current system time in milliseconds.

Prototype

```
int GUI_X_GetTime(void)
```

Return value

The current system time in milliseconds, of type integer.

29.7 Kernel interface routines

Detailed descriptions for these routines may be found in Chapter 14: "Execution Model: Single Task/Multitask".

29.8 Debugging

GUI_X_ErrorOut(), GUI_X_Warn(), GUI_X_Log()

Description

These routines are called by uC/GUI with debug information in higher debug levels in case a problem (Error) or potential problem is discovered. The routines can be blank; they are not required for the functionality of uC/GUI. In a target system, they are typically not required in a release (production) build, since a production build typically uses a lower debug level.

Fatal errors are output using GUI_X_ErrorOut() if (GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL >= 3)

Warnings are output using GUI_X_Warn() if (GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL >= 4)

Messages are output using GUI_X_Log() if (GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL >= 5)

Prototypes

```
void GUI_X_ErrorOut(const char * s);
void GUI_X_Warn(const char * s);
void GUI_X_Log(const char * s);
```

Parameter	Meaning
s	Pointer to the string to be sent.

Additional information

This routine is called by uC/GUI to transmit error messages or warnings, and is required if logging is enabled. The GUI calls this function depending on the configuration macro `GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL`. The following table lists the permitted values for `GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL`:

Value	Symbolic name	Explanation
0	<code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_NOCHECK</code>	No run-time checks are performed.
1	<code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_CHECK_PARA</code>	Parameter checks are performed to avoid crashes. (Default for target system)
2	<code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_CHECK_ALL</code>	Parameter checks and consistency checks are performed.
3	<code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_LOG_ERRORS</code>	Errors are recorded.
4	<code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_LOG_WARNINGS</code>	Errors and warnings are recorded. (Default for PC-simulation)
5	<code>GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL_LOG_ALL</code>	Errors, warnings and messages are recorded.

29.9 Dynamic memory

uC/GUI contains its own memory management system. But it is also possible to use your own memory management system. The following table shows the available macros used for dynamic memory configuration of uC/GUI:

Type	Macro	Explanation
F	<code>GUI_ALLOC_ALLOC(Size)</code>	Used to allocate a memory block, returns a memor handle.
F	<code>GUI_ALLOC_FREE(pMem)</code>	Used to release a memory block.
F	<code>GUI_ALLOC_GETMAXSIZE()</code>	Returns the maximum number of bytes of available memory.
F	<code>GUI_ALLOC_H2P(hMem)</code>	Converts a memory handle to a memory pointer.
A	<code>GUI_HMEM</code>	Type of a memory handle.

`GUI_ALLOC_ALLOC`

Description

Allocates a memory block and returns a handle to it.

Type

Function replacement.

Prototype

```
#define GUI_ALLOC_ALLOC(Size)
```

Parameter	Meaning
<code>Size</code>	Size of required memory block

Example

```
#define GUI_ALLOC_ALLOC(Size) malloc(Size)
```

GUI_ALLOC_FREE

Description

Releases a memory block.

Type

Function replacement.

Prototype

```
#define GUI_ALLOC_FREE(pMem)
```

Parameter	Meaning
pMem	Pointer to memory block to be released.

Example

```
#define GUI_ALLOC_FREE(pMem) free(pMem)
```

GUI_ALLOC_GETMAXSIZE

Description

Returns the maximum number of bytes of available memory.

Type

Function replacement.

Prototype

```
#define GUI_ALLOC_GETMAXSIZE()
```

Example

```
#define GUI_ALLOC_GETMAXSIZE() 10000
```

GUI_ALLOC_H2P

Description

Converts a memory handle to a memory pointer.

Type

Function replacement.

Prototype

```
#define GUI_ALLOC_H2P(hMem)
```

Parameter	Meaning
hMem	Memory handle to be converted to a memory pointer.

Example

```
#define GUI_ALLOC_H2P(hMem) hMem
```

GUI_HMEM

Description

Defines the type of a memory handle.

Type

Text replacement.

Example

```
#define GUI_HMEM void *
```

Example

The following sample is an excerpt from the GUIConf.h which uses the standard dynamic memory system:

```
#include <malloc.h>
#include <memory.h>

#define GUI_HMEM void *
#define GUI_ALLOC_ALLOC(Size) malloc(Size)
#define GUI_ALLOC_FREE(pMem) free(pMem)
#define GUI_ALLOC_H2P(hMem) hMem
#define GUI_ALLOC_GETMAXSIZE() 10000
```

29.10 Special considerations for certain Compilers/CPUs

29.10.1 AVR with IAR-Compiler

When using an Atmel AVR CPU and a IAR compiler and you need to put const data in flash ROM you need to add 2 additional configuration macros to GUIConf.h:

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
A	GUI_UNI_PTR	---	Define "universal pointer".
A	GUI_CONST_STORAGE	const	Define const storage.

GUI_UNI_PTR

Description

Defines a "universal pointer" which can point to RAM and flash ROM. On some systems it can be necessary since a default pointer can access RAM only, not the built-in Flash.

Type

Alias.

Example

```
#define GUI_UNI_PTR __generic
```

GUI_CONST_STORAGE

Description

Defines the const storage. On some systems it can be necessary since otherwise constants are copied into RAM.

Type

Alias.

Example

```
#define GUI_CONST_STORAGE __flash const
```

29.10.2 8051 Keil compiler and other 8-bit CPU compilers

Keils 8051 Compiler (tested in V5 & V6) has limitation as far as function pointers are concerned. The compiler is limited in respect to the number of parameters which can be passed to a function called thru a function pointer (indirect function call). Some other 8-bit compilers (for 6502 type architectures, such as ST7, but possibly also other chips) may also have a similar limitation. The config switch below allows to circumvent most of these limitations by avoiding function calls with multiple parameters.

Type	Macro	Default	Explanation
A	GUI_COMPILER_SUPPORTS_FP	1	Set to 0 if the compiler does not support complex function calls via function pointers.

GUI_COMPILER_SUPPORTS_FP

Description

Used to enable/disable the use of complex function pointers.

Type

Alias.

Example

```
#define GUI_COMPILER_SUPPORTS_FP 0 /* Disable the use of complex function pointers */
```

Additional information

Disabling this config switch will make it possible to use the software even with very limited "C"-compilers for small chips. However, this comes at a price:

The available functionality is limited as well. The following limitations apply in this case:

- Text rotation can not be used
- Compressed bitmaps can not be used
- Higher level software, such as memory devices, window manager & VNC server can not be used
- Antialiasing can not be used
- Some other (smaller) restrictions may apply.

Chapter 30

Performance and Resource Usage

High performance combined with low resource usage has always been a major design consideration. µC/GUI runs on 8/16/32-bit CPUs. Depending on which modules are being used, even single-chip systems with less than 64kb ROM and 2kb RAM can be supported by µC/GUI. The actual performance and resource usage depends on many factors (CPU, compiler, memory model, optimization, configuration, interface to LCD controller, etc.). This chapter contains benchmarks and information about resource usage in typical systems which can be used to obtain sufficient estimates for most target systems.

30.1 Performance benchmark

We use a benchmark test to measure the speed of the software on available targets. This benchmark is in no way complete, but it gives an approximation of the length of time required for common operations on various targets.

Configuration and performance table

All values are in $\mu\text{s}/\text{pixel}$.

CPU	LCD Controller	bpp	Bench1 Filling	Bench2 Small fonts	Bench3 Big fonts	Bench4 Bitmap 1bpp	Bench5 Bitmap 2bpp	Bench6 Bitmap 4bpp	Bench7 Bitmap 8bpp	Bench8 DDP bitmap
M16C/60 (16 bit), 16MHz	SED1560	1	1.68	11.0	4.81	8.96	34.8	35.5	21.5	8.39
M16C/60 (16 bit), 16MHz	T6963	1	5.62	21.4	6.59	7.19	30.2	34.6	51.3	72.6
M16C/80 (16 bit), 20MHz	S1D13705	1	0.26	9.26	4.43	7.38	7.93	8.01	7.99	7.14
M16C/80 (16 bit), 20MHz	S1D13705	4	0.46	5.60	2.29	2.94	8.21	3.14	7.86	1.54
M16C/80 (16 bit), 20MHz	S1D13705	8	0.63	5.45	2.30	3.26	7.65	3.23	2.81	1.61
V850SB1 (32 bit), 20MHz	S1D13806	8	0.06	2.92	0.63	0.66	4.16	2.18	12.1	0.80
V850SB1 (32 bit), 20MHz	S1D13806	16	0.12	3.08	0.69	0.67	2.56	2.58	4.67	1.24

Bench1: Filling

Bench the speed of filling. An area of 64*64 pixels is filled with different colors.

Bench2: Small fonts

Bench the speed of small character output. An area of 60*64 pixels is filled with small-character text.

Bench3: Big fonts

Bench the speed of big character output. An area of 65*48 pixels is filled with big-character text.

Bench4: Bitmap 1bpp

Bench the speed of 1bpp bitmaps. An area of 58*8 pixels is filled with a 1bpp bitmap.

Bench 5: Bitmap 2bpp

Bench the speed of 2bpp bitmaps. An area of 32*11 pixels is filled with a 2bpp bitmap.

Bench6: Bitmap 4bpp

Bench the speed of 4bpp bitmaps. An area of 32*11 pixels is filled with a 4bpp bitmap.

Bench7: Bitmap 8bpp

Bench the speed of 8bpp bitmaps. An area of 32*11 pixels is filled with a 8bpp bitmap.

Bench8: Device-dependent bitmap, 8 or 16 bpp

Bench the speed of bitmaps 8 or 16 bits per pixel. An area of 64*8 pixels is filled with a bitmap. The color depth of the tested bitmap depends on the configuration. For configurations <= 8bpp, a bitmap with 8 bpp is used; 16bpp configurations use a 16-bpp bitmap.

30.1.1 Image drawing performance

This subchapter shows the performance values for drawing images of different formats. The measurement for the following table has been done on an ARM720T CPU with 8kB unified cache running with 60MHz and with 8 bpp display color depth using the LCDLin driver:

Type of image	File size	$\mu\text{s}/\text{pixel}$
BMP file (8bpp, uncompressed)	17654	0.265
GIF file	6955	2.848
JPEG file	3064	6.404

The measurement has been done with the following image of 200x85 pixels:



30.2 Memory requirements

The µC/GUI operation area and the memory requirements (RAM and ROM) are very different and differs based on the library features used. The following chapter will show the different modules memory requirements and typical applications memory requirements.

30.2.1 Memory requirements of the GUI

Due to the increasing popularity of the ARM processor, we have detailed the memory requirements of the individual GUI components below. The values have been obtained on a system as follows:

30.2.1.1 System

CPU	ARM7
Toolchain	IAR embedded workbench version 4.20a
Processor mode	Thumb
Compile options	Size optimisation high

30.2.1.2 Memory requirements

Component	ROM [bytes]	RAM [bytes]	Stack [bytes]	Explanation
Core	5248	73	600	Memory requirements of a typicall 'Hello world' application without using additional software items.
Window manager	+ 6260	+ 2541	+ 600	Additional memory requirements of a 'Hello world' application when using the window manager. The configured GUI_ALLOC_SIZE for the measurement was 2000.
Memory devices	+ 4764	+ 7121	+ 200	Additional memory requirements of a 'Hello world' application when using memory devices. The configured GUI_ALLOC_SIZE for the measurement was 8000.
Antialiasing	+ 4500	+ 2 * LCD_XSIZE	-	Additional memory requirements for the antialiasing software item.
Driver	+ 2 - 8kB	(see explanation)	-	The memory requirements of the driver depend on the configured driver and if a data cache is used or not. Without a data cache the driver uses app. < 20 bytes. For details please refer to the driver documentation.
Multilayer	+ 2 - 8kB	(see explanation)		If working with a multi layer or a multi display configuration additional memory for each additional layer is required. Each layer

30.2.2 Memory requirements of a "Hello world" project

The following shows the memory requirement of a "Hello world" project. It uses only the basic functions for displaying text. The used application can be found under Sample\GUI\BASIC_HelloWorld.c.

30.2.2.1 Configuration

The following excerpts of the files GUIConf.h and LCDConf.h shows the used configuration options.

GUIConf.h:

```
#define GUI_WINSUPPORT      0
#define GUI_SUPPORT_TOUCH    0
#define GUI_SUPPORT_MOUSE    0
#define GUI_SUPPORT_MEMDEV   0
#define GUI_SUPPORT_AA        0
#define GUI_DEFAULT_FONT     &GUI_Font6x8
```

LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_CONTROLLER      6963
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL    1
#define LCD_MAX_LOG_COLORS  2
#define LCD_CACHE            0
```

30.2.2.2 System

The following table shows the hardware and the toolchain details of the project:

Detail	Description
CPU	M16C
Toolchain	IAR embedded workbench version 1.36A
Memory model	near
Compile options	Size optimisation (-z9)

30.2.2.3 Memory requirements

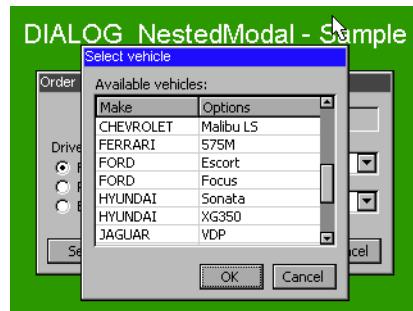
The following table shows the memory requirement of the project:

Description	ROM [bytes]	RAM [bytes]
GUI code and const data	5898	62
GUI data (fonts)	1828	--
Application	38	--
Stack	--	272
Startup code	258	--
Library	71	--
Total		
	8093	334

30.2.3 Memory requirements of a window application

This project is a "typical" application using the window manager and different widgets. It initially opens a dialog. This dialog contains interface elements (widgets). One of these (a button labeled "car selection") opens another dialog which contains a list view and is used to select the vehicle. The resource usage of this application should be more or less typical for applications using the window manager and some, but not all widgets.

The application can be found under Sample\GUI\DILOG_NestedModal.c.



30.2.3.1 Configuration

The following excerpts of the files GUIConf.h and LCDConf.h shows the used configuration options.

GUIConf.h:

```
#define GUI_WINSUPPORT          1
#define GUI_SUPPORT_TOUCH        0
#define GUI_SUPPORT_MOUSE        1
#define GUI_SUPPORT_MEMDEV       0
#define GUI_SUPPORT_AA           0
#define GUI_MAXBLOCKS            160
#define GUI_ALLOC_SIZE            3500
#define BUTTON_FONT_DEFAULT      &GUI_Font13_ASCII
#define DROPODOWN_FONT_DEFAULT   &GUI_Font13_ASCII
#define EDIT_FONT_DEFAULT         &GUI_Font13_ASCII
#define HEADER_FONT_DEFAULT      &GUI_Font13_ASCII
#define LISTBOX_FONT_DEFAULT     &GUI_Font13_ASCII
#define LISTVIEW_FONT_DEFAULT    &GUI_Font13_ASCII
#define TEXT_FONT_DEFAULT         &GUI_Font13_ASCII
#define GUI_DEFAULT_FONT          &GUI_Font6x8
```

LCDConf.h:

```
#define LCD_CONTROLLER           1375
#define LCD_BITSPERPIXEL          8
```

30.2.3.2 System

The following table shows the hardware and the toolchain details of the project:

Detail	Description
CPU	ARM AT91
Toolchain	IAR embedded workbench version 3.40A
Code model	small
Compile options	Size optimization high

30.2.3.3 Memory requirements

The following table shows the memory requirement of the project:

Description	ROM [bytes]	RAM [bytes]
GUI code and const data	42731	5224
GUI data (fonts)	12412	--
Application	2731	40

Description	ROM [bytes]	RAM [bytes]
Stack	--	1400
Startup code	304	--
Library	1480	388
Total		
	59658	7052

Chapter 31

Support

This chapter should help if any problem occurs. This could be a problem with the tool chain, with the hardware, the use of the GUI functions or with the performance and it describes how to contact the µC/GUI support.

31.1 Problems with tool chain (compiler, linker)

The following shows some of the problems that can occur with the use of your tool chain. The chapter tries to show what to do in case of a problem and how to contact the µC/GUI support if needed.

31.1.1 Compiler crash

You ran into a tool chain (compiler) problem, not a µC/GUI problem. If one of the tools of your tool chain crashes, you should contact your compiler support:

"Tool internal error, please contact support"

31.1.2 Compiler warnings

The µC/GUI code has been tested on different target systems and with different compilers. We spend a lot of time on improving the quality of the code and we do our best to avoid compiler warnings. But the sensitivity of each compiler regarding warnings is different. So we can not avoid compiler warnings for unknown tools.

Warnings you should not see

This kind of warnings should not occur:

"Function has no prototype"
 "Incompatible pointer types"
 "Variable used without having been initialized"
 'Illegal redefinition of macro'

Warnings you may see

Warnings such as the ones below should be ignored:

"Integer conversion, may loose significant bits"
 'Statement not reached"
 "Meaningless statements were deleted during optimization"
 "Condition is always true/false"
 "Unreachable code"

Most compilers offers a way to supress selected warnings.

Warning "Parameter not used"

Depending of the used configuration sometimes not all of the parameters of the functions are used. To avoid compiler warnings regarding this problem you can define the macro `GUI_USE_PARA` in the file `GUIConf.h` like the following sample:

```
#define GUI_USE_PARA(para) para=para;
```

µC/GUI uses this macro wherever necessary to avoid this type of warning.

31.1.3 Compiler errors

µC/GUI assumes that the used compiler is ANSI 'C' compatible. If it is compatible there should be no problem to translate the code.

Limited number of arguments in a function pointer call

But some compilers are not 100% ANSI 'C' compatible and have for example a limitation regarding the number of arguments in a function pointer call:

```
typedef int tFunc(int a, int b, int c, int d, int e,
                  int f, int g, int h, int i, int j);

static int _Func(int a, int b, int c, int d, int e,
                 int f, int g, int h, int i, int j) {
    return a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h;
```

```

}

static void _Test(void) {
    int Result;
    tFunc * pFunc;
    pFunc = _Func;
    Result = pFunc(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10);
}

```

If the sample above can not be compiled, only the core µC/GUI version can be used. The additional µC/GUI packages like the window manager or the memory device module sometimes need to pass up to 10 parameters with a function pointer call. The core µC/GUI package needs only up to 2 parameters in a function pointer call. But you can also use µC/GUI if your compiler only supports one argument in a function pointer call. If so some functions are not available, for example rotating text or UTF-8 encoding. For details about how to configure µC/GUI in this case take a look at the chapter 'High-Level Configuration'.

Contacting support

If this manual does not contain all help you need to configure µC/GUI to work with your compiler, please contact the µC/GUI support. Please send the following:

- A detailed description of the problem
- The configuration file GUIConf.h
- The configuration file LCDConf.h
- The error messages of the compiler

31.1.4 Linker problems

Undefined externals

If your linker shows the error message "Undefined external symbols..." please check if the following files have been included to the project or library:

- All source files shipped with µC/GUI
- In case of a simple bus interface: One of the hardware routines located in the folder Sample\LCD_X? For details about this please take a look to the chapter 'Low-Level Configuration'.
- One of the files located in the folder Sample\GUI_X? For details about this please take a look to the chapter 'High-Level Configuration'.

Executable to large

Some linkers are not able to link only the modules/functions referenced by the project. This results in an executable with a lot of unused code. In this case the use of a library would be very helpful. For details about how to build a µC/GUI library please take a look at the chapter 'Getting started'.

31.2 Problems with hardware/driver

If your tools are working fine but your display does not work may one of the following helps to find the problem.

Stack size to low?

Please make sure there have been configured enough stack. We can not estimate exactly how much stack will be used by your configuration and with your compiler. If you want to

Initialisation of the display wrong?

If the `LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER` macro is needed by your driver please check, if this macro has been adapted to your needs.

Display interface configured wrong?

When starting to work with μ C/GUI and the display does not show something you should use an oscilloscope to measure the pins connected with the display/controller. If there is a problem please check the following:

- If using a simple bus interface: Probably the hardware routines have not been configured correctly. If possible use an emulator and step through these routines.
- If using a full bus interface: Probably the register/memory access have not been configured correctly.

Contacting support

If you need to contact the μ C/GUI support, please send the following information:

- A detailed description of the problem
- The configuration file `GUIConf.h`
- The configuration file `LCDConf.h`
- If using a simple bus interface please send the hardware routines including the configuration.

31.3 Problems with API functions

If your tool chain and your hardware works fine but the API functions do not function as documented, please make a small sample as described later under "Contacting Support". This allows us to easily reproduce the problem and solve it quickly

31.4 Problems with the performance

If there is any performance problem with µC/GUI it should be determined, which part of the software causes the problem.

Does the driver causes the problem?

To determine the cause of the problem the first step should be writing a small test routine which executes some testcode and measures the time used to execute this code. Starting point should be the file `ProblemReport.c` described above. To measure the time used by the real hardware driver the shipment of µC/GUI contains the driver `LCDNull.c`. This driver can be used if no output to the hardware should be done. To activate the driver the `LCD_CONTROLLER` macro in `LCDConf.h` as follows:

```
#define LCD_CONTROLLER -2
```

The difference between the used time by the real driver and the `LCDNull` driver shows the execution time spent in the real hardware driver.

Driver not optimized?

If there is a significant difference between the use of the real driver and the `LCDNull` driver the cause of the problem could be a not optimized driver mode. If using one of the following macros: `LCD_MIRROR_X`, `LCD_MIRROR_Y`, `LCD_SWAP_XY` or `LCD_CACHE` the driver may not be optimized for the configured mode. In this case please contact our support, we should be able to optimize the code.

Slow display controller?

Also please take a look to the chapter 'Display drivers'. If using a slow display controller like the Epson SED1335 this chapter may answer the question, why the driver works slow.

Contacting support

If you need to contact the µC/GUI support in case of performance problems, please send the following informations to the support:

- A detailed description of the problem may as comment in the sample code.
- The configuration file `GUIConf.h`.
- The configuration file `LCDConf.h`.
- A sample source file which can be compiled in the simulation without any additional files.

31.5 Contacting support

If you need to contact the uC/GUI support, please send the following information to the support:

- A detailed description of the problem may be written as comment in the sample code.
- The configuration file `GUIConf.h`.
- The configuration file `LCDConf.h`.
- A sample source file which can be compiled in the simulation without any additional files as described in the following.
- If there are any problems with the tool chain please also send the error message of the compiler/linker.
- If there are any problems with the hardware/driver and a simple bus interface is used please also send the hardware routines including the configuration.

Problem report

The following file can be used as a starting point when creating a problem report. Please also fill in the CPU, the used tool chain and the problem description. It can be found under Sample\GUI\ProblemReport.c:

```
*****
*           Micrium Inc. *
*           Empowering embedded systems *
*
*           uC/GUI problem report *
*
*****
```

```
-----  
File          : ProblemReport.c  
CPU          :  
Compiler/Tool chain :  
Problem description :  
-----  
*/
```

```
#include "GUI.h"  
/* Add further GUI header files here as required. */
```

```
*****  
*           Static code  
*  
*****  
*  
* Please insert helper functions here if required.  
*/
```

```
*****  
*           MainTask  
*/  
void MainTask(void) {  
    GUI_Init();  
    /*  
     * To do: Insert the code here which demonstrates the problem.  
     */  
    while (1); /* Make sure program does not terminate */  
}
```

31.6 FAQ's

Q: I use a different LCD controller. Can I still use µC/GUI?

A: Yes. The hardware access is done in the driver module and is completely independent of the rest of the GUI. The appropriate driver can be easily written for any controller (memory-mapped or bus-driven). Please get in touch with us.

Q: Which CPUs can I use µC/GUI with?

A: µC/GUI can be used with any CPU (or MPU) for which a "C" compiler exists. Of course, it will work faster on 16/32-bit CPUs than on 8-bit CPUs.

Q: Is µC/GUI flexible enough to do what I want to do in my application?

A: µC/GUI should be flexible enough for any application. If for some reason you do not think it is in your case, please contact us. Believe it or not, the source code is available.

Q: Does µC/GUI work in a multitask environment?

A: Yes, it has been designed with multitask kernels in mind.

Index

Symbols

"C" compiler 28, 45, 191

"C" files

- converting bitmaps into 189, 190
- converting fonts into 163

- inclusion of in *μC/GUI* 39

"C" programming language 27

μC/GUI

- configuration of 40
- Driver benchmark 827
- memory requirements 828

A

Access addresses, defining 41

Access routines, defining 41

Active window 262

Additional software 39

Alias macro 40

Aliasing 657

ANSI 27, 28, 806

Antialiasing 657–670

- of fonts 657, 659

- qualities 657, 658

- software for 657

- with high-resolution coordinates 657, 659–660

API reference

- antialiasing 661

- BMP file support 126

- BUTTON widget 331

- CHECKBOX widget 351

- colors 217

- cursors 654

- device simulator 50

- EDIT widget 366, 378, 444, 484

- fonts 151

- FRAMEWIN widget 398

- generic touch-screen 639

- GIF file support 138

- GRAPH widget 422

- graphics 100

- hardkey simulator 54

- JPEG file API 133

- kernel interface routines 257–259

- LCD driver 769

- LCD layer 769

- LISTBOX widget 458

- memory devices 227

- MENU widget 512

MESSAGEBOX widget 527

Multi layer 631

MULTIEDIT widget 531

MULTIPAGE widget 544

pointer input devices (PID) 635

PROGBAR widget 557

PS2 mouse driver 638

RADIO widget 567

routines common to all widgets 324

SCROLLBAR widget 579

SLIDER widget 586

text 72

TEXT widget 593

values 88

VNC 783

window manager 277

WINDOW widget 599

WM routines used for widgets 324

Application program interface (API) 30, 768

Arcs, drawing 120–121

ASCII 72, 149, 160, 162

Auto device object 243–248

B

Background window 265

Banding memory device 240–243

Best palette option 193, 196, 197

Binary switch macro 40

Binary values, displaying 95–96

Bitmap converter 29, 189–200

- supported input formats 190

- using for color conversion 193–194

Bitmap file support 126

Bitmaps 189–200

- color conversion of 193–194

- device-dependent (DDB) 191

- device-independent (DIB) 191

- drawing 106–147

- full-color mode 191, 193

- generating "C" files from 189, 190

- generating C files from 191–193

- manipulating 190

- RLE compressed 191, 194, 199

Blocking dialog 602

BmpCvt.exe 195–196

Bottom window 263

Button widget 320, 330–348

BUTTON_3D_MOVE_X 330

BUTTON_3D_MOVE_Y 330
 BUTTON_ALIGN_DEFAULT 330
 BUTTON_BI_DISABLED 334, 337
 BUTTON_BI_PRESSED 334, 337
 BUTTON_BI_UNPRESSED 334, 337
 BUTTON_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 330
 BUTTON_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT 330
 BUTTON_CI_DISABLED 334, 335, 336, 338, 339, 341
 BUTTON_CI_PRESSED 334, 335, 336, 338, 339, 341
 BUTTON_CI_UNPRESSED 334, 335, 336, 338, 339, 341
 BUTTON_Create 332
 BUTTON_CreateEx 333
 BUTTON_CreateIndirect 333
 BUTTON_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT 330
 BUTTON_FONT_DEFAULT 330
 BUTTON_GetBitmap 333
 BUTTON_GetBkColor 334
 BUTTON_GetDefaultBkColor 334
 BUTTON_GetDefaultFont 335
 BUTTON_GetDefaultTextAlign 335
 BUTTON_GetDefaultTextColor 335
 BUTTON_GetFont 336
 BUTTON_GetText 336
 BUTTON_GetTextColor 336
 BUTTON_IsPressed 337
 BUTTON.REACT_ON_LEVEL 330
 BUTTON_SetBitmap 337
 BUTTON_SetBitmapEx 337
 BUTTON_SetBkColor 338
 BUTTON_SetBMP 338
 BUTTON_SetBMPEX 339
 BUTTON_SetDefaultBkColor 339
 BUTTON_SetDefaultFocusColor 340
 BUTTON_SetDefaultFont 340
 BUTTON_SetDefaultTextAlign 340
 BUTTON_SetDefaultTextColor 340
 BUTTON_SetFocusColor 341
 BUTTON_SetFocussable 341
 BUTTON_SetFont 342
 BUTTON_SetPressed 342
 BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmap 342
 BUTTON_SetStreamedBitmapEx 343
 BUTTON_SetText 343
 BUTTON_Set.TextAlign 343
 BUTTON_SetTextColor 344
 BUTTON_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT 330
 BUTTON_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT 330

C

C files

converting bitmaps into 191–193

Callback mechanism 29, 263–275

Callback routines 54, 262
 using 264–275
 Character sets 160–162
 Check box widget 320, 349–364
 CHECKBOX_ALIGN_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_Check 352
 CHECKBOX_Create 352
 CHECKBOX_CreateEx 353
 CHECKBOX_CreateIndirect 352
 CHECKBOX_FGCOLOR0_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_FGCOLOR1_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_FONT_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_GetDefaultBkColor 353
 CHECKBOX_GetDefaultFont 354
 CHECKBOX_GetDefaultSpacing 354
 CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign 354
 CHECKBOX_GetDefaultTextColor 354
 CHECKBOX_GetState 355
 CHECKBOX_GetText 355
 CHECKBOX_IMAGE0_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_IMAGE1_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_IsChecked 356
 CHECKBOX_SetBkColor 356
 CHECKBOX_SetBoxBkColor 356
 CHECKBOX_SetDefaultBkColor 357
 CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFocusColor 357
 CHECKBOX_SetDefaultFont 358
 CHECKBOX_SetDefaultImage 358
 CHECKBOX_SetDefaultSpacing 359
 CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextAlign 359
 CHECKBOX_SetDefaultTextColor 359
 CHECKBOX_SetFocusColor 360
 CHECKBOX_SetImage 360
 CHECKBOX_SetNumStates 361
 CHECKBOX_SetSpacing 361
 CHECKBOX_SetState 362
 CHECKBOX_SetText 362
 CHECKBOX_Set.TextAlign 363
 CHECKBOX_SetTextColor 363
 CHECKBOX_SPACING_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_TEXTCOLOR_DEFAULT 350
 CHECKBOX_Uncheck 364
 Child window 262, 283
 Circles, drawing 117–118
 Client area, of windows 262
 Clip area, of windows 262
 Clipping 99, 262
 Color bar test routine 202–204
 Color conversion, of bitmaps 190, 193–194
 Color lookup table (LUT) 216
 Color palettes

- best palette option 193, 196, 197
 custom 195, 216
 fixed 193, 204–214
C
 Colors 201–221
 converting 201
 logical 201
 physical 201
 predefined 202
 COM/SEG lines
 configuration 809–812
 lookup tables for 812
 Command line usage
 of bitmap converter 195–197
 Compile time switches 29
 Compiling, with simulator
 demo program 47, 49
 for your application 49
 samples 47
 Config folder 40, 49, 646, 791
 Configuration, of μC/GUI
 high-level 815–824
 low-level 791–814
 Control characters 72, 149
 Controls (see Widgets)
 Coordinates 31, 262, 659–660
 high-resolution 657, 659–660
 CPU load, when used as LCD controller 709
 Cursors 653–656
 available styles 654
 Custom palettes
 defining for hardware 216
 file formats, for color conversion 195
 for color conversion 195
- D**
- Data types 33
 Decimal values, displaying 88–92
 Demos 30
 Depth coordinate 263
 Desktop coordinates 262
 Desktop window 262
 Device simulation 50–53
 Device.bmp 50, 54
 Device1.bmp 50, 53, 54
 Device-dependent bitmap (DDB) 191
 Device-independent bitmap (DIB) 191
 Dialogs 601–609
 blocking 602
 non-blocking 602
 Directories, inclusion of 36
 Directory structure
 for simulator 48
 for uC/GUI 36
 for Visual C++ workspace 49
 Display driver 687–778
- Displaying bitmap files 125–147
 Drawing modes 101–102
 Dropdown widget 320, 365–376
D
 DROPOWN_AddString 367
 DROPOWN_ALIGN_DEFAULT 365
 DROPOWN_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 365
 DROPOWN_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT 365
 DROPOWN_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT 365
 DROPOWN_CF_AUTOSCROLLBAR 368
 DROPOWN_CF_UP 368
 DROPOWN_Collapse 367
 DROPOWN_Create 367
 DROPOWN_CreateEx 368
 DROPOWN_DecSel 368
 DROPOWN_Expand 369
 DROPOWN_FONT_DEFAULT 365
 DROPOWN_GetNumItems 369
 DROPOWN_GetSel 370
 DROPOWN_IncSel 370
 DROPOWN_InsertString 370
 DROPOWN_KEY_EXPAND 365
 DROPOWN_KEY_SELECT 365
 DROPOWN_SetAutoScroll 371
 DROPOWN_SetBkColor 371, 373, 473
 DROPOWN_SetColor 372
 DROPOWN_SetDefaultColor 372
 DROPOWN_SetDefaultScrollbarColor 372
 DROPOWN_SetFont 373
 DROPOWN_SetItemSpacing 374
 DROPOWN_SetScrollbarWidth 373
 DROPOWN_SetSel 374
 DROPOWN_SetTextAlign 375
 DROPOWN_SetTextColor 375
 DROPOWN_SetTextHeight 376
 DROPOWN_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT 365
 DROPOWN_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT 365
 DROPOWN_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT 365
 DROPOWN_DeleteItem 369
- E**
- Edit widget 320, 377–395
 EDIT_AddKey 379, 531, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541
 EDIT_ALIGN_DEFAULT 377
 EDIT_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 377
 EDIT_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT 377
 EDIT_BORDER_DEFAULT 377
 EDIT_Create 380
 EDIT_CreateAsChild 380
 EDIT_CreateEx 381
 EDIT_CreateIndirect 381
 EDIT_FONT_DEFAULT 377
 EDIT_GetCursorCharPos 381
 EDIT_GetCursorPixelPos 382
 EDIT_GetDefaultBkColor 382

EDIT_GetDefaultFont 383
EDIT_GetDefaultTextAlign 383
EDIT_GetDefaultTextColor 383
EDIT_GetFloatValue 383
EDIT_GetNumChars 384
EDIT_GetText 384
EDIT_GetValue 384
EDIT_SetBinMode 385
EDIT_SetBkColor 385
EDIT_SetCursorAtChar 385
EDIT_SetCursorAtPixel 386
EDIT_SetDecMode 386
EDIT_SetDefaultBkColor 386
EDIT_SetDefaultFont 387
EDIT_SetDefaultTextAlign 387
EDIT_SetDefaultTextColor 387
EDIT_SetFloatMode 387
EDIT_SetFloatValue 388
EDIT_SetFont 388
EDIT_SetHexMode 388
EDIT_SetInsertMode 389
EDIT_SetMaxLen 389
EDIT_SetpfAddKeyEx 390
EDIT_SetSel 390
EDIT_SetText 391
EDIT_SetTextAlign 391
EDIT_SetTextColor 391
EDIT_SetTextMode 391
EDIT_SetUlongMode 392
EDIT_SetValue 392
EDIT_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT 377
EDIT_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT 377
EDIT_XOFF 377
Ellipses, drawing 118–120
Execution model 251–259
 supported types 252

F

Fixed color palettes 193
Fixed palette modes 204–214
Flickering of display 223, 311
Floating-point calculations 99
Floating-point values, displaying 92–95
Font converter 29, 150, 163, 659, 682
Font editor 163
Font files
 linking 150, 163
 naming convention 166
Fonts 29, 149–187
 adding 163
 antialiased 150, 657, 659
 converting (see Font converter)
 creating additional 150
 declaring 150, 163
 default 152

defining 29
Digit fonts (monospaced) 186–187
Digit fonts (proportional) 184–185
editing 163
External Bitmap Fonts (XBF) 151
file naming convention 166
generating "C" files from 163
included with uC/GUI 149
monospaced 150, 165, 177–183
naming convention 165–166
proportional 150, 165, 167–176
scaling 29
selecting 152–153
System Independent Fonts (SIF) 150
usage of 150

Foreign Language Support 671–685
Frame window widget 320, 396–418
FRAMEWIN_AddButton 399
FRAMEWIN_AddCloseButton 400
FRAMEWIN_AddMaxButton 401
FRAMEWIN_AddMenu 402, 415
FRAMEWIN_AddMinButton 403
FRAMEWIN_ALLOW_DRAG_ON_FRAME 398
FRAMEWIN_BARCOLOR_ACTIVE_DEFAULT 398
FRAMEWIN_BARCOLOR_INACTIVE_DEFAULT 398
FRAMEWIN_BORDER_DEFAULT 398
FRAMEWIN_CLIENTCOLOR_DEFAULT 398
FRAMEWIN_Create 403
FRAMEWIN_CreateAsChild 404
FRAMEWIN_CreateEx 404
FRAMEWIN_DEFAULT_FONT 398
FRAMEWIN_FRAMECOLOR_DEFAULT 398
FRAMEWIN_GetBorderSize 405
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultBarColor 406
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultFontSize 406
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultClientColor 406
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultFont 407
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTextColor 407, 413
FRAMEWIN_GetDefaultTitleSize 407
FRAMEWIN_GetTitleHeight 407
FRAMEWIN_IBORDER_DEFAULT 398
FRAMEWIN_IsMaximized 408
FRAMEWIN_IsMinimized 408
FRAMEWIN_Maximize 408
FRAMEWIN_Minimize 409
FRAMEWIN_Restore 409
FRAMEWIN_SetActive 410
FRAMEWIN_SetBarColor 411
FRAMEWIN_SetFontSize 411
FRAMEWIN_SetClientColor 412
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultBarColor 412
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFontSize 412
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultClientColor 413
FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultFont 413

FRAMEWIN_SetDefaultTitleHeight 413
 FRAMEWIN_SetFont 414
 FRAMEWIN_SetMoveable 414
 FRAMEWIN_SetText 415
 FRAMEWIN_SetTextAlign 416
 FRAMEWIN_SetTextColor 416
 FRAMEWIN_SetTextColorEx 417
 FRAMEWIN_SetTitleHeight 417
 FRAMEWIN_SetTitleVis 418
 FRAMEWIN_TITLEHEIGHT_DEFAULT 398
 Full bus interface, configuration 804–808
 Full-color mode, of bitmaps 191, 193
 Function replacement macro 40
 Function-level linking 37

G

Getting Started 35–43
 GIF file support 138
 Graph widget 419–442
 GRAPH_AttachData 423
 GRAPH_AttachScale 424
 GRAPH_CreateEx 424
 GRAPH_DATA_XY_AddPoint 434
 GRAPH_DATA_XY_Create 434
 GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetLineStyle 436
 GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetOffX 435
 GRAPH_DATA_XY_SetPenSize 436
 GRAPH_DATA_YT_AddValue 432
 GRAPH_DATA_YT_Create 432
 GRAPH_DATA_YT_SetOffY 433
 GRAPH_SCALE_Create 437
 GRAPH_SCALE_SetFactor 438
 GRAPH_SCALE_SetFont 438
 GRAPH_SCALE_SetNumDecs 439
 GRAPH_SCALE_SetOff 439
 GRAPH_SCALE_SetPos 440
 GRAPH_SCALE_SetTextColor 441
 GRAPH_SCALE_SetTickDist 441
 GRAPH_SetBorder 425
 GRAPH_SetColor 426
 GRAPH_SetGridFixedX 427
 GRAPH_SetGridOffY 427
 GRAPH_SetGridSpacingX 426
 GRAPH_SetGridSpacingY 426
 GRAPH_SetGridVis 428
 GRAPH_SetLineStyleH 429
 GRAPH_SetLineStyleV 429
 GRAPH_SetUserDraw 431
 GRAPH_SetVSizeX 430
 GRAPH_SetVSizeY 430
 Graphic library 29, 99–123, 787
 Grayscale 193, 201
 GUI configuration 816–818
 GUI subdirectories 36, 49
 GUI_AA_DisableHiRes 661

GUI_AA_DrawArc 662
 GUI_AA_DrawLine 663
 GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutline 663
 GUI_AA_DrawPolyOutlineEx 664
 GUI_AA_EnableHiRes 661
 GUI_AA_FillCircle 665
 GUI_AA_FillPolygon 665
 GUI_AA_GetFactor 661
 GUI_AA_SetFactor 662
 GUI_ALLOC_ALLOC 821
 GUI_ALLOC_FREE 822
 GUI_ALLOC_GETMAXSIZE 822
 GUI_ALLOC_H2P 822
 GUI_ALLOC_SIZE 816
 GUI_AUTODEV 243
 GUI_AUTODEV_INFO 244
 GUI_BITMAP structures 190
 GUI_BMP_Draw 126
 GUI_BMP_DrawEx 127
 GUI_BMP_DrawScaled 128
 GUI_BMP_DrawScaledEx 128
 GUI_BMP_GetXSize 129
 GUI_BMP_GetXSizeEx 129
 GUI_BMP_GetYSize 130
 GUI_BMP_GetYSizeEx 130
 GUI_BMP_Serialize 130
 GUI_BMP_SerializeEx 131
 GUI_Clear 84
 GUI_ClearKeyBuffer 651
 GUI_ClearRect 103
 GUI_Color2Index 219
 GUI_COMPILER_SUPPORTS_FP 824
 GUI_CONST_STORAGE 823
 GUI_CURSOR_GetState 655
 GUI_CURSOR_Hide 655
 GUI_CURSOR_Select 655
 GUI_CURSOR_SetPosition 656
 GUI_CURSOR_Show 656
 GUI_DEBUG_LEVEL 816
 GUI_DEFAULT_BKCOLOR 816
 GUI_DEFAULT_COLOR 816
 GUI_DEFAULT_FONT 816
 GUI_Delay 787, 788
 GUI_DispBin 95
 GUI_DispBinAt 96
 GUI_DispCEOL 85
 GUI_DispChar 73
 GUI_DispCharAt 74
 GUI_DispChars 74
 GUI_DispDec 88
 GUI_DispDecAt 89
 GUI_DispDecMin 90
 GUI_DispDecShift 90
 GUI_DispDecSpace 90
 GUI_DispFloat 92

GUI_DispFloatFix 93
 GUI_DispFloatMin 94
 GUI_DispHex 96
 GUI_DispHexAt 97
 GUI_DispNextLine 75
 GUI_DispSDec 91
 GUI_DispSDecShift 91
 GUI_DispSFloatFix 94
 GUI_DispSFloatMin 95
 GUI_DispString 75
 GUI_DispStringAt 75
 GUI_DispStringAtCEOL 76
 GUI_DispStringHCenterAt 76
 GUI_DispStringInRect 76
 GUI_DispStringInRectWrap 78
 GUI_DispStringLen 79
 GUI_DrawArc 120
 GUI_DrawBitmap 106
 GUI_DrawBitmapEx 107
 GUI_DrawBitmapExp 107
 GUI_DrawBitmapMag 108
 GUI_DrawCircle 117
 GUI_DrawEllipse 118
 GUI_DrawGraph 121
 GUI_DrawHLine 109
 GUI_DrawLine 109
 GUI_DrawLineRel 109
 GUI_DrawLineTo 110
 GUI_DRAWMODE_XOR 101
 GUI_DrawPixel 104
 GUI_DrawPoint 104
 GUI_DrawPolygon 112
 GUI_DrawPolyLine 110
 GUI_DrawRect 104, 105
 GUI_DrawStreamedBitmap 108
 GUI_DrawVLine 110, 111
 GUI>EditBin 392
 GUI>EditDec 393
 GUI>EditHex 393
 GUI>EditString 394
 GUIEnlargePolygon 112
 GUIExec 788
 GUIExec1 788
 GUIFillCircle 118
 GUIFillEllipse 119
 GUIFillPolygon 113
 GUIFillRect 105
 GUIFillRectEx 105
 GUI_FONT structures 163
 GUIGetBkColor 217
 GUIGetBkColorIndex 217
 GUIGetCharDistX 156
 GUIGetClientRect 103
 GUIGetColor 218
 GUIGetColorIndex 218
 GUIGetDispPosX 84
 GUIGetDispPosY 84
 GUIGetDrawMode 101
 GUIGetFont 152
 GUIGetFontDistY 156
 GUIGetFontInfo 156
 GUIGetFontSizeY 157
 GUIGetKey 652
 GUIGetLeadingBlankCols 157
 GUIGetLineStyle 111
 GUIGetOrg 620
 GUIGetStringDistX 157
 GUIGetTextAlign 82
 GUIGetTextExtend 158
 GUIGetTime 789
 GUIGetTrailingBlankCols 158
 GUIGetVersionString 97
 GUIGetYDistOfFont 158
 GUIGetYSizeOfFont 159
 GUI_GIF_Draw 139
 GUI_GIF_DrawEx 139
 GUI_GIF_DrawSub 140
 GUI_GIF_DrawSubEx 141
 GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaled 142
 GUI_GIF_DrawSubScaledEx 142
 GUI_GIF_GetComment 143
 GUI_GIF_GetCommentEx 143
 GUI_GIF_GetImageInfo 144
 GUI_GIF_GetImageInfoEx 144
 GUI_GIF_GetInfo 145
 GUI_GIF_GetInfoEx 145
 GUI_GIFGetXSize 146
 GUI_GIFGetXSizeEx 146
 GUI_GIFGetYSize 146
 GUI_GIFGetYSizeEx 147
 GUI_GotoX 83
 GUI_GotoXY 83
 GUI_GotoY 83
 GUI_HMEM 822
 GUI_Index2Color 219
 GUI_Init 41
 GUI_InitLUT 220
 GUI_InvertRect 105
 GUI_IsInFont 159
 GUI_JPEG_Draw 133
 GUI_JPEG_DrawEx 134
 GUI_JPEG_DrawScaled 135
 GUI_JPEG_DrawScaledEx 136
 GUI_JPEG_GetInfo 136
 GUI_JPEG_GetInfoEx 137
 GUI_MagnifyPolygon 114
 GUI_MAXBLOCKS 816
 GUI_MAXTASK 256, 817
 GUI_MEASDEV_ClearRect 249
 GUI_MEASDEV_Create 248

GUI_MEASDEV_Delete 249
 GUI_MEASDEV_GetRect 249
 GUI_MEASDEV_Select 249
 GUI_MEMDEV_Clear 228
 GUI_MEMDEV_CopyFromLCD 228
 GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCD 228
 GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAA 229
 GUI_MEMDEV_CopyToLCDAt 229
 GUI_MEMDEV_Create 230
 GUI_MEMDEV_CreateAuto 243
 GUI_MEMDEV_CreateFixed 231
 GUI_MEMDEV_Delete 232
 GUI_MEMDEV_DeleteAuto 244
 GUI_MEMDEV_Draw 240
 GUI_MEMDEV_DrawAuto 244
 GUI_MEMDEV_GetDataPtr 233
 GUI_MEMDEV_GetYSize 233, 234
 GUI_MEMDEV_MarkDirty 234
 GUI_MEMDEV_ReduceYSize 234
 GUI_MEMDEV_Select 235
 GUI_MEMDEV_SetOrg 235
 GUI_MEMDEV_Write 235
 GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlpha 236
 GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAlphaAt 236
 GUI_MEMDEV_WriteAt 236
 GUI_MEMDEV_WriteEx 237
 GUI_MEMSET 817
 GUI_MessageBox 527, 608
 GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_Init 638
 GUI_MOUSE_DRIVER_PS2_OnRx 638
 GUI_MOUSE_GetState 637
 GUI_MoveRel 111
 GUI_OS 256, 817
 GUI_PID_GetState 635
 GUI_PID_STATE 635
 GUI_PID_StoreState 635
 GUI_RestoreContext 122
 GUI_RotatePolygon 115
 GUI_SaveContext 122
 GUI_SelectLCD 238
 GUI_SetLayer 631
 GUI_SendKeyMsg 651
 GUI_SetBkColor 218
 GUI_SetBkColorIndex 218
 GUI_SetClipRect 123
 GUI_SetColor 219
 GUI_SetColorIndex 219
 GUI_SetDrawMode 102
 GUI_SetFont 152
 GUI_SetLBorder 82
 GUI_SetLineStyle 111
 GUI_SetLUTColor 220
 GUI_SetLUTColorEx 631
 GUI_SetLUTEEntry 221
 GUI_SetOrg 620
 GUI_Set.TextAlign 82
 GUI_Set.TextMode 81
 GUI_SetTextStyle 82
 GUI_SIF_CreateFont 153
 GUI_SIF_DeleteFont 154
 GUI_StoreKey 652
 GUI_StoreKeyMsg 651
 GUI_SUPPORT_LARGE_BITMAPS 817
 GUI_SUPPORT_MEMDEV 817
 GUI_SUPPORT_MOUSE 817
 GUI_SUPPORT_ROTATION 817
 GUI_SUPPORT_TOUCH 817
 GUI_SUPPORT_UNICODE 817
 GUI_TEXTMODE_NORMAL 81, 83
 GUI_TEXTMODE_REVERSE 81, 83
 GUI_TEXTMODE_TRANSPARENT 81, 83
 GUI_TEXTMODE_XOR 81, 83
 GUI_TOUCH_AD_BOTTOM 646
 GUI_TOUCH_AD_LEFT 646
 GUI_TOUCH_AD_RIGHT 646
 GUI_TOUCH_AD_TOP 646
 GUI_TOUCH_Calibrate 645
 GUI_TOUCH_Exec 645
 GUI_TOUCH_GetState 639
 GUI_TOUCH_MIRROR_X 646
 GUI_TOUCH_MIRROR_Y 646
 GUI_TOUCH_SetDefaultCalibration 645
 GUI_TOUCH_StoreState 637, 639
 GUI_TOUCH_StoreStateEx 640
 GUI_TOUCH_SWAP_XY 646
 GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateX 643
 GUI_TOUCH_X_ActivateY 643
 GUI_TOUCH_X.MeasureX 643
 GUI_TOUCH_X.MeasureY 643
 GUI_TOUCH_XSIZE 646
 GUI_TOUCH_YSIZE 646
 GUI_TRIAL_VERSION 817
 GUI_UC_ConvertUC2UTF8 674
 GUI_UC_ConvertUTF82UC 675
 GUI_UC_DispString 677
 GUI_UC_Encode 675
 GUI_UC_GetCharCode 675
 GUI_UC_GetCharSize 676
 GUI_UC_SetEncodeNone 676
 GUI_UC_SetEncodeUTF8 677
 GUI_UNI_PTR 823
 GUI_VNC_AttachToLayer 784
 GUI_VNC_Process 784
 GUI_VNC_X_StartServer 785
 GUI_WaitKey 652
 GUI_WINSUPPORT 817
 GUI_X_Delay 788, 819
 GUI_X_Execlidle 820
 GUI_X_GetTaskID 257
 GUI_X_GetTime 789, 820

GUI_X_Init 819
 GUI_X_InitOS 257
 GUI_X_Lock 258
 GUI_X_Log 820
 GUI_X_Unlock 258
 GUI_X_WAIT_EVENT 256
 GUI_XBF_CreateFont 154
 GUI_XBF_DeleteFont 155
 GUIConf.h 152, 227, 815

H

Handle, of a window 263
 Hardkey simulation 53–57
 Header widget 320, 443–456
 HEADER_AddItem 444
 HEADER_Create 445
 HEADER_CreateAttached 446
 HEADER_CreateEx 446, 488
 HEADER_CreateIndirect 447
 HEADER_GetDefaultBkColor 447
 HEADER_GetDefaultBorderH 447
 HEADER_GetDefaultBorderV 447
 HEADER_GetDefaultCursor 447
 HEADER_GetDefaultFont 448
 HEADER_GetDefaultTextColor 448
 HEADER_GetHeight 448
 HEADER_GetItemWidth 448
 HEADER_GetNumColumns 449
 HEADER_SetBitmap 449
 HEADER_SetBitmapEx 449
 HEADER_SetBkColor 450
 HEADER_SetBMP 450
 HEADER_SetBMPEx 451
 HEADER_SetDefaultBkColor 451
 HEADER_SetDefaultBorderH 452
 HEADER_SetDefaultBorderV 452
 HEADER_SetDefaultCursor 452
 HEADER_SetDefaultFont 453
 HEADER_SetDefaultTextColor 453
 HEADER_SetDragLimit 453
 HEADER_SetFont 453
 HEADER_SetHeight 454
 HEADER_SetItemText 454
 HEADER_SetItemWidth 455
 HEADER_SetStreamedBitmap 455
 HEADER_SetStreamedBitmapEx 455
 HEADER_Set.TextAlign 454
 HEADER_SetTextColor 456
 Hello world program 41–43
 Hexadecimal values, displaying 96–97
 Hiding windows 263
 High-resolution coordinates 657, 659–660

I

I/O pins, connection to 802

Initializing uC/GUI 41
 Input devices 633–648
 joystick 647–648
 keyboard 649–652
 mouse 637–638
 touch screen 639–646
 Interrupt service routines 252, 253, 254, 645
 Invalidation, of windows 263
 ISO 8859-1 149, 160, 162

J

JPEG file support 132

K

Kernel interface routines 252, 253, 254, 255, 257–259
 Keyboard input support 649–652

L

LCD 701
 caching in memory 29
 configuration of 201, 791
 connecting to microcontroller 31–32
 initialization of 41
 magnifying 799–800
 simulated 50
 without LCD controller 32, 708–709
 LCD controller
 configuration of 791–814
 configuring additional 811–812
 connected to port/buffer 31
 initialization of 795
 memory-mapped 31
 support for 31, 688
 using CPU as 708–709
 with LUT hardware 220, 812
 LCD driver 46
 availability/selection 688
 customization of 31
 LCD_BITSPERPIXEL 794
 LCD_BUSWIDTH 701, 807
 LCD_CACHE 718, 728, 735, 738, 742, 744, 755, 759, 765, 813
 LCD_CNF4 701
 LCD_CONTROLLER 690, 794
 LCD_DAD 715
 LCD_ENABLE_MEM_ACCESS 701, 808
 LCD_ENABLE_REG_ACCESS 701, 808
 LCD_ENDIAN_BIG 705
 LCD_EXTENDED_WAIT 723
 LCD_FILL_RECT 705, 706
 LCD_FIRSTCOM 718, 721, 731, 748, 809
 LCD_FIRSTSEG 809
 LCD_FIRSTSEG0 718, 721, 731, 748
 LCD_FIXEDPALETTE 794

LCD_GET_BUSY 748
 LCD_GetBitsPerPixel 775
 LCD_GetBitsPerPixelEx 775
 LCD_GetFixedPalette 775
 LCD_GetFixedPaletteEx 775
 LCD_GetNumColors 776
 LCD_GetNumColorsEx 776
 LCD_GetNumDisplays 632
 LCD_GetVXSize 776
 LCD_GetVXSizeEx 776
 LCD_GetVYSize 776
 LCD_GetVYSizeEx 776
 LCD_GetXMagEx 777
 LCD_GetXSize 777
 LCD_GetXSizeEx 777
 LCD_GetYMagEx 777
 LCD_GetYSize 777
 LCD_GetYSizeEx 777
 LCD_INIT_CONTROLLER 696, 697, 701, 705, 715, 718, 720, 723, 726, 728, 731, 733, 735, 738, 739, 742, 744, 746, 748, 750, 753, 755, 757, 759, 761, 763, 765, 795
 LCD_L0_ControlCache 717, 730, 774
 LCD_L0_DrawBitMap 770
 LCD_L0_DrawHLine 771
 LCD_L0_DrawPixel 771
 LCD_L0_DrawVLine 771
 LCD_L0_FillRect 772
 LCD_L0_GetPixelIndex 773
 LCD_L0_Init 770
 LCD_L0_Off 770
 LCD_L0_On 770
 LCD_L0_ReInit 770
 LCD_L0_SetLUTEntry 773
 LCD_L0_SetPixelIndex 772
 LCD_L0_XorPixel 772
 LCD_LASTCOM 810
 LCD_LASTSEG 809
 LCD_LIN_SWAP 705
 LCD_LUT_COM 812
 LCD_LUT_SEG 813
 LCD_MAX_LOG_COLORS 798
 LCD_MIRROR_X 797
 LCD_MIRROR_Y 798
 LCD_NUM_COM0 721
 LCD_NUM_CONTROLLERS 813
 LCD_NUM_DUMMY_READS 757
 LCD_NUM_SEG0 721
 LCD_OFF 696, 698, 701, 705, 710, 713, 814
 LCD_ON 696, 698, 701, 705, 710, 713, 814
 LCD_PHYSCOLORS 798, 799
 LCD_PHYSCOLORS_IN_RAM 220
 LCD_READ_A0 718, 723, 731, 739, 742, 744, 746, 755, 759, 763, 801
 LCD_READ_A1 718, 720, 723, 728, 731, 735, 738, 739, 742, 744, 746, 748, 750, 753, 755, 759, 761, 763, 765, 801
 LCD_READ_MEM 696, 701, 726, 805
 LCD_READ_REG 697, 701, 702, 726, 806
 LCD_READM_A1 733, 757
 LCD_REVERSE 799
 LCD_SERIAL_ID 757
 LCD_SET_LUT_ENTRY 701, 705
 LCD_SUPPORT_CACHECONTROL 718, 813
 LCD_SWAP_BYTE_ORDER 701, 808
 LCD_SWAP_RB 701, 799
 LCD_SWAP_XY 798
 LCD_TIMERINIT0 710, 713, 814
 LCD_TIMERINIT1 710, 713, 814
 LCD_USE_BITBLT 701, 726, 813
 LCD_USE_BITBLT_1BPP 726
 LCD_USE_BITBLT_FILL 726
 LCD_USE_SERIAL_3PIN 757
 LCD_VRAM_ADR 705
 LCD_WAIT 748
 LCD_WRITE_A0 718, 720, 723, 728, 731, 735, 738, 739, 742, 744, 746, 748, 750, 753, 755, 759, 761, 763, 765, 801
 LCD_WRITE_A1 715, 718, 720, 723, 728, 731, 733, 735, 738, 739, 742, 744, 746, 748, 750, 753, 755, 759, 761, 763, 765, 802
 LCD_WRITE_BUFFER_SIZE 733, 757
 LCD_WRITE_MEM 696, 701, 726, 806
 LCD_WRITE_REG 697, 701, 702, 726, 807
 LCD_WITEM_A0 733, 757
 LCD_WITEM_A1 715, 718, 720, 728, 731, 733, 735, 738, 744, 748, 753, 757, 761, 763, 765, 802
 LCD_XMAG 799
 LCD_XORG 809
 LCD_XSIZE 795
 LCD_YMAG 800
 LCD_YORG 809
 LCD_YSIZE 795
 LCD0323 driver 727–728
 LCD07X1 729
 LCD07X1 driver 729–731
 LCD1200 driver 732–733
 LCD13700 driver 734–735
 LCD13701 driver 736–738
 LCD159A driver 739–740
 LCD15E05 driver 740–742
 LCD16111 driver 743–744
 LCD161620 driver 745–746
 LCD1781 driver 747–749
 LCD501 driver 750–751
 LCD6331 driver 752–753
 LCD6642X driver 754–755
 LCD66750 driver 758–759
 LCD667XX driver 756–757
 LCD7529 driver 760–761

LCD7920 driver 762–763
 LCD8822 driver 764–765
 LCDColorOnMono driver 695–696
 LCDConf.h 31, 33, 40, 216, 687, 791
 LCDFujitsu driver 697–698
 LCDLin driver 699–702
 LCDLin32 driver 703–707
 LCDMem driver 708–710
 LCDMemC driver 711–713
 LCDNoritake driver 714–715
 LCDNull driver 767
 LCDPage1bpp driver 716–718
 LCDPage4bpp driver 719–721
 LCDSLin driver 722–723
 LCDTemplate driver 766
 LCDVesa driver 724
 LCDXylon driver 725–726
 Library, creating 37
 Linearization 221
 Lines, drawing 109–111
 Linking source files 37
 List box widget 320, 457–481
LISTBOX_ 468
 LISTBOX_AddString 459
 LISTBOX_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 457
 LISTBOX_BKCOLOR1_DEFAULT 457
 LISTBOX_BKCOLOR2_DEFAULT 457
 LISTBOX_Create 459
 LISTBOX_CreateAsChild 460
 LISTBOX_CreateEx 460
 LISTBOX_CreateIndirect 461
 LISTBOX_DecSel 461
 LISTBOX_DeleteItem 461
 LISTBOX_FONT_DEFAULT 457
 LISTBOX_GetDefaultBkColor 461
 LISTBOX_GetDefaultFont 462
 LISTBOX_GetDefaultScrollStepH 462
 LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextAlign 462
 LISTBOX_GetDefaultTextColor 463
 LISTBOX_GetFont 463
 LISTBOX_GetItemDisabled 463
 LISTBOX_GetItemSel 464
 LISTBOX_GetItemText 464
 LISTBOX_GetMulti 464
 LISTBOX_GetNumItems 465
 LISTBOX_GetScrollStepH 465
 LISTBOX_GetSel 465
 LISTBOX_GetTextAlign 465
 LISTBOX_IncSel 466
 LISTBOX_InsertString 466
 LISTBOX_InvalidateItem 466
 LISTBOX_OwnerDraw 467
 LISTBOX_SetAutoScrollH 467
 LISTBOX_SetBkColor 468
 LISTBOX_SetDefaultBkColor 469
 LISTBOX_SetDefaultFont 469
 LISTBOX_SetDefaultScrollStepH 469
 LISTBOX_SetDefaultTextColor 470
 LISTBOX_SetFont 470
 LISTBOX_SetItemDisabled 470
 LISTBOX_SetItemSel 471
 LISTBOX_SetItemSpacing 471
 LISTBOX_SetMulti 471
 LISTBOX_SetOwnerDraw 472
 LISTBOX_SetScrollbarWidth 474
 LISTBOX_SetScrollStepH 474
 LISTBOX_SetSel 474
 LISTBOX_SetString 474
 LISTBOX_SetTextAlign 475
 LISTBOX_SetTextColor 475
 LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR0_DEFAULT 457
 LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR1_DEFAULT 457
 LISTBOX_TEXTCOLOR2_DEFAULT 457
 Listview widget 320, 482–506
LISTVIEW_ 490, 491, 493
 LISTVIEW_AddColumn 485
 LISTVIEW_AddRow 486
 LISTVIEW_CompareDec 486
 LISTVIEW_CompareText 487
 LISTVIEW_Create 487
 LISTVIEW_CreateAttached 488
 LISTVIEW_CreateIndirect 489
 LISTVIEW_DecSel 489
 LISTVIEW_DeleteColumn 489
 LISTVIEW_DeleteRow 489
 LISTVIEW_DisableSort 490
 LISTVIEW_EnableSort 491
 LISTVIEW_GetBkColor 492
 LISTVIEW_GetFont 492
 LISTVIEW_GetHeader 492
 LISTVIEW_GetNumColumns 493
 LISTVIEW_GetNumRows 493
 LISTVIEW_GetSel 494
 LISTVIEW_GetSelUnsorted 494
 LISTVIEW_GetTextColor 494
 LISTVIEW_GetUserData 495
 LISTVIEW_IncSel 495
 LISTVIEW_InsertRow 496
 LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollH 496
 LISTVIEW_SetAutoScrollV 496
 LISTVIEW_SetBkColor 497
 LISTVIEW_SetColumnWidth 497
 LISTVIEW_SetDefaultBkColor 498
 LISTVIEW_SetDefaultFont 498
 LISTVIEW_SetDefaultGridColor 498
 LISTVIEW_SetDefaultTextColor 499
 LISTVIEW_SetFixed 499
 LISTVIEW_SetFont 500
 LISTVIEW_SetGridVis 500
 LISTVIEW_SetItemBkColor 500

LISTVIEW_SetItemText 501
LISTVIEW_SetItemTextColor 501
LISTVIEW_SetLBorder 502
LISTVIEW_SetRBorder 503
LISTVIEW_SetRowHeight 503
LISTVIEW_SetSel 503
LISTVIEW_SetSelUnsorted 504
LISTVIEW_SetSort 504
LISTVIEW_Set.TextAlign 505
LISTVIEW_SetTextColor 505
LISTVIEW_SetUserData 506
 Lookup table (LUT) 213, 214, 216, 220–221, 768, 812

M

Measurement device object 248–250
 Memory devices 223–250

- auto 243–248
- banding 240–243
- basic usage of 226
- disabling of 227, 311
- software for 223
- with window manager 311

 Memory mapped interface 802
 Memory, reducing consumption of 190, 193
MENU 320

- MENU.AddItem** 513
- MENU.Attach** 513
- MENU.CreateEx** 514
- MENU.DeleteItem** 515
- MENU_DisableItem** 515
- MENU_EnableItem** 516
- MENU_GetDefaultBkColor** 516
- MENU_GetDefaultFontSize** 517
- MENU_GetDefaultEffect** 517
- MENU_GetDefaultFont** 517
- MENU_GetDefaultTextColor** 518
- MENU_GetItem** 518
- MENU_GetItemText** 519
- MENU_GetNumItems** 519
- MENU_IF_DISABLED** 509
- MENU_IF_SEPARATOR** 509
- MENU_InsertItem** 519
- MENU_MSG_DATA** 508
- MENU_ON_INITMENU** 508
- MENU_ON_ITEMSELECT** 508
- MENU_Popup** 520
- MENU_SetBkColor** 521
- MENU_SetFontSize** 522
- MENU_SetDefaultBkColor** 522
- MENU_SetDefaultFontSize** 523
- MENU_SetDefaultEffect** 523
- MENU_SetDefaultFont** 523
- MENU_SetDefaultTextColor** 524
- MENU_SetFont** 524

- MENU_SetItem** 525
- MENU_SetOwner** 525
- MENU_SetTextColor** 526
- Message box widget 527–528
- MESSAGEBOX_Create** 528
- Messages, sent by callback routines 267
- Monospaced fonts (see Fonts)
- MULTIEDIT** 320
 - Multiedit** widget 529–541
 - MULTIEDIT_AddKey** 531
 - MULTIEDIT_AddText** 532
 - MULTIEDIT_Create** 532
 - MULTIEDIT_CreateEx** 533
 - MULTIEDIT_GetCursorCharPos** 533
 - MULTIEDIT_GetCursorPixelPos** 534
 - MULTIEDIT_GetPrompt** 534
 - MULTIEDIT.GetText** 534
 - MULTIEDIT.GetTextSize** 535
 - MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollH** 535
 - MULTIEDIT_SetAutoScrollV** 536
 - MULTIEDIT_SetBkColor** 536
 - MULTIEDIT_SetBufferSize** 536
 - MULTIEDIT_SetCursorPosition** 537
 - MULTIEDIT_SetFont** 537
 - MULTIEDIT_SetInsertMode** 537
 - MULTIEDIT_SetMaxNumChars** 538
 - MULTIEDIT_SetPasswordMode** 538
 - MULTIEDIT_SetPrompt** 538
 - MULTIEDIT_SetReadOnly** 539
 - MULTIEDIT_SetText** 539
 - MULTIEDIT_Set.TextAlign** 540
 - MULTIEDIT_SetTextColor** 540
 - MULTIEDIT_SetWrapNone** 541
 - MULTIEDIT_SetWrapWord** 540
- MULTIPAGE** 321
 - Multipage widget 542–556
 - MULTIPAGE_AddPage** 545
 - MULTIPAGE_CreateIndirect** 546
 - MULTIPAGE_DeletePage** 546
 - MULTIPAGE_DisablePage** 546
 - MULTIPAGE_EnablePage** 547
 - MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultAlign** 547
 - MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultBkColor** 548
 - MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultFont** 549
 - MULTIPAGE_GetDefaultTextColor** 549
 - MULTIPAGE_GetSelection** 549
 - MULTIPAGE_GetWindow** 550
 - MULTIPAGE_IsPageEnabled** 550
 - MULTIPAGE_SelectPage** 550
 - MULTIPAGE_SetAlign** 551
 - MULTIPAGE_SetBkColor** 552
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultAlign** 552
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultBkColor** 553
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultFont** 553
 - MULTIPAGE_SetDefaultTextColor** 553

MULTIPAGE_SetFont 554
 MULTIPAGE_SetRotation 555
 MULTIPAGE_SetText 555
 MULTIPAGE_SetTextColor 556
 Multiple layer support 621–632
 Multitask environments 321

N

Non-blocking dialog 602
 NORMAL drawing mode 101
 Normal text 80
 Numerical value macro 40

O

Optional software 39

P

Palettes (see Color palettes)
 Parent window 262
 Performance 825–831
 Pixels 31
 Pointer input device support
 data structure for 635
 Polygons, drawing 112–117
 PROGBAR_Create 557
 PROGBAR_CreateAsChild 558
 PROGBAR_CreateEx 558
 PROGBAR_CreateIndirect 559
 PROGBAR_DEFAULT_BARCOLOR0 557
 PROGBAR_DEFAULT_BARCOLOR1 557
 PROGBAR_DEFAULT_FONT 557
 PROGBAR_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR0 557
 PROGBAR_DEFAULT_TEXTCOLOR1 557
 PROGBAR_SetBarColor 559
 PROGBAR_SetFont 559
 PROGBAR_SetMinMax 560
 PROGBAR_SetText 560
 PROGBAR_SetTextAlign 561
 PROGBAR_SetTextPos 561
 PROGBAR_SetValue 561
 Progress bar widget 321, 557–565
 Proportional fonts (see Fonts)

R

Radio button widget 321, 566–577
 RADIO_Create 567
 RADIO_CreateEx 568
 RADIO_CreateIndirect 569
 RADIO_Dec 569
 RADIO_GetDefaultFont 569
 RADIO_GetDefaultTextColor 570
 RADIO_GetText 570
 RADIO_GetValue 570
 RADIO_Inc 571
 RADIO_SetBkColor 571

RADIO_SetDefaultFocusColor 572
 RADIO_SetDefaultFont 572
 RADIO_SetDefaultImage 573
 RADIO_SetDefaultTextColor 573
 RADIO_SetFocusColor 574
 RADIO_SetFont 574
 RADIO_SetGroupID 575
 RADIO_SetImage 575
 RADIO_SetText 576
 RADIO_SetTextColor 577
 RADIO_SetValue 577
 Redrawing mechanism 321
 resource 50
 Resource file 50, 53
 Resource semaphore 257
 Resource usage 825–831
 Reverse text 80
 RLE compression, of bitmaps 191, 194, 199

S

S1D13806 controller 701
 Sample programs 30, 41
 Scroll bar widget 321, 578–585
 SCROLLBAR_AddValue 579
 SCROLLBAR_Create 579
 SCROLLBAR_CreateAttached 580
 SCROLLBAR_CreateEx 581
 SCROLLBAR_CreateIndirect 581
 SCROLLBAR_Dec 582
 SCROLLBAR_GetDefaultWidth 582
 SCROLLBAR_GetValue 582
 SCROLLBAR_Inc 582
 SCROLLBAR_SetColor 583
 SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultColor 583
 SCROLLBAR_SetDefaultWidth 584
 SCROLLBAR_SetNumItems 584
 SCROLLBAR_SetPageSize 584
 SCROLLBAR_SetState 585
 SCROLLBAR_SetValue 585
 SCROLLBAR_SetWidth 585
 SCROLLBAR_THUMB_SIZE_MIN_DEFAULT 578
 SED1386 controller 701
 Selection switch macro 40
 Shift JIS
 creating fonts 682–685
 Showing windows 263
 Sibling window 262
 SIM_GUI_CreateLCDInfoWindow() 61
 SIM_GUI_CreateLCDWindow 62
 SIM_GUI_Exit 62
 SIM_GUI_Init 62
 SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorBlack 51
 SIM_GUI_SetLCDColorWhite 51
 SIM_GUI_SetLCDPos 52
 SIM_GUI_SetLCDWindowHook 63

SIM_GUI_SetMag 52
SIM_GUI_SetTransColor 53
SIM_HARDKEY_GetNum 55
SIM_HARDKEY_SetState 55
SIM_HARDKEY_SetCallback 55
SIM_HARDKEY_SetMode 53, 56
SIM_HARDKEY_SetState 57
SIM_SetTransColor 50
Simple bus interface, configuration 800–804
Simulator 29, 35–??, 45–63

- directory structure for 48
- usage of with uC/GUI source 48–49
- usage of with uC/GUI trial version 46–47

Single task system 252, 252–253
Slider widget 321, 586–592
SLIDER_BKCOLOR0_DEFAULT 586
SLIDER_COLOR0_DEFAULT 586
SLIDER_Create 587
SLIDER_CreateEx 587
SLIDER_CreateIndirect 588
SLIDER_Dec 588
SLIDER_FOCUSCOLOR_DEFAULT 586
SLIDER_GetValue 588
SLIDER_Inc 589
SLIDER_SetBkColor 589
SLIDER_SetDefaultFocusColor 589
SLIDER_SetFocusColor 590
SLIDER_SetNumTicks 590
SLIDER_SetRange 591
SLIDER_SetValue 591
SLIDER_SetWidth 592
Source files, linking 37
Sprintf 87
Standard fonts 149
Subdirectories, of GUI 36
Superloop 252, 252–253
Support 833–839
Syntax, conventions used 30

T

Text

- alignment 82–83
- displaying 71–79
- modes 80–81
- positioning 72, 83–84

Text widget 321, 593–598
TEXT_Create 594
TEXT_CreateAsChild 594
TEXT_CreateEx 595
TEXT_CreateIndirect 595
TEXT_FONT_DEFAULT 593
TEXT_GetDefaultFont 595
TEXT_SetBkColor 596
TEXT_SetDefaultFont 596
TEXT_SetDefaultTextColor 596

TEXT_SetDefaultWrapMode 597
TEXT_SetFont 597
TEXT_SetText 597
TEXT_SetTextAlign 597
TEXT_SetTextColor 598
TEXT_SetWrapMode 598
Tick 787, 788
Time-related functions 787–789
Toggle behavior, of hardkeys 53, 56
Top window 263
TOUCH_X_ActivateY 643
TOUCH_X_MeasureY 643
Touch-screens 29
Transparency 263

- in device simulation 50

Transparent reversed text 80
Transparent text 80
Trial version, of uC/GUI 46–47
Tutorial 41

U

uC/GUI

- as trial version 46–47
- directory structure for 36
- in multitask environments 41, 321
- initialization of 41
- performance benchmark 826
- updating to newer versions 36

uC/OS 251

- kernel interface routines for 258

Unicode 149, 162

- API reference 674
- displaying characters in 673

User drawn widgets 328
UTF-8 strings 673

V

Validation, of windows 263
Values, displaying 87–97
Vectorized symbols 112
Viewer 29, 65–70
Virtual display 29
Virtual screen support 611–620
Visual C++ 46, 49

- directory structure for 49

VNC support 779–785

W

Western Latin character set (see ISO 8859-1)
WIDGET_DRAW_ITEM_FUNC 328
WIDGET_GetDefaultEffect 326
WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW 329
WIDGET_ITEM_DRAW_INFO 137
WIDGET_ITEM_GET_XSIZE 329
WIDGET_ITEM_GET_YSIZE 329

WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect 326
WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_3D 327
WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_None 327
WIDGET_SetDefaultEffect_Simple 327
WIDGET_SetEffect 328
WIDGET_USE_PARENT_EFFECT 323
Widgets 29, 319–599, 787

- currently available 320
- dynamic memory usage 322
- handles of 319, 322
- member functions of 321
- using 321

Win32, kernel interface routines for 259
Window coordinates 263
Window manager 29, 261–317, 319, 788
Window objects (see *Widgets*)
Window widget 599
WINDOW_BKCOLOR_DEFAULT 599
WINDOW_SetDefaultBkColor 599
Windows 261–317

- clearing 84–85
- properties of 262
- terms associated with 262–263

WM_Activate 279
WM_AttachWindow 279
WM_AttachWindowAt 280
WM_BringToBottom 280
WM_BringToFront 281
WM_BroadcastMessage 281
WM_CF_ANCHOR_BOTTOM 282
WM_CF_ANCHOR_LEFT 282
WM_CF_ANCHOR_RIGHT 282
WM_CF_ANCHOR_TOP 282
WM_CF_BGND 282
WM_CF_CONST_OUTLINE 282
WM_CF_FGND 282
WM_CF_HASTRANS 282
WM_CF_HIDE 282
WM_CF_LATE_CLIP 283
WM_CF_MEMDEV 283
WM_CF_MEMDEV_ON_REDRAW 283
WM_CF_SHOW 283
WM_CF_STAYONTOP 283
WM_ClrHasTrans 281
WM_CREATE 267, 268
WM_CreateWindow 281
WM_CreateWindowAsChild 283
WM_Deactivate 284
WM_DefaultProc 284
WM_DELETE 267, 268
WM_DeleteWindow 285
WM_DetachWindow 285
WM_DisableMemdev 311
WM_DisableWindow 285
WM_EnableMemdev 311
WM_EnableWindow 286
WM_Exec 286, 321, 788
WM_Exec1 286
WM_ForEachDesc 287
WM_GET_ID 267, 268
WM_GetActiveWindow 288
WM_GetBackgroundWindow 289
WM_GetCallback 288
WM_GetClientRect 289
WM_GetClientRectEx 289
WM_GetClientWindow 312
WM_GetDesktopWindowEx 289, 290
WM_GetDialogItem 290
WM_GetFirstChild 290
WM_GetFocussedWindow 290
WM_GetHasTrans 291
WM_GetId 312
WM_GetInsideRect 312
WM_GetInsideRectEx 313
WM_GetInvalidRect 291
WM_GetNextSibling 291
WM_GetOrgX 292
WM_GetOrgY 292
WM_GetParent 292
WM_GetPrevSibling 292
WM_GetScrollPosH 313
WM_GetScrollPosV 313
WM_GetScrollState 314
WM_GetStayOnTop 293
WM_GetUserData 293
WM_GetWindowOrgX 294
WM_GetWindowOrgY 294
WM_GetWindowRect 294
WM_GetWindowRectEx 294
WM_GetWindowSizeX 294
WM_GetWindowSizeY 294
WM_HasCaptured 295
WM_HasFocus 295
WM_HideWindow 295
WM_INIT_DIALOG 267, 269
WM_InvalidateArea 296
WM_InvalidateRect 296
WM_InvalidateWindow 297
WM_IsCompletelyVisible 297
WM_IsEnabled 297
WM_IsVisible 298
WM_IsWindow 298
WM_KEY 267, 269
WM_MakeModal 298
WM_MENU 508
WM_MESSAGE 267
WM_MOUSEOVER 267, 272
WM_MOUSEOVER_END 267, 268, 272
WM_MOVE 267, 269
WM_MoveChildTo 298

WM_MoveTo 299
 WM_MoveWindow 299
 WM_NOTIFICATION_CHILD_DELETED 268
 WM_NOTIFICATION_CLICKED 331, 350, 365, 378, 443, 457, 483, 530, 543, 566, 578, 586
 WM_NOTIFICATION_MOVED_OUT 331, 350, 365, 378, 443, 457, 483, 530, 543, 566
 WM_NOTIFICATION_RELEASED 331, 350, 365, 378, 443, 457, 483, 530, 543, 566, 578, 586
 WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLL_CHANGED 365, 457, 483, 530
 WM_NOTIFICATION_SCROLLBAR_ADDED 578
 WM_NOTIFICATION_SEL_CHANGED 365, 457, 483
 WM_NOTIFICATION_VALUE_CHANGED 350, 378, 530, 543, 566, 578, 586
 WM_NOTIFY_PARENT 267, 269, 322
 WM_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED 267, 269
 WM_NotifyParent 299
 WM_PAINT 267, 270
 WM_Paint 300, 321
 WM_PaintWindowAndDescs 300
 WM_PID_STATE_CHANGED 267, 272
 WM_ReleaseCapture 300
 WM_ResizeWindow 300
 WM_SelectWindow 301
 WM_SendMessage 301
 WM_SendToParent 302
 WM_SET_FOCUS 267, 270
 WM_SET_ID 267, 270
 WM_SetCallback 303
 WM_SetCapture 303
 WM_SetDesktopColor 302
 WM_SetDesktopColorEx 302
 WM_SetFocus 304
 WM_SetHasTrans 304
 WM_SetpfPollPID 305
 WM_SetScrollPosH 314
 WM_SetScrollPosV 315
 WM_SetScrollState 315
 WM_SetSize 305
 WM_SetStayOnTop 306
 WM_SetTransState 306
 WM_SetUserClipRect 307
 WM_SetUserData 308
 WM_SetWindowPos 305
 WM_SetXSize 306
 WM_SetYSize 306
 WM_ShowWindow 308
 WM_SIZE 267, 271
 WM_SUPPORT_NOTIFY_VIS_CHANGED 276
 WM_SUPPORT_TRANSPARENCY 276
 WM_TOUCH 268, 273
 WM_TOUCH_CHILD 268, 273
 WM_Update 309
 WM_UpdateWindowAndDescs 309
 WM_USER 268, 275
 WM_ValidateRect 309
 WM_ValidateWindow 309

X

X-axis 31
 XOR drawing mode 101
 XOR text 80

Y

Y-axis 31

Z

Z-position 263